NTT DoCoMo

Manual for

FOMA® D702i '06.2

Quick Search/ Contents/Cautions

Before Using D702i

Making/ Receiving Calls

Making/Receiving Videophone Calls

Phonebook

Sounds/Displays/Lights Settings

Safety Settings

Camera

i-mode/i-motion

Mail

i-αppli

i-channel

Displaying/Editing/ Managing Data

Other Convenient Functions

Network Services

Data Communication

Character Entry

Appendix/Data Interchange/ Troubleshooting

INDEX/ Quick Reference Manual

i-mode

DoCoMo W-CDMA System

Thank you for selecting the FOMA D702i.
Carefully read this manual, as well as the individual manuals for other devices such as the battery pack, before using your FOMA D702i, and consult the corresponding manuals while using the phone so that you are able to use it correctly and effectively. If you are unclear as to any point indicated in any of these manuals, contact the DoCoMo Information Center that is listed on the back of this manual.
Your FOMA D702i is a valuable asset. Handle it with care and it will be your trusted partner for years to come.

Before using your FOMA terminal

- The FOMA terminal is cordless so you may not be able to use it in certain locations where signals cannot penetrate, such as in tunnels, underground, in some buildings or outdoors if the signal is weak or you are outside the service area. You also may not be able to use your FOMA terminal on the upper floors of some highrise building, even though there is nothing around you that interferes with the signal. Please note that your call may be disconnected even when the signal is strong (when the signal strength indication shows three bars) and you are not moving.
- When using the FOMA terminal in public, busy or quiet places, be careful not to disturb others.
- Since the FOMA terminal relies on radio transmission, it is theoretically possible for third parties to intercept a call; however, because the W-CDMA system automatically employs a secrecy function for all calls, a third party will pick up nothing but signal noise.
- Since the FOMA terminal operates by the wireless transmission of voices converted to digital signals, if you are in a location where the signal is weak, the original voice may not be accurately reproduced from the received digital signal, therefore, the voice you hear may differ from the original sound of the speaker's voice.
- DoCoMo asks that you keep a separate record (e.g. written copy) of all information you store in your FOMA terminal. DoCoMo accepts no responsibility whatsoever for any loss that occurs should the contents of the FOMA terminal's memory be lost or altered.
- The user hereby agrees that the user shall be solely responsible for the result of the use of SSL. Neither DoCoMo nor the certifier as listed herein makes any representation and warranty as for the security in the use of SSL. In the event that the user shall sustain damage or loss due to the use of SSL, neither DoCoMo nor the certifier shall be responsible for any such damage or loss.
  Certifier: VeriSign Japan K.K., Betrusted Japan Co., Ltd., GeoTrust Japan, inc.
- The FOMA terminal can be used in the FOMA Plus-Area.
- The FOMA terminal can be used only via the FOMA network provided by DoCoMo.

Using a FOMA terminal for the first time

When you use a FOMA terminal for the first time, read this manual in the following order. You can understand the preparations for using the FOMA terminal and its basic operations.

1. Install the battery pack and charge it. ☛P39, P40
2. Turn the power on, make initial settings, and then confirm your phone number. ☛P43, P46
3. Understand the functions of keys on the terminal. ☛P26
4. Understand the meaning of icons displayed on the screen. ☛P27
5. Understand how to use the menus. ☛P30
6. Understand how to make and receive calls. ☛P48, P57

- In the manual for FOMA D702i, the FOMA D702i is usually referred to as "FOMA terminal".
- Unauthorized copying of a part or all of the contents of this manual is prohibited.
- The contents of this manual are subject to change without prior notice.

How to use and refer to this manual

You can look for functions or operation procedures that you want to know using various searching ways.

Search on INDEX P360
Search for a function name or service name.

Use Quick Search P4
Search for frequently-used or useful functions using easy-to-understand words.

Use Front Cover Indexes Front Cover
Search by turning over the pages on this manual using the front cover indexes.

For details, see the next page.

Use Contents P6
Refer to the contents classified into chapters on an objective basis.

Refer to Features P8
Search for the features or new functions of D702i.

Use Menu List P322
Search using the menu of D702i.

Use Quick Reference Manual P364
This manual describes how to operate frequently-used functions. Use it by separating from this instruction manual.

Explanatory note on procedures and keys

- The operation procedure is mainly explained in shortcut operations. When there are two or more possible procedures, the simplest one is mentioned.
- In this manual, the operation procedures are described as follows:

Description	Meaning
MENU O ▶ ● ▶ Enter the terminal security code	Press MENU O on the standby display and then press ●. Continuously, enter the terminal security code and press ●.

- If there is especially no notice, the operation procedures from the standby display are mentioned.
- In this manual, to place the cursor at an item with ✣ (Easy Selector Plus) is referred to as “highlight”. In addition, to select an item by placing the cursor with ✣ (Easy Selector Plus) and pressing ● (Enter key) is referred to as “select”.
  The step of pressing ● which is required after entering characters in the entry field is omitted in description.
- The procedure for entering characters is mainly explained by in-line entry (direct insertion of text into the entry field). ☛P312
- In this manual, the keys are simplified.

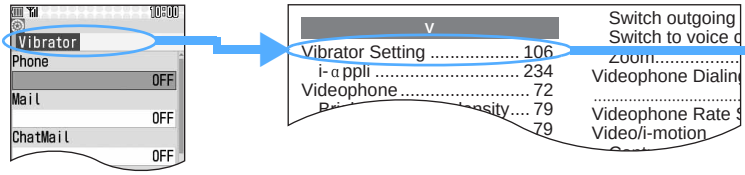
Actual key	Description in this manual
1 .%	1

How to use and refer to this manual

Shown below is an example when you search for the page where "Vibrator Setting" is described.

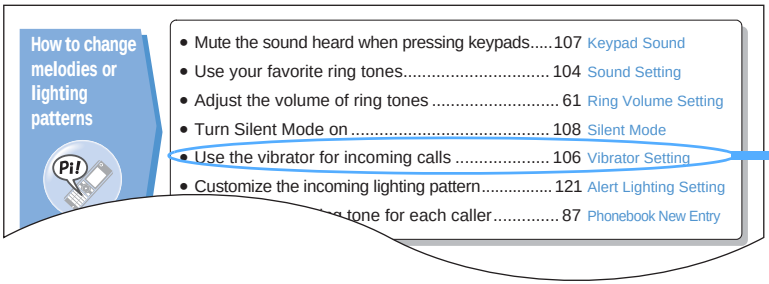
Searching on INDEX

Use INDEX if you have already known a function or service name.



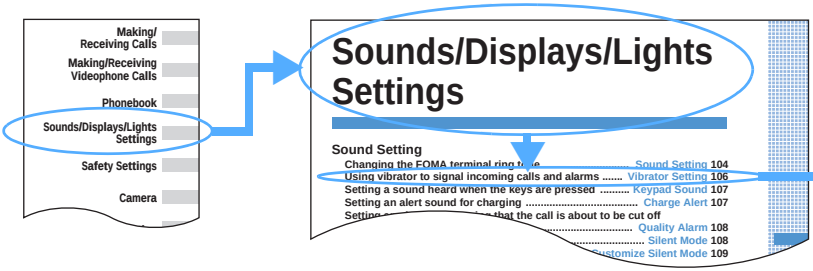
Using Quick Search

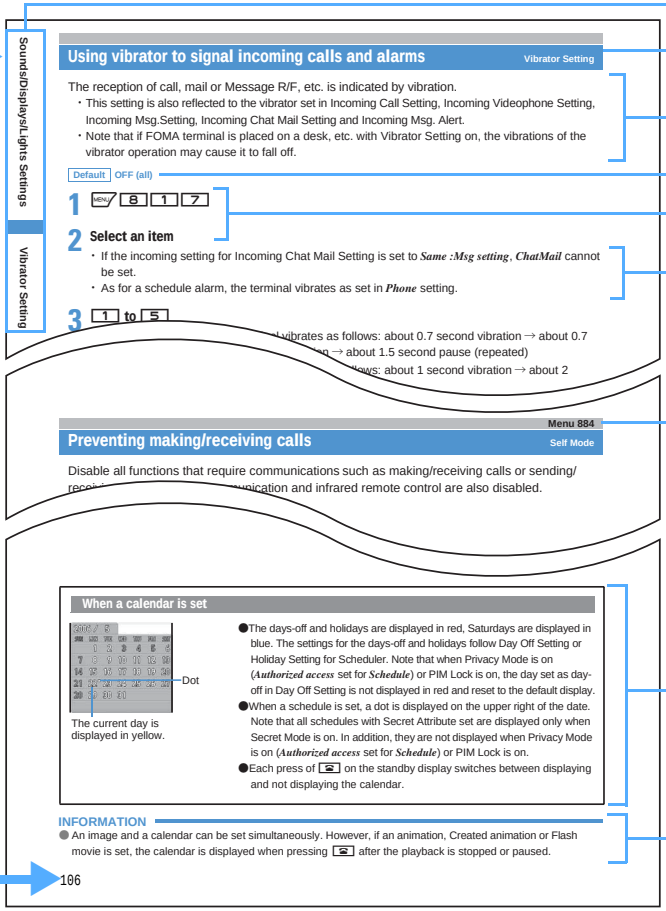
You can easily search for frequently-used or useful functions.



Using Front Cover Indexes

You can find a target page by proceeding from the front cover to the cover of a chapter (the first page of the chapter) and the page where a function is described.





Index

Title & function name: Function names are listed on INDEX.

Functional overview and notes for operation

Default setting

Operation procedure

Supplement to the operation

Shortcut operation ☛P32

Column: Useful information

INFORMATION:
In this manual, information items are categorized as follows:
- ● : Alternative operation procedures
- ● : General notes
- ● : Detailed description of the function

- The page shown above is an example. It may be different from the actual page.
- The displays or illustrations provided in this manual are for information purposes only and may be different from the actual products.
- The screen display designs have been initialized according to the color of FOMA terminal from the combinations preset in FOMA terminal (Style Theme). ☛P124
  In this manual, the procedure is explained mainly in case that Style Theme is set to *DotWall*.
- Some screens do not support the bilingual function and items or keys may be displayed in Japanese. In this manual, these Japanese words are written by both in Japanese and English only for the first time in a chapter or a section.

Quick Search

Use this Quick Search to look for the frequently-used or convenient functions directly.

Useful functions for phone calls

- Notify/not notify your phone number..... 46 Caller ID Notification
- Talk facing the phone screen ..... 73 Speakerphone function
- Adjust the volume of other party's voice..... 61 Volume Setting
- Put the current call on hold..... 48 On-hold
- Switch to videophone call during voice call ..... 51 Switch to videophone

When unable to answer an incoming call

- Record caller's messages ..... 67 Answer Machine
- Use Voice Mail Service..... 300 Voice Mail
- Put the incoming call on hold..... 64 Response and Hold

How to change melodies or lighting patterns

- Mute the sound heard when pressing keypads.....107 Keypad Sound
- Use your favorite ring tones..... 104 Sound Setting
- Adjust the volume of ring tones ..... 61 Ring Volume Setting
- Turn Silent Mode on ..... 108 Silent Mode
- Use the vibrator for incoming calls ..... 106 Vibrator Setting
- Customize the incoming lighting pattern..... 121 Alert Lighting Setting
- Use a personal ring tone for each caller..... 87 Phonebook New Entry

How to change the screen display

- Customize the standby display (wallpaper)..... 109 Standby Display Setting
- Show a calendar on the standby display ..... 113 Standby calendar
- Adjust the date and time..... 45 Date and Time Setting
- Change the size of characters..... 122 Font Size
- Learn the meaning of icons on the screen ..... 27 Reading display

Advanced functions for mail

- Send your original Deco-mail ..... 192 Deco-mail
- Send images with mail..... 196 Attachment
- Sort and save mail automatically..... 214 Sort Criteria

Advanced functions for camera

- Change the size of image to shoot..... 151 Image size
- Change the shutter sound ..... 151 Shutter sound
- Display the shot images ..... 246 My Picture

Settings for your phone safety

- Keep your phonebook data secret..... 101 Secret Attribute
- Reject calls without caller ID..... 139 Anonymous Caller
- Reject callers not registered in the phonebook ..... 141 Reject non-Reg. Caller
- Lock your phone when you don't carry it..... 131 Remote Lock
- Disable the key operation..... 136 Key Lock

Other useful functions

- Call up function menus quickly..... 32 Shortcut operations
- Use your phone as a calculator..... 293 Calculator
- Read a QR code or barcode..... 157 Bar Code Reader
- Send/receive data via infrared communication..... 266 Infrared communication
- Use your phone as an alarm clock..... 278 Alarm Clock
- Update software ..... 352 Software Update
- Update the security..... 356 Virus Scan Function

Contents

Before using your FOMA terminal ..... Inside front cover
Using a FOMA terminal for the first time..... Inside front cover
How to use and refer to this manual 1
Quick Search 4
Features of FOMA D702i 8
Making full use of D702i 10
SAFETY PRECAUTIONS (Always follow these directions) 12
Handling instructions 19
About intellectual property rights 22
Basic package and optional accessories 24

Before Using D702i 25

Names and functions of parts Reading the display Menu selection
Using the UIM (FOMA card) Attaching/removing the battery pack
Charging Battery Level Power ON/OFF Select Language Date and Time Setting
Caller ID Notification Own Number etc.

Making/Receiving Calls 47

Making calls Redial 186/184 Call WORLD CALL Receiving calls Any Key Answer
Received Calls Volume Setting Ring Volume Setting Response and Hold
Public mode (Driving mode/power off) Answer Machine etc.

Making/Receiving Videophone Calls 71

Making videophone calls Receiving videophone calls Using Chara-den
Setting images to send Customizing display during videophone call
Videophone Settings etc.

Phonebook 85

Phonebook New Entry Group Setting Phonebook Search Edit Phonebook
Delete Phonebook Secret Attribute Quick Dial etc.

Sounds/Displays/Lights Settings 103

Sound Setting Vibrator Setting Silent Mode Standby Display Setting
Mail/Call Image Setting Alert Lighting Setting Clock Display Format
Style Theme etc.

Safety Settings 125

Security code Change Security Code PIN code All Lock Remote Lock
Self Mode PIM Lock Keypad Dial Lock Privacy Mode Setting Key Lock
Secret Mode etc.

Camera 143

Still Camera Movie Camera Setting for shooting Bar Code Reader etc.

i-mode/i-motion 161

What's i-mode? Site display Change i-mode Password Internet Connection
Bookmark Screen Memo Save Image i-melody i-mode Setting Message R/F
Certificate i-motion Downloading i-motion i-motion Setting etc.

Mail 185

Composing and sending i-mode Mail Deco-mail Attachment Saving i-mode Mail Receiving i-mode Mail Check i-mode Message Display/Save Image i-motion Mail Play/Save Melody Mail Setting Chat Mail Composing and sending SMS etc.

i-αppli 229

Downloading Starting i-αppli i-αppli To i-αppli Standby Display etc.

i-channel 241

i-channel Channel List Ticker Setting

Displaying/Editing/Managing Data 245

Displaying/Editing images Playing/Editing video/i-motion Chara-den Playing melodies Managing data Infrared communication Sound Recorder etc.

Other Convenient Functions 275

Multiaccess Multitask Auto Power ON/OFF Alarm Clock Scheduler Custom Menu Own Number Call Duration/Call Cost Reset Call Cost Call Cost Limit Calculator Notepad Earphone/Microphone Set with Switch Quick Start-up Reset Delete All Data etc.

Network Services 299

Voice Mail Call Waiting Call Forwarding Nuisance Call Blocking Caller ID Request Dual Network English Guidance Service Dialing Number Arrival call act Remote Control Multi Number etc.

Data Communication 307

Data communication Flow of setup AT command

Character Entry 311

Entering characters 5-touch Input Method Save Phrase Copy Character KUTEN Code Input Save Word Slot Input Method Input Method Setting

Appendix/Data Interchange/Troubleshooting 321

Menu list Data set by default List of dial keys and character assignments Troubleshooting Error Message Warranty and After-Sales Service Software Update Virus Scan Function etc.

INDEX/Quick Reference Manual 359

INDEX Quick Reference Manual

Features of FOMA D702i

FOMA is the name of a set of services provided by DoCoMo based on W-CDMA, which is recognized as one of the systems compliant to the global standard for third generation mobile communications (IMT-2000).

It's amazing because it's i-mode!

i-mode is an online service used with i-mode terminals. This service supports connection to i-mode Sites (Programs) or i-mode compatible Internet websites that provide a variety of useful information and allows you to exchange i-mode Mail.

i-motion

Video/sound can be downloaded from i-mode or Internet web sites to enjoy them. i-motion obtained can be set as a ring tone or incoming image (Movie ringtone (Chaku-motion)). ☛P183

i-motion Mail

Video taken with the built-in camera or i-motion downloaded from sites can be attached to i-mode Mail to send. ☛P196

Main functions of FOMA D702i

i-channel

This allows you to receive graphical information about news and weather conditions. You can get information on a regular basis and the latest information is run on the standby display as tickers. Also, the information can be displayed in the channel list by pressing the i-channel compatible key (dメニュー/クリア). Furthermore, you can get rich, detailed information by selecting your desired channel in the channel list. ☛P242
In addition, free trial service is available over the fixed period of time for customers who have not applied to i-channel service.

- i-channel is a pay service and requires a subscription.

i-αppli/i-αppli DX

Downloading a variety of i-αppli from sites allows you to make use of them, including setting them as the standby display.
i-αppli DX provides better uses in conjunction with i-mode terminal information such as the phonebook and mail. ☛P230

Videophone

Allows you to see and talk with the partner in the distance and show the surrounding scenery to the other party by switching to the out-camera. This function also supports Chara-den which displays a character instead of your self image. In addition, you can switch to a videophone call while making a usual voice call without disconnecting the call. At the time of purchase, you can begin to talk immediately because the partner's voice is set to be heard through the speaker. ☛P72

Deco-mail

Allows you to compose and send your original messages. Enjoy expressive decorated mail by changing the character color and size or background color, and by pasting images such as Deco-mail pictures or still images shot with the built-in camera in the text. Using templates, you can also create Deco-mail in the same style by saving Deco-mail you have received or downloaded form sites. ☛P192

Safety settings

Secret Mode

The phonebook data and the schedule data that have set a secret attribute cannot be displayed except when Secret Mode is on. ☛P137

Key Lock Timer

You can set FOMA terminal to activate Key Lock automatically when no operation is performed for a certain period of time. It prevents inadvertent use of keys. ☛P137

Privacy Mode

By setting Privacy Mode, access to the phonebook, mail messages, images, schedules, received calls, redials, etc. is allowed only by entering the terminal security code. You can also set Privacy Mode to activate automatically when you perform no operation on FOMA terminal for a certain period of time. ☛P134

Wide array of network services

- Voice Mail Service (charged)*1 ☛P300
- Call Forwarding Service (free of charge)*1 ☛P302
- SMS (Short Message) (free of charge) ☛P223
- Call Waiting Service (charged)*1 ☛P301
- Dual Network Service (charged)*1 ☛P303

*1 Separate application is required.

Useful functions

Illumination

The keys light up blue in various patterns when there is an incoming call etc. ☛P121

High-quality melody playback

FOMA terminal also supports ring tones such as PCM generated 64-note harmonic, voice and sound effects (ADPCM sounds), etc.

Built-in camera

- FOMA terminal contains an out-camera and in-camera, which allow you to take images while viewing the large display. You can shoot a still image of up to 1.3 M pixels. In addition to a maximum 4x zoom, various modes are available for shooting including close-up and framed shooting. ☛P144
  Out-camera : Effective pixels: 1.31 M (Max. record pixels: 1.31 M)
  In-camera : Effective pixels: 0.10 M (Max. record pixels: 0.10 M)
- Allows you to record or play video with smooth motion and high quality. ☛P149, P252

Multiaccess function

Voice call and packet communication can be used simultaneously. This allows you to talk during i-mode connection or to send/receive mail while talking. ☛P276

Simple menu

In addition to the normal menu, you can use another menu to display frequently-used functions such as でんわ (phone), メール (mail), カメラ (camera) and ｉモード (i-mode) in large size of characters. Characters in the phonebook or mails are displayed larger in this menu. ☛P30

High-definition large display

The 2.0-inch large TFT LCD (240 x 320 dots) is provided for the display. It clearly displays fine images and characters.

Automatic time correction

The time in FOMA terminal is automatically corrected by the information from DoCoMo network. Also you can set the time on your phone ahead or back, if you want. ☛P45

Bar Code Reader

JAN codes or QR codes can be scanned with the built-in camera. Using scan results, you can perform a variety of operations such as registering phonebook entries, connecting to sites and sending mail. ☛P157

Infrared communication/infrared remote control

Exchange data between two FOMA terminals using infrared communication. Also, you can operate devices that support TV infrared remote control from your FOMA terminal. ☛P266, P270

Multitask function

Allows you to execute several functions at the same time and perform operations by switching the screen. For example, you can read mail or register phonebook entries while making a call. ☛P277

Animation menu

The animation menu that uses Flash movie (Flash™ menu) is provided. ☛P30

More usable mail functions

- When you move from outside the service area to inside the service area, unsent mail set to auto-send is sent automatically. ☛P199
- If the text of reply mail is registered beforehand, you can reply mail easily (Quick Reply). ☛P218
- You can search mail from the phonebook or the calendar easily. ☛P92, P285
- The characters can be converted efficiently with ATOK+APOT (AI presumption conversion) provided.

Making full use of D702i

A variety of functions of D702i visual communications are explained here.

Expressing feelings by Chara-den

When talking by videophone, a character can be displayed on the other party's screen instead of your self image. If the action (movement or expression) is put by the key operation, your feeling can also be expressed. ☛P77, P258

Your screen

©BVIG

Press the key to indicate actions.

The other party's screen

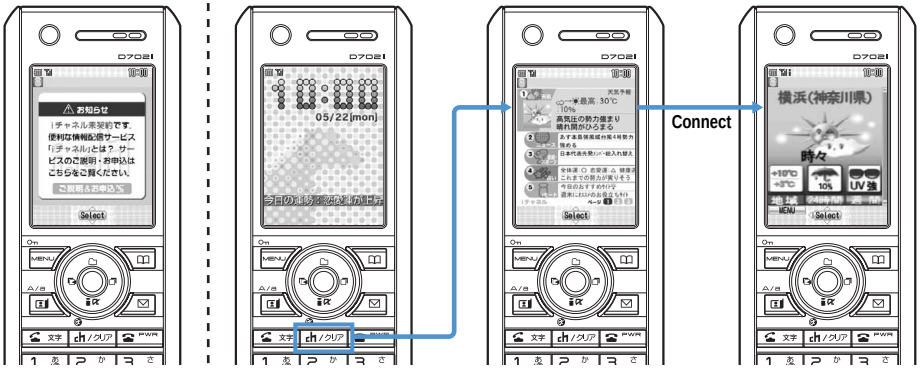
©BVIG

The character moves.

i-channel

You can receive a variety of information on a regular basis without additional operations.
In addition, press the i-channel compatible key (ch/クリア) to display the channel list so that you can get more richly detailed information. ☛P242

Not subscribed | **After subscription**

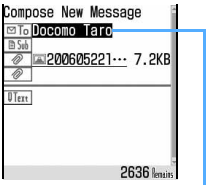


One-shot Message to send images

You can shoot an image with the camera during a voice call and mail it immediately to the other party. ☛P156

While talking

Shoot an image while talking



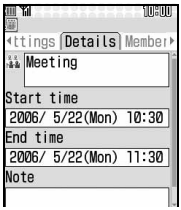
Mail address stored in the phonebook is set and you can easily compose and send mail

Customizing the screen

- You can display new arrived information such as unread mail and missed call, calendar or schedule on the standby display and check the contents by simple operations (Custom standby display). In addition, the clock design on the standby display can be changed. ☛P113, P123
- By Style Theme, the standby display, menu design or color scheme suitable for the color of FOMA terminal can be set in total. ☛P124

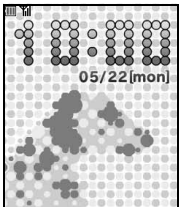
Custom standby display

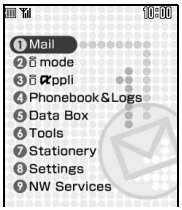
Press ● to select.



You can check the contents.

Example of Style Theme (*DotWall*)





G-GUIDE TV Remote Controller

G-GUIDE TV Remote Controller is a free i-αppli service that conveniently combines the TV program information and TV remote controller function. You can get the time schedule and information of desired TV program at anytime from anywhere. Titles, information, start/end time and G-code® for the TV programs depending on the TV stations in your area are available with this function. You can notify your friends of titles and broadcasting schedules for the TV programs that you like via mail by using the recommendation mail function.
Also, you can remotely control your TV with G-GUIDE TV Remote Controller (some terminals are not compatible with this function). ☛P271

The screen shown above is for information purpose only and may differ from the actual screen. The actual screen displays the channels in your area.

Deco-mail

You can decorate your mail by changing the character color or pasting images or pictures. Preinstalled Deco-mail picture allows you to set the image easily. ☛P192
Also, you can create Deco-mail easily by using Deco-mail template. ☛P198

Example of Deco-mail picture

Deco-mail picture

Examples of Deco-mail template

SAFETY PRECAUTIONS (Always follow these directions)

- Read the following SAFETY PRECAUTIONS to ensure that the phone is used correctly. Also, store this manual in a convenient location for future reference.
- It is essential that these precautions be observed to prevent injury to the user and third parties as well as damage to property.
- **The following symbols are used to indicate the degree of danger or damage that may result from failing to follow the specified precautions.**

DANGER	Indicates an imminently hazardous situation, which, if not avoided, will result in death or serious injury.
WARNING	Indicates a potentially hazardous situation, which, if not avoided, could result in death or serious injury.
CAUTION	Indicates a potentially hazardous situation, which, if not avoided, may result in injury or property damage.

- **The following symbols are used to highlight instructions that are very important and that must be strictly followed.**

This indicates the action is prohibited.

This indicates disassembly is prohibited.

This indicates the part must not be exposed to water.

This indicates that handling with wet hands is prohibited.

This indicates an action that must be performed in accordance with the directions.

This indicates you must remove the plug from the power outlet.

- **SAFETY PRECAUTIONS is separated into six categories.**

Handling the FOMA terminal, battery pack, adapter (and charger) and the UIM (general information) ... P13
Handling the FOMA terminal ... P14
Handling the battery pack ... P15
Handling optional devices (AC adapter/DC adapter/desktop holder/in-car holder) ... P17
Handling the UIM (FOMA card) ... P18
Handling the FOMA terminal in the vicinity of medical devices ... P18

⚠ DANGER

Use only DoCoMo-certified battery packs, adapters (and chargers) with the FOMA terminal.
Use of non-specified items could cause the FOMA terminal, battery pack or other devices to leak, overheat, rupture, catch fire or malfunction.

Battery pack: D07	Desktop holder: D09	Rear cover: D10
FOMA AC adapter: 01	FOMA DC adapter: 01	In-car holder: 01

・For additional items related to the compatible products, contact the nearest DoCoMo Shop.

Do not disassemble or remodel the components. Also, do not solder them.
Attempting to do so will lead to an accident, such as a fire, injury, or electrical shock and damage the equipment. Doing so may also cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, rupture, or ignite.

Do not use or leave the components in a place near fire or heaters. Also avoid a high-temperature place exposed to direct sunlight or a car under the scorching sun.
Otherwise, your equipment will get deformed or troubled. The battery pack may leak, overheat, rupture, or ignite. Other possible problems include a reduction in performance and life. Sometimes, the casing will partly get heated, resulting in an extremely high temperature to get you burnt.

Do not expose the components to water.
The components may overheat, cause electric shock, fire or damage if exposed to water, pet urine or other liquids. Do not use the equipment in locations where it could get wet.

⚠ WARNING

Do not use in environments exposed to combustible or explosive materials, such as a gas station.
Using the equipment in locations exposed to flammable gases or liquids such as propane or gasoline could cause fire or explosion.

Do not place the battery pack, FOMA terminal, adapter (and charger) or UIM in the microwave oven, high-pressure cooker or other cooking appliances.
Doing so could cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, rupture or ignite, and could damage the circuitry of the FOMA terminal and adapter (and charger), causing overheat, smoke or fire.

Do not expose the components to strong shocks by dropping or throwing them.
Doing so could cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, rupture or ignite, and damage the equipment, resulting in fire.

Do not let the recharging terminal and external device terminal touch any conductive material, such as a piece of metal or lead. Also do not put any conductive material into the recharging terminal and external device terminal.
The battery can short-circuit, causing fire and damage.

If there is anything wrong (such as strange odor, heat generation, color change, deformation, or the like) with the components while you are using or charging them or when they are being stored, you should take the following steps immediately.
1. **Remove the power plug from the outlet.**
2. **Turn off your FOMA terminal.**
3. **Remove the battery pack from your FOMA terminal.**

Continuing to use the equipment without taking these steps will cause it to overheat, rupture, or ignite or cause its battery pack to leak.

CAUTION

When a child uses the FOMA terminal, first be sure an experienced adult teaches proper usage methods and techniques. Observe the child to determine that they are using the FOMA terminal correctly.
Failure to do so could result in injury.

Keep out of the reach of small children.
The components can be accidentally swallowed, resulting in injury.

Do not place the components on an unstable or tilted surface.
Doing so could cause the equipment to slide off, possibly causing personal injury or damaging the equipment.

Do not store in locations subject to high temperature and humidity or excessive dust.
Doing so could damage the equipment.

The temperature of the FOMA terminal, battery pack or adapter (and charger) may become high during charging the battery, recording a video, playing it, repeating of making videophone calls, performing i-mode or i-αppli, or using it continuously for a long time.
If you touch the part with a high temperature directly for a long time, redness, itchiness, rash, etc. may arise in your skin depending on your constitution or condition.
Especially note that if you use it continuously for a long time while FOMA terminal is connected to an adapter (and charger).

Handling the FOMA terminal

WARNING

Turn off the FOMA terminal inside an aircraft, hospital or other location where use of mobile phones is prohibited.
The FOMA terminal may interfere with the correct functioning of electronic equipment. If the automatic power on function is used, cancel the setting and turn the power off. Observe any regulations posted in medical facilities.
If you have done prohibition acts such as using the FOMA terminal inside an aircraft, you may be punished as stipulated by law.

Turn off the FOMA terminal in the vicinity of electronic equipment that relies on high-precision control or faint signals.
- The FOMA terminal may interfere with the correct functioning of such electronic equipment.
  Examples: hearing aids, implanted cardiac pacemakers, implanted defibrillators, other medical devices, fire alarms, automatic doors and other automatically controlled equipment.
  Users of such medical equipments should check with the electronic equipment or device manufacturer with respect to the effect of electromagnetic interference.

Do not place the FOMA terminal in a breast or inner pocket if you are carrying or using electronic medical equipment.
The FOMA terminal could cause any medical equipment in its vicinity to malfunction.

People with weak hearts should take care with respect to setting the incoming vibrator and ring volume.
The FOMA terminal may interfere hearts.

Do not aim the infrared port at eyes and attempt to transmit.
Eyes could be affected. Aiming at other infrared devices and transmitting could cause other devices to malfunction.

When you talk under handsfree settings (with the speakerphone function), be sure to keep a distance between FOMA terminal and your ear.
Failure to do so could cause the hearing loss.

Do not place your FOMA terminal in an area over an air bag or in an air bag deployment area such as on a dashboard in a vehicle.
If the air bag inflates, the FOMA terminal may hit you and injury and damage to itself could result.

Do not use the FOMA terminal while driving.
From November 1, 2004, using mobile phones while driving is set as the object of penal regulations. Even if you use the handsfree device, park the car in a safe place before using the phone. Use Public mode or Voice Mail Service while driving.

If you hear thunder while using the FOMA terminal outdoors, immediately turn the power off and move to a safe location.
Use of the phone in such a situation could expose you to lightning strikes or electric shock.

⚠ CAUTION

Rarely, some FOMA terminal users may develop itching, skin irritation or eczema. If such a condition occurs, stop using the FOMA terminal immediately and seek medical attention.
Metal is used in the following components:

Part	Material
Rim of Easy Selector Plus	Chromium plating

Do not swing the FOMA terminal around by the strap.
Doing so could cause injury to yourself or a third party or damage the phone.

Use in certain makes of cars may affect onboard electronic equipment.
Continued use under such conditions could cause unsafe driving. Do not use the FOMA terminal in such a case.

Do not allow water or other liquids, pieces of metal or other foreign material to enter into the UIM slot of the FOMA terminal.
Doing so could cause fire, electric shock, or damage to the FOMA terminal.

Do not bring magnetic cards near the FOMA terminal.
Magnetic data stored on bank cards, credit cards, telephone cards, and floppy disks may be corrupted or lost.

Handling the battery pack

■ Check the battery type indicated on the battery pack label.

Indication	Battery type
Li-ion	Lithium ion battery

DANGER

If electrolyte from the battery pack gets in your eyes, do not rub; instead, rinse immediately with copious amounts of clean water and seek medical attention.
Doing so could cause the loss of vision.

Do not attach metallic materials such as wire to the port. Do not carry or store the battery pack together with a necklace or other metallic items.
Doing so could cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, rupture or catch fire.

Do not pierce the battery pack with nails, hammer on it or step on it.
Doing so could cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, rupture or catch fire.

Do not throw the battery pack into a fire.
Doing so could cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, rupture or catch fire.

When you attach the battery pack to the FOMA terminal, never attempt to forcefully insert, because it should slide in easily and fit correctly. Check the direction of the battery pack and try again.
Doing so could cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, rupture or catch fire.

WARNING

Should any electrolyte from the battery pack come into contact with your skin or clothing, immediately stop using the battery and rinse with clean water.
Failure to do so could cause skin injuries.

Stop charging if it is not possible to fully charge the battery pack within the specified time.
Failure to do so could cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, rupture or catch fire.

If the battery pack leaks or emits strange odors, immediately stop using it, and always keep away from sources of fire.
Failure to do so could cause the battery liquid to catch fire, and the battery pack itself to rupture.

CAUTION

Do not dispose of the battery pack with other regular household waste.
Failure to properly dispose of the battery pack in an environmentally sensitive manner could cause the battery pack to catch fire and damage the environment. Use adhesive tape to cover the terminal of battery pack when it is no longer used and bring it to a DoCoMo Shop after the insulation. Alternatively, you can also dispose of the battery pack in accordance with local regulations.

WARNING

Use care not to short circuit the recharging terminal when the adapter (and charger) is connected to a wall outlet or cigarette lighter socket. Do not touch the recharging terminal with your hands or fingers, or some other part of the body.
Doing so could cause fire, equipment failure, electric shock or other injury.

Do not use the AC adapter and desktop holder in bathrooms or other potentially high humidity locations.
Doing so could cause electric shock.

Never use the adapter (and charger) when it has a damaged power cord.
Failure to do so could result in electric shock, overheat or fire.

If the adapter (and charger) or holder is exposed to water or other liquid, immediately disconnect the power plug from the wall outlet or cigarette lighter socket.
Failure to do so could result in electric shock, smoke or fire.

Be sure the power plug is free of dust.
Failure to do so could cause the equipment to catch fire.

During charging, place the adapter (and charger) and desktop holder in a stable location. Do not cover or wrap the adapter (and charger) and desktop holder with a cloth or blanket, etc.
Using the equipment under such conditions could cause the FOMA terminal to be detached from the holder, or cause a heat buildup that leads to fire or equipment failure.

Do not touch the FOMA terminal and AC/DC adapter when hearing thunder.
Contact with the FOMA terminal and adapter could cause you lightning strikes or electric shock.

Do not touch the adapter (and charger) cord or wall outlet with wet hands.
Doing so could cause electric shock.

When the adapter (and charger) is not to be used for a prolonged period, disconnect the power plug from the wall outlet.
Failure to do so could result in electric shock, fire, or equipment failure.

When connected to a wall outlet, make sure that the AC adapter does not come into contact with metallic straps or other metal objects and the plug is properly seated.
Failure to do so could result in electric shock, short circuit, or fire.

Use the designated power source and correct voltage.
Use of incorrect voltage could cause fire or equipment failure. When using your FOMA terminal overseas, use the FOMA domestic/overseas AC adapter 01.

AC adapter: 100 V AC
FOMA domestic/overseas AC adapter: 100 V to 240 V AC
(Always connect to the outlet for internal household use.)
DC adapter: 12 V DC, 24 V DC (specific for negative ground) vehicle)

Use only the specified fuse for the DC adapter.
Use of the incorrect fuse could cause fire or equipment failure. Check the instruction manual for details of the correct fuse to use.

The DC adapter is for use with negative ground cars. Do not use it with positive ground cars.
Doing so could result in fire.

CAUTION

Disconnect the power plug before beginning any maintenance.
Failure to do so could cause electric shock.

Do not place heavy objects on the adapter (and charger) cord or power cord.
Doing so could cause electric shock or fire.

Do not yank on the adapter (and charger) cord or power cord when disconnecting the adapter (and charger) from the wall outlet.
Doing so could damage the cord, resulting in electric shock or fire.

Handling the UIM (FOMA card)

CAUTION

Take care when removing the UIM (the IC).
Failure to do so could cause injury to hand and fingers.

Handling the FOMA terminal in the vicinity of medical devices

The information given below conforms to the guidelines set forth by the Electromagnetic Compatibility Conference regarding the protection of electronic medical equipment from radio waves emitted by mobile phone units.

WARNING

Turn off the FOMA terminal on packed trains or in crowded places as someone with an implanted cardiac pacemaker or implanted defibrillator may be nearby.
The electromagnetic waves emitted by your phone could affect the function of an implanted cardiac pacemaker or implanted defibrillator.

When inside a medical institution, always remember the following guidelines:

- Never take the FOMA terminal inside an operating room, intensive care unit (ICU) or coronary care unit (CCU).
- Always turn off the FOMA terminal in hospital wards.
- Even in the lobby and other areas, always turn off the FOMA terminal when electronic medical equipment is nearby.
- Follow the directives of the medical institution. There may be specific regulations as to items that are prohibited or use of which is restricted.
- If you are using the automatic power on function, cancel the setting and turn off the power.

If you have an implanted cardiac pacemaker or implanted defibrillator, keep your FOMA terminal at least 22 cm away from it.
The electromagnetic waves emitted by your phone could affect the function of an implanted cardiac pacemaker or implanted defibrillator.

If you are using electronic medical equipment other than implanted cardiac pacemakers or implanted defibrillators at your home or outside the confines of a medical institution, be sure to check with the manufacturer about possible adverse effects caused by electromagnetic interference.
The electromagnetic waves emitted by your phone could affect the function of electronic medical equipment.

Handling instructions

General

●Do not get the components wet.

The FOMA terminal, battery pack and adapter (and charger) are not waterproof. Avoid using the components in a bathroom or other high humidity areas or locations exposed to rain. If you carry the components, sweat could cause internal corrosion that leads to equipment failure. As a result of investigation, if component failure is found to be water-related, repair is not covered by the warranty and may not be able to be performed.
In such a case, should it be found to be possible to repair the unit, you will be billed for all repairs.

●Clean the components with a soft, dry cloth.

- Clean the components using a soft, dry cloth (such as a lens cloth).
- Using alcohol, thinner, benzene or detergents could cause the printed text to fade or disappear, or the equipment to become discolored.

●Occasionally clean the terminals with a dry cotton swab.

Dirty terminals could cause intermittent contact that could interrupt the flow of power to the unit. Such a situation also causes insufficient charging. Use a dry cloth or cotton swab to clean the terminal.

●Do not place the components near an air conditioner vent.

Sudden changes in temperature could cause condensation, leading to corrosion inside the components and equipment failure.

●Do not place the FOMA terminal in locations where it could be exposed to excessive pressure.

Do not place it in a bag together with many other things or in your pocket when you sit down as this could exert pressure on the LCD or damage the internal boards, resulting in equipment failure. Damage arising from such causes is not covered by the warranty.

●Carefully read the instruction manuals supplied with the battery and adapter (and charger) before use.

FOMA terminal

●Avoid extremely high or low temperatures.

Use in an environment with a temperature of 5 to 35 ℃ and relative humidity of 45 to 85 %.

●If the FOMA terminal is used near a radio, television or general subscriber phone, it could affect such equipment. Use the phone as far away from such equipment as possible.

●With regard to data stored in the FOMA terminal, keep it separately in a memo, etc. so as not to permanently lose important data.

NTT DoCoMo cannot be held responsible in any way for the loss of stored data.

●Do not put the FOMA terminal in your back pocket and sit on it. Avoid putting the phone in the bottom of a bag, etc. where it is subject to excessive pressure.

Damage may result.

●It is normal for the FOMA terminal to become warm during using or recharging. You can continue to use it while warm.

●Do not aim the camera directly at the sun and leave it.

Elements may be discolored or baked.

Battery pack

●The battery pack will gradually wear out.

Battery life also depends on how you use the battery pack; you know it is time to replace it when the usage time is very short even though you fully charge it. The specified battery pack can be purchased separately.

●Recharge the battery pack in locations where the ambient temperature is between 5 ℃ and 35 ℃.

●When using for the first time or after a long period of non-use, be sure to fully charge the battery pack before use.

●The time of use provided by the battery pack depends on the ambient conditions and the condition of the battery pack itself.

●Do not expose to the direct sunlight and high temperature. Please keep your battery in an airy and cool place.

When you do not use your phone for a long time, remove the battery pack from the FOMA terminal with the battery used up, put into the packing plastic bag or other container, and keep it.

Adapter (and charger)

●Recharge the battery pack in a location where the ambient temperature is between 5 ℃ and 35 ℃.

●Do not recharge in the following locations:

- Locations that are subject to high humidity, dust or excessive vibration
- Near general subscriber phones, TVs or radios

●It is normal for the adapter (and charger) to become warm during recharging. You can continue charging with a warm adapter.

●When the battery pack is recharged using the DC adapter, always keep the car engine running.

Failure to do so could cause the car battery to run down more quickly than normal.

●When an outlet with falling prevention mechanism is used, check the instruction manual for the outlet before use.

●Do not expose to the strong shock and deform the recharging terminal.

Giving the strong shock on an adapter can cause damage.

UIM (FOMA card)

●Do not use excessive force to remove the UIM.

●Do not place an excessive load on the UIM when inserting it into the terminal.

●The UIM becomes warm during use. This is normal and not a cause for concern.

●Note that any card failures resulting from inserting the UIM in an IC card reader/writer not designated by NTT DoCoMo are the responsibility of the customer.

●Make sure that the ICs are kept clean.

●Use a clean dry cloth for cleaning the UIM.

●It is recommended that users maintain data stored on the UIM in some other form.

If the data should be erased, NTT DoCoMo assumes no responsibility for the loss of any data.

●The UIMs that are no longer used should be returned to a DoCoMo Shop for environmental protection.

●Avoid extremely high or low temperature.

●Take care not to damage, touch, or short-circuit the ICs to prevent them from losing their data or from malfunctioning.

●Take care not to drop the UIM or give shock to the UIM to prevent it from malfunctioning.

●Do not bend the UIM and place heavy stuff on it to avoid a failure.

Camera

If you should use the FOMA terminal to make a public nuisance, you might be punished under the laws and bylaws such as Japan's nuisance prevention ordinance.

Please be considerate of the privacy of individuals around you when taking and sending images using camera-equipped mobile phones.

About intellectual property rights

Copyrights and portrait rights

Except in cases where reproduction and quoting for private use is sanctioned under copyright laws, the reproduction, alteration and public transmission of such content as text, images, music or software for which another party owns the copyrights, whether accomplished by using this product to photograph or record that content or by downloading it from Internet websites, is prohibited without the permission of the owner. Taking photographs or recordings of such events as performances and exhibitions may be prohibited even for purposes of private use.
In addition, if you use this product to take another person's photograph without their permission, or display such a photograph without their permission on an Internet website and make that content public to an indeterminate number of people, you may be in violation of portrait rights.

Trademarks

Company names and trade names used in this manual are the trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective companies.

- "FOMA", "mova", "i-motion", "i-mode", "i-αppli", "i-αppli search", "i-motion mail", "i-shot", "i-melody", "i-anime", "DoPa", "mopera", "mopera U", "WORLD CALL", "WORLD WING", "Short Mail", "QUICKCAST", "Chaku-motion", "Deco-mail", "V-Live", "i-area", "Chara-den", "i-αppli DX", "i-channel", "Dual Network", "FirstPass", "sigmarion", "Security Scan", "musea", "visualnet", "Public mode", " トクだねニュース便 " and "My DoCoMo", and FOMA, i-mode and i-αppli logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of NTT DoCoMo.
- " キャッチホン (Call Waiting)" is a registered trademark of Nippon Telegraph and Telephone Corporation.
- Microsoft® and Windows® are registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the US and other countries.
- Java and all Java-related trademarks are trademarks or registered trademarks of Sun Microsystems, Inc. in the US and other countries.
- Powered by JBlend™ Copyright 2002-2006 Aplix Corporation. All rights reserved. JBlend and all JBlend-based trademarks and logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of Aplix Corporation in Japan and other countries.
- "Multitask" is a registered trademark of NEC Corporation.
- NetFront and NetFront® are trademarks or registered trademarks of ACCESS CO., LTD. in Japan and other countries.
- Contains Macromedia® Flash™ Player technology by Macromedia, Inc. Copyright© 1995-2006 Macromedia, Inc. All rights reserved. Macromedia, Flash, and Macromedia Flash are trademarks or registered trademarks of Macromedia, Inc. in the US and other countries.
- McAfee and VirusScan are registered trademarks or trademarks of McAfee, Inc. and/or its affiliates in the US and/or other countries. All other registered and unregistered trademarks herein are the sole property of their respective owners. ©2006 Networks Associates Technology, Inc. All Rights Reserved.
- QR code is a registered trademark of DENSO WAVE INCORPORATED.
- Adobe and Reader are trademarks or registered trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated in the US and other countries.
- Powered By Mascot Capsule®/Micro3D Edition™ Mascot Capsule® is a registered trademark of HI CORPORATION.
- "ATOK" and "APOT"（Advanced Prediction Optimization Technology）are registered trademarks of Justsystem Corporation.
- "G-GUIDE Mobile", the G-GUIDE Mobile logo, "G-GUIDE" and the G-GUIDE logo are registered trademarks of Gemstar-TV Guide International, Inc. in the US or the affiliated company in Japan.

- QuickTime is a registered trademark of Apple Computer, Inc. in the US and other countries.
- “Privacy Mode” is a registered trademark of FUJITSU.
- symbian
  This product includes software licensed from Symbian Software Ltd.
  ‘Symbian’, ‘Symbian OS’ and other associated Symbian marks are all trademarks of Symbian Software Ltd. ©1998-2006 Symbian Software Ltd. All rights reserved.
- TOEIC is a registered trademark of Educational Testing Service (ETS).
- In addition to the above, company names and trade names used in this manual are the trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective companies.

Other rights and responsibilities

- This product is licensed based on MPEG-4 Visual Patent Portfolio License. The use of MPEG-4 Video Codec function is allowed for personal and nonprofit use only in the following cases:
  - Recording videos that conform to MPEG-4 Visual Standard (hereinafter referred to as MPEG-4 Video)
  - Playing MPEG-4 Videos recorded personally by consumers not engaged in profit activities
  - Playing MPEG-4 Videos supplied from the provider licensed from MPEG LA

  For further utilizing such as promotion, in-house use or profit-making business, please contact MPEG LA, LLC in the US.
- Licensed by QUALCOMM Incorporated under one or more of the following United States Patents and/or their counterparts in other nations:

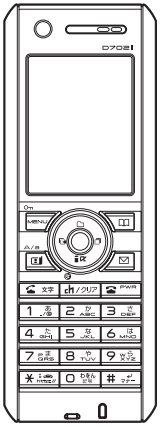
4,901,307	5,600,754	5,267,261	5,506,865	5,710,784
5,504,773	5,416,797	5,568,483	5,228,054	5,778,338
5,109,390	5,490,165	5,414,796	5,544,196	
5,535,239	5,101,501	5,659,569	5,337,338	
5,267,262	5,511,073	5,056,109	5,657,420	

- This product contains NetFront of ACCESS CO.,LTD. to provide Internet function.
  NetFront is a trademark or registered trademark of ACCESS CO.,LTD. in Japan and other countries.
  Copyright© 1996-2006 ACCESS CO., LTD.
  This product contains a module developed by the Independent JPEG Group.
- In this manual, each OS (Japanese version) is written for short as follows:
  - Windows XP is the abbreviation for Microsoft® Windows® XP Professional operating system or Microsoft® Windows® XP Home Edition operating system.
  - Windows 2000 is the abbreviation for Microsoft® Windows® 2000 Professional operating system.
  - Windows Me is the abbreviation for Microsoft® Windows® Millennium Edition operating system.
  - Windows 98 is the abbreviation for Microsoft® Windows® 98 operating system.
  - Windows 98SE is the abbreviation for Microsoft® Windows® 98 operating system SECOND EDITION.
  - Windows NT Server is the abbreviation for Microsoft® Windows NT® Server Network operating system Version 4.0.
  - It may describe like Windows XP, 2000, Me, 98 in parallel.
  - Windows 98 and Windows 98SE are described as Windows 98 in all.

Basic package and optional accessories

Basic package

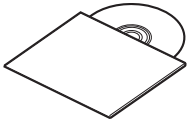
FOMA D702i
(including the written warranty and the rear cover D10)



Instruction manual
(this book)

Quick Reference Manual ☛P364

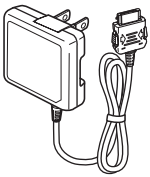
CD-ROM for FOMA D702i



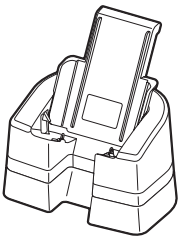
The PDF version of “Manual for Data Communication” is contained.

Optional accessories

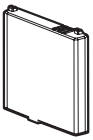
FOMA AC adapter 01
(including the written warranty and the instruction manual)



Desktop holder D09
(including the instruction manual)



Battery pack D07
(including the instruction manual)

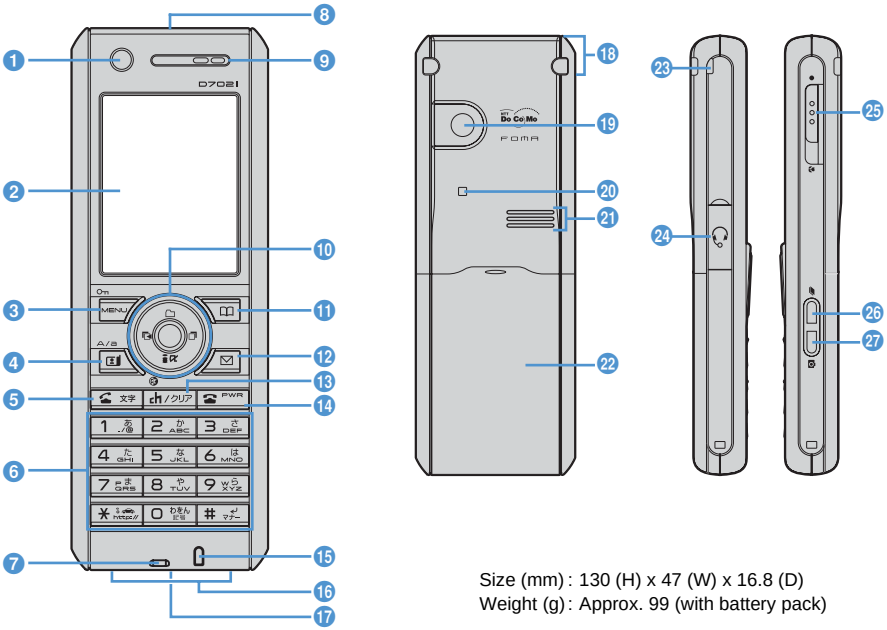


• Other optional accessories ☛P343

Before Using D702i

Names and functions of parts 26
Reading the display 27
Selecting the menu.....30
Number of saved, registered and protected items in D702i 36
Using the UIM (FOMA card) 36
Attaching/removing the battery pack 39
Charging the battery of FOMA terminal 40
Checking the remaining battery level..... Battery Level 43
Turning the power on/off ..... Power ON/OFF 43
Switching to English display..... Select Language 44
Setting the date and time..... Date and Time Setting 45
Notifying your phone number to the other party..... Caller ID Notification 46
Checking your own phone number..... Own Number 46

Names and functions of parts



Size (mm) : 130 (H) x 47 (W) x 16.8 (D)
Weight (g) : Approx. 99 (with battery pack)

1. **In-camera ☛P80, P144**
   Used to shoot yourself with Camera or Movie Camera or send your image during a videophone call.
2. **Display ☛P27**
3. **MENU/upper left soft key**
   Use this key to display menus, perform the operation shown in the upper left part of the guide row, set Key Lock, etc.
4. **Start videophone/scroll/lower left soft key**
   Use this key to make/answer videophone calls, scroll mail or site display by a page, switch between upper/lower cases when entering characters, perform the operation shown in the lower left part of the guide row, etc.
5. **Start voice call/speakerphone/character key*1**
   Use this key to make/answer voice calls, turn on/off the speakerphone function, switch input modes when entering characters, etc.
6. **Dial keys (0 to 9), *, #*1**
   Dial keys
   Used to enter phone numbers and text and to select menu items.
   *** /Public mode (Driving mode) key**
   Use this key to enter "＊", set/cancel Public mode (Driving mode), etc.
   # /Silent Mode/line-feed key
   Use this key to enter "#", set/cancel Silent Mode, start a new line when entering characters, etc.
7. **Microphone**
   Picks up your voice.
8. **Infrared data port ☛P266**
   Exchange data via infrared communication.
9. **Earpiece**
   The other party's voice comes out of here.
10. **Easy Selector Plus**
    Enter key
    Use this key to perform the selected operation, activate Focus Mode, start i-αppli set for One-key Shortcut, etc.
    Data Box/↑ key
    Use this key to display Data Box menu, activate Camera with the in-camera on, move the cursor upward, adjust volume, etc.
    i-mode/i-αppli/↓ key
    Use this key to display i-mode menu or i-αppli folder list, move the cursor downward, adjust volume, etc.
    Received Calls/← (previous) key
    Use this key to display the received call history, switch between pages, move the cursor leftward, set/cancel Privacy Mode, etc.
    Redial/→ (next) key
    Use this key to display the redial data, switch between pages, move the cursor rightward, etc.
11. **Phonebook/schedule/upper right soft key**
    Use this key to display the phonebook or schedules, perform the operation shown in the upper right part of the guide row, etc.

⑫ **Mail/scroll/lower right soft key**
Use this key to display Mail menu, compose new mail, scroll mail or site display by a page, perform the operation shown in the lower right part of the guide row, etc.

⑬ **i-channel/Clear key*1**
Use this key to display the channel list, delete characters, return to the previous screen, set/cancel Self Mode, etc. On the i-αppli standby display, press this key to start i-αppli.

⑭ **Power/End/Hold key*1**
Use this key to turn the power on/off, end calls or functions in operation, place incoming calls on hold, cancel Secret Mode or Key Lock, etc. Also, use this key to switch displaying/not displaying the custom standby display or calendar.

⑮ **Charging indicator**
Lights red during charging.

⑯ **Charging terminals**
Used when charging FOMA terminal in the desktop holder (optional).

⑰ **External connection terminals** ☛P41
Used to connect various optional accessories.

⑱ **Antenna (built-in)**
Take care not to cover the built-in antenna with your hand so that you can use FOMA terminal on better conditions.

⑲ **Out-camera** ☛P80, P144
Used to shoot people or landscape with Camera or Movie Camera or send these images during a videophone call.

⑳ **Camera indicator**
Lights when shooting with the camera.

㉑ **Speaker**
Ring tone and other sounds come out of here. When the speakerphone function is used, the other party's voice comes out.

㉒ **Rear cover**

㉓ **Strap opening**

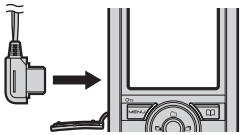
㉔ **Earphone/microphone jack**
Used to connect a flat type earphone/microphone set with switch (optional).

㉕ **Macro mode switch** ☛P153
Switches between the standard mode and the macro mode during the out-camera use.

㉖ **TASK key**
Use this key during Multiaccess or Multitask.

㉗ **Answer Machine/shutter key**
Use this key to display Answer Machine/Voice Memo menu, start Quick Record Message, activate Camera and shoot images, stop ring tone/alarm sound, etc.

Connecting to earphone/microphone set with switch

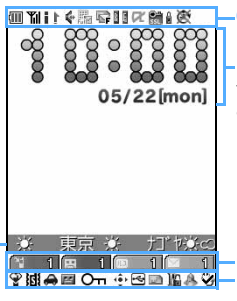


- You can plug in a flat type earphone/microphone set with switch (optional) and use it. Using the earphone jack converter adapter P001 (optional) allows you to use an existing earphone/microphone set.

*1 The keys (⑤, ⑥, ⑬ and ⑭) light or flash when a call or mail is received, shooting with the camera, etc. The lighting pattern can be set. In addition, 7, 8, 9, *, 0 and # flash for new information. ☛P121

Reading the display

The description of icons displayed at the top or the bottom of the display are shown below:



Received i-channel information

When you use the i-channel service, if ***Show ticker*** is set to ***Yes*** in Ticker Setting, the received i-channel information is displayed as ticker on the standby display. ☛P244

① : Battery level ☛P43
漢/半/半/半/全/全/全/全: Character input mode ☛P312

② : Received signal level ☛P44
圏外 : Out of service area ☛P44
self : Self Mode is set ☛P132
: In data transfer mode ☛P266
Data link software in progress ☛P344

③ : In i-mode communication (during i-mode connection) ☛P166
: In i-mode communication (during packet communication) ☛P178, P200

④ : Infrared communication in progress ☛P266
Infrared remote control function in operation ☛P270

5 : Speakerphone function in operation ☛P49
*1 : Communication via USB handsfree compatible equipment in progress ☛P56
: Total call cost exceeds the maximum limit ☛P292

6 *1 : i-mode Mail and Message R/F storage space is full in the Center*2 ☛P201, P178
/ / : i-mode Mail or Message R/F storage space is full in the Center ☛P201, P178
: Unreceived i-mode Mail and Message R/F in the Center ☛P201, P178
/ / : Unreceived i-mode Mail or Message R/F in the Center ☛P201, P178

7 *1 : Unread i-mode Mail or SMS storage space is full and SMS storage space is full on UIM ☛P201, P225
: Unread i-mode Mail or SMS storage space is full ☛P201, P225
: SMS full on UIM ☛P225
: Unread i-mode Mail and SMS exist ☛P200, P224
: Unread i-mode Mail exists ☛P200
: Unread SMS exists ☛P224

8 / (blue/red): Unread Message R exists/unread Message R storage space is full ☛P178

9 / (green/red): Unread Message F exists/unread Message F storage space is full ☛P178

10 : i-αppli running ☛P232
: i-αppli standby display on ☛P112
: Starting i-αppli from the i-αppli standby display ☛P238
: i-αppli DX running ☛P232
: i-αppli DX standby display on ☛P112
: Starting i-αppli from the i-αppli DX standby display ☛P238

11 *1 : Displaying SSL page, using i-αppli downloaded from SSL pages and in SSL communication with i-αppli ☛P167, P232
: Auto-send mail failed exists ☛P200
: Auto-send mail exists ☛P200

12 : Secret Mode is set ☛P137

13 : i-αppli Auto Start failed ☛P237

14 : Focus Mode icon ☛P35

15 : Silent Mode is set ☛P108
: Personalized silent mode is set ☛P109

16 : Ring alert volume is silent ☛P62
: Vibrator for incoming voice call is set ☛P106
: Ring alert volume is silent and vibrator for incoming voice call is set ☛P62, P106

17 : Public mode (Driving mode) is set ☛P65

18 : Answer Machine is set ☛P68
: Recorded messages full ☛P68

19 : Key Lock is set ☛P136

20 / : Effective Easy Selector Plus keys in Focus Mode ☛P35

21 : Connecting to the external devices by the FOMA USB connection cable (optional) ☛P84

22 : Reading the UIM ☛P44

23 : PIM Lock is set ☛P133
*1 : Keypad Dial Lock is set ☛P134

24 : Alarm Clock is set ☛P279
: Schedule alarm is set ☛P282
: Alarm Clock and schedule alarm are set simultaneously ☛P279, P282

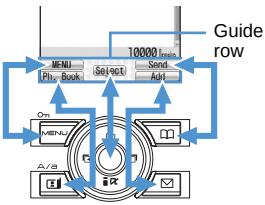
25 : Software Update reserved ☛P354
*1 : Auto-update of the latest pattern definition is failed ☛P356
: Auto-update of the latest pattern definition is succeeded ☛P356

*1 The current highest priority item is displayed. These icons are listed in the order of priority from the top.
*2 Displayed when the storage space for either i-mode Mail or Message R/F is full and also unreceived mails/messages exist.

Reading the guide row

Operations that can be executed by pressing MENU, , , and are displayed in the guide row.

Example Guide row for the mail composition screen

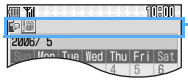


Display positions and keys correspond as shown in the figure. In this manual, the operations displayed in the guide row are explained using the corresponding keys (MENU).
The operations displayed in the guide row differ depending on the screen.

- on the guide row corresponds to of the Easy Selector Plus (it may be different depending on the function or site in use).

Reading the task bar

The icon for the function (task) in progress is displayed on the task bar (up to 9 icons). You can confirm functions being used and run. In addition, when receiving mails/messages, the reception result is scrolled.



Task bar (Example when schedule calendar is displayed during a voice call)

- : Voice call
- / : Videophone (64K/32K)
- : Videophone call through external device
- : Mail
- : Receiving i-mode Mail
- : Receiving SMS
- : Chat Mail
- : Message R/F
- : Checking for i-mode Mail/SMS
- : i-mode/i-channel
- : Bookmark/Internet Connection/Last Visited URL/Screen Memo/i-mode Shortcut
- : i-αppli
- : My Picture (***Image***)
- : i-motion
- : Melody
- : Chara-den
- : Camera
- : Movie Camera
- : Sound Recorder
- : Bar Code Reader
- : Phonebook
- : Received Calls
- : Redial
- : Answer Machine/Voice Memo
- : Own Number
- : Setting an alarm/alarm sounding
- : Scheduler
- : Schedule alarm sounding
- : Notepad
- : Calculator
- : Data exchanging with external device
- : Setting reception method for infrared communication/ saving to INBOX
- : 64K data communication
- / : Originating/communicating/ sending/receiving packet via USB
- / (dark blue/gray): Setting/holding each function
- : Software Update activated
- : Software Update notified
- : Update Definition activated/ version display
- : Setting each network service

Reading the list screen

Example ***Color scheme*** screen

The number of the currently displayed page and the total number of pages (when a list extends over multiple pages)

△ ▽ indicates that other selectable items exist above and below the highlighted item.

- Press ◎ to move the cursor.
- If you press ◎ on the last item of the page, the next page appears, and if you press ◎ on the first item of the page, the previous page appears.

◁ ▷ indicates that selectable items exist over multiple pages.

- Press ◎ to switch between pages.
  - You cannot switch between pages on the icon selection screen, etc.
- Color scheme names are named based on imagery.

INFORMATION

● Note that the following cases may occur due to the characteristics of liquid crystal display (LCD) and they are not defects in FOMA terminal.

- FOMA terminal display is manufactured by taking advantage of highly advanced technology but some dots may be always or never lit.
- When the battery pack is removed from FOMA terminal with the power turned on, residual images may remain for some time. Remove the battery pack with the power turned off.
- When a screen has been displayed for a certain time, if you change it to another screen by performing some operations, residual images of the previous screen may remain.

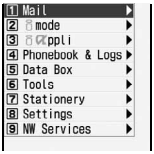
Selecting the menu

In addition to the normal menu, the simple menu which offers popular features is provided. (You can switch to the simple menu only when ***Japanese*** is set in Select Language.)
In the simple menu, menu items are displayed in large letters. Also, you can create your original menu (Custom Menu ☛P287).

Display format for the normal menu and the custom menu

Animation in the normal menu is set by default. Select from the following types (Menu Setting ☛P119).

- The following screens are examples of the normal menu displayed when Style Theme is set to ***DotWall***.



List view

Tile display

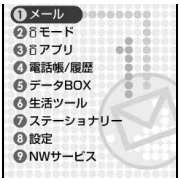
3D display

Animation*1

*1 Available only for the normal menu

Switching to the simple menu

1 MENU



The normal menu is displayed.

- When the custom menu is displayed: 📖

2 Press ✉

The simple menu is displayed.

■ **Switching to the normal menu: MENU ✉ on the standby display**

- To switch to the custom menu: MENU 📖 on the standby display

Functions available on the simple menu

Some menus cannot be accessed from the simple menu.

Menu item		Shortcut
でんわ	電話帳検索	MENU 1 1
	電話帳登録	MENU 1 2
	リダイヤル	MENU 1 3
	着信履歴	MENU 1 4
	伝言メモ一覧	MENU 1 5
	自局番号	MENU 1 6 / MENU 0
メール	受信メール	MENU 2 1
	送信メール	MENU 2 2
	未送信メール	MENU 2 3
	新規メール	MENU 2 4
	i モード問合せ	MENU 2 5
カメラ	カメラ	MENU 3 1
	マイピクチャ	MENU 3 2
	待受画面設定	MENU 3 3
i モード	iMenu	MENU 4 1

Menu item		Shortcut
i モード	Bookmark	MENU 4 2
	ラストURL	MENU 4 3
	画面メモ	MENU 4 4
	i チャネル一覧	MENU 4 5
	テロップ表示設定	MENU 4 6
i アプリ	ソフト一覧	MENU 5 1
	待受画面設定	MENU 5 2
	i アプリ設定	MENU 5 3
データBOX		MENU 6
設定／ステーショナリー	音／バイブ	MENU 7 1
	ディスプレイ	MENU 7 2
	アラーム	MENU 7 3
	電卓	MENU 7 4
	伝言メモ設定	MENU 7 5
	情報表示／リセット	MENU 7 6
	留守番電話	MENU 7 7

When the simple menu is set

- During calling or talking, you can see how to adjust the volume of other party's voice.
- Enter a phone number to see the operation to be performed subsequently.
- In standby display, enter the phonebook No. (1 to 9) to see the registered names and phone numbers. Key operations for making voice calls/videophone calls are also shown. During voice calls, you can also press MENU, select ダイヤル入力 (Dial) and enter a phonebook number to see the same information.
- The characters in the redials, received calls, and phonebook list are displayed in the size of ***Maximum*** set with Font Size. The received mail view screen uses the font size of ***Large*** specified from that screen. These font sizes cannot be changed.

INFORMATION

- You cannot switch FOMA terminal to the simple menu when ***English*** is set in Select Language. Also, when you choose the simple menu, the setting for Select Language is not available.
- Even if you selected the simple menu before turning your FOMA terminal off, the menu will change to the normal one when you insert the UIM for which English display is specified as language and then turn the power on again.

Selecting functions from the menu

Select menu items by the dial keys (Shortcut operations). Also, use the Easy Selector Plus to select menu items.

- In this manual, the operation procedure is mainly explained in shortcut operations of the normal menu.
- When any lock function is set or the UIM is not inserted, some functions are disabled. The disabled functions are indicated by or dimmed. However, if the menu display format is set to ***Animation***, a message appears when menu items for the disable functions are selected.

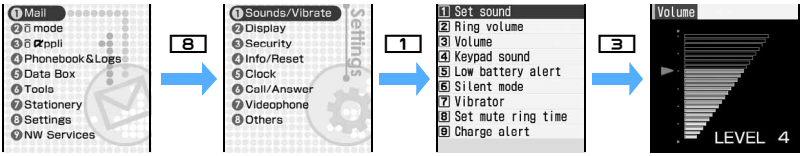
Selecting menu items with the dial keys (Shortcut operations)

Each menu item has a number (item number) and can be selected by pressing the corresponding key.

Example Executing ***Volume*** from the normal menu

1 MENU 8 1 3

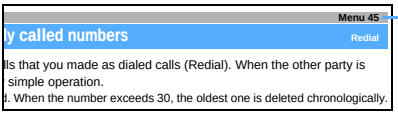
The screen for adjusting the volume is displayed.



When several shortcuts are available

When there are multiple shortcut operations, the shortcut operations other than described in the operating procedure are shown at the far right of the title in the body text.

Example For redialing



Press MENU to show the menu, then press 4 then 5 to show the redial list.

- ✉ means pressing ✉, and ▼ means pressing ●.

Selecting menu items with Easy Selector Plus

Example Executing ***Volume*** from the normal menu (***Type2*** of animation display)

- The menu selecting method in the tile display is the same as the method of the animation display (***Type1***, ***Type3***).

1 MENU

- In case of the animation display, ◇ in the guide row is not displayed.

2 ● **to highlight *Settings*** ▶ ●

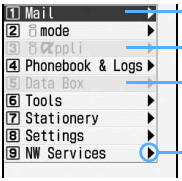
- For ***Type1*** and ***Type3*** of the animation display: ● to highlight a menu item ▶ ●

3 ● **to highlight *Sounds/Vibrate*** ▶ ●

4 ● **to highlight *Volume*** ▶ ●

The screen for adjusting the volume is displayed.

Selecting menu items (List view)



Menu item that has been highlighted

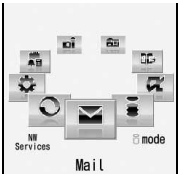
Menu item that cannot be selected (dimmed)

Lower-level menu exists.

Press ◎ to highlight a menu item and press ● or ○.

- You can also select an item by the dial key for the item number.
- To return to the previous menu: ◎ or clear

Selecting menu items (3D display)



Press ◎ to move the icon ring to bring the desired item to the front and press ●.

- Press ◎ to move the the icon at the rear to the front.
- You can select an item by the dial key for the item number. Check the item numbers in the tile display or list view menu.

Selecting menu items (Simple menu)

Press ◎ to highlight a menu item and press ● or ○.

- You can also select an item by the dial key for the item number.
- To return to the previous menu: ◎ or clear

Displaying description of menu items (Describe function)

Press ◎ to highlight a menu item in other than the animation display. After a brief interval, description of the item's function is displayed.

Example In the normal menu

- The function description disappears automatically after a brief interval.
- You can set FOMA terminal not to display the function description. ☛P119

Description of *Mail* menu is displayed.

Returning to the standby display or previous screen

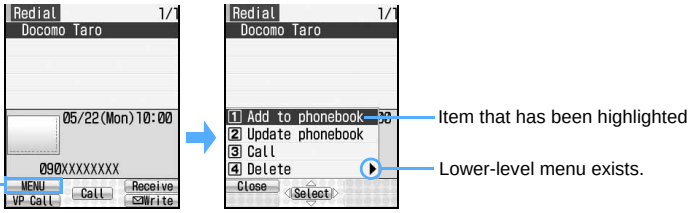
end : Returns to the standby display. clear : Returns to the previous screen.

Selecting functions from the submenu

When ***MENU*** is displayed at the upper left of the guide row, you can use the submenu to perform various operations.

Example Displaying the Redial submenu

1 MENU in the redial list



2 ◎ to highlight a submenu item ▶ ◎ or ◎

- You can select an item by the dial key for the item number. Even for the same function, the item numbers may differ depending on the screen.
- To return to the previous menu: ◎ or clr/クリア
- To close the submenu: MENU

Setting each item on the screen

Selecting *Yes* or *No* on the confirmation screen

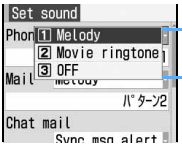
1 ◎ to highlight *Yes* or *No* ▶ ◎

- For some functions, items other than ***Yes*** or ***No*** may appear.

Selecting an item from the pulldown menu

1 ◎ to highlight an item

2 ◎ to display the pulldown menu ▶ ◎ to highlight an item



- You can select an item by the dial key for the item number.

Pulldown menu

3 Press ◎

Selecting an item from the check box

1 ◎ to highlight a check box ▶ ●

The check box changes from ☐ to ☑, and is selected.

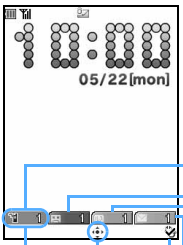
- Select the selected item (☑) to cancel the selection (☐).
- Depending on the function, you can select/cancel all items by pressing MENU.
- You can select an item by the dial key for the item number.

Displaying information quickly

Focus Mode

When the icons such as 1 or 1 are displayed on the standby display, you can quickly display the information.

1 ● ▶ ◎ to highlight an icon such as 1 or 1



- The number of stored items is displayed at the right of each icon.
- To cancel Focus Mode: クリア or ☎
- When the icon ✓ or ✗ indicating that auto-update of the latest pattern definition is succeeded or it is failed is displayed, use ◎ to highlight the icon.

Missed call (unanswered call) exists.
Unplayed recorded message exists.
Voice mail message exists.
Unread received mail exists.
Data of the pattern definition automatically updated exists.
Effective Easy Selector Plus keys
The color of the highlighted icon changes.

2 Press ●

The screen for the selected icon is displayed.

1 : The received call list is displayed, letting you check the date and time, the caller information, etc.
1 : The recorded message list is displayed, letting you play the recorded messages.
1 : The confirmation screen for playing voice mail messages is displayed, letting you play the messages.
1 : The received mail folder list is displayed, letting you check unread mail.
✓ / ✗ : The data of the pattern definition automatically updated can be checked.

INFORMATION

● When you highlight an icon and hold down クリア for over a second, the icon temporarily disappears from the screen. It reappears when information is viewed or new information is stored, and the number of items changes.

Number of saved, registered and protected items in D702i

Type		Maximum number of saved/registered items	Maximum number of protected items
Mail	Received mail*1, *2	1,000	500
	Sent mail*1, *2	200	100
	Unsent mail*1, *2	200	100
	Template*1	100	—
SMS in the UIM*3		20	—
Message R*1		100	50
Message F*1		50	25
Bookmark		100	—

Type	Maximum number of saved/registered items	Maximum number of protected items
Screen memo*1	100	50
i-αppli*4	100	100
Image*1	1,000	—
Melody*1	500	—
Video/i-motion/ sound recorded with Sound Recorder*1	100	—
Chara-den*1	50	—

*1 Depending on the size of data, the actual number of items that can be saved and registered may be fewer.
*2 The total number of i-mode Mail and SMS.
*3 The total number of sent and received SMS. The number of delivery report is not included.
*4 Up to 5 items of Message i-αppli (as part of the 100 items, maximum number of i-αppli that can be saved) can be saved. Depending on the i-αppli size, the actual number of items that can be saved may be fewer.

INFORMATION

- Because the data saved in FOMA terminal may be lost due to failure, repair or other handlings of FOMA terminal, it is recommended that you maintain a separate record of the important data in FOMA terminal. Please note that we are not responsible for any lost data.
- Depending on the function, the displayed file size of data in FOMA terminal may differ slightly.
- If you have a PC, you can use the FOMA D series data link software contained in the attached CD-ROM and the FOMA USB connection cable (optional) to transfer and save the data such as mail, bookmarks, images, melodies, video/i-motion to your PC.

Using the UIM (FOMA card)

Use the UIM (FOMA card) to store your phone number and other information.
Insert the UIM into FOMA terminal to use it.

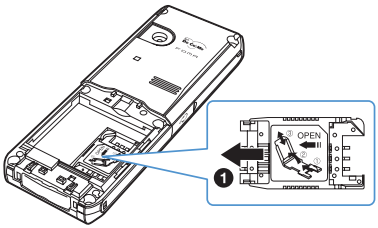
- For details on handling the UIM, refer to the UIM manual.

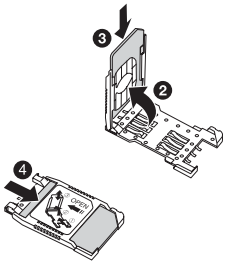
Inserting/removing the UIM

Use your FOMA terminal with the UIM inserted. If the UIM is not inserted in your FOMA terminal, first insert it.

- Before inserting or removing the UIM, turn the power off and remove the rear cover and battery pack.
Attaching/removing the rear cover and battery pack ☛P39
- Insert or remove the UIM by holding FOMA terminal with both hands.

Inserting the UIM



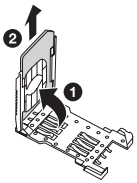


❶**Slide the lid of the UIM case in the direction of the arrow.**
This will unlock the lid.

❷**Open the lid.**
❸**Insert the UIM fully in the slot inside the lid in the direction of the arrow shown in the figure.**

❹**Close the lid of the UIM case and slide the lid in the direction opposite to that shown in Step ❶ until it clicks and is locked in place.**
Note: If you cannot close the lid of the UIM case successfully, slide the UIM a little in the direction opposite to the insert position.

Removing the UIM



❶**Open the lid of the UIM case.**
- Follow Step ❶ to ❷ in “Inserting the UIM”.

❷**Pull out the UIM.**

INFORMATION

- Insert or remove the UIM carefully as forcing it may damage the card.
- Carefully handle the removed UIM so that it does not become lost.

UIM security codes

The PIN1 and PIN2 codes are used for the UIM.
Both codes are set to “0000” at the time of subscription to the FOMA service. You can change this to any code (4 to 8 digits). ☛P128

UIM operation restriction function

FOMA terminal is provided with the UIM operation restriction function for protecting your data and files.

- When the data or files downloaded from sites or the data attached to mail are saved in FOMA terminal with the UIM inserted, the UIM operation restriction function is automatically set to these data or files.
- If the UIM is replaced by another UIM or is removed from FOMA terminal, the data or files with the UIM operation restriction function set cannot be displayed or played.
- The data or files with the UIM operation restriction function set cannot be sent by infrared communication.

・The data which is subject to the restriction is as follows:

・Screen memo
・Image inserted in Deco-mail text
・i-αppli (including the i-αppli standby display)
・Image (including animation and Flash movie)
・Melody
・Movie memo
・Message R/F
・File attached to i-mode Mail
・i-motion
・Chara-den
・Recorded message for videophone call

・For i-αppli with the UIM operation restriction set, the following operations are disabled when the UIM is replaced by another UIM or is removed from FOMA terminal:

・Start
・Operation settings for i-αppli
・Changing the auto start function
・Upgrade
・Displaying the detail information of i-αppli
・Auto start
・Setting the i-αppli standby display

INFORMATION

● When the data with the UIM operation restriction function enabled is set for the standby display, call image or ring tone, the image and sound settings return to the default if the UIM is replaced by another UIM or is removed from FOMA terminal. In this case, the sound and image that are actually generated/displayed may differ from the settings. Inserting the UIM that was used when the data was downloaded cancels the operation restriction of the data and restores the original settings. (Note that the setting may be canceled if the data was used for Random Display Image.)

● The UIM operation restriction function is not set to the data obtained via infrared communication or data link software or to the still images or videos taken with the built-in camera.

● When the UIM is inserted in other i-channel compatible terminals, the i-channel information is not displayed as ticker on the standby display. After that, if the information is updated automatically or if you press dメニュー on the standby display to display the channel list, the latest information is received and then displayed as ticker on the standby display.

● When the UIM is not inserted, the i-channel information is not displayed as ticker on the standby display.

The settings saved into the UIM

The following settings are saved into the UIM. If the UIM is replaced, the settings saved in the new UIM become available.

・***Font type***, ***Keep in SMS center***, ***SMSC***, ***Address*** and ***Type of Number*** of SMS Setting
・***DoCoMo Cert***, ***User Certificate*** of Certificate Setting
・***My phone number*** of Own Number
・Select Language
・The PIN1/PIN2 code of the UIM, PIN1 Code ON/OFF

Functional differences between the UIM types

There are 2 types of the UIM: green and blue. The functions differ depending on the type as shown below:

Item	UIM (green)	UIM (blue)	Page
Number of digits of phone number that can be registered in the UIM phonebook	Up to 26 digits	Up to 20 digits	P90
Certificate Download for using FirstPass	Available	Unavailable	P181
WORLD WING service	Available	Unavailable	P39
Service Dialing Number	Calling DoCoMo for Repairs and DoCoMo for General Inquiries (DoCoMo Information Center) available	Unavailable	P304

WORLD WING

WORLD WING is the DoCoMo FOMA international roaming service. By taking out the UIM (green) from the FOMA terminal you normally use and inserting it into FOMA terminal supporting the service or an overseas mobile phone (W-CDMA or GSM handset), you can make/receive calls in foreign countries with your own mobile phone number.

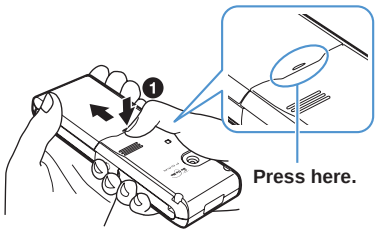
You can use WORLD WING without subscription.

- If you have not contracted WORLD WING for the FOMA service in the contract before August 31, 2005, a separate subscription is required to use WORLD WING.
- This service cannot be used with some billing plans.

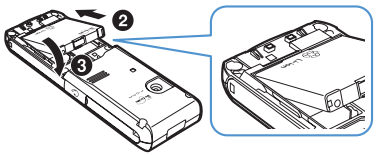
Attaching/removing the battery pack

- Turn the power off before attaching or removing the battery pack.
- Be careful not to touch the camera lens.

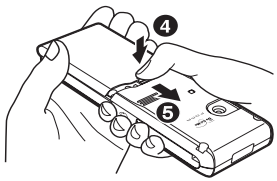
Attaching the battery pack



❶Remove the rear cover.
While pressing the top of the rear cover with your thumb, slide it in the direction of the arrow until it is removed.



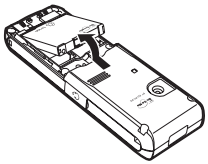
❷With the surface with DoCoMo logo and the recycle mark of the battery pack facing up, insert the battery pack into FOMA terminal at the angle as shown in the figure.
Do not force the battery pack terminals into FOMA terminal. Doing so could damage these terminals or the body connector.



❸Push the battery pack in.
❹Place the rear cover plate so that it can slide about 5 mm on FOMA terminal.
❺Slide the rear cover.

Failure to follow the correct procedure could damage the rear cover.

Removing the battery pack



❶Remove the rear cover.
❷Lift the projection part of the battery pack while pushing it toward external connection terminals to remove the battery pack.

Battery recycling

FOMA terminal uses a lithium ion battery containing valuable materials that should be recycled. To protect the environment, return used batteries to an NTT DoCoMo service counter, NTT DoCoMo agent or recycling center.

● Please take the following precautions when recycling batteries:
- Attach a piece of adhesive tape on the terminals of used battery packs
- Do not disassemble or modify battery packs

INFORMATION

● The FOMA terminal display uses an active LCD. Due to the characteristics of active LCD, residual images or crossbar may remain for a while when the battery pack is attached or removed. This is not a fault of FOMA terminal.

Charging the battery of FOMA terminal

When the battery level is low, charge the battery.

- The battery level icon shows how much charge remains in the battery. ☛P43

Charging time and operation time on full charge (estimates)

Charging time	Continuous call time	Continuous standby time
Approx. 140 minutes	During a voice call: Approx. 170 minutes During a videophone call: Approx. 105 minutes	While standing still: Approx. 560 hours While moving: Approx. 400 hours

- Continuous call time is an estimate of call time for FOMA terminal when it can send or receive signals normally.
- Continuous standby time is an estimate of operation time of FOMA terminal when it is able to receive signals normally. The call/standby time may be reduced to about half, depending on the amount of charge in the battery, the function settings, the ambient temperature and signal conditions (radio waves do not or hardly reach). Using i-mode communication reduces the call (communication)/standby time. Even if you do not make a call or use i-mode, the call (communication)/standby time will be reduced by composing i-mode Mail, or starting downloaded i-αppli software or the i-αppli standby display.
- Continuous standby time (while standing still) is the average operation time of FOMA terminal when it is standing still and able to receive signals normally.
- Continuous standby time (while moving) is the average operation time of FOMA terminal that is standing still, moving and outside the service area when it is able to receive signals normally.
- Alternatively, if you perform data communication or Multiaccess, use Camera or play video/i-motion, the call (communication)/standby time will be reduced.

Battery pack

● Use the battery pack D07.

● The battery pack is a consumable part and will gradually wear out. Each time it is charged, it will accept slightly less charge than the previous time. When the battery charge lasts only half as long as when it was new, replace it with a new one. The battery pack's life is about 1 year. This life may be shorter depending on the frequency of use.

Starting/ending charging and other items to note

The battery pack can be charged regardless of whether FOMA terminal is turned on or off. However, charging takes longer with the power turned on.

・When charging starts, the charging indicator lights red.
When FOMA terminal is turned on, the charge alert sounds and the battery level icon blinks.

Icon	Charging indicator	Meaning
(Charging: Blinks Charged: Lights)	Charging: Lights red Charged: Goes off	Charging normally.

・The battery level icon differs depending on the color of FOMA terminal. The icon can be changed. ☛P120
・If the charging indicator does not light red at the start of charging or it flashes red, charging is unsuccessful. If the battery pack still cannot be charged even after charging again, contact “Repairs” on the back of this manual.

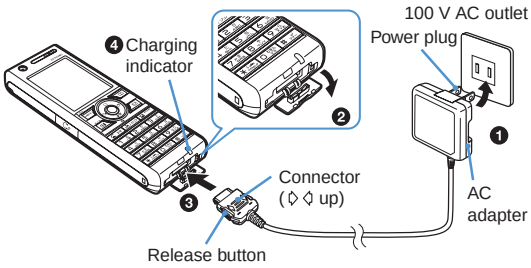
・When charging is completed, the charging indicator goes off.
When FOMA terminal is turned on, the charge alert sounds and the battery level icon lights.
・If the battery level icon blinks, charging is not completed.

・You can set the charge alert not to sound. ☛P107
・Do not charge the battery for an extended period (longer than a full day) with FOMA terminal turned on. FOMA terminal uses power so the adapter continues charging until FOMA terminal is unplugged from the adapter. In such a case, the AC or DC adapter charges again but when FOMA terminal is removed in the middle of charging, the following could occur:
・Low battery level
・Message appears indicating that the battery runs down.
・FOMA terminal is operational for a short time.
・If the battery is fully charged, connecting FOMA terminal to the AC or DC adapter may not start charging.
・If you use FOMA terminal while charging the battery for an extended period with the AC or DC adapter connected, the battery may not be charged temporarily by temperature rise.
・Insert or remove the connector to/from FOMA terminal slowly and firmly without forcing it. When removing it, be sure to press the release buttons on both sides of the connector and pull it out. Forcibly pulling it could cause equipment failure.
・Insert or remove the AC adapter connector straight to/from FOMA terminal.

Charging from a wall outlet

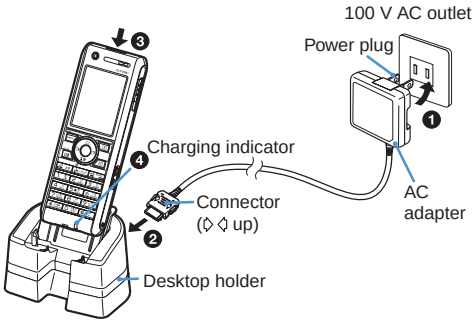
Use the FOMA AC adapter 01 (optional) to charge the battery. Also it can be used with the desktop holder D09 (optional).
・The battery pack can only be charged when it is attached to FOMA terminal.
・For details, refer to the manuals for the AC adapter and the desktop holder.

■ Charging the battery with the AC adapter alone



❶Unfold the power plug from the AC adapter and plug it into a 100 V AC outlet.
❷Open the external connection terminal cap of FOMA terminal.
❸Insert the AC adapter connector in firmly until it clicks.
❹Check that charging starts.
Check that the charging indicator lights red. When charging is completed, remove the AC adapter connector from FOMA terminal while pressing the release buttons on both sides of the connector, and unplug the AC adapter from the outlet. Then close the terminal cap.

■ Charging the battery in the desktop holder



❶Unfold the power plug from the AC adapter and plug it into a 100 V AC outlet.
❷Insert the AC adapter connector in the desktop holder until it clicks.
❸Along with the desktop holder, insert FOMA terminal at the angle as shown in the figure.
❹Check that charging starts.
Check that the charging indicator lights red. When charging is completed, remove FOMA terminal from the desktop holder by tilting it to the front while holding the desktop holder by hand.

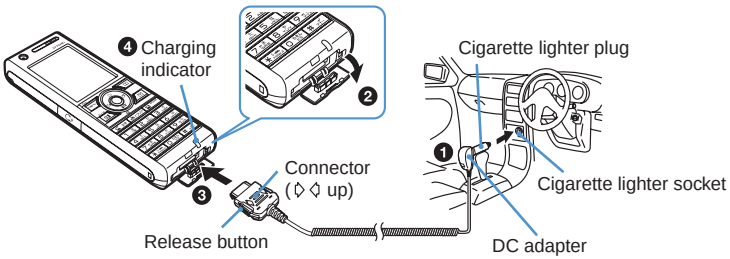
- When inserting FOMA terminal into the desktop holder, be careful not to put a strap in the holder.
- When FOMA terminal is not inserted firmly or it leans, the battery is not charged normally. Insert FOMA terminal until it is locked certainly.

Charging in a car

Use the FOMA DC adapter 01 (optional) to charge the battery in a car. It can be used with negative ground cars (both 12 V and 24 V).

- For details, refer to the DC adapter manual.

❶Insert the cigarette lighter plug of the DC adapter into the cigarette lighter socket of the car.
❷Turn off the power of FOMA terminal and open the external connection terminal cap.
❸Insert the DC adapter connector firmly until it clicks.
❹Check that charging starts.
When charging is completed, remove the DC adapter connector from FOMA terminal while pressing the release buttons on both sides of the connector, and remove the cigarette lighter plug from the cigarette lighter socket. Then, close the terminal cap.



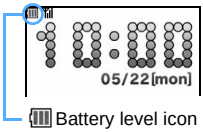
INFORMATION

- If you charge FOMA terminal with the car engine off, the car battery may be discharged. Charge the battery when the car engine is running.
- When not charging, remove the DC adapter from the cigarette lighter socket.
- The DC adapter fuses (2A) are consumable items. New fuses are available at automotive supply stores.

Checking the remaining battery level

Battery Level

The display indicates an estimate of the remaining battery level in 3 levels.



Battery level icon

(Level 3): Amply charged
(Level 2): Charging decreased
(Level 1): Recharging recommended

- The battery level icon differs depending on the color of FOMA terminal. You can also change it. ☛P120

Checking the remaining battery level by sound and display

1 MENU 8 4 3

(Level 3)

Sounds 3 times.

(Level 2)

Sounds twice.

(Level 1)

Sounds once.

The remaining battery level is displayed. The confirmation sound rings by the sound set in Keypad Sound.

When the battery almost runs down

A message appears or a low battery alert sounds to indicate that the battery level is low. Charging the battery stops the low battery alert. If you want to stop it immediately, press ☎.

- In standby, a message indicating low battery appears. The message disappears by pressing ●, but after a period of time, it reappears and the low battery alert sounds. At this time, all the icons on the top of the screen blink and after approximately 1 minute, the power turns off automatically.
- During a call, the low battery alert sounds from the earpiece and a message indicating low battery appears. The message disappears by pressing ●, clr/クリア or ☎. When approximately 20 seconds elapses after the low battery alert is heard, the call is cut off and the standby display reappears. Then, after approximately 1 minute, the power turns off automatically.

Setting the low battery alert not to sound

Low Battery Alert

Default ON

1 MENU 8 1 5

2 Press 2

- To set the alert: 1

INFORMATION

● When the battery almost runs down during a call, even if ***OFF*** is set, the low battery alert sounds from the earpiece.

Turning the power on/off

Power ON/OFF

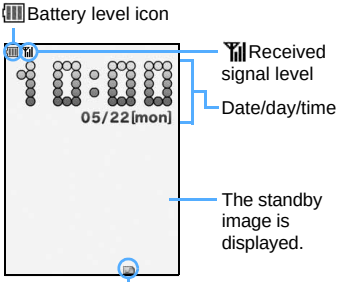
- When FOMA terminal is turned on for the first time, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to perform Software Update. Note that the battery needs to be charged enough when performing. Please be sure to refer to “Updating Software” before performing. ☛P352

Turning the power on

1 [☎] **(for over 2 seconds)**

The wake-up screen appears and then the standby display is displayed. Displaying the wake-up screen may take some time.

- If Quick Start-up is set to ***ON***, the time until the standby display is displayed becomes short.



is indicated while reading the UIM and disappears when reading is completed.

Icon				
Received signal level	Strong	Medium	Weak	Outside the service area and where radio waves are hard to reach

- If the date and time have not been set, a message indicating that is displayed. Press [●] to set the date and time.
- If no UIM is inserted, a message indicating that insertion of the UIM is required is displayed. Turn the power off, insert the UIM and then turn the power back on.
- When PIN1 Code ON/OFF is set to ***ON***, enter the PIN1 code.
- The following items can be changed:
  - Standby image ☛P109
  - Battery level icon ☛P120
  - Time display format ☛P123

Turning the power off

1 [☎] **(for over 2 seconds)**

INFORMATION

- Calls may be cut off even when is indicated and you are not moving.
- When Reset Call Cost is set to ***ON***, entry of the PIN2 code is required.
- In the following cases, if you do not press any keys for about 90 seconds, the display disappears (except while shooting with the camera, etc.). It is the same also during a voice call. The display appears again if there is any key operation or incoming call.
  - When ***Turn light on*** is set to other than ***Always*** in Display Light Setting
  - During charging (when ***Turn light on*** is set to other than ***Always***, and ***AC adapter connected*** is set to ***Terminal settings*** in Display Light setting)

Switching to English display

Select Language

Default Japanese

1 [MENU] [8] [2] [7] [2]

2 **Press** [2]

- To switch to Japanese display: [1]

INFORMATION

- The setting is saved in the UIM.

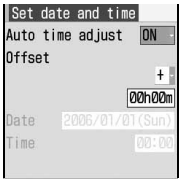
Setting the date and time

The time setting can be performed in 2 ways: obtaining the time information from DoCoMo network to adjust the time setting of your FOMA terminal, or manually entering the current time to your terminal.

Default Auto time adjust: ON Offset: +, 00h00m

1 MENU 8 5 1

2 Select each item to set



- When you set ***Auto time adjust*** to ***ON***, ***Offset*** can be set. ***Date*** and ***Time*** cannot be set.

Auto time adjust: Set whether to perform the automatic time correction.
- To enter the date and time manually, set ***Auto time adjust*** to ***OFF***.

Offset : Specify the amount of time advance (+) or delay (-) so that your terminal's clock advances from/delays to the time obtained for a given length of time.
- Enter the time between 00h00m and 23h59m.
- Prefix 0 if the time and/or minute is a single digit (0 to 9).

Date, Time : Set the date and time.
- Enter the year by the last 2 digits of the year. From January 1, 2000 to December 31, 2050 can be set.
- Enter the time in the 24-hour clock (00h00m to 23h59m).
- Prefix 0 if the month, date, time and/or minute is a single digit (0 to 9).

- The entered number can be increased or decreased by ◎. Also, you can reenter the number after highlighting it with ●.

3 Press ▭

When the automatic time correction is set

The automatic time correction takes place when the UIM is inserted and you turn the power on in a location where radio waves reach.

- The automatic time correction sometimes causes a time error of several seconds. In addition, it may fail to correct the time depending on the radio wave condition.
- Even if the time information is received while i-αppli is running, the time may not be corrected depending on the i-αppli.
- When ***Auto time adjust*** is set to ***ON***, the time may not be corrected for a while. To enable the automatic time correction, turn the power off and then on.
- When no UIM is inserted or FOMA terminal is out of the service area, the automatic time correction is not performed even if you turn the power off and then on.

INFORMATION

● You cannot use the following functions when the date and time are not set:

- Random Display Image
- Auto Power ON/OFF
- Alarm Clock
- Scheduler
- Certificate Download ☛P181
- i-αppli auto start ☛P236
- i-αppli DX requiring the time setting ☛P230
- Downloading i-motion with replay restrictions ☛P253
- Data (schedule) transfer ☛P267, P268
- Software Update
- Update Definition
- SSL communication (authentication)

● If the date and time are not set, the date and time are not recorded for the following functions and "----/--/--" or "----------" is displayed. A number to segmentalize (segmental number) may be appended.
- Redial/Received Calls
- Answer Machine/Voice Memo
- Notepad
- Date and time of the still image/video shot with the camera ☛P146
- Date and time in the file name of the data scanned by Bar Code Reader ☛P159
- Date and time of sent mail/unsent mail ☛P209
- Date and time of downloaded i-αppli (detail information) ☛P233
- Date and time of saved/registered still image, melody, Chara-den, i-motion or mail template ☛P264, P198

● The set time is retained even when the battery pack is replaced, but may be reset if the battery pack is removed for an extended period. In that case, set the date and time again.
● When Reset Call Cost is set to ***ON***, entry of the terminal security code is required.

Notifying your phone number to the other party

Caller ID Notification

Set FOMA terminal to send your phone number (caller ID) to be displayed on the other party's phone every time you make a call.
- The caller ID is your important information. Carefully consider whether to send your caller ID.
- The caller ID is displayed only when the other party's phone can display the caller ID.
- Caller ID Notification cannot be set outside the service area. Set in a location with good radio reception.
- For details, see "Network Services User's Guide".

1 MENU 9 5 1
- To check the current setting: MENU 9 5 2 ▶ Select ***Yes***

2 **Enter the network security code** ▶ 1
- The network security code entered is masked with "✳".
- To hide the caller ID: 2

INFORMATION

● You can also use the following ways to show/hide the caller ID.
- Setting to show/hide the caller ID for each phonebook entry ☛P99
- Setting to show/hide the caller ID when making a call ☛P53

● If you hear a guidance requesting your caller ID when making a call, call back after setting to send caller ID.
● When setting/operating multiple caller ID notification methods at the same time, the caller ID is notified in the following priority. However, the setting of showing/hiding the caller ID shown on the display may be different from the actual setting.
①When you set the caller ID notification method in the dialing condition when making a call ☛P53
②When "186"/"184" is appended before the other party's phone number
③When Caller ID Setting is set to a phonebook entry
④When Caller ID Notification is set

Menu 47

Checking your own phone number

Own Number

Check your phone number ***(My phone number)***, name, mail address, etc.

Default My phone number: subscribed phone number Other than that: not recorded

1 MENU 0
- The phone number of the UIM inserted in FOMA terminal is displayed for ***My phone number***.
- To check your i-mode Mail address: ○ 1 to display iMenu → Select ***ENGLISH*** → 4***Options*** → 1***Mail Settings*** → ***Confirm Mail Address***

INFORMATION

- To check your phone number during a call: ☎ ▶ 0

Making/Receiving Calls

Making calls

Making calls 48
Switching from a voice call to a videophone call 51
Calling back previously called numbers ..... Redial 51
Setting whether to send your phone number for each call ..... 186/184 Call 53
Making calls by setting the conditions 53
Using international calls ..... WORLD CALL 54
Making a call by specifying a sub-address ..... Sub Address 55
Setting the alarm indicating reconnection of the interrupted call ..... Reconnect Alarm 56
Suppressing ambient noises to improve the call quality ..... Noise Reduction 56
Talking without using hands in a car ..... In-car Handsfree 56

Receiving calls

Receiving calls 57
Receiving a call by switching from a voice call to a videophone call 59
Enabling use of dial keys to answer a call ..... Any Key Answer 59
Using Received Calls ..... Received Calls 59
Adjusting the volume of the other party's voice ..... Volume Setting 61
Adjusting the ring volume ..... Ring Volume Setting 61
Setting operations for incoming voice/videophone calls ..... Incoming Call Setting/Incoming Videophone Setting 62
Setting the priority screen for incoming calls during a call or packet communication ..... Priority Comm Mode 63

When you can/could not answer a call

Putting incoming calls on hold when you cannot answer right away ..... Response and Hold 64
Setting a response hold guidance ..... Status Message 64
Setting an on-hold tone ..... On-hold Tone 65
Using Public mode (Driving mode) ..... Public mode (Driving mode) 65
Using Public mode (power off) 66
Allowing the caller to leave message when you cannot answer the call ..... Answer Machine 67

Making calls

The operations common to voice calls and videophone calls are explained here.

- Do not cover the built-in antenna with your hands during a call.

1 Enter the phone number

Calling general subscriber phones	Always include the area code even when calling from the same city.
Calling mobile phones	090 - XXXX - XXXX, 080 - XXXX - XXXX
Calling PHS phones	070 - XXXX - XXXX

- Up to 80 digits can be entered. However, only 24 digits are displayed.
- To correct the phone number: [clr/ノクリア]
- To return to the standby display: [clr/ノクリア] (for over a second)

2 [☎]

You will hear a dial tone. You can start talking when the call is answered.

- If the phone of the other party is busy, you will hear a busy signal. Press [☎] to end the call and call again later. You can call back quickly using Redial.
- If the power of the other party's mobile phone or PHS is turned off or the other party is in an area where radio waves are hard to reach, a guidance informs that the connection is unavailable.

3 [☎] when you finish the call

INFORMATION

- You can also make a call in order of Step 2, Step 1. A voice call will be made automatically about 5 seconds after you have pressed [☎] and entered the phone number.
- If you hear a guidance requesting your caller ID when making a call, call again after setting to send caller ID.
- When you subscribe to the Multi Number service, you can call after selecting a registered multi number.
☛P305

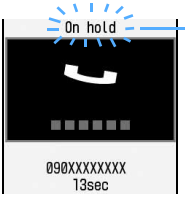
Putting calls on hold while talking

On-hold

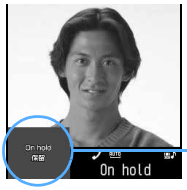
Putting the call on hold while talking allows you to talk without the other party hearing your voice.

- Callers are charged for the time spent on hold.

1 [●] during a call



Voice call on hold



Videophone call on hold

The call is put on hold and a guidance (on-hold tone) is played. For videophone calls, the on-hold image is displayed on your and the other party's terminals.

On-hold image

- Press ● or [☎] while a voice call is on hold to cancel the hold.
- Press ● while a videophone call is on hold to cancel the hold and send the image that has been sent before the hold. Press [📹] or [☎] to cancel the hold and send your image to the other party or [✉] to cancel the hold and send the substitute image.

Using the speakerphone function

You can make a call allowing the other party's voice to be heard through the speaker.

1 Enter the phone number ▶ [☎] (for over a second)

- To make a videophone call: [📹]
  To make a videophone call with the speakerphone function on when ***Speakerphone*** is set to ***OFF*** in Videophone Settings, press [📹] for over a second.
- When you make a videophone call, the speakerphone function is automatically turned on. To make a videophone call without turning on the speakerphone function, change the setting in Videophone Settings.
- You can turn on/off the speakerphone function by pressing [☎] while dialing or calling, and by pressing [✉] or [☎] during a call.
- 🔊 is displayed at the top of the display while the speakerphone function on.
- The operation is the same as when operating from the list of the phonebook, redials, received calls, recorded messages and voice memos.
- You can adjust the speakerphone volume by pressing ● then ● during a voice call, and by pressing [MENU] [8] then ● during a videophone call. The setting is retained even after the call is ended, and is also reflected to the volume of playback sound for recorded videophone call messages.

INFORMATION

- When the speakerphone function is turned on, the volume may suddenly increase and damage your ears, so use it with FOMA terminal away from your ears.
- If a call is hard to hear with a large amount of noise around you or the other party, turn off the speakerphone function.
- Talk to FOMA terminal within about 30 cm.
- When a flat type earphone/microphone set with switch (optional) or the In-Car Hands-Free Kit 01 (optional) is connected to FOMA terminal, use the connected device to communicate.
- The speakerphone function can be used even when Silent Mode is on.

Operation during voice calls

The following operations can be performed from the submenu:

Submenu item	Description	Page
[1] ***Switch to V-phone***	Switches from a voice call to a videophone call.	P51
[2] ***Received calls***	Displays received calls.	P59
[3] ***Redial***	Displays redials.	P51
[4] ***Set time***	Sets the date and time.	P45
[5] ***Reconnect alarm****1	Allows setting an alarm sound indicating reconnection of a call under improved signal quality which has been cut off due to poor signal quality.	P56
[6] ***Quality alarm****1	Sets whether to sound an alarm when your call is about to be cut off due to poor signal quality.	P108
[7] ***Dial up***	Allows making a call to another party during a call using Call Waiting Service.	P302
[8] ***Volume***	Adjusts the earpiece volume.	P61

*1 The setting can be changed while an alarm sounds. It becomes effective when the alarm is stopped.

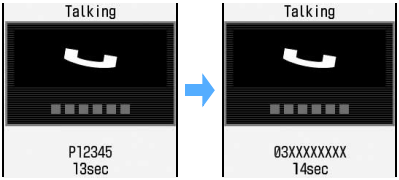
・The following key operations are available during a call:
・ : Adjust the volume ・ : Display received calls ・ : Display redials
・ : Activate Camera ・ : Start the phonebook
・ (for over a second): Record the other party's voice (Talking Voice Memo)

Entering pauses or timed pauses

Pauses and timed pauses are available only for voice calls.

Example Calling to "03XXXXXXXXP12345" (P=Entered pause)

When you press after the call is connected, the numbers after the pause are dialed.



Entering a pause "P"

A pause (P) is used for sending messages to beepers*, operating the answering system at home, reserving tickets, etc. At the point the pause (P) is entered, the dial digits are separated and tone signals (DTMF) are sent.

1 ✱ (for over a second)

・You cannot make a call if a pause is entered at the beginning of the phone number.

Entering a timed pause "T"

A timed pause (T) is used to dial outside line numbers with extensions. Enter "T" between the outside line and extension numbers to dial the extension number after a set number of seconds following the outside line number.

1 # (for over a second)

・Timed pauses can be entered in succession.
・Each timed pause is followed by a second interval.
・You cannot make a call if a timed pause is entered at the beginning of the phone number.

INFORMATION

- Tone signals (DTMF) may not be received depending on the receiver's device.
- You cannot make a call to another party by putting the current call on hold and entering a pause (P) or timed pause (T).
- When it is necessary to send tone signals (DTMF) following voice prompts as in making ticket reservations, the speakerphone function is useful. In this case, input tone signals (DTMF) after turning on the speakerphone function.

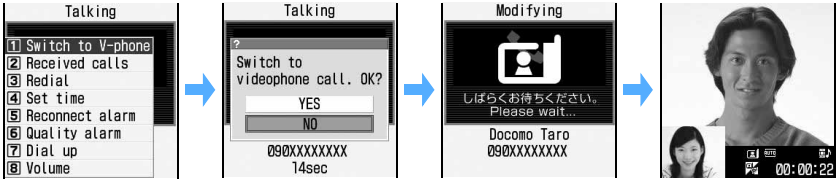
* From January 2001, the DoCoMo display beeper name has changed to "QUICKCAST".

Switching from a voice call to a videophone call

You can switch to a videophone call by operating from the submenu during a voice call when the other party's terminal can switch calls. Switching can be performed only from the terminal which made the voice call.

- This operation can be performed between the terminals that support switching between voice call/ videophone call.
- To switch to a videophone call, the other party needs to set ***Indication ON*** of Notify Switchable Mode in advance. ☛P83

1 MENU 1 during a voice call ▶ Select *YES*



- A guidance informing that the call is being switched is played during switching.
- Select ***NO*** to return to the voice call talking screen.
- When ***Speakerphone*** is set to ***ON*** in Videophone Settings, the speakerphone function is automatically turned on when the call is switched to a videophone call.

INFORMATION

- During packet communication, disconnect the packet communication and switch to a videophone call.
- When the other party is during packet communication, the call cannot be switched to a videophone call.
- While talking on the phone using Call Waiting Service, you cannot switch the call to a videophone call.
- It takes about 5 seconds to switch. In addition, it may take longer depending on radio wave conditions.
- Depending on radio wave conditions, a voice call may not be switched to a videophone call or may be disconnected.
- A second call received while switching calls is rejected.
- The speakerphone function is turned on/off every time a voice call and videophone call are switched.
- The settings (such as switching the cameras or selecting the frame) during a videophone call are canceled every time a voice call and videophone call are switched.
- According to the call duration of a voice call and videophone call, the call charges are added up, respectively.
- The call is not charged while ***Modifying*** is displayed.
- Switching from a videophone call to a voice call ☛P74

Menu 45

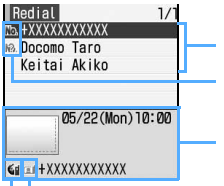
Calling back previously called numbers

Redial

This function records the calls that you made as dialed calls (Redial). When the other party is busy, etc., you can redial by simple operation.

- Up to 30 calls are recorded. When the number exceeds 30, the oldest one is deleted chronologically.

1 ◎ ▶ Highlight a party in the redial list



Phone number or name*1
: Call with the caller ID set to show
: Call with the caller ID set to hide
Date and time of dialing, phone number, image*2 of the highlighted party
Name of the multi number specified*3
: Videophone call
: International call

*1 When the phone number is registered in the phonebook (While not in Secret Mode, the phone number is displayed if it is registered in a phonebook entry with Secret Attribute.)
*2 When the image is registered in the phonebook
*3 When you subscribe to the Multi Number service (the name of the basic number or additional number specified by the call)

- To switch between the redial/received call lists: 📖

■ **Registering an entry in the phonebook:**

① **Highlight a redial** ▶ MENU 1

- To add to an existing phonebook entry: MENU 2

② **1 or 2 ▶ Register the name or address** ☛P87, P90

- To add to an existing phonebook entry: 1 or 2 ▶ Select an entry ▶ Edit the data ☛P97

■ **Composing SMS: Highlight a redial ▶ ✉ (for over a second)**

The SMS composition screen with the redial phone number specified as the address is displayed.

- If the redial phone number is saved in the phonebook together with mail addresses, pressing ✉ displays the i-mode Mail composition screen with the first mail address specified as the address. If not, the mail composition screen is displayed with the redial phone number specified as the address.

2 Press 📞

A voice call is made.

- To make a videophone call: 📹
- To make a call with the same call type as the highlighted redial: ⏱
  - For a 32K videophone call, the call is made at 64K when redialing.

INFORMATION

- You can make calls by setting conditions. ☛P53
- When you switch between a voice call and videophone call during a call, the call type (voice call/videophone call) that was specified when you dialed will be recorded in the redial data.
- When the date and time have not been set, the date and time are not recorded in the redial data.
- When the same number is dialed, only the most recent call is recorded for each caller ID preference: show, hide or no setting.
- Selecting a multi number registered for Multi Number ☛P305

Deleting redials

Delete Redial

1 ◎

2 Highlight a redial ▶ MENU 4 1

- To delete all: MENU 4 2

3 **Select *Yes***

Setting whether to send your phone number for each call

186/184 Call

Set whether to make your phone number (caller ID) to be displayed on the other party's phone when you make a call.

- The caller ID is your important information. Carefully consider whether to send your caller ID.
- The caller ID is displayed only when the other party's phone can display caller ID.

Making calls by adding "186"/"184" to the phone numbers

Prefix a specific number to the beginning of the phone number when you make a call.

■ **Showing your caller ID: 1 8 6 ▶ Enter the other party's phone number ▶ (for voice call) or (for videophone call)**

■ **Hiding your caller ID: 1 8 4 ▶ Enter the other party's phone number ▶ (for voice call) or (for videophone call)**

INFORMATION

- If a guidance requesting your caller ID is heard when you make a call, call again by adding "186".
- For international calls, the caller ID may not be notified depending on the phone company that handles a call even if "186" is added.
- When making a call by adding "186"/"184" to the other party's phone number, the phone number with "186"/"184" added is recorded in the redial data.
- Caller ID notification priority ☛P46

Making calls by setting the conditions

This function allows you to select the call type, show/hide your caller ID, select a multi number and append a prefix for each voice/videophone call.

1 **Enter the phone number ▶ MENU 3**

- The operation is the same as when operating from the list of recorded messages or voice memos.

2 **Select each item to set the dialing conditions**

Call Type : Select from ***Voice call***, ***64K V.phone*** or ***32K V.phone***.

Caller ID : Set to show/hide caller ID.

- Caller ID notification priority ☛P46

Multi No. : Select the number to be notified to the other party from the basic number or additional numbers. ☛P305

Prefix : Select the number (prefix) to be appended before the phone number.

- Prefix ☛P55

3 MENU ▶ **Select *Yes***

A call is made by the settings.

- When you select ***64K V.phone*** or ***32K V.phone*** in ***Call Type***, you can select ***Chara-den call*** and select Chara-den to be displayed during a videophone call.

INFORMATION

- In the redial list, the received call list, the list/details (***TOP/Phone***) screen of FOMA terminal phonebook, the list/details screen of UIM phonebook, the details screen of Own Number, or the member list for schedule, press MENU and select ***Call*** or ***Phone/Msg*** → ***Call***.
- For international calls, the caller ID may not be notified depending on the phone company that handles a call even when ***Notify*** is selected for ***Caller ID***.

Using international calls

WORLD CALL

DoCoMo international call service “WORLD CALL”

- The international call service “WORLD CALL” is available for DoCoMo mobile phones.
- How to call

0 0 9 1 3 0 ▶ 0 1 0 ▶ Enter the other party’s country code ▶ area code ▶ phone number ▶ ☎

- The above phone number can be registered in the FOMA terminal phonebook.
- When the area code begins with “0”, dial without “0”. (When calling to a general subscriber phone and other phones in Italy, you need to dial “0”.)

- You can call to approximately 220 countries and regions around the world.
- WORLD CALL charges are added to the FOMA service charges every month.
- No subscription charges or monthly fee is required.
  - You were subscribed to “WORLD CALL” as one of standard services at the time of subscription to the FOMA service (unless you request not to subscribe to it).
- Changes in international call dial procedure
  MY LINE service is not applicable to mobile telephone communications, including WORLD CALL service. However, along with the introduction of MY LINE service, the dialing procedure for international communications using a mobile telephone was changed. Consequently, the previous dial procedure (without prefix “010”) no longer be used.
- Contact “General Inquiries” on the back of this manual for details.
  - To use international call services other than the DoCoMo service, contact each carrier for details.
- This service cannot be used with some billing plans.

“International videophone” calls to parties using specific overseas 3G mobile phone terminals can be made by dialing as described above and placing a call in the videophone mode.

- For the countries and overseas carriers you can connect to, visit the DoCoMo website.
- The image of the other party displayed on FOMA terminal may be distorted or connection may not be established depending on the terminal at the other end of the international videophone line.

Using “WORLD CALL” by simplified dialing

Auto Assist Setting

When ***Auto*** is set for this setting, entering “+” followed by a country code and phone number makes an international call easily by automatically appending “009130010” for international call.

- If you call by prefixing “+” to the country code of Japan “81”, “009130010” for international call is not appended even when ***Auto*** is set for this setting.

Default Auto

1 MENU 8 6 8 3

2 **Press 1**

- To cancel the setting: 2

■ **Making a call using Auto Assist Setting: 0 (for over a second) ▶ Enter the country code ▶ phone number ▶**

Setting numbers other than "WORLD CALL" Prefix

By registering the number (prefix) to append to the beginning of the phone number in advance, you can add a prefix even after entering the phone number to make an international call easily.

- The default setting is "009130010" for international calls.

Default 009130010

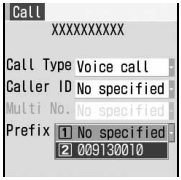
1 MENU 8 6 8 2

2 **Select *Prefix1* to *3* field ▶ Enter a number**

- Up to 3 numbers in total and up to 10 digits for each number can be entered.
- Do not include a pause or timed pause in the number (prefix). If you set a prefix containing a pause or timed pause, you cannot add the prefix when making a call.
- "009130010" can be changed to another prefix.

3 **Press**

■ **Selecting a prefix when making a call:**



① **Enter the country code ▶ phone number**
② MENU 3 **▶ Select *Prefix* field**
③ **Select a prefix number**
④ MENU **▶ Select *Yes***

Making a call by specifying a sub-address Sub Address

Specify a sub-address to call a specific phone or communication device.

- This setting is also used to select the contents in a video delivery service, "V-Live".

Default ON

1 MENU 8 6 8 4

2 **Press 1**

- To cancel the setting: 2

■ **Making a call by specifying a sub-address: Enter the phone number ▶ * ▶ Enter the sub-address ▶ (for voice call) or (for videophone call)**

- The sub-address needs to be set for the other party's phone or communication device.

INFORMATION

● Even when Sub Address is ***ON***, if "＊" is entered after entering a pause, timed pause or "#", it is not recognized as a sub-address delimiter and sent as tone signals (DTMF) containing "＊".

Setting the alarm indicating reconnection of the interrupted call Reconnect Alarm

Set an alarm that is heard at the time of reconnecting a voice call or videophone call interrupted due to poor signal conditions in a tunnel or behind a building when signal conditions improve.

- The other party hears no sound while signals are disrupted.
- The time until the call is reconnected depends on line use or signal conditions. (The approximate time is a maximum of 10 seconds.)
- Note that the call is charged for the time until the call is reconnected (up to 10 seconds).
- The call may be cut off before the alarm sounds depending on line use or signal conditions.

Default High alarm

1 MENU 8 6 9 2 ▶ 1 to 3

Suppressing ambient noises to improve the call quality Noise Reduction

By suppressing ambient noises during a call, the other party can hear your voice clearly and you can also hear the other party's voice clearly.

- It is recommended that this function usually be set to ***ON***.

Default ON

1 MENU 8 6 9 1

2 Press 1

- To cancel the setting: 2

Talking without using hands in a car In-car Handsfree

You can make and receive voice calls from a handsfree compatible device by connecting FOMA terminal via USB to such device as the In-Car Hands-Free Kit 01 (optional) or car navigation system.

- For operations of handsfree devices, refer to the instruction manual for each handsfree device. Note that the FOMA In-Car Hands-Free Cable 01 (optional) is required to use the In-Car Hands-Free Kit 01 (optional).

INFORMATION

● The display and ring tone for incoming calls follow the FOMA terminal settings.
● If the setting is made to play sounds from a handsfree device, the ring tone sounds from a handsfree device regardless of whether Silent Mode is on or of the ring tone settings on FOMA terminal.
● The operation during incoming calls in Public mode (Driving mode) follows the Public mode (Driving mode) settings.

● If a videophone call is made with a handsfree device using the phonebook or redial data, the communication speed set by the handsfree device is used. If it is not set, the videophone call is made at fixed 64K.
● When a videophone call is made/received with a handsfree compatible device, a substitute image is sent to the other party.
● The operation during incoming calls when Answer Machine is set follows the Answer Machine settings.

Receiving calls

The operations common to voice calls and videophone calls are explained here.

- For voice calls, calls can also be answered by pressing [0] to [9], [*], or [#] other than [☎] (Any Key Answer). ☛P59

1 A call is received

The ring tone sounds, the display light turns on and the keys light/flash.

- To put the call on hold (Response and Hold): [☎]

2 [☎]

You can talk. The call duration is displayed.

- To put the call on hold (On-hold): ⏲
- To turn on the speakerphone function: [✉] or [☎]

3 [☎] when you finish the call

Display information

The caller's phone number, name, image and/or video/i-motion will be displayed on the screen according to the dialing condition of the caller and the FOMA terminal settings. You can set FOMA terminal not to display the name or phone number. ☛P117

■ When the caller has notified caller ID

If the caller's phone number is not registered in your phonebook, the phone number is displayed. Also, the image set in Incoming Call Setting or Incoming Videophone Setting is displayed.

If the caller's phone number is registered in your phonebook, the name and phone number are displayed. In addition, when Contact Image is ***ON***, the image or video/i-motion set in the phonebook is displayed. ☛P116

■ **When the caller has not notified caller ID**

The reason why no caller ID is sent is displayed.

Reason for no caller ID	Description
User unset	The caller selected not to send the caller ID.
Payphone	The call was made from a payphone, etc.
Not support	The call was made from a party who cannot send caller ID, such as a call from overseas or from a general subscriber phone via forwarding service. (However, caller ID may be displayed depending on the phone company that handles a call.)

When a voice call arrives, the incoming operation or image set in Anonymous Caller is prioritized. When a videophone call comes in, the incoming image set in Incoming Videophone Setting is prioritized.

Operations while receiving calls

When there is an incoming voice call, you can perform the following operations from the submenu. (When you set ***Arrival call act*** to ***Answer***, the same operations are available when there is another incoming call during a call.)

Submenu item	Description
1 ***Call Rejection***	Disconnects the call (the caller does not pay for the call).
2 ***Voice Mail****1	Connects the incoming call to the Voice Mail Service Center.
3 ***Call Forwarding****2	Forwards the incoming call to the forwarding phone number.

*1 Valid when you use Voice Mail Service and have received a voice call.

*2 Valid when you use Call Forwarding Service and have set a forwarding phone number.

- (for over a second): Answer by Answer Machine (Quick Record Message)
- : Stop the ring tone/vibrator
- : Adjust the ring volume

When you hear beeps (call waiting ring tone) while talking

If you subscribe to Voice Mail, Call Waiting or Call Forwarding Service, you will hear beeps (call waiting ring tone) when you receive another incoming call while talking and the following operations can be performed:

Service	Operation	Page
Voice Mail Service*1	Connects the second call to the Voice Mail Service Center.	P300
Call Waiting Service	Puts the current call on hold and answers the second call.	P301
Call Forwarding Service*1	Forwards the second call to the forwarding phone number.	P302

*1 This service can be operated from the submenu when you set ***Arrival call act*** to ***Answer*** and activate it in ***Set arrival act***.

- If you do not subscribe to Call Waiting Service, you cannot answer the call even if you hear beeps.

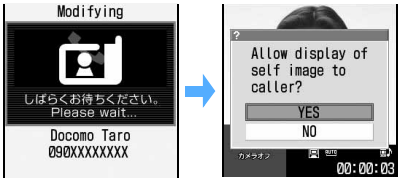
INFORMATION

- When a call forwarded from FOMA terminal arrives, the phone number from which it was forwarded is displayed if it is not registered in the phonebook. If it is registered, the name is displayed. However, the phone number or name may not be displayed depending on the forwarding source.
- Even if a video/i-motion is set as the image for incoming calls in the phonebook or Incoming Call Setting, it is not played and the first frame of the video/i-motion is displayed when there is an incoming voice call during a voice call.
- When you receive an international call, a plus sign (+) appears at the beginning of the caller ID.
- For calls received from callers not registered in the phonebook, you can reject calls, or set the ring tone or vibrator ringer action not to start immediately. ☛P141, P140
- Call rejection can be set for some parties registered in the phonebook. ☛P138

Receiving a call by switching from a voice call to a videophone call

- The switching operation can be performed only from the side which made the voice call. It cannot be performed from the side which received the voice call.
- To receive the request of switching to a videophone call, set ***Indication ON*** of Notify Switchable Mode. ☛P83

1 Receive the request of switching to a videophone call during a voice call



- A guidance informing that the call is being switched is played during switching.

2 Select *YES*

The call is switched to a videophone call and your self image is sent to the other party.

- To send the substitute image: Select ***NO***
- When you select ***YES***, your self image is sent for the first time.

Enabling use of dial keys to answer a call

Any Key Answer

Allows you to answer a call by pressing [0] to [9], [*], or [#] other than [☎].

- This function is available for voice calls. However, it is unavailable when receiving a call while talking.

Default ON

1 [MENU] [8] [6] [5]

2 Press [1]

- To cancel the setting: [2]

Menu 44

Using Received Calls

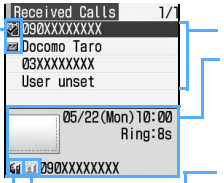
Received Calls

The calls that you received, and unanswered calls (missed calls) are recorded in memory. Recorded messages are also included in the list.

- Up to 30 calls are recorded. When the number exceeds 30, the oldest one is deleted chronologically.

Example Making a call from the received call history

1 ▶ Highlight a received call in the list



Phone number, name*1 or reason for no caller ID ☛P58

Date and time of receiving, phone number (and the ringing time for missed calls), image*2 of the highlighted party

Name of the multi number specified*3

: Videophone call
: International call
: 64K data communication
: Missed call (unchecked)
: Missed call (checked)
: Recorded message exists
: Recorded message is deleted

*1 When the phone number is registered in the phonebook

*2 When the image is registered in the phonebook

*3 When you subscribe to the Multi Number service (the name of the basic number or additional number specified by the received call)

- To switch between the received call/redial lists:

■ **Registering an entry in the phonebook:**

① **Highlight a received call ▶ MENU 1**

- To add to an existing phonebook entry: MENU 2

② **1 or 2 ▶ Register the name or address ☛P87, P90**

- To add to an existing phonebook entry: 1 or 2 ▶ Select an entry ▶ Edit the data ☛P97

■ **Composing SMS: Highlight a received call ▶ (for over a second)**

The SMS composition screen with the phone number of the received call specified as the address appears.

- If the phone number of the received call is registered in the phonebook together with mail addresses, pressing displays the i-mode Mail composition screen with the first mail address specified as the address. If not, the mail composition screen is displayed with the phone number of the received call specified as the address.

2 or

- To make a call with the same call type as the highlighted received call:

Unanswered calls (missed calls)

1 with the number of missed calls is indicated and the call is recorded in the received call history. ☛P35

- When there is a missed call from an unknown phone number, the ringing time enables you to check whether the call is a malicious call (One-Ring Call, etc.) made for the sole purpose of leaving the phone number in the received call history.

INFORMATION

- Press MENU 5 3 in the received call list to display the missed calls within the delay time set in Mute Ring Time Setting. To return to the previous received call list, press MENU 5 2 and to display all the received calls, press MENU 5 1.
- You can make calls by setting conditions. ☛P53
- If only missed calls within the delay time set in Mute Ring Time Setting are recorded as received calls, when is pressed on the standby display, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to display missed calls. When *Yes* is selected, the missed calls within the set delay time are displayed.
- When the date and time have not been set, the date and time are not recorded in the received call history.
- Calls received from callers using dial-in services in such as office may display different numbers from the caller's dial-in number.

- When you switch between voice call and videophone call during a call, the call type (voice call/videophone call) that was specified when you received it will be recorded in the received call history.
- When Keypad Dial Lock or PIM Lock is set, the numbers stored in the received call history up to that point are deleted. However, the calls received after that are recorded in the received call history, and a call can be made using the received call history during PIM Lock.
- Selecting a multi number registered for Multi Number ☛P305

Deleting received calls

Delete Received Calls

1 ●

2 **Highlight a received call** ▶ MENU 4 1

- To delete all: MENU 4 2

3 **Select *Yes***

Adjusting the volume of the other party's voice

Volume Setting

The volume of the other party's voice can be adjusted from level 1 (lowest volume) to level 6 (highest volume).

- The set volume is also reflected to the volume of keypad sound and playback sound for recorded voice call messages and voice memos.
- The volume changed while talking is retained even after the call is ended.
- The set volume is retained even if the power is turned off.

Default LEVEL 4

Adjusting during a call

1 ◎ **during a call**

The volume is set automatically by pressing ● or waiting for a while after you stop key operations.

- To turn up the volume: ◎ or ◎
- To turn down the volume: ◎ or ◎
- To adjust the volume during a videophone call: MENU 8

Adjusting in standby

1 MENU 8 1 3 ▶ ◎ **to adjust the volume** ▶ ●

Adjusting the ring volume

Ring Volume Setting

Adjust the ring volume for call, mail and Message R/F.

- The ring volume can be adjusted in 7 levels, from ***Silent*** to level 1 to level 6 (The volume for Movie ringtone can also be adjusted in 7 levels). You can also set ***STEPTONE*** (the volume of ring tone changes into ***Silent*** → level 1 → ··· → level 6 about every 3 seconds) in standby.
- The ring volume changed while receiving a call is reset to the original volume when the call is ended.
- The ring volume changed while in standby is retained even if the power is turned off.

・The ring volume for calls is also reflected to the volume of the sound that plays when confirming the battery level, i-αppli sound and schedule alarm. Note that when ***STEPTONE*** is set, the volume of the battery level confirmation sound and i-αppli sound is level 4.

Default Ring alert: LEVEL 4 Msg. alert: LEVEL 4

Adjusting the ring volume while receiving a call

1 ◎ while receiving a call

The volume is set automatically by pressing ◎ or waiting for a while after you stop key operations.

- To turn up the volume: ◎ or ◎
- To turn down the volume: ◎ or ◎

INFORMATION

- To stop the ring tone and vibrator: ▭ while receiving a call
- If ***STEPTONE*** is set for the ring volume for calls, the volume will be changed from level 6 when you adjust it while receiving a call.

Adjusting in standby

Example Adjusting the ring volume for calls

1 MENU 8 1 2 1

■ **Adjusting the ring volume for mails:** MENU 8 1 2 2

2 ◎

- To set to ***STEPTONE***: ◎ or ◎ when the volume is level 6
- To set to ***Silent***: ◎ or ◎ when the volume is level 1

3 Press ◎

INFORMATION

- S is indicated on the standby display when the ring volume for calls is set to ***Silent***. If the vibrator for incoming voice calls is set at the same time, S is indicated.

Menu 8222 / Menu 8224

Setting operations for incoming voice/videophone calls

Incoming Call Setting/Incoming Videophone Setting

・This setting is also reflected to the voice/videophone call set in Sound Setting and Vibrator Setting, and the incoming voice/videophone call set in Alert Lighting Setting.

Default Ring alert: Melody/ パターン 1(Pattern 1) (Incoming Call Setting), Melody/ 電話・メロディ A(Phone, melody A) (Incoming Videophone Setting) Show image: Standard image Vibrator: OFF Lighting: ON/Down(fast)

Example Setting operations when receiving a voice call

1 MENU 8 6 2

■ **Setting operations when receiving a videophone call:** MENU 8 7 2

2 Select each item to set

Ring alert : Sets a ring tone for an incoming call.
- When ***OFF*** is selected, no ring tone emits.
- When ***Melody*** or ***Movie ringtone*** is selected, select a melody or video/i-motion file.

Show image : Sets an image displayed for an incoming call.
- When ***Select image*** is selected, select ***Select image*** in ***List images*** field to set an image.
- When ***i-motion*** is selected, select a video/i-motion file from the folder list. If the folder list is not displayed, select ***Select image*** in ***List images*** field.

Vibrator : Sets the vibration for an incoming call.

Lighting : Sets the lighting pattern of keys for incoming calls.

- Playing and checking a melody or video/i-motion file when selecting ☛P104

3 Press

INFORMATION

- Setting Created animation for the image displays the first frame.
- When the video/i-motion with sound only (i-motion without image such as singer's vocals) is set for ***Ring alert***, if ***Show image*** is reset to the video/i-motion with image only or Flash movie, the ring alert sounds by *パターン1* (for voice call) or *電話・メロディA* (for videophone call).
- Some video/i-motion may be unable to be set for the image. Also, the video/i-motion with sound cannot be set.

Setting the priority screen for incoming calls during a call or packet communication

Priority Comm Mode

This function allows you to select the voice call or packet communication screen to be given priority when a packet communication (or voice) call is received during a voice (or packet communication) call.

- The screen change caused by this function does not interrupt the call or packet communication.

Default No Set Up

1 MENU 8 6 8 1

2 1 to 3

No Set Up : Displays the screen for the latest incoming call/communication without setting the priority.

Voice call : Displays the voice call talking screen by priority.

Packet : Displays the incoming packet communication screen by priority.

- When there is incoming packet communication in i-mode, the voice call talking screen is displayed by priority regardless of this setting.

Screen display

The following screen is displayed depending on the setting for Priority Comm Mode:

Setting	Incoming packet communication (other than i-mode) during voice call*1, *2	Incoming voice call during packet communication*3
No Set Up	Voice call talking screen	Incoming voice call screen
Voice call		
Packet	Incoming packet communication screen	Screen displayed during i-mode communication

*1 The screen displayed for incoming calls depends on the setting for ***Arrival call act***. ☛P304

*2 Packet communication in modes other than i-mode does not include receiving of i-mode Mail, SMS and Message R/F.

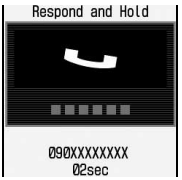
*3 Packet communication in modes other than i-mode cannot be received during i-mode communication. ☛P340

Putting incoming calls on hold when you cannot answer right away

Response and Hold

- Callers are charged for the time spent on hold.

1 [☎] while receiving a call



Incoming voice call on hold

Incoming videophone call on hold

The incoming call is put on hold (Response and Hold). The other party hears the response hold guidance.
For videophone calls, the response hold image is displayed on your and the other party's terminals.

2 [☎] when you are ready to answer the call

- Press [i] or [☎] for a videophone call. Press [✉] to send the substitute image to the other party. ☛P82
- When you press [☎] or the other party hangs up during Response and Hold, the call is ended.

INFORMATION

● When you use Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service, you can switch to Voice Mail or Call Forwarding by pressing [MENU] and selecting ***Voice Mail*** or ***Call Forwarding*** while receiving a call.

Setting a response hold guidance

Status Message

You can record your own voice as a response hold guidance.

- One guidance of up to about 10 seconds long can be recorded.
- While a voice or videophone call is during Response and Hold, the guidance set by this function is played.

Default Standard

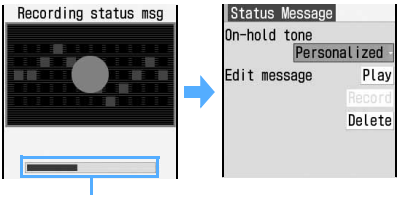
Example Setting a recorded guidance

1 [MENU] [8] [6] [4]

2 Select *On-hold tone* field ▶ [2]

- To reset to the default guidance: [1] ▶ Go to Step 4

3 Select *Record* in *Edit message* field ▶ Speak a response hold guidance after a tone



Indication of the allowable recording time

Recording will start after a message is displayed.

- An end tone (beep) sounds in about 10 seconds from the start of recording.
- To stop the recording: ⊙
- To check the recorded guidance: Select ***Play***
- ***Record*** cannot be selected when a recorded guidance has already been registered. Select ***Delete***, select ***Yes*** and record after deleting the recorded guidance.

4 Press

INFORMATION

- If you delete the recorded guidance, the default guidance is restored.
- If ***Standard*** is set, the guidance "I cannot answer the phone right now. Please wait or call back later (in Japanese)" is played for the other party during Response and Hold.

Setting an on-hold tone

On-hold Tone

- While a voice or videophone call is during On-hold, the melody set by this function is played.
- This setting is also reflected to the on-hold tone set in Sound Setting.

Default 保留音・ボイス (On-hold tone, voice)

1 MENU 8 6 9 3

2 2 or 3

- To reset to the default melody: 1
- To play a melody: Highlight a melody ▶

INFORMATION

- The volume of the on-hold tone cannot be changed.

Using Public mode (Driving mode)

Public mode (Driving mode)

Public mode is an automatic answering service considering etiquette in highly public places. When Public mode is activated and a call is received, a guidance is played and informs the caller that the called party is driving or in an area (train, bus, movie theater, etc.) where use of the phone should be refrained and cannot answer the call. Then the call is disconnected.

- Public mode can be activated/canceled only in standby (including when 圏外 (outside service area) is displayed on the screen).
- Even in Public mode you can make calls as normal.
- This function cannot be used during data communication.

Activating Public mode (Driving mode)

1 * (for over a second)

Public mode is activated and 🚗 appears.

When a call is received, a guidance is played saying "The person you are calling is currently driving or in an area where cellphone should not be used. Please try again later".

- When Silent Mode is activated at the same time, Public mode takes precedence.

■ **Canceling: * (for over a second)**

■ **When Public mode (Driving mode) is activated**

No ring tone plays when your FOMA terminal receives a call. 1 appears on the screen and the call is recorded in the received call history.

The caller hears a guidance informing that you are driving or in an area where use of the mobile phone should be refrained and the call is then ended.

■ **Operation when receiving calls in Public mode (Driving mode) with network service activated**

Service	Receiving voice calls	Receiving videophone calls
Voice Mail Service	The caller hears the Public mode guidance and the call is then connected to the Voice Mail Service Center.	The call is disconnected without being connected to the Voice Mail Service Center.
Call Forwarding Service	The caller hears the Public mode guidance and the call is then forwarded to the specified destination. Whether the caller hears the guidance or not depends on the setting for Call Forwarding Service. When the guidance is on, the Public mode guidance is played. When the guidance is off, no guidance is played.	The call is forwarded to the specified destination without the Public mode video guidance. If the destination party uses the phone not compatible with videophone, the call is disconnected.
Call Waiting Service	The caller hears the Public mode guidance and the call is then disconnected.	The caller sees the Public mode video guidance and the call is then disconnected.
Nuisance Call Blocking Service	If registered as nuisance caller, the caller hears a guidance indicating that the call cannot be connected and the call is then disconnected.	If registered as nuisance caller, the caller sees a video guidance indicating that the call cannot be connected and the call is then disconnected.
Caller ID Request Service	• The caller who has not notified the caller ID hears a guidance requesting caller ID and the call is then disconnected. • The caller who has notified the caller ID hears the Public mode guidance and the call is then disconnected.	• The caller who has not notified the caller ID sees a video guidance requesting caller ID and the call is then disconnected. • The caller who has notified the caller ID sees the Public mode video guidance and the call is then disconnected.

INFORMATION

● In Public mode, the following sounds are disabled. In addition, the vibrator does not operate or the keys do not light/flash for incoming calls/mails, etc.
- Ring tone
- Alarm
- Schedule alarm
- Low battery alert
- i-αppli sound
- Charge alert
- Alarm for Call Cost Limit*1

*1 Even if ***Alert*** for Call Cost Limit is set to ***ON*** and an alarm is set, a message is not displayed.

● Even in Public mode, the following sounds are played:
- Keypad sound
- Shutter sound while shooting with Camera or Movie Camera
- Shutter sound during recording by Sound Recorder

● In Public mode, the i-channel information does not scroll on the standby display.

● Even if a mail or Message R/F is received, the receiving screen and reception result screen are not displayed. But, when Check i-mode Message is performed, these screens are displayed. If a mail or Message R/F is received at this time, the receiving screen is displayed and the reception result is updated when receiving is completed.

● When FOMA terminal is turned off or outside the service area, the caller hears a guidance informing out-of-service area instead of the Public mode guidance.

● Making emergency calls (110, 119 or 118) in Public mode cancels Public mode. However, it is not canceled when emergency calls are made using videophone.

Using Public mode (power off)

Public mode (power off) is an automatic answering service considering etiquettes in highly public places. When Public mode (power off) is set and then a call is received with FOMA terminal switched off, a guidance is played and informs the caller that the called party is in an area (hospital, airplane, priority seat area on a train, etc) where the phone should be turned off and cannot answer the call. Then the call is disconnected.

Activating Public mode (power off)

1 ✱ 2 5 2 5 1 ▶ ☎

Public mode (power off) is set. There is no change on the standby display.
When you subsequently turn the power off, Public mode (power off) is activated.
In Public mode (power off) if a call is received with FOMA terminal off, a guidance is played saying "The person you are calling is currently in an area where use is prohibited. Please try again later".

■ **Canceling:** ✱ 2 5 2 5 0 ▶ ☎

■ **Checking the setting:** ✱ 2 5 2 5 9 ▶ ☎

■ When Public mode (power off) is activated

The setting is retained until Public mode (power off) is canceled by dialing "✱25250". The setting is not canceled by turning the power on.
The Public mode (power off) guidance is played even in locations outside the service area or where radio waves are hard to reach.
The caller hears a guidance informing that you are in an area where the phone should be turned off and the call is then ended.

■ Operation when receiving calls in Public mode (power off) with network service activated

Service	Receiving voice calls	Receiving videophone calls
Voice Mail Service	The caller hears the Public mode (power off) guidance and the call is then connected to the Voice Mail Service Center.	The call is disconnected without being connected to the Voice Mail Service Center.
Call Forwarding Service	The caller hears the Public mode (power off) guidance and the call is then forwarded to the specified destination. Whether the caller hears the guidance or not depends on the setting for Call Forwarding Service. When the guidance is on, the Public mode guidance is played. When the guidance is off, no guidance is played.	The call is forwarded to the specified destination without the Public mode (power off) video guidance. If the destination party uses the phone not compatible with videophone, the call is disconnected.
Nuisance Call Blocking Service	If registered as nuisance caller, the caller hears a guidance indicating that the call cannot be connected and the call is then disconnected.	If registered as nuisance caller, the caller sees a video guidance indicating that the call cannot be connected and the call is then disconnected.
Caller ID Request Service	• The caller who has not notified the caller ID hears a guidance requesting caller ID and the call is then disconnected. • The caller who has notified the caller ID hears the Public mode (power off) guidance and the call is then disconnected.	• The caller who has not notified the caller ID sees a video guidance requesting caller ID and the call is then disconnected. • The caller who has notified the caller ID sees the Public mode (power off) video guidance and the call is then disconnected.

Allowing the caller to leave message when you cannot answer the call

Answer Machine

By setting Answer Machine, you can play the greeting message and record the caller's message when you cannot answer the call.

- Up to 4 messages can be recorded for voice/videophone calls in total, a maximum of about 30 seconds for each.
- For voice calls, the caller's voice is recorded. For videophone calls, the caller's voice and image are recorded.
- The recording date and time and the phone number are also recorded. However, when the date and time have not been set or the phone number is not notified, they are not recorded.
- You can set the time interval between the reception of the call and the start of the greeting.

・The greeting in your own voice can be recorded.
・It is advisable that the contents of recorded messages be separately written down in a notebook, etc. Recorded data may be lost due to failure, repair, change of model or other handlings of FOMA terminal. If the data should be erased, DoCoMo assumes no responsibility for the loss of any data.

Menu 4611

Setting Answer Machine

Default Deactivate

1 ▶ 1 1

appears on the standby display.

■ **Canceling:** ▶ 1 2

Replying with Quick Record Message

When Answer Machine has not been set to start, you can activate this function only once by holding down for over a second while receiving a call. This operation does not set Answer Machine to start.

INFORMATION

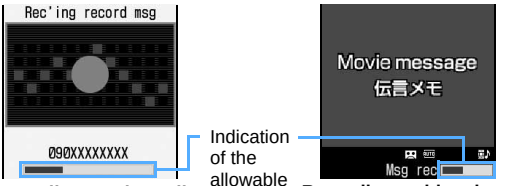
● When the number of recorded messages reaches 4, is indicated on the standby display. The icon does not disappear even if Answer Machine is canceled.
● If there are already 4 recorded messages, Answer Machine cannot be set. If you attempt to activate Quick Record Message by holding down for over a second while receiving a call, the warning tone (rapid beeps) sounds and the ring tone keeps sounding. Delete unnecessary recorded messages and set again.

Receiving a call while Answer Machine is set

1 A call is received

After the ring tone sounds according to Greeting Response Time, the greeting screen is displayed.
・When the greeting message is set to ***Preinstalled***, the caller hears the guidance “I cannot answer the phone right now, please leave your name and message after the beep (in Japanese)”. Set ***Personalized*** to play a recorded guidance.

2 Recording the caller’s message starts



Recording a voice call message
Indication of the allowable recording time
Recording a videophone call message

・A beep announces the caller the start and end of the recording. And when about 25 seconds have elapsed since the start of recording, rapid beeps sound to indicate that the end of recording is approaching.

3 When the recording is completed, the call is disconnected

1 with the number of recorded messages is indicated.

INFORMATION

- When FOMA terminal is turned off or outside the service area, Answer Machine does not operate. Use Voice Mail Service (pay service).
- Answer Machine does not operate and the ring tone keeps sounding when 4 messages have already been recorded. If Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service is activated, each service starts its operation.
- Public mode (Driving mode) takes precedence over Answer Machine. In Public mode (Driving mode), Answer Machine does not operate.
- The recording may be disrupted or the screen may be distorted if the signal conditions are poor.
- Another call received while playing the greeting or recording a message is rejected and playing or recording continues. If you are subscribing to Voice Mail Service, Call Forwarding Service or Call Waiting Service, the rejected incoming call is recorded in the received call history.
- You can answer a call even while playing the greeting or recording a message. Press [ ] to answer a voice call. For a videophone call, press [ ] or [ ] to answer by sending your image or [ ] to answer by sending the substitute image. If the message is being recorded at this time, the contents before answering the call will not be recorded.

Menu 4613

Setting the response time until the greeting starts

Greeting Response Time

Default 008 Sec

1 [ ] ▶ [1] [3]

2 Enter the response time (0 to 120 seconds)

- To increase or decrease the entered values: [ ]

INFORMATION

- When Auto Answer (when a flat type earphone/microphone set with switch (optional) is connected), Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service and this function are set simultaneously, the priority depends on the ringing times set for each service and function. To give priority to Answer Machine, the response time for this function should be set shorter than the ringing times set for Auto Answer, Voice Mail Service and Call Forwarding Service. Note that Answer Machine may not be given priority depending on the signal conditions. In this case, answer a call with Quick Record Message.
- The delayed time of Auto Answer and the response time of Answer Machine cannot be set to the same time period.

Menu 4614

Setting a greeting message

Greeting Setting

You can record your own voice as a greeting message.

- One greeting of up to about 10 seconds long can be recorded.

Default Preinstalled

Example Setting a recorded greeting

1 [ ] ▶ [1] [4]

2 Select *Set Greeting* field ▶ [2]

- To reset to the default greeting: [1] ▶ Go to Step 4

3 Select *Record* in *Edit greeting* field ▶ Speak a greeting message after a tone

- The operation procedure is the same as when recording a response hold guidance. ☛P64

4 Press

INFORMATION

● If you delete the recorded greeting, the default greeting is restored.

Menu 462

Playing recorded messages

You can play or delete recorded messages from the list.

• Unplayed recorded messages, if any, can be played quickly from the standby display. ☛P35

1 ▶ 2

On the recorded message list screen, the recording date and time and the caller's phone number appear.

: Unplayed voice call message : Unplayed videophone call message

: Played voice call message : Played videophone call message

• If the caller's phone number is notified, it is displayed. Otherwise the reason for no caller ID is displayed. And if the caller is registered in the phonebook, the name is displayed.

2 Select a recorded message to play

Indication of the playing time

Playing a voice call message

• During playback, the following operations are available:

: Adjust volume : Stop

: Speakerphone on/off (for voice call messages only)

■ **Deleting:**

① **Highlight a recorded message** ▶ MENU 2 1

• To delete all: MENU 2 2

② **Select *Yes***

■ **Registering an entry in the phonebook:**

① **Highlight a recorded message** ▶ MENU 4

• To add to an existing phonebook entry: MENU 5

② 1 **or** 2 ▶ **Register the name or address** ☛P87, P90

• To add to an existing phonebook entry: 1 or 2 ▶ Select an entry ▶ Edit the data ☛P97

■ **Making a call: Highlight a recorded message** ▶ **(for voice call) or (for videophone call)**

• You can make calls by setting conditions. ☛P53

3 Select whether to delete the played recorded message

• To delete the recorded message: Select ***Yes***

Making/Receiving Videophone Calls

Videophone 72
Making videophone calls 72
Receiving videophone calls 75
Using Chara-den 77
Setting images to be sent to the other party 77
Customizing the display settings during a videophone call 80
Changing the videophone settings ..... Videophone Settings 81
Setting of switching between a voice call and videophone call ..... Notify Switchable Mode 83
Using the videophone by connecting with the external device ..... External Device 84

Videophone

The videophone function is available between terminals that support DoCoMo's videophone. By using the videophone, you can talk on the phone while looking each other images. It is also possible to display a still image, substitute image, Chara-den, etc. instead of your self image.

DoCoMo videophone specifications are compliant with "3G-324M*1 that has been standardized by the international standard 3GPP*2". Note that the connection with videophones of different specifications cannot be established.

*1 3G-324M···An international standard for the 3rd generation mobile videophone

*2 3GPP (3rd Generation Partnership Project)···Area standardization organization established to develop the standard technology specification for the 3rd generation mobile communications systems (IMT-2000).

- The following 2 communication speeds are provided for the videophone:
  - 64K: Connects at communication speed of 64 kbps. •32K: Connects at communication speed of 32 kbps.

Screen display during a videophone call

In-camera used

1	**Main screen**	Image of the other party is displayed by default.
2	**Communication speed**	64K: 64K　32K: 32K
3	**Speakerphone function**	: On　No icon: Off
4	**Sub screen**	Your image is displayed by default.
5	**Zoom**	×1 to ×4: Normal to 4x (out-camera)
6	**Status**	: Sending your self image : Sending the camera-off image : Sending Chara-den　: Sending a frame : Sending a still image　: On-hold : On Response and Hold　: Recording a message : Recording a movie memo
	Action mode	ACTION: Action　PARTS: Action of parts
7	**Scene mode/ effect**	AUTO: Full auto, etc. The icons for other modes/effects ☛P78
8	**Quality of outgoing image**	No icon: Normal　HQ: Prefer image quality : Prefer motion speed
9	**Sound/image sending and receiving status**	: Sending and receiving sound : Sending and receiving image : Sending and receiving sound/image
10	**Switch to v-phone**	No icon: Switching is not available.　: Switching is available.
11	**Call duration**	Displayed in the HH:MM:SS format

Making videophone calls

- International videophone calls are available by using the DoCoMo's international call service "WORLD CALL". ☛P54

1 Enter the phone number

- Entering method is the same as for voice calls.

2

Your image is displayed while being connected.

- If the phone of the other party is busy, you will hear a busy signal. The message, ***Busy.*** or ***Connection failed.*** is displayed on the screen. Press [☎] to end the call and call again later. You can call back quickly by using Redial.
- When the substitute image is Chara-den, Chara-den may not be displayed. If this happens, the default image for the substitute image setting is sent to the other party. ☛P82
- Charging begins when ***Connected to videophone***. is displayed.

3 Talk with the other party

The other party's voice comes out of the speaker (Speakerphone function).

- To put the call on hold: [●]
- To turn on/off the speakerphone function: [✉] or [☎]
- Depending on the other party's settings, the substitute image may be displayed.
- To disable turning on the speakerphone function automatically, change the setting in Videophone Settings or activate Silent Mode.

4 [☎] when you finish the call

Operations during videophone calls

The following operations can be performed from the submenu. Hold down [📷] for over a second during a videophone call to record the other party's voice and image (Movie Memo).

Submenu item	Description	Page
[1] ***Change to voice***	Switches from a videophone call to a voice call.	P74
[2] ***Camera settings***	Applies effects to the image to be sent and adjusts its brightness and color density.	P79
[3] ***Frame/ Subst. image***	Adds a frame on the image to be sent or sends Chara-den or a still image.	P78 P77 P79
[4] ***Switch camera view***	Switches between the in-camera and out-camera.	P80
[5] ***Image quality***	Sets the quality of sent and received images.	P78
[6] ***V. phone settings***	Changes the settings for the screen displayed during videophone calls.	P81
[7] ***Send DTMF***	Transmits tone signals (DTMF) during videophone calls.	P75
[8] ***Volume***	Adjusts the earpiece volume.	P61

INFORMATION

- You can also make a videophone call by performing in order of Steps 2, Step 1. When [☎] is pressed and the phone number is entered, a videophone call is made automatically after about 5 seconds.
- You can make videophone calls by setting conditions. ☛P53
- When ***Speakerphone*** is set to ***ON*** in Videophone Settings and Silent Mode is active, if you make a videophone call, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to switch to the speakerphone call. Select ***YES*** or ***NO***.
- When you talk on a videophone call while a flat type earphone/microphone set with switch (optional) is connected, the voice sounds from the connected earphone/microphone regardless of the setting of ***Speakerphone*** in Videophone Settings.
- Please note that digital communication charges apply for videophone calls instead of voice call charges even if the substitute image or Chara-den is used.

● If a videophone call cannot be made, one of the following message is displayed on the screen and then the standby display returns. Note that the displayed message may not reflect the status of the other party's terminal correctly, depending on the type of the terminal and/or the network service used by the other party.

Message	Description
Check number, then redial.	You dialed the phone number not used.
Busy.	The other party is busy or during a packet communication.
Out of service area/power off.	The other party is outside the service area or the other party's terminal is turned off.
Set caller ID to ON.	This message is displayed in case connecting without notifying the caller ID (when accessing to V-Live or visualnet).
Redial using voice call.	This message is displayed when the other party sets Voice Mail Service or sets Call Forwarding Service and the forwarding destination is the terminal which is not compatible with videophone.
Connection failed.	Set Caller ID Notification to ***Notify*** and dial again. ・The message may appear in cases other than the above.

● If a videophone call made is not connected, redialing is automatically performed as described below:

Call type	Auto redial as voice setting	Redialing operation
64K	**ON**	64K → 32K → Voice call
	OFF	64K → 32K → Disconnection
32K	**ON**	32K → Voice call
	OFF	32K → Disconnection

When a videophone call has been made by specifying a multi number, redialing will be made with the specified number.

If redialing as voice call occurs, voice call charges apply.

● When there is an incoming call during dialing or redialing a videophone call, the dialing may be interrupted and the ring tone may sound.

● Even if sending/receiving the voice or image is aborted and (only voice) or (only image) is displayed during a videophone call, the call may be continued as it is.

● Videophone at 32K is intended for connection with devices such as PHS with which videophone calls at 64K may not be available depending on the network condition. When a videophone call is made at 64K, the call type is automatically switched to 32K when redialing if the communication environment of the other party is found to be 32K area. When ***ON*** is set for ***Auto redial as voice*** in Videophone Settings, redialing at 32K is also given priority. ☛P81

・Even if a call is made at 32K, the charge is the same as digital communication charge at 64K.

● If a videophone call is made to emergency calls (110, 119 or 118) from FOMA terminal while ***Auto redial as voice*** is set to ***ON*** in Videophone Settings, the call automatically switches to a voice call.

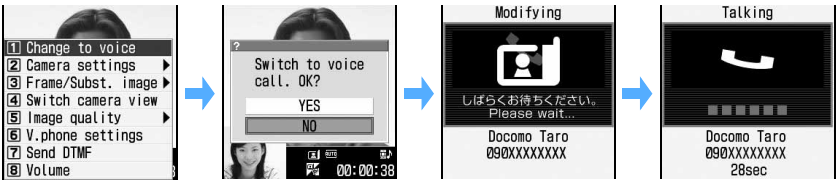
Switching from a videophone call to a voice call

You can switch to a voice call by operating from the submenu during a videophone call when the other party's terminal can switch calls. Switching can be performed only from the terminal which made the videophone call.

・This operation can be performed between the terminals that support switching between voice call/ videophone call.

・To switch to a voice call, the other party needs to set ***Indication ON*** of Notify Switchable Mode in advance. ☛P83

1 MENU 1 during a videophone call ▶ Select *YES*



- A guidance informing that the call is being switched is played during switching.
- Select ***NO*** to return to the videophone talking screen.

INFORMATION

- For precautions when switching between a voice and videophone call, see INFORMATION in “Switching from a voice call to a videophone call”. ☛P51
- Switching from a voice call to a videophone call ☛P51

Transmitting tone signals (DTMF)

Send DTMF

You can input tone signals (DTMF) while sending your self image ( ), the camera-off image ( ) or Chara-den ( ).

- Tone signals may not be received depending on the receiver’s device.

1 MENU 7 during a call ▶ Enter with dial keys

The entered number is displayed and the tone signals (DTMF) are transmitted.

- To cancel transmitting tone signals (DTMF): ｸﾘｱ/ｼﾌﾄ
- The tone signals (DTMF) are transmitted by pressing dial keys without pressing MENU 7 while your self image is being sent.
- When the tone signals (DTMF) are transmitted, the set frame and still image are canceled.
- Because tone signals (DTMF) are transmitted using dial keys, you cannot use dial keys to make actions while sending Chara-den.

Receiving videophone calls

- You cannot receive a videophone call by pressing the keys other than , or (Any Key Answer is unavailable).

1 A call is received

The ring tone sounds, the display light turns on and the keys light/flash.

- The caller’s phone number, name, image or video/i-motion will be displayed on the screen according to the dialing condition of the caller or the FOMA terminal settings.
- To put the incoming call on hold:

2 or

Your image is displayed while being connected.

■ **Receiving a videophone call with the substitute image:**

The substitute image is sent to the other party when the videophone call is connected.

- When Chara-den is set as the substitute image, Chara-den may not be displayed. If this happens, the default image for the substitute image setting is sent to the other party.

3 Talk with the other party

The other party's voice comes out of the speaker (Speakerphone function).

- To put the call on hold: ⊙
- To turn on/off the speakerphone function: ✉ or 📞
- Depending on the other party's settings, the substitute image may be displayed.
- To disable turning on the speakerphone function automatically, activate Silent Mode or change the setting in Videophone Settings.

4 📞 when you finish the call

Operations while receiving calls

You can perform the following operations from the submenu:

Submenu item	Description
1 ***Call Rejection***	Disconnects the call (the caller does not pay for the call).
2 ***Call Forwarding****1	Forwards the incoming call to the forwarding phone number.

*1 Valid when you use Call Forwarding Service and the forwarding phone number has been set.

- You can operate FOMA terminal with the following keys while receiving a call:
  - 📷 (for over a second): Record a message (Quick Record Message)
  - 📷: Stop the ring tone/vibrator
  - ⊙ : Adjust the ring volume

INFORMATION

- When ***Speakerphone*** is set to ***ON*** in Videophone Settings and Silent Mode is active, if you receive a videophone call, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to switch to the speakerphone call. Select ***YES*** or ***NO***.
- When a videophone call arrives while a flat type earphone/microphone set with switch (optional) is connected, the voice sounds from the connected earphone/microphone regardless of the setting for ***Speakerphone*** in Videophone Settings.
- When a videophone call arrives, it is not connected if the forwarding destination is not set to a videophone terminal compliant with the 3G-324M even if Call Forwarding Service is activated. Check the specifications of the forwarding destination when setting it.
- Changing the operations during incoming videophone calls ☛P62

Receiving a call by switching from a videophone call to a voice call

- The switching operation can be performed only from the side which made the videophone call. It cannot be performed from the side which received the videophone call.
- To receive the request of switching to a voice call, set ***Indication ON*** of Notify Switchable Mode in advance. ☛P83

1 Receive the request of switching to a voice call during a videophone call

The videophone call is switched to a voice call automatically.

- A guidance informing that the call is being switched is played during switching.

Using Chara-den

A character can be sent instead of your image when making a videophone call. The character can be moved by pressing dial keys during a videophone call. Some characters move their mouth in time with the sounds picked up by the microphone.

1 MENU 3 2 1 **during a call**

2 **Select a folder ▶ Select Chara-den**

©BVIG
Chara-den

- If you press dial keys while sending Chara-den as the substitute image, the character performs the action in accordance with the number of the keys. The following operations can also be performed:
  - 0 : Cancel action
  - * : Display the action list
    - Select action to move the character.
  - * (for over a second) : Switch action modes (Action/Action of parts)
- The action list of Chara-den set by default ☛P329

INFORMATION

● Some Chara-den has no actions.

Setting images to be sent to the other party

The following items can be set:

Item	Page
Switching the outgoing image between your self image and the substitute image	P77
Setting the quality of outgoing and incoming images	P78
Setting a frame on the outgoing image	P78
Applying special effects to outgoing images	P78

Item	Page
Adjusting the brightness/color density of outgoing images	P79
Sending the still image/camera-off image	P79
Switching display magnifications	P80
Switching the in-camera and out-camera	P80

Switching the outgoing image between your self image and the substitute image

1 **during a call**

©BVIG
The substitute image

- Each press switches the image between your self image( ) and the substitute image (or). ☛P82
- When Chara-den is set as the substitute image, Chara-den may not be displayed. If this happens, the default image for the substitute image in Image Setting is sent to the other party. ☛P82

Setting the quality of outgoing and incoming images

- Setting ***Prefer motion spd*** makes motions smoother in a little lower-definition image.
- Setting ***Prefer img qual*** makes motions a little slower in a higher-definition image.

Default Normal

Example Setting the quality of outgoing image

1 MENU 5 1 **during a call**

- Pressing ○ during a call also switches the quality of outgoing images.

■ **Setting the quality of incoming image:** MENU 5 2 **during a call**

2 1 **to** 3

Setting a frame on the outgoing image

Frame

The frame can be set while sending your self image.

- Only the frame with the display size of 176 x 144 (QCIF) or smaller can be selected. As for downloaded frames, only the frame with the display size of 176 x 144 (QCIF) can be selected.

1 MENU 3 1 **during a call**

2 Select a frame

- While the in-camera is used, the mirror image (left-right reversed image) is displayed on the screen and the normal image (right directed image) is sent to the other party. While the out-camera is used, the same image as displayed on the screen is sent to the other party.
- To cancel sending the frame: ○
- Frames set by default ☛P328

Applying special effects to outgoing images

Scene Mode/Effect

You can apply the following effects to outgoing images. These settings can be changed only while sending your self image.

Item	Icon	Description
1 **Full auto**	AUTO	Sends standard images.
2 **Adjust backlight**		Used when shooting subjects against the light (available with the out-camera only).
3 **Sepia**		Used for shooting in sepia colors.
4 **Monochrome**		Used for shooting in black and white.
5 **Twilight**		Used when shooting subjects in the sunset.
6 **Surf&Snow**		Suitable for shooting sea or snow with light reflection.

Default Full auto

1 MENU 2 1 **during a call**

2 1 to 6

The effect currently applied

Adjusting the brightness/color density of outgoing images

Camera Settings

You can adjust the brightness and color density in 5 levels.

- This setting is available only while your self image is being sent.
- The settings are retained even after the call is finished.

Default Brightness: level 3 Density: level 3

1 MENU 2 2 during a call ▶ Highlight *Brightness* slider ▶ ●

2 ○ to highlight *Density* slider ▶ ● ▶ 📖

- Your self image is displayed on the main screen while adjusting. You can check the change of brightness or color density as you shift the slider's position.
- If you do nothing on the terminal for some time after adjusting, the settings are not changed and the talking screen reappears.

Sending the still image/camera-off image

Select a still image or the image displayed as ***Camera off*** (camera-off image).

- This setting is not available while the frame is being sent (☛P78).
- Only the still image that is 176 x 144 (QCIF) or smaller and permitted to output from FOMA terminal can be set. Images prohibited from being output from FOMA terminal (File restriction) ☛P264

1 MENU 3 during a call ▶ Select an item

■ **Sending the camera-off image:** 3

- When the camera-off image is set, the substitute image set in Image Setting is sent. However, if Chara-den is set as the substitute image, the default image (camera-off image) is sent.

■ **Sending a still image:**

① 4 ▶ Select a folder
② Select a still image

- To display a still image: Highlight a still image ▶ 📖
- To display the previous image: ○ while sending a still image

Switching display magnifications

Zoom

• Available only while your self image is being sent and the out-camera is used.

Default normal (×1)

1 ◎ during a call

• Each press of ◎ switches the magnification of image as follows. Press ◎ to switch in the reverse order.
Normal (×1) → 2x (×2) → 4x (×4)

INFORMATION

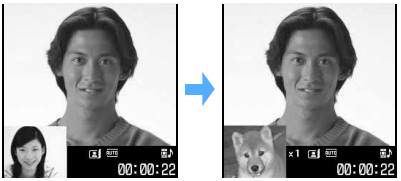
● Zooming will be canceled if you switch the out-camera to the in-camera.

Switching the in-camera and out-camera

• Available only while your self image is being sent.

Default in-camera

1 MENU 4 during a call



In-camera selected　Out-camera selected

The image through the switched camera is sent.
• Each press switches between the in-camera and out-camera.
• Even if you switch the cameras, the frame and the brightness/color density settings of outgoing image are kept.

INFORMATION

● When taking and sending images of subjects about 7 to 10 cm away with the out-camera, turn the macro mode switch to (macro). ☛P153

Customizing the display settings during a videophone call

• The settings are retained even after the call is finished.

Switching between the main screen and sub screen

Default Main screen image: other party's image　Sub screen image: your self image

1 📖 during a call

• Each press switches the main screen and sub screen by turns.

Main screen : other party's image
Sub screen : your self image
⟷
Main screen : your self image
Sub screen : other party's image

Changing the main screen size

Default large

1 📖 (for over a second) during a call

• Each press switches the screen size in the following order: large → standard → small → large → ⋯ .

Setting the screen displayed during a call

Videophone Settings during a call

Default Display setting: Both sides Sub screen: My side Screen size: Large Display light: Always on (normal)

1 MENU 6 during a call

2 Select each item to set

- For setting each item, follow Step 2 in “Changing the videophone settings”.

3 Press

Changing the videophone settings

Videophone Settings

Set the operation to be performed when a videophone call is not connected and the screen displayed during a videophone call. You can also set whether to send your self image to the other party for outgoing calls.

- The auto redial as voice function is provided to ensure the access to the other party. Setting this function on switches the call type to voice call when redialing automatically if the other party’s terminal does not support the videophone function or cannot receive a videophone call while using the mova service through Dual Network Service. Redialing does not occur, however, if you call an ISDN-sync 64 kbps or PIAFS access point, or an ISDN videophone incompatible with 3G-324M (as of February, 2006), or if you dial the wrong number. Note that some calls may require the call charge.

Default Auto redial as voice: OFF Display setting: Both sides Sub screen: My side Screen size : Large Send camera image: ON Visual preference: Normal Display light: Always on (normal) Speakerphone: ON

1 MENU 8 7 3

2 Select each item to set

Auto redial as voice : Sets whether to redial as voice call automatically when a videophone call is not connected.

Display setting : Specifies whether to display either your self image or the other party’s image or both images during a videophone call.

- If you set other than ***Both sides***, ***Sub screen*** cannot be set.

Sub screen : Specifies whether to display your self image or the other party’s image on the sub screen during a videophone call.

Screen size : Sets the main screen view size.

Send camera image : Specifies whether to send your self image to the other party for outgoing calls.

- When ***OFF*** is set, the image set in the substitute image setting will be sent.

Visual preference : Sets the quality of outgoing images.

Display light : Sets the display light during a videophone call.

- When ***Terminal settings*** is set, it operates according to the setting for Display Light Setting (☛P118).

Speakerphone : Specifies whether to turn on the speakerphone function automatically once a videophone call is connected.

3 Press

INFORMATION

- Even when ***Auto redial as voice*** is set to ***ON***, redialing may not be performed depending on the situation of the other party or the network.
- When ***Auto redial as voice*** is set to ***ON***, if you make a videophone call during a packet communication with a PC connected, the call is redialed as voice call without connecting to a videophone call. During a voice call or 64K data communication, the call is not connected to a videophone call and redialing is not performed, either.
- If redialing as voice call occurs with ***Auto redial as voice*** set to ***ON***, voice call charges apply instead of digital communication charges.
- When ***Speakerphone*** is set to ***ON*** and Silent Mode is active, if you make a videophone call, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to switch to the speakerphone call. Select ***YES*** or ***NO***.

Setting the image to be displayed during videophone calls

Image Setting

Change the images to be sent to the other party during a videophone call such as the substitute image, answer machine image, response hold image, on-hold image and movie memo image.

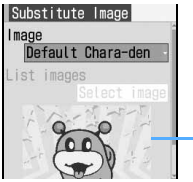
- You cannot set the following images:
  - Still image with a size larger than 176 x 144 (QCIF)
  - Animation and Created animation
  - Still image in the format other than JPEG and GIF formats
  - Image that is prohibited from being output from FOMA terminal (File restriction) ☛P264

Setting the substitute image

Default | Default Chara-den

1 MENU 8 7 4

2 1 ▶ **Select *Image* field**



Chara-den
©BVIG

■ **Setting the default Chara-den: 1**
Default Chara-den (ブンブン (Dimo)) is set.

■ **Setting the default still image: 2**
Default image (camera-off image) is set.

■ **Setting other Chara-den:**
① 3 ▶ **Select *Select image* ▶ Select a folder**
② **Select Chara-den**
- To display Chara-den: Highlight Chara-den ▶ 📖

■ **Setting other still images:**
① 4 ▶ **Select *Select image* ▶ Select a folder**
② **Select a still image**
- To display a still image: Highlight a still image ▶ 📖
- The selected image with text message on it is displayed on the other party's terminal.

3 **Press** 📖

INFORMATION

- If the Chara-den set as the substitute image is deleted, the substitute image is reset to ***Default Chara-den***. If the still image or the default Chara-den is deleted, the substitute image is reset to ***Default image***.

Changing the answer machine/response hold/on-hold/movie memo images

Default Answer machine image, Response hold image, On-hold image, Movie memo image: Default

1 MENU 8 7 4

2 2 to 5

3 Select *Image* field ▶ 2

In case of the answer machine image

- To reset to the default image: 1 ▶ Go to Step 6

4 Select *Select image* in *List images* field ▶ Select a folder

5 Select an image

- To display a still image: Highlight a still image ▶ ▣
- The selected image with text message on it is displayed on the other party's terminal.

6 Press ▣

Setting of switching between a voice call and videophone call

Notify Switchable Mode

Set whether to notify the other party's terminal that your terminal can switch between a voice call and a videophone call.

- You cannot change the setting during a voice call or videophone call.
- This setting cannot be made outside the service area. Operate the terminal in locations with good radio wave condition.

Default Indication ON: active

1 MENU 8 7 6 1

■ Deactivating: MENU 8 7 6 2

■ Checking the current setting: MENU 8 7 6 3

2 Select *Yes*

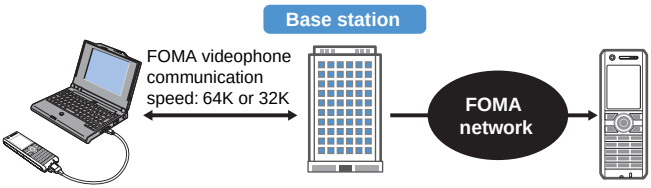
Using the videophone by connecting with the external device

External Device

By connecting FOMA terminal to an external device such as PC by the FOMA USB cable (optional), you can make and receive videophone calls from the external device.
To use this function, install a videophone application in a dedicated external device or a PC, and prepare devices such as an earphone/microphone or USB-compatible Web camera (available in market).

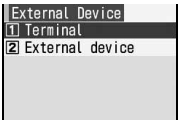
- This function is not available when FOMA terminal is not connected to an external device.
- Refer to the instruction manual of external devices for hardware requirements or setting/operating instructions of videophone applications.
- The application called “ドコモテレビ電話ソフト 2005 (DoCoMo videophone software 2005)” that is compatible with this function is available on the DoCoMo videophone software website. Visit the site below and download it:
  http://videophonesoft.nttdocomo.co.jp/

Default Terminal



1 MENU 8 7 5

2 1 or 2



INFORMATION

- A videophone call cannot be made from an external device during a voice call.
- When you subscribe to Call Waiting Service, if a videophone call is received through an external device during a voice call, it is recorded as a missed call in the received call history. The same applies when a voice call, videophone call or 64K data communication is received during a videophone call using an external device.

Phonebook

Phonebooks supported by FOMA terminal 86
Registering entries into the FOMA terminal phonebook
..... Phonebook New Entry 87
Registering entries into the UIM phonebook
..... UIM Phonebook New Entry 90
Setting group names and incoming/outgoing actions..... Group Setting 91
Making calls from the phonebook..... Phonebook Search 92
Editing phonebook entries ..... Edit Phonebook 97
Copying phonebook entries 98
Deleting phonebook entries ..... Delete Phonebook 99
Setting functions for phonebook entries 99
Protecting the secret phonebook entries..... Secret Attribute 101
Checking the number of registered phonebook entries
..... Check No. of Items 102
Using simple dialing to make calls ..... Quick Dial 102

Phonebooks supported by FOMA terminal

FOMA D702i supports the FOMA terminal phonebook and UIM phonebook.

○ : Available × : Not available

Item	FOMA terminal phonebook	UIM phonebook
The number of entries	Up to 700*1	Up to 50
Entry items		
Name/reading	Up to 32 one-byte or 16 two-byte characters for name and up to 32 one-byte characters for reading can be set.	Up to 21 one-byte or 10 two-byte characters for name and up to 25 one-byte or 12 two-byte characters for reading can be set.
Image/video	1 entry per person	×
Group	Entries can be classified into 30 groups and グループなし (No group).	Entries can be classified into 10 groups and グループなし.
Phone number/icon	Up to 5 phone numbers per person, 2,105 in total*1 of the phonebook can be set. An icon can be set for each.	Only one phone number can be set per person. Icons cannot be set.
Mail address/icon	Up to 5 mail addresses per person, 2,105 in total*1 of the phonebook can be set. An icon can be set for each.	Only one mail address can be set per person. Icons cannot be set.
Settings for incoming phone calls*2 *3	○	×
Settings for receiving mail*2	○	×
Other settings*4	○	×
Phonebook No.	○	×
Phonebook Search		
Show All Names	○	○
Group Search	○	○
Name Search	○	○
Ranking Search	○	×
Ph Book No. Search	○	×
Number Search	○	○
Secrecy Search	○	×
Various settings		
Secret Attribute	○	×
Caller ID Setting	○	×
Reject/Accept Call	○	×
Secret Code Setting	○	×
Videophone Rate Setting	○	×
Others		
Changing order of phone numbers or mail addresses/ switching phonebook Nos.	○	×
Quick Dial	○	×
Quick Mail	○	×
Mail Search	○	○
Site display	○	×
Send Ir Data	○	○

*1 The number of items that can be registered may be decreased depending on the type of data registered.
*2 Ring alert, Incoming vibrator and lighting can be set. In addition, the settings for incoming calls by groups are available.
*3 The substitute image for videophone can also be set.
*4 The following settings are available:
URL, Note, postal code, address, company name, job title and birthday

Name displays

If a call is made/received to/from a party registered in the FOMA terminal phonebook or UIM phonebook, the name registered in the phonebook is displayed on the screen displayed during making/receiving a call or talking.

In addition, the name registered in the phonebook is also displayed in the redial data, received call history, recorded messages, senders of received mail, addresses of sent/unsent mail, custom menu's person, etc. It is also displayed when you enter the phone number or mail address without searching the phonebook.

- When phonebook entries of different names with the same phone number/mail address are registered in both phonebooks, the name registered in the FOMA terminal phonebook is displayed.
- In case some different names are registered for the same phone number or mail address in the FOMA terminal phonebook, the name registered first is displayed.
- When a mail is received, if the mail address including the @ and the following domain name exactly matches a mail address registered in the phonebook, the settings of the phonebook take precedence and the name registered in the phonebook is displayed. Note that in case i-mode terminal is used for sender, even when the mail address is registered in the phonebook without the domain name "@docomo.ne.jp", the settings of the phonebook take precedence and the name registered in the phonebook is displayed. When the mail address is "mobile phone number@docomo.ne.jp", register in the phonebook without "@docomo.ne.jp".
- When SMS is received and the phone number exactly matches a phone number registered in the phonebook, the settings of the phonebook take precedence.
- If there is an incoming mail from the other party saved in the phonebook, the name registered in the phonebook is displayed as ticker on the task bar. Note that if mail is received from the other party with Secret Attribute set while not in Secret Mode, the mail address is displayed on the task bar.

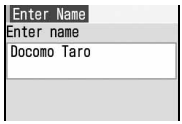
Registering entries into the FOMA terminal phonebook

Phonebook New Entry

- Maximum number of items that can be registered ☛P86
- It is recommended that you keep a separate written record of all the information you register in the phonebook.
  If you have a PC, you can use the data link software and the FOMA USB cable (optional) to send data to the PC.
- Registered data may be lost due to failure, repair, change of model or other handlings of FOMA terminal. Please be informed that DoCoMo assumes no responsibility for accidentally erased data.
- Please be informed that if you copy the data registered in FOMA terminal to a new terminal at a DoCoMo Shop when switching to a new model, etc., the specifications of some new models may not allow copying of the data.

1 MENU 4 2

2 Enter the name (Up to 32 one-byte or 16 two-byte characters)



- Kanji, hiragana, katakana, alphabetic and numeric characters, symbols and pictograms can be entered. However, symbols and pictograms entered may not appear correctly if transferred by infrared communication, etc.
- If a name is not entered, the entry cannot be registered.

3

Name and reading

Check the name and reading on ***New*** screen.

■ **Correcting the name: Select the name field ▶ Correct the name ▶**

■ **Correcting the reading: Select the reading field ▶ Correct the reading (up to 32 one-byte characters)**

- If you correct the name, the reading of the name will not automatically reflect changes made to the name.

4 ◉ to select each item to register

Image : Set an image or a video/i-motion that file is displayed when a call is made/received or the phonebook data is checked.

- To restore the default setting: 5

■ **Setting an image: 1 ▶ Select a folder ▶ Select an image**

- If an image with horizontal and vertical (or vertical and horizontal) sizes exceeding 640 x 480 is selected, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to save the reduced image. If you select ***Yes*** and set the image, the image of which size is reduced to 96 x 72 (phonebook) or smaller is saved.
- When a call is made or received or the phonebook data is checked, for animation, the playing image is displayed and for Created animation, the first image is displayed.

■ **Shooting a still image with Camera to set: 2 ▶ Shoot the still image ▶ ●**

- The size of a still image is set to 96 x 72 (phonebook) automatically.

■ **Setting video/i-motion: 3 ▶ Select a folder ▶ Select video/i-motion**

- You can set video/i-motion with only images when the size is set to 128 x 96 (Sub-QCIF) or 176 x 144 (QCIF).
- Playing and checking a video/i-motion file when selecting ☛P104

■ **Recording video with Movie Camera to set: 4 ▶ Shoot video ▶ ●**

- The size of a video is set to 176 x 144 (QCIF) automatically. Sounds are not recorded.

Group : Select a group from *グループ1* (Group 1) to *グループ30* (Group 30) and *グループなし*. *グループなし* is set by default.
Group Setting ☛P91

Phone number :

Enter the phone number including the area code (up to 26 digits) and select an icon.

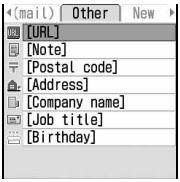
- Up to 5 phone numbers per person can be registered. Saving the first phone number displays items to be added.
- Pause (P), timed pause (T), “＋”, “＃” and sub-address delimiter (⁜) can be registered.

Mail address :

Up to 50 one-byte characters can be entered. Select an icon.

- Up to 5 addresses per person can be registered. Saving the first mail address displays items to be added.
- When the other party has registered a secret code ☛P100

5 ◉ to display the *Other* screen ▶ Select each item to set



URL : Up to 256 one-byte characters can be entered.

Note : Up to 200 one-byte or 100 two-byte characters can be entered.

Postal code : Up to 7 digits can be entered.

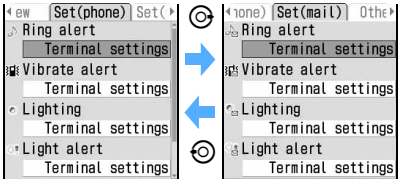
Address : Up to 200 one-byte or 100 two-byte characters can be entered.

Company name : Up to 100 one-byte or 50 two-byte characters can be entered.

Job title : Up to 100 one-byte or 50 two-byte characters can be entered.

Birthday : Set ***Set birthday*** to ***ON*** and enter the birthday in ***Birthday*** field.

6 ● to display *Set (phone/mail)* screen ▶ Select each item to set



***Set (phone)* screen** ***Set (mail)* screen**

- In case the group is set to グループなし, each items are set to ***Terminal settings***. If you select a group, the videophone substitute image is set to ***Terminal settings*** and the other items are set to ***Group settings***.
- Playing and checking a melody or video/i-motion file when selecting ☛P104

Ring alert : Select ***Movie ringtone*** or ***Melody*** to select a video/i-motion file or a melody.
- Only video/i-motion with the ring alert setting of the detail information specified to ***Available*** can be set as ring alert.
- To operate as set in the setting for phone/videophone of Sound Setting, select ***Terminal settings***.

Vibrate alert : Select ***Yes*** to set the vibrator for receiving a call or mail.
- To operate as set in Vibrator Setting, select ***Terminal settings***.

Lighting : Select ***Yes*** to set whether to light the keys for incoming calls.
- To operate as set in Alert Lighting Setting, select ***Terminal settings***.
- If ***OFF*** is set, the lighting pattern cannot be set.

Light alert : Select ***Yes*** to set the lighting pattern of the keys.
- To operate as set in Alert Lighting Setting, select ***Terminal settings***.

Substitute image **(displayed only on *Set (phone)* screen)** :
Select ***Yes*** to set Chara-den (☛P258) displayed during a call.
- To operate as set in Image Setting, select ***Terminal settings***.

7 ●

The lowest available phonebook No. is assigned automatically.

■ **Entering the phonebook No. to register: Enter a number (0 to 699)**
- Zeroes before single- or double-digit phonebook No. can be omitted.
- When a phonebook No. that has already been used to save information is specified, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to overwrite. Select ***New entry*** not to overwrite and specify another phonebook No.

8 Press ●

INFORMATION

● A phone number saved in the phonebook with preceding 184 or 186 does not allow sending of SMS even if it is selected as the address. In addition, if a party whose mail address is “mobile phone number@docomo.ne.jp” is saved in the phonebook with preceding 184 or 186, no i-mode Mail can be sent to the address.

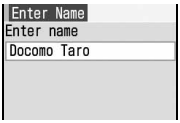
● For saving mail addresses of i-mode terminals, the @ and the following domain name “@docomo.ne.jp” of the addresses can be omitted, however, it is recommended to save the whole addresses including “@docomo.ne.jp”.
- For saving mail addresses of i-mode terminals as chat members, save the whole addresses including “@docomo.ne.jp”.
- When receiving mail, if a mail address of incoming mail including the @ and the following domain name does not match a mail address registered in the phonebook exactly, the settings specified for the phonebook data or group is not used. However, in case of a mail address of i-mode terminal, the settings specified is available without “@docomo.ne.jp”.

Registering entries into the UIM phonebook

• Maximum number of items that can be registered ☛P86

1 MENU 4 3

2 Enter the name (up to 21 one-byte or 10 two-byte characters)



- Kanji, hiragana, katakana, alphabetic and numeric characters, symbols and pictograms can be entered. However, symbols and pictograms may not appear correctly if transferred by infrared communication, etc.
- When both one- and two-byte characters or one-byte katakana are used, up to 10 characters can be registered.
- If a name is not entered, the entry cannot be registered.

3 📖

Name and reading

You can confirm the name and reading on the ***Save To UIM*** screen.

■ **Correcting the name: Select the name field ▶ Correct the name ▶ 📖**

■ **Correcting the reading: Select the reading field ▶ Correct the reading (up to 25 one-byte or 12 two-byte characters)**

- Two-byte katakana and one-byte alphanumeric characters can be used for the reading.
- When both one- and two-byte characters are used, up to 12 characters can be registered.
- If you correct the name, the reading of the name will not automatically reflect changes made to the name.

4 Select each item to register

Group : Select a group from *グループ1* to *グループ10* (Group 10) and *グループなし*. *グループなし* is set by default.

Phone number : Enter the phone number including the area code. You can enter up to 26 digits (up to 20 digits depending on the UIM type).

- Only one phone number can be registered. No icon can be set.
- Pause (P), “＋”, “＃” and sub-address delimiter (*) can be registered. Timed pause (T) can be entered but cannot be registered.

Mail address : Up to 50 one-byte characters can be entered.

- Only one mail address can be registered. No icon can be set.

5 Press 📖

INFORMATION

● For saving mail addresses of i-mode terminals, the @ and the following domain name “@docomo.ne.jp” of the addresses can be omitted, however, it is recommended to save the whole addresses including “@docomo.ne.jp”. For saving mail addresses of i-mode terminals as chat members, save the whole addresses including “@docomo.ne.jp”.

Setting group names and incoming/outgoing actions

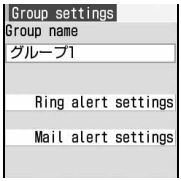
You can change the group name of the FOMA terminal phonebook or UIM phonebook and set the ring tone by group in the FOMA terminal phonebook.

- In Group Setting of the UIM phonebook, only the group name can be changed.
- As for *グループなし*, the group name cannot be changed or the incoming/outgoing action cannot be set.

1 MENU 4 1 2

- To change the UIM phonebook group names: MENU 4 1 2 ✉

2 Highlight a group ▶ MENU 2



3 Set the group name

- You can enter up to 20 one-byte or 10 two-byte characters for group names in the FOMA terminal phonebook.
- You can enter up to 21 one-byte or 10 two-byte characters for group names in the UIM phonebook. Note that when both one- and two-byte characters or one-byte katakana are used, up to 10 characters can be registered. Go to Step 5.

4 Select each item to set

- For setting call images, follow Step 4 of “Registering entries into the FOMA terminal phonebook”. ☛P88
  For setting the other items, follow Step 6 of “Registering entries into the FOMA terminal phonebook”. ☛P89

Ring alert settings : Sets the ring alert, call image, incoming vibrator, lighting and lighting pattern, then press ✉.

- When ***Movie ringtone*** is selected for the ring tone, the call image is set to ***Sync ring alert***. Note that when the video/i-motion with only sound (i-motion with no image such as the vocals of singers) is set to ***Movie ringtone***, ***Select image***, ***Shoot still image*** or ***Back to default*** can be selected.

Mail alert settings : Sets the ring alert, vibrator, lighting and lighting pattern for incoming mails and press ✉.

5 Press ✉

INFORMATION

● The priority of incoming/outgoing actions ☛P105, P107, P116, P121

Making calls from the phonebook

You can make a call easily by calling the other party's phonebook data from the FOMA terminal phonebook or UIM phonebook.

- The phonebook data can be called by specifying the following search procedure.
  - Show All Names ☛P93
  - Group Search ☛P93
  - Name Search ☛P93
  - Ranking Search*1 ☛P94
  - Ph book No. Search*1 ☛P94
  - Number Search ☛P95
  - Column Search ☛P95
  - Secrecy Search*1 ☛P101

*1 Cannot be used in the UIM phonebook.

- The searching method can be specified by pressing [phonebook] on the standby display. ☛P96
- Also you can change the searching method by pressing [MENU] and selecting ***Search criteria*** from the phonebook list.
- By the searching method also available in the UIM phonebook, each press of [phonebook] switches the FOMA terminal phonebook list and the UIM phonebook list.
- The UIM phonebook list indicates [UIM] in front of each entry name.

1 [phonebook]

Show All Names

The first time you use the search method, the phonebook list by showing all names (Japanese syllabary order) is displayed. In case of specifying the searching method, the phonebook list is displayed by the specified method.

Icon set for the first phone number

Number of phone numbers and mail addresses registered in the selected entry

The first phone number registered in the selected entry (The part that cannot be displayed will be omitted.)

2 Highlight a party ▶ [call]

- To make a videophone call: Highlight a party ▶ [videophone]
- When several phone numbers are registered, select a phone number.

■ **Composing i-mode Mail: Highlight a party ▶ [mail]**

- When multiple mail addresses have been registered, select a mail address.
- Composing and sending i-mode Mail ☛P190
- You can also operate in the same way on the details (***TOP***) screen. The mail address registered first is set as the address. In the details (***Mail***) screen, select a mail address and press [i] or [mail].
- Operation is available in case the mail address is registered.

■ **Composing SMS: Highlight a party ▶ [mail] (for over a second)**

- When multiple phone numbers have been registered, select a phone number.
- Composing and sending SMS ☛P223
- You can also operate in the same way on the details (***TOP***) screen. The phone number registered first is set as the address. In the details (***Phone***) screen, select a phone number and press [mail].
- Operation is available in case the phone number is registered.
- You can also operate in the same way by pressing [mail] in case the mail address is not registered.

■ **Displaying sites: Select a party ▶ [i] to display the details (*Other*) screen ▶ Select a URL**

Searching mail

Example Searching received mail from the FOMA terminal phonebook

1

2 **Highlight the party** ▶ MENU 1 5 1

Received mails from the party highlighted are listed.

- For reading received/sent mail ☛P207
- To return to the phonebook list: 中/クリア or MENU 0
- Operation is also available from the details (***TOP/Mail/Phone***) screen.
- In case of the UIM phonebook, highlight the party and press MENU 1 3 1 for received mail and for sent mail, press MENU 1 3 2.

■ **To search sent mail: Highlight a party** ▶ MENU 1 5 2

INFORMATION

● You can make a call with conditions set. ☛P53

Displaying the phonebook data in order of Japanese syllabary

Show All Names

The phonebook data is displayed in the order of Japanese syllabary as shown below:
(line *あ* (a) → line *か* (ka) → line *さ* (sa) →…→*その他* (others) including alphabets, numbers, readings which start with blank, symbols and no reading).

1 MENU 4 1 1

2 ● **to select the line**

- Pressing 0 to 9, * or # instead of ● displays the line to which the dial key is assigned. For example, pressing 1 displays line *あ*. To display *その他* line, press * or #.

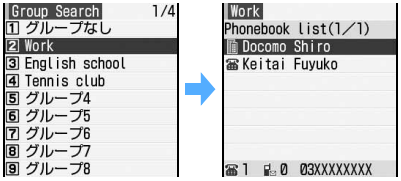
Searching by group

Group Search

- Phonebook entries registered without specifying group are saved under *グループなし*.

1 MENU 4 1 2

2 **Select a group**



- The entries in the group are displayed in the following order:
  1. Japanese syllabary order
  2. Alphabetical order
  3. Numbers
  4. Entries starting with blank
  5. Symbols
  6. No reading

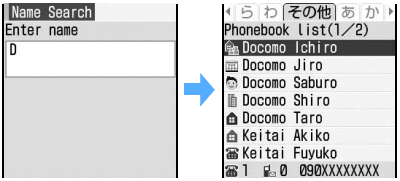
Searching by name

Name Search

Enter a name to search for the entries that start with the first character of the entered name.

1 MENU 4 1 3

2 Enter a name ▶



- You can search for the entry by entering the first part of the name. Also, even if you do not enter anything, entries are searched.

Searching the party frequently talked with or sent mail to/received mail from

Ranking Search

The phonebook data saved in the FOMA terminal phonebook can be sorted by the number of calls that took place (Call frequency rank) or by the number of i-mode Mail sent or received (Mail frequency rank).

- The total number of calls and mails are displayed up to 9999.
- Counting is also available in case a phone number or mail address registered in the phonebook is entered directly.

Example When displaying call frequency rank

1 MENU 4 1 4 1

Total number of calls

- The total number of calls is the number of calls made or received up to the present after the purchase or the last reset. Counting is started with the call made or received after the phonebook data is saved in the FOMA terminal phonebook.

■ **When displaying mail frequency ranks:** MENU 4 1 4 2

- The total number of mails is the number of mails sent or received up to the present after the purchase or the last reset. Counting is started with the i-mode Mail sent or received after the phonebook data is saved in the FOMA terminal phonebook.

INFORMATION

● When the total number of multiple entries are the same, the entries are displayed in the following order:

1. Japanese syllabary order
2. Alphabetical order
3. Numbers
4. Entries starting with blanks
5. Symbols
6. No reading

Resetting the number of calls/mails

1 Search the phonebook ▶ Highlight a party ▶ MENU 8 3

2 Select *Yes*

- The total number of calls, date and time of the last call, total number of mails, and date and time of the last mail for each phonebook entry are reset.

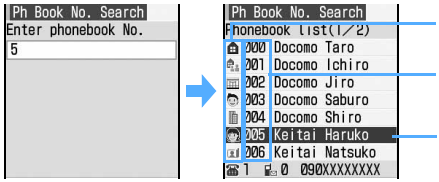
Searching by phonebook No.

Ph Book No. Search

Enter a phonebook No. from the FOMA terminal phonebook to search for the entry with the specified phonebook No. Also, you can search the entries without entering anything.

1 MENU 4 1 5

2 Enter a phonebook No. ▶ 📖



- Zeroes before single- or double-digit phonebook No. can be omitted.

Searching by phone number

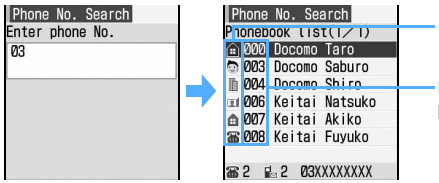
Number Search

Enter only a part of phone number to search for the phone numbers that contain it. Also, you can search the entries without entering anything.

1 MENU 4 1 6

- Searching the UIM phonebook: MENU 4 1 📖 4

2 Enter a part of phone number ▶ 📖



INFORMATION

- When multiple phonebook entries are available with Number Search, the entries in the FOMA terminal phonebook are displayed in the order of the phonebook No. The entries in the UIM phonebook are displayed in the following order:

1. Japanese syllabary order
2. Alphabetical order
3. Numbers
4. Entries starting with blanks
5. Symbols
6. No reading

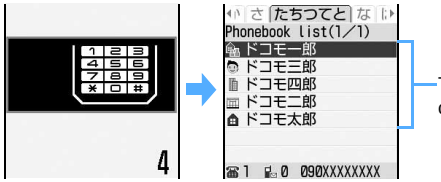
Searching by Column Search quickly

Search for the phonebook data by the characters assigned to the dial key 0 to 9.

- The previously used phonebook (the FOMA terminal phonebook or UIM phonebook) is searched.

Example Searching for “ドコモ (DoCoMo)”

1 4 📖



- In the search result screen, pressing 0 to 9, #, * or ◎ switches lines.

Specifying the searching method

The searching method displayed by pressing [Phonebook] on the standby display can be specified.

- Secrecy Search cannot be specified.

Default | Show all names

1 [MENU] [4] [1]

✔ is attached on the specified item of searching method.

2 Select the searching method ▶ [MENU]

- The searching method for the UIM phonebook cannot be selected.

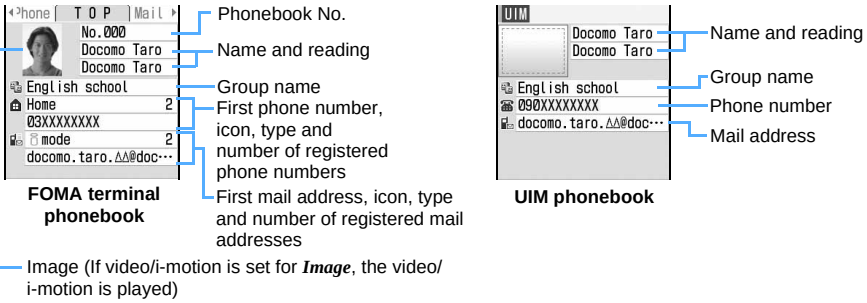
INFORMATION

● In case of searching the UIM phonebook last time, the UIM phonebook is searched by the specified searching method. However, when specifying the method unavailable for the UIM phonebook, the phonebook list of the UIM phonebook (Japanese syllabary order) appears.

Checking phonebook details

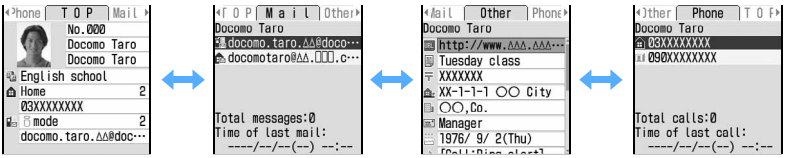
1 Search the phonebook ▶ Select the phonebook data

- To display the details screen for the previous/next phonebook entry: ◎
- For the entry with Reject/Accept Call, Caller ID Setting or a secret code set, ! is indicated to the right side of the phonebook No.



■ **Displaying details of registered information (only for the FOMA terminal phonebook): ◎**

- Each time ◎ is pressed, the details screen switches as follows: ***TOP*** ▶ ***Mail*** ▶ ***Other*** ▶ ***Phone***. Press ◎ to switch the screen in the reverse order.



■ **Confirming registered information of the details screen: [Phonebook]**

- To return to the previous screen: [Phonebook]

INFORMATION

● The total number of calls/mails and the date and time of the last call/mail do not count some calls or mails in case i-mode Mail could not be sent or the other party did not reply due to the radio wave conditions, etc.

Editing phonebook entries

Edit Phonebook

You can edit or copy the phonebook data and change the order of the phone numbers and mail addresses in the data. In addition, the phonebook Nos. for the phonebook data can be switched.

Editing saved phonebook entries

1 Search the phonebook ▶ Highlight a party ▶ MENU 3

2 Edit the phonebook data

- For details:
  Follow the procedure from Step 3 of “Registering entries into the FOMA terminal phonebook”. ☛P87
  Follow the procedure from Step 3 of “Registering entries into the UIM phonebook”. ☛P90

3 Press 📖

- In case of the FOMA terminal phonebook, the phonebook No. entry screen is displayed. A screen selecting registering method appears after entering the phonebook No. (0 to 699) Select ***Overwrite*** or ***New entry***.
  - When ***Overwrite*** is selected, the previous phonebook data are discarded.
  - When phonebook No. of an entry is changed and selected ***New entry***, the previous entry remains, and a new entry is recorded to the phonebook. When ***New entry*** is selected without changing phonebook No., the No. entry screen reappears. Change the number if needed. ☛P89
- In case of the UIM phonebook, a screen selecting registering method appears. Select ***Overwrite*** or ***New entry***.

INFORMATION

- The data may not be overwritten when registering if “✳” is included in the phonebook data in the UIM phonebook. In that case, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to make a new entry. Select ***YES*** to register as a new entry.
- When multiple phone numbers and mail addresses are registered, if the registered phone number, other than the last one, or mail address is deleted, the following items are moved up and registered.

Copying registered information

Copied items can be pasted into the entry field on the screen such as the mail composition and phonebook registration screens.

- Copied items remain recorded in FOMA terminal until the power is turned off. They can be pasted any number of times while the power is on.
- Only one item can be recorded. Copying a new item overwrites the retained item.

1 Search the phonebook ▶ Highlight a party ▶ MENU 6

2 1 to 8

FOMA terminal phonebook

The data of selected item is recorded temporarily.

3 Display the character entry screen to be pasted ▶ Paste the characters

INFORMATION

- On the FOMA terminal phonebook details screen, the UIM phonebook list/details screen or Own Number details screen, press MENU and select ***Copy***.
- ***Copy phone number/Copy mail address*** copies the item registered as the first item. To copy the second or after phone number or mail address, select the phone number or mail address to copy on the FOMA terminal phonebook or Own Number details screen.

Changing the order of phone numbers, mail addresses and phonebook Nos.

When multiple phone numbers or mail addresses are registered in the phonebook data, the order of the phone numbers and mail addresses can be changed on the search result screen of the FOMA terminal phonebook. In addition, the phonebook Nos. for 2 phonebook entries can be switched.

1 Search the phonebook ▶ Change the order

■ **Changing the order of phone numbers:**

① **Highlight a party ▶** MENU 8 2 1
② **Select a phone number to register as the first phone number**
The position of the selected phone number and the first phone number are changed.

■ **Changing the order of mail addresses:**

① **Highlight a party ▶** MENU 8 2 2
② **Select a mail address to register as the first mail address.**
The positions of the selected mail address and the first mail address are changed.

■ **Switching the phonebook Nos:**

① **Highlight a party ▶** MENU 8 2 3
② **Select the entry to replace the phonebook No. with**

INFORMATION

- On the FOMA terminal phonebook details screen, press MENU and select ***Set/Check*** → ***Switch order*** → ***Phone numbers, Mail addresses*** or ***Phonebook Nos***.

Copying phonebook entries

Copy phonebook entries from the FOMA terminal phonebook to the UIM phonebook or from the UIM phonebook to FOMA terminal.

- If the group in the phonebook data to copy has the same name as the group in the target phonebook, the data is copied to that group.

■ **Items copied from the FOMA terminal phonebook to UIM phonebook**

Name	Copies the name (up to 21 one-byte or 10 two-byte characters, however, up to 10 characters can be copied when both one- and two-byte characters or one-byte katakana are used).
Reading	Copies the reading (up to 25 one-byte or 12 two-byte characters, however, up to 12 characters can be copied when both one- and two-byte characters or one-byte katakana are used). One-byte katakana changes to two-byte katakana.
Phone number	Copies the first registered phone number (up to 26 digits, however, 20 digits depending on the UIM types ☛P38). If a timed pause (T) is registered, only the timed pause (T) is deleted. For all icons, ☎ is set.
Mail address	Copies the first registered mail address (up to 50 one-byte characters). In the UIM phonebook, for all icons, is set.

- Note that if the number of characters exceeds the maximum number of characters that can be saved in the UIM phonebook, the exceeding part is deleted.

■ **Items copied from the UIM phonebook to FOMA terminal phonebook**

Name	Copies the name.
Reading	Copies the reading. Two-byte katakana are changed to one-byte katakana.
Phone number	Copies the phone number. For the icon, ☎ is set.
Mail address	Copies the mail address. For the icon, ✉ is set.

Example Copying from the FOMA terminal phonebook to UIM phonebook

1 **Search the phonebook** ▶ MENU 7 3

2 **Select a party**

3 **Press** 📖

INFORMATION

● On the FOMA terminal phonebook details screen, press MENU and select ***IrDA/UIM*** → ***Copy to UIM***. On the UIM phonebook list screen/details screen, press MENU and select ***IrDA/Phone mem*** → ***Copy to phone***.

Deleting phonebook entries

Delete Phonebook

Delete a phonebook entry from the phonebook.

1 **Search the phonebook** ▶ **Highlight a party** ▶ MENU 4 ▶ **Select *Yes***

Setting functions for phonebook entries

You can set the showing/hiding of caller ID or the videophone communication speed for each phone number in the phonebook data saved in the FOMA terminal phonebook. In addition, a secret code can be set for each mail address.

・The function described here cannot be set in the UIM phonebook.

Setting to show/hide caller ID for each phone number

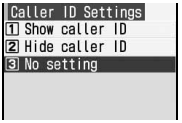
Caller ID Setting

Default No setting

1 **Search the phonebook** ▶ **Highlight a party** ▶ MENU 8 1 2

2 **Enter the terminal security code** ▶ **Select a phone number**

3 1 or 2



・To cancel the setting: 3

INFORMATION

- On the FOMA terminal phonebook details screen, press MENU and select ***Set/Check*** → ***Settings*** → ***Caller ID settings***.
- When ***No setting*** is set, the terminal operates according to the setting for Caller ID Notification.
- For the entry set to show the caller ID, ! is indicated to the right side of the phonebook No. on the details (***TOP***) screen.
- The priority of the way of sending your phone number ☛P46

Setting the communication speed when making videophone calls for each phone number

Videophone Rate Setting

Default 64K

1 Search the phonebook ▶ Highlight a party ▶ MENU 8 1 5

2 Select a phone number ▶ 1 or 2

INFORMATION

- On the FOMA terminal phonebook details screen, press MENU and select ***Set/Check*** → ***Settings*** → ***V.phone settings***.
- When you specify the communication speed of the videophone for each call you make, that setting takes precedence over this setting. ☛P53

Setting a secret code for the mail address

Secret Code Setting

When the other party has registered a secret code for its mail address (mobile phone number@docomo.ne.jp), if you set the secret code in the phonebook data, the secret code is automatically added to i-mode Mail composed by searching the phonebook.

1 Search the phonebook ▶ Highlight a party ▶ MENU 8 1 4

2 Enter the terminal security code ▶ Select a mail address

3 Enter the secret code of 4 digits

・To cancel Secret Code Setting: clr/クリア for over a second to clear ▶ ⏻

INFORMATION

- On the FOMA terminal phonebook details screen, press MENU and select ***Set/Check*** → ***Settings*** → ***Secret code***.
- If a mail address is saved in the phonebook as “mobile phone number + secret code@docomo.ne.jp”, you cannot reply to mail from the party. Delete “secret code” or “secret code@docomo.ne.jp” in the phonebook data before setting the secret code in the way mentioned above.
- For the entry with a secret code set, ! is indicated to the right side of the phonebook No. on the details (***TOP***) screen.
- The set secret code is not displayed on the phonebook data details screen or the address set when composing i-mode Mail. You can check the setting of a secret code by the procedures of Step 1 to 2.

Protecting the secret phonebook entries

Secret Attribute

The phonebook entry is set as the data having a secret attribute that is called only when you enter the terminal security code.

Setting Secret Attribute for the phonebook entry

- You cannot set Secret Attribute for the entries in the UIM phonebook.
- To set Secret Attribute, perform the setting operation in Secret Mode.

1 Set Secret Mode

2 Search the phonebook in the standby display ▶ Highlight a party ▶ MENU 8 1 1

- 🔒 flashes when Secret Attribute is set.

■ **Canceling:** Highlight the phonebook entry for which Secret Attribute is set ▶ MENU 8 1 1

INFORMATION

- On the FOMA terminal phonebook details screen, press MENU and select ***Set/Check*** → ***Settings*** → ***Secrecy ON***.
- The phonebook data with Secret Attribute set cannot be edited unless Secret Mode is set.
- When Secret Mode is not set, the names and registered images or video/i-motion of the phonebook data for which Secret Attribute has been set are not displayed in the incoming screen, redial data, received call history, recorded messages, talking voice memos received mail list and other screens. In addition, the ring tone or vibrator set for the phonebook data is not operated.
- If the phonebook entry is registered and edited while Secret Mode is on, Secret Attribute is set for the phonebook entry.

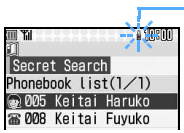
Searching the phonebook data with Secret Attribute set

Secrecy Search

- You can search only the phonebook entries with Secret Attribute set.
- You cannot search the phonebook entries with Secret Attribute set unless Secret Mode is set.

1 Set Secret Mode

2 MENU 4 1 7 in the standby display



- The subsequent steps are the same as for the normal searching method. ☛P92

Flashes when Secret Attribute is set for the highlighted entry.

INFORMATION

- The phonebook data with Secret Attribute set cannot be searched unless Secret Mode is set. In addition, Quick Dial or Quick Mail is also disabled.
- When the search other than Secrecy Search is performed in Secret Mode, the phonebook data with and without Secret Attribute set are both searched.

Checking the number of registered phonebook entries

Check No. of Items

You can display the number of registered phonebook entries or phonebook entries with Secret Attribute set in the FOMA terminal phonebook.

1 Search the phonebook ▶ MENU 8 4

INFORMATION

- On the FOMA terminal phonebook details screen, press MENU and select ***Set/Check*** → ***No. of items***.
- When checking from the UIM phonebook, press MENU in the phonebook list screen or details screen and select ***No. of items***.
- ***Recorded items*** includes the number of phonebook entries with Secret Attribute set.

Using simple dialing to make calls

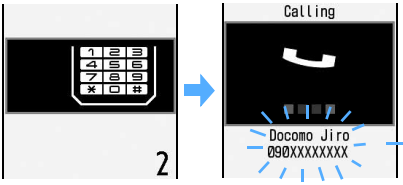
Quick Dial

Calls can be made by simple operation to the parties with the phonebook No. 0 to 99 in the FOMA terminal phonebook.

- The first phone number in the phonebook data is the number to be dialed.

Example Calling the phone number with phonebook No.2

1 Enter the phonebook No. (in this case 2) ▶ ☎



The first phone number registered in the phonebook data

- Enter the phonebook No. without prefixing it with 0, etc. If you enter an initial zero, etc., the call is not made.
- To make a videophone call: Enter the phonebook No. ▶ 📹

Sounds/Displays/Lights Settings

Sound Setting

Changing the FOMA terminal ring tone ..... Sound Setting 104
Using vibrator to signal incoming calls and alarms ..... Vibrator Setting 106
Setting a sound heard when the keys are pressed ..... Keypad Sound 107
Setting an alert sound for charging ..... Charge Alert 107
Setting an alarm announcing that the call is about to be cut off ..... Quality Alarm 108
Making FOMA terminal silent ..... Silent Mode 108
Customizing Silent Mode ..... Customize Silent Mode 109

Displays/Lights Settings

Changing the standby display ..... Standby Display Setting 109
Changing images to be displayed for incoming/outgoing calls/mails ..... Mail/Call Image Setting 116
Setting the light for display and keys ..... Display Light Setting 118
Changing the display color ..... Color Scheme 119
Setting the menu display format or menu design ..... Menu Setting 119
Changing the battery level icon ..... Battery Icon 120
Setting the lighting pattern for incoming calls/mails ..... Alert Lighting Setting 121
Changing the font size ..... Font Size 122
Setting the clock display ..... Clock Display Format 123
Coordinating according to the color of FOMA terminal ..... Style Theme 124

Changing the FOMA terminal ring tone

Set the sound to announce the reception of call, mail, Message R/F, etc. and the sound that is played while a call is on hold. If video/i-motion is set as a ring tone, an image and/or sound is played for incoming call or mail (Movie ringtone (Chaku-motion)).

- This setting is also reflected to the ring tone set in Incoming Call Setting, Incoming Videophone Setting, Incoming Msg. Setting, Incoming Chat Mail Setting and Incoming Msg. Alert, and then to the melody set in On-hold Tone.

Default Phone: Melody/パターン1(Pattern 1) Mail: Melody/パターン2(Pattern 2) Chat mail: Sync msg alert
Message Request, Message Free: Melody/パターン2(Pattern 2)
On-hold tone: 保留音・ボイス(On-hold tone, voice)
Videophone: Melody/電話・メロディA(Phone, melody A)

1 MENU 8 1 1

2 Set each item

■ **Setting a ring tone of phone call, mail, chat mail, Message R, Message F or videophone call: Select an item ▶ 1 to 3 (1 to 4 for chat mail)**

- When ***Melody*** is selected, select the melody field and select a melody.
  Viewing the melody list ☛P261
- When ***Movie ringtone*** is selected, select the melody field and select a video/i-motion file.
  Viewing the video/i-motion list ☛P252
- When ***OFF*** is set, the ring tone does not sound.
- If the ring tone for chat mail is set to ***Sync msg alert***, the setting for the mail ring tone is used.

■ **Setting an on-hold tone: Select an item ▶ 1 to 3**

3 Press 📖

For playing and checking a melody or a video/i-motion file

● Highlight a melody in the melody list and press 📖 to play it. The following operations can be performed during playing.
- To adjust the volume*1: ⊙
- To play the previous/next melody: ⊙
- To return to the melody list: clr
- To select a melody: ⊙

● Highlight a video/i-motion file in the video/i-motion list and press 📖 to play it. The following operations can be performed during playing.
- To adjust the volume*1: ⊙
- To pause/play: ⊙
- To stop (return to the video/i-motion list): 📖/clr
- To wind forward and play: ⊙
- To rewind and play: ⊙

*1 The volume during playing depends on Settings of ***Data Box***. Adjusting the volume is reflected on Settings of ***Data Box***. It is not linked to the ring volume.

The list of Melody which can be set as the ring tone

The following melodies are provided in ***Preinstalled*** folder of ***Melody*** by default.

- Melody names that are too long to be shown on the display are partially omitted.
- The composers are described in accordance with the JASRAC website.

Title (In [ ], is the composer)	Title (In [ ], is the composer)	Title (In [ ], is the composer)
*パターン**1** ～**5*** (Pattern 1 to 5)	*メール・英語ボイス* (Mail, English voice)	*凱旋行進曲* (Triumphal March) [VERDI GIUSEPPE]
*電話・メロディ**A*** (Phone, melody A)	*アラーム・アナログ時計* (Alarm, analog clock)	***Rhapsody in Blue*** [GERSHWIN GEORGE]
*電話・メロディ**B*** (Phone, melody B)	*アラーム・SuperBell"z* (Alarm, SuperBell"z)	*四季～冬～* (The Four Seasons "Winter") [VIVALDI ANTONIO LUCIO]
*電話・メロディ**C*** (Phone, melody C)	*アラーム・女性ボイス* (Alarm, female voice)	*ツァラトゥストラはかく語りき* (Also Sprach Zarathustra) [STRAUSS RICHARD]
電話・黒電話 (Phone, phone retro)	*保留音・ボイス* (On hold tone, voice)	***SUMMERTIME*** [GERSHWIN GEORGE]
電話・女性ボイス (Phone, female voice)	*ヴァーチャルトレイン* (Virtual train)	*ジムノペディ第 1 番* (1 ere Gymnopedie) [SATIE ERIK ALFRED LESLIE]
*メール・メロディ**A*** (Mail, melody A)	*火星* (The Planets, Mars) [HOLST GUSTAV]	*幻想即興曲* (Fantasie Impromptu Op.66.) [CHOPIN FREDERIC FRANCOIS]
*メール・メロディ**B*** (Mail, melody B)	*おもちゃの兵隊のマーチ* (Parade of the wooden soldiers) [JESSEL LEON]	*ハレルヤコーラス* (Chorus Hallelujah!) [HANDEL GEORGE FRIDERIC]
メール・SuperBell"z (Mail, SuperBell"z)	*森のくまさん* [アメリカ民謡] (The Bear) [American folk song]	
メール・女性ボイス (Mail, female voice)		

■ Ring tone priority

Ring tones set in multiple functions sound by priorities given below:

① Incoming setting for Multi Number
② FOMA terminal phonebook setting
③ Group Setting of the FOMA terminal phonebook
④ Sound Setting/Incoming Call Setting/Incoming Videophone Setting/Incoming Msg. Setting/Incoming Chat Mail Setting/Incoming Msg. Alert

- When the other party did not notify the caller ID, the ring tone for incoming voice calls operates as set in Anonymous Caller. The ring tone for incoming videophone calls sounds as set in Sound Setting or Incoming Videophone Setting.
- When the sounds or images set in Anonymous Caller are deleted, the settings are changed. In this case, the sounds played or images displayed in reality may differ from the sounds played or images displayed on the setting screen.
- When the image or video/i-motion is set in the phonebook and the ring tone is not set:
  If the video/i-motion with sound and image is set for ***Movie ringtone*** in Sound Setting, Incoming Call Setting or Incoming Videophone Setting, the setting for ***Movie ringtone*** is given priority for the ring tone and incoming image.
  If the video/i-motion with only sound (i-motion with no image such as the vocals of singers) is set for ***Movie ringtone***, the ring tone becomes the setting for ***Movie ringtone*** and for the incoming image, the image set in the phonebook or Incoming Call Setting/Incoming Videophone Setting is used.

■ Other sound settings

- Setting the mail ring tone or lighting, etc. ☛P219
- Setting to sound the ring tone only from the earphone when connecting a flat type earphone/microphone set with switch (optional) ☛P296

INFORMATION

- The video/i-motion with only image cannot be set for the ring tone.
- The video/i-motion that is set to ***Unavailable*** for the ring tone of View/Edit Detail Info (☛P264) cannot be set to ***Movie ringtone***.
- If the video/i-motion with sound and image is set to ***Movie ringtone***, the image of the video/i-motion is set as the incoming image. If the video/i-motion with only sound (i-motion with no image such as the vocals of singers) is set for ***Movie ringtone***, the standard image is set as the incoming image. (The incoming image (except for Flash movie) for a voice/videophone call can be changed in Incoming Call Setting or Incoming Videophone Setting.)
- If the video/i-motion with only sound or a melody is set for the ring tone when the incoming image is set to ***Sync ring alert***, the standard image is displayed for the incoming image.
- Even when the video/i-motion or Flash movie with only image is set for the incoming image, if the video/i-motion with only sound is set for the ring tone, the standard image is displayed for the incoming image.
- When the video/i-motion with only sound is set for the ring tone, even if the animation (other than the standard image) is set for the incoming image, it does not move and the first frame is displayed on the incoming screen.

Using vibrator to signal incoming calls and alarms

Vibrator Setting

The reception of call, mail or Message R/F, etc. is indicated by vibration.

- This setting is also reflected to the vibrator set in Incoming Call Setting, Incoming Videophone Setting, Incoming Msg.Setting, Incoming Chat Mail Setting and Incoming Msg. Alert.
- Note that if FOMA terminal is placed on a desk, etc. with Vibrator Setting on, the vibrations of the vibrator operation may cause it to fall off.

Default OFF (all)

1 MENU 8 1 7

2 **Select an item**

- If the incoming setting for Incoming Chat Mail Setting is set to ***Same :Msg setting***, ***ChatMail*** cannot be set.
- As for a schedule alarm, the terminal vibrates as set in ***Phone*** setting.

3 1 **to** 5

- If you set to ***Pattern A***, the terminal vibrates as follows: about 0.7 second vibration → about 0.7 second pause → about 0.7 second vibration → about 1.5 second pause (repeated)
- If you set to ***Pattern B***, the terminal vibrates as follows: about 1 second vibration → about 2 second pause (repeated)
- If you set to ***Pattern C***, the terminal vibrates as follows: about 0.7 second vibration → about 0.7 second pause (repeated)
- If you set to ***Sync melody***, the terminal vibrates along with the melody selected in Sound Setting. Note that vibration may not synchronize depending on melodies. In addition, vibration may not synchronize with the theme.
- If you set to ***OFF***, the terminal does not vibrate.
- The vibrator operates by the highlighted pattern except when ***Sync melody*** or ***OFF*** is selected.

4 **Press**

- When the vibrator for calls is set, (when Ring Volume Setting for calls is set to ***Silent***,) is indicated on the standby display.

■ **Priority of vibrator**

When the vibrator is set in multiple functions, the vibrator operates by priorities given below:

① The setting of the FOMA terminal phonebook

② Group Setting of the FOMA terminal phonebook

③ Vibrator Setting/Incoming Call Setting/Incoming Videophone Setting/Incoming Msg. Setting/ Incoming Chat Mail Setting/Incoming Msg. Alert

INFORMATION

● The vibrator does not operate when a call is received during another call.

● Even when ***OFF*** is set, the vibrator may be activated while some Flash movies are being played.

Setting a sound heard when the keys are pressed

Keypad Sound

- The confirmation sound for displaying the battery level is also changed.
- The keypad sound is not generated when pressing .

Default Keypad sound1

1 MENU 8 1 4

2 1 to 3

- The highlighted keypad sound sounds. Note that the keypad sound does not sound when ***OFF*** is set.
- To disable the keypad sound: 4

INFORMATION

● When ***OFF*** is set, the following sounds are not generated.

- The confirmation sound when the battery level is indicated
- The end alert for infrared communication or data transmission

● In the following cases, the keypad sound is not generated even if this function is set to other than ***OFF***.

- In Silent Mode (Note that in the personalized silent mode and when the keypad sound of Customize Silent Mode is set to other than ***OFF***, the keypad sound is generated.)
- While Key Lock is on (When pressing , the keypad sound is generated.)
- When i-αppli is running (The keypad sound is generated when pressing , switching Multitask or displaying another screen.)

Setting an alert sound for charging

Charge Alert

Set whether to sound an alert sound for the start and completion of charging.

Default ON

1 MENU 8 1 9 ▶ 1 or 2

INFORMATION

● Even when ***ON*** is set, the charge alert sound is not played in the following cases:

- In Silent Mode
- During a videophone call
- During packet communication
- In Public mode (Driving mode)
- During 64K data communication
- During a voice call
- During i-mode communication

Setting an alarm announcing that the call is about to be cut off Quality Alarm

When signal conditions deteriorate, an alarm sounds just before the voice call is cut off on the way.

- If signal conditions deteriorate suddenly, the call may be cut off before the alarm sounds.
- This function applies only to voice calls.

Default High alarm

1 MENU 8 6 9 4

2 1 or 2

- Not to set the alarm: 3

Making FOMA terminal silent Silent Mode

Disable the sounds from FOMA terminal in order to prevent disturbance to the people around you by enabling the vibrator for incoming calls or muting the keypad sound.

Default not set

1 # (for over a second)

The silent mode that is specified in Customize Silent Mode is set, and (in the general silent mode) or (in the personalized silent mode) is indicated on the standby display.

■ **Canceling: # (for over a second)**

When the general silent mode is set

Incoming call or mail is notified with vibrator by muting sounds heard from FOMA terminal such as ring tone, keypad sound and alarm. Microphone is sensitized so that a call can be made in a small voice.

- The operations of the vibrator when receiving calls or mails are set to ***Pattern A*** regardless of the setting in Vibrator Setting.
- The operations of the vibrator when the time set in Alarm Clock arrives are as set in Alarm Clock.
- The operations of the vibrator when the date and time set in the schedule arrives are set to ***Pattern A***.
- Melodies are not played automatically even if received mail or Message R/F is displayed with ***Auto play*** set for Attachment Auto-play.
- When playing a melody, a confirmation screen asking whether to play the melody is displayed. When ***Yes*** is selected, the melody is played.
- When playing the video/i-motion with sound, a confirmation screen asking whether to play the sound is displayed. When ***Yes*** is selected, the sound is played. When playing the video/i-motion with image, if ***No*** is selected, only the image is played.

INFORMATION

- The following sounds except when recording Chara-den are played even in Silent Mode.
  - The shutter sound during shooting with Camera and Movie Camera
  - The shutter sound during recording by Sound Recorder
- In the general silent mode, even if Call Cost Limit is set to ***ON*** and the setting notified by alarm is made, only a message is displayed. In the personalized silent mode, the alarm sounds according to the ring volume for calls set in Customize Silent Mode.

Customizing Silent Mode

Customize Silent Mode

The setting for Silent Mode can be changed (Customize Silent Mode). Which mode is set can be selected from the general silent mode and the personalized silent mode.

Default General

1 MENU 8 1 6

2 2

- Pressing 1 sets the general silent mode and the previous screen reappears.

3 Select each item to set

Vibrator alert : Sets the operation of vibrator when receiving a call or mail.
- When ***ON*** is set, an incoming call or mail is informed by vibration according to Vibrator Setting (☛P106). Note that when ***OFF*** is set in Vibrator Setting, the vibrator operates by ***Pattern A***.
- When ***OFF*** is set, the vibrator does not operate.

Keypad sound : Sets keypad sounds.

Ring alert volume : Sets the ring volume for incoming call.
- The setting of ***Ring alert volume*** applies to the volume of i-αppli. Note that when ***Step tone*** is set, the i-αppli volume is set to level 4.

Msg. alert volume : Sets the ring volume for incoming mail.

Low Battery Alert : Specifies whether to sound an alarm when the battery becomes low.

Alarm/Schedule sound : Sets whether to sound an alarm or a schedule alarm.
- When ***ON*** is set, the alarm or schedule alarm sounds according to each setting. The setting of ***Ring alert volume*** in Customize Silent Mode applies to the volume of schedule alarm.
- When ***OFF*** is set, the alarm or schedule alarm does not sound.

Sensitize microphone : Sets whether to sensitize the microphone.

4 Press 📖

The personalized silent mode is set.

Changing the standby display

Standby Display Setting

You can change the standby display to your favorite image.
- Depending on the image, video/i-motion, Chara-den or i-αppli, settings for the standby display will be disabled if you do not insert the same UIM as used when downloading the data (the UIM operation restriction function).
- Setting the clock display ☛P123
- Setting to display the i-channel ticker ☛P244

Setting images, video/i-motion or Chara-den as the standby display

The image, video/i-motion or Chara-den saved from an i-mode site or mail and the still image or video shot with FOMA terminal can be set as the standby display. Animation and Created animation can also be set.

- Preinstalled images, i-motion, Chara-den ☛P326, P329
- If you set a video/i-motion or Chara-den for the standby display when ***Show ticker*** in Ticker Setting is set to ***Yes***, ***Show ticker*** is canceled. After that, if you set other than the video/i-motion, Chara-den and the i-αppli Standby Display, ***Show ticker*** in Ticker Setting returns to ***Yes***.

Default use Style Theme Setting

1 MENU 8 2 1 1

2 1, 3 or 4

3 Select a folder ▶ Select an image, video/i-motion or Chara-den file

- To check an image, highlight the image in the image list and press 📖. The following operations can be performed on the image display screen:
  - To display the previous/next screen: ◎
  - To return to the image list: ch/クリア
  - To select a image: ◎
- To check Chara-den, highlight the Chara-den in the Chara-den list and press 📖. The following operations can be performed on the Chara-den display screen:
  - To switch between ***Action*** and ***Action of Parts***: 📝
  - To display the action list: ✉
  - To switch between the large size display and the same size display: ◎
  - To return to the Chara-den list: ◎/ch/クリア
- Playing and checking video/i-motion when selecting ☛P104

■ **Setting action of Chara-den:**

① **Highlight Chara-den in the Chara-den list ▶** MENU

② **Select *Stand-by* field ▶ 1 to 4**

- Set action for missed call or unread mail in the same way.
- When ***Action*** or ***Action of Parts*** is selected, select an action from the action list.
- When ***Input*** is selected, enter the number corresponding to the action. ☛P329
- When ***OFF*** is set, the preset action is played and another action cannot be set.

③ **Select *Interval* field ▶ 1 to 6**

- When ***OFF*** is set, the selected action of Chara-den is played only once.

④ 📖

4 Select *Yes*

- If the selected image, video/i-motion or Chara-den can be zoomed, displaying at the same size or large size can be selected on the confirmation screen. Select ***Yes(Same size)*** to maintain the image size or select ***Yes(Large size)*** to enlarge the image to the screen size.
- If the i-αppli Standby Display is set, a confirmation screen asking whether to cancel it is continuously displayed.

Playing the video/i-motion or animation set as the standby display

- The following operations are available for video/i-motion:
  - Play: ch/クリア
  - Stop: ch/クリア/☎
  - Adjust volume: ◎
- The following operations are available for animation, Created animation or Flash movie:
  - Play: Return to the standby display/Turn the power on
  - Pause/replay: ☎
- The following operations are available for Chara-den.
  - Play (When the interval for the action is set, the action is played repeatedly at the set interval): ch/クリア
  - Stop: ch/クリア/☎

INFORMATION

- While All Lock or PIM Lock is on (when the data which is subject to PIM Lock is set to the standby display), the set standby image is canceled and the image of the default setting is displayed temporarily. The set standby image reappears when lock is canceled. However, if the data in ***Preinstalled*** folder is set, the set data is displayed even when PIM Lock is on.
- The setting may not be available depending on the image.
- The video/i-motion with restriction for the number of replay or replay period set or the video/i-motion with only sound (i-motion with no image such as the vocals of singers) cannot be set to the standby display. In addition, some video/i-motion may not be able to be set for the standby display.
- When Flash movie or Chara-den is set for the standby display, playing is stopped after a certain period of time. The melody of Flash movie set for the standby display is not played.
- When ***Show ticker*** in Ticker Setting is set to ***Yes***, the playback of animation, Created animation or Flash movie set as the standby display stops after about 5 seconds and i-channel ticker is displayed. However, in case of playing by ☎, i-channel ticker is displayed after completing the playback.
- If an animation is set in zoom display, the display may be distorted.
- Even if Phone To (AV Phone To), Mail To and Web To functions are set as links in tickers of video/i-motion, these links cannot be available from the standby display.
- When video/i-motion or Chara-den is set for the standby display, the clock is displayed by the digital clock (the fixed design) on the upper part of the screen.
- When the action is set for multiple items for Chara-den, the action is played by priorities given below:
  ①Action set for ***Missed call*** or ***Unread message***
  ②Action set for ***Stand-by***
  - When both action for missed calls and action for unread mail are set and there are both missed calls and unread mail, the action set for each item is played repeatedly by turns.

Displaying images in a random order

Random Display Image

Images can be displayed in a random order on the standby display every fixed time.

1 MENU 8 2 1 1 2

2 **Select each item to set**

Folder : Selects a folder in which the images are saved from the folders in ***Image*** (My Picture).
- The folder with no image which can be displayed cannot be selected.

Change image : Sets the timing that the image is switched.
- When ***Every 15 seconds*** is set, images are switched every 15 seconds after returning to the standby display.
- When ***Every minute***, ***Every 15 minutes*** or ***Every hour*** is set, the image is switched according to the clock time. (For example, ***Every minute*** is set, the image is switched per minute at 0 second.)
- When ***Every day*** is set, the images are switched at 0:00 a.m. every day.

3 [Menu] ▶ **Select *Yes***

- If the i-αppli Standby Display is set, a confirmation screen asking whether to cancel it is displayed continuously.

INFORMATION

- The following images cannot be displayed:
  - Created animation
  - Animation
  - Flash movie
- The image is not switched in case the terminal is turned off at the time of switching the image.
- Even if the still image currently displayed on the standby display is moved or Created animation is composed by selecting it, the image is displayed until it switches to the next image. After that, it is not displayed.
- When there is no still image that can be displayed as the result of deleting the selected folder, moving or deleting still images in the folder or composing Created animation with them, the default image is displayed on the standby display and Random Display Image is canceled (if the still image is moved or Created animation is composed with it, the image is displayed until it switches to the next image).

Setting i-αppli Standby Display

- i-αppli Standby Display can be set simultaneously with other settings for selecting the standby display, setting a calendar or custom standby display. When they are set simultaneously, the i-αppli Standby Display is displayed by priority.
- Multiple i-αppli applications cannot be set on the i-αppli Standby Display.
- If you set i-αppli for the standby display when ***Show ticker*** in Ticker Setting is set to ***Yes***, ***Show ticker*** is canceled. After that, if you set other than the video/i-motion, Chara-den and the i-αppli Standby Display, ***Show ticker*** in Ticker Setting returns to ***Yes***.

1 [MENU] [8] [2] [1] [1] [5]

A list of i-αppli compatible with i-αppli Standby Display appears.

2 **Select i-αppli** ▶ **Select *Yes***

i-αppli Standby Display is set and [F] or [d] is indicated on the standby display.

INFORMATION

- While PIM Lock is on or Privacy Mode is on (***Authorized access*** set for ***i-αppli***), the i-αppli Standby Display is not displayed but a standby image set previously is displayed. Note that while PIM Lock is on, the default standby display is displayed when the data which is subject to PIM Lock has been set.
- When i-αppli is set for the standby display, the clock is displayed by the digital clock (the fixed design) on the upper part of the display.

● Operating i-αppli Standby Display ☛P237

Setting a calendar on the standby display

1 MENU 8 2 1 2

2 **Select *Yes***

- If the i-αppli Standby Display is set, a confirmation screen asking whether to cancel it is displayed continuously.

When a calendar is set

- The days-off and holidays are displayed in red, Saturdays are displayed in blue. The settings for the days-off and holidays follow Day Off Setting or Holiday Setting for Scheduler. Note that when Privacy Mode is on (***Authorized access*** set for ***Schedule***) or PIM Lock is on, the day set as day-off in Day Off Setting is not displayed in red and reset to the default display.
- When a schedule is set, a dot is displayed on the upper right of the date. Note that all schedules with Secret Attribute set are displayed only when Secret Mode is on. In addition, they are not displayed when Privacy Mode is on (***Authorized access*** set for ***Schedule***) or PIM Lock is on.
- Each press of ☎ on the standby display switches between displaying and not displaying the calendar.

INFORMATION

- An image and a calendar can be set simultaneously. However, if an animation, Created animation or Flash movie is set, the calendar is displayed when pressing ☎ after the playback is stopped or paused.

Customizing the standby display

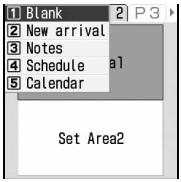
Custom Standby

The standby display can be divided into several areas to display the latest information such as unread mail or missed calls, notes, calendar or schedule for each area. The pattern of dividing areas can be selected from the following 7 types:

1 MENU 8 2 1 4

2 **Switch patterns by** ○

3 **Select an area** ▶ 1 **to** 5



- If the pattern including multiple areas is selected, repeat Step 3.
- The calendar cannot be set in an area smaller than half of the screen. (e.g. ***Set Area1*** of ***Pattern 3***)

■ **Setting new arrivals: 2 ▶ Select information ▶ 📖**

■ **Setting notes:**

① 3

② **Select a note**

- Press 📖 to display the content of the note. Press clr to return to the note list. Also, press ● on the notepad view screen to set.

4 📖 ▶ Select *Yes*

- If the i-αppli Standby Display is set, a confirmation screen asking whether to cancel it is displayed continuously.

INFORMATION

● If you change the setting for Style Theme, the custom standby display is not displayed, but the setting is saved. If you operate in order of Step 1, Step 4, the custom standby display set before is displayed.

Checking information on the custom standby display

- Each press of ☎ on the standby display switches between displaying/not displaying the custom standby display. Display the custom standby display before operations.

1 ●

The top area is displayed with a red frame.

- Press ● to move the cursor frame.
- The display area of the custom standby display depends on the setting for ***Show ticker*** in Ticker Setting.

Displays when setting ***Show ticker*** in Ticker Setting to ***Yes***.

2 Select an area

INFORMATION

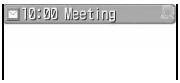
● An image and a custom standby display can be set at the same time, but if an animation, Created animation or Flash movie is set, press ☎ after the playback is stopped or paused to display the information.

Displayed information

The custom standby display and various information appear as follows:

- The numbers of information and lines displayed differ depending on the area size.
- For the date and time of each information entry, the time is displayed for the current day and the date is displayed for other days.

■ **New arrival**



The items set in ***New arrival*** are listed starting with the most recent item.

Unread messages : The reception date and time and the first part of subject are displayed. Select the area when this item is displayed at the top to display the Inbox folder list.

MessageR/*MessageF* :
The reception date and time and the first part of title are displayed. Select the area when this item is displayed at the top to display the Message R/F list.

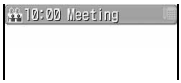
Missed calls : The date and time of incoming call and the phone number of the other party (or the name when registered in the phonebook) are displayed. Select the area when this item is displayed at the top to display the received call list.

Recorded messages : The date and time of recording and the phone number of the other party (or the name when registered in the phonebook) are displayed. Select the area when this item is displayed at the top to display the recorded message list.

■ **Notes**

The first part of the contents recorded in Notepad is displayed. Select this area to display the details of notes.

■ **Schedule**



The scheduled entries with the start time not passed are displayed in the order of the date and time. Select this area to display the details of the first schedule.

- The icon, the date and time and the beginning of the contents are displayed.
- In case of the date-straddled long-term schedule, is indicated instead of the registered icon. The start date or start time (when it is before the start time on the current day) is displayed behind the icon. The date-straddled long-term schedule is displayed until the end date/time has elapsed.
- If any schedule for all day is set on the current day, ***AllDay*** is displayed instead of the start time.

■ **Calendar**

The current calendar is displayed. Select this area to display the schedule calendar screen of Scheduler.

- Viewing the calendar ☛P113

Canceling the setting items other than images

Cancel the settings for the video/i-motion, Chara-den, i-αppli Standby Display, standby calendar or custom standby display and display an image on the standby display.

1 MENU 8 2 1 6

2 **Select *Yes***

- If an image has been previously set before, the image is displayed. Otherwise, the default image is displayed on the standby display.

Changing images to be displayed for incoming/outgoing calls/mails Mail/Call Image Setting

Set images to be displayed for outgoing calls, incoming/outgoing mails or for message retrieval.

• Setting images to be displayed for incoming calls ☛P62

Changing images for outgoing calls Outgoing Call Image/Videophone Dialing Image

Menu 861 / Menu 871

Set images to be displayed for outgoing voice calls or videophone calls.

Default Default

Example Setting the image for outgoing voice calls

1 MENU 8 2 2 1

■ **To set an image for an outgoing videophone call:** MENU 8 2 2 3

2 **Select *Display image* field ▶ 2**

• To set the default image: 1 ▶ Go to Step 4

3 **Select *Select image* in *Image list* field ▶ Select a folder ▶ Select an image**

4 **Press** ⊡

INFORMATION

● Setting Created animation displays the first frame.

Displaying images saved in the phonebook for incoming/outgoing calls Contact Image

When a voice/videophone call from/to the other party registered in the phonebook is received/made, the portrait image saved in the phonebook can be displayed.

Default ON

1 MENU 8 2 2 5

2 **Press 1**

• Not to display a portrait image: 2

■ **Priority of outgoing images**

When the outgoing images are set in multiple functions, the images are displayed by priorities given below:

① The setting of the FOMA terminal phonebook (Available when Contact Image is set to ***ON***)
② Group Setting of the FOMA terminal phonebook
③ Outgoing Call Image/Videophone Dialing Image

■ **Priority of incoming images**

When the incoming images are set in multiple functions, the image is displayed by priorities given below:

① Incoming calls setting of Multi Number
② The setting of the FOMA terminal phonebook (Available when Contact Image is set to ***ON***)

③ Group Setting of the FOMA terminal phonebook
④ Incoming Call Setting/Incoming Videophone Setting

- When the other party does not notify the caller ID, the incoming image for the voice call follows Anonymous Caller. For the incoming image for the videophone call, it follows Sound Setting/ Incoming Videophone Setting.
- When the sounds or images set in Anonymous Caller are deleted, the settings are changed. In this case, the sounds played or images displayed on the setting screen after deleting may differ from the sounds played or images displayed in reality.

Changing images for incoming/outgoing mails or for message retrieval

Outgoing Msg. Image/Incoming Msg. Image/Retrieving Image

- You cannot set Flash movie for the retrieving image.

Default Default

Example Setting the image for outgoing i-mode Mail or SMS

1 MENU 8 2 2 6

■ **To set an image to be displayed when receiving i-mode Mail, SMS or Message R/F:**
MENU 8 2 2 7

■ **To set an image to be displayed when performing Check i-mode Message or Check SMS:**
MENU 8 2 2 8

2 Select an image to register

- Follow the procedure from Step 2 in “Changing images for outgoing calls”. ☛P116

Displaying the other party’s phone number and name when receiving a call

Receive Display

Sets whether to display the phone number and name when a voice/videophone call is received as well as setting the character size for the name.
In addition, sets whether to scroll the reception result on the task bar when i-mode Mail, SMS or Message R/F is received.

- Name displays ☛P86

Default Caller’s phone number: Display Caller’s name: Standard Receive mail/message: Display

1 MENU 8 2 2 9

2 Select each item to set

Caller’s phone number : Sets whether to display the phone number when a call is received.
Caller’s name : Sets whether to display the name in the normal size, in the small size or not to display the name when a call is received.
Receive mail/message : Sets whether to display the reception result on the task bar when i-mode Mail, SMS or Message R/F is received.
- When ***Display*** is set, the reception result is scrolled on the task bar.

3 Press ▭

Setting the light for display and keys

Display Light Setting

Default Lighting method: Turn light ON Turn light on: 10 seconds Range: Display + Key
Brightness: Normal AC adapter connected: Terminal settings

1 MENU 8 2 5

2 Select each item to set

Lighting method : Sets whether to turn the lighting on or off.

- Setting ***Turn light ON*** maintains the lighting on the condition set in ***Turn light on***, ***Range*** or ***Brightness***.
- Setting ***Turn light OFF*** does not turn the lighting on. ***Turn light on***, ***Range*** and ***Brightness*** cannot be set.

Turn light on : Sets the lighting time.

Range : Sets whether to light only the display or both the display and keys.

- The keys to be lit when ***Display + Key*** is set are as follows: MENU, 📖, 📇, ✉, 📞, ☎, ◎ (except for Enter key), ch/CLR, 0 to 9, *, #.

Brightness : Sets the brightness of the display to be lit.

AC adapter connected :

Sets how to light the display when connecting to the optional AC adapter (desktop holder) or to the DC adapter.

- Setting ***Terminal settings*** lights according to the settings of the above items.
- Setting ***Always on*** lights the display at ***High***.

3 Press 📖

INFORMATION

- In the following cases, if you do not press any keys of FOMA terminal for approximately 90 seconds, the display disappears and the power is in the state of saving (except for when shooting with the camera). If there is any key operation or an incoming call, the display appears again.
  - When ***Turn light on*** is set to other than ***Always***
  - During charging (when ***Turn light on*** is set to other than ***Always***, and ***AC adapter connected*** is set to ***Terminal settings***)
- Even when ***Lighting method*** is set to ***Turn light ON***, the display or keys do not light by pressing the keys while Key Lock is on. However, if you press ☎, the display lights.
- Even when keys are set not to light, lighting is available in the following cases:
  - When activating Camera, taking pictures or auto timer is set.
  - When activating Movie Camera, taking pictures, pausing or auto timer is set.
  - When Sound Recorder is being activated, recording or pausing.
  - During updating software, downloading or rewriting
  - In case the lighting of each item is set to ***ON*** in Alert Lighting Setting and there are incoming calls or newly-arrived information, etc.

Changing the display color

Color Scheme

The color of each part of the screen such as the background or characters on the screen is changed.

Default use Style Theme setting

1 MENU 8 2 3

2 1 to 9

- You can select a color from 24 colors.
- Press ○ to switch pages.
- The screen is displayed in the highlighted color.
- The color names are for information purpose only.

Setting the menu display format or menu design

Menu Setting

Change the menu display format or the icon design, and set whether to display the function description when a menu item is selected.

- Preinstalled tile icon and animation designs for the normal menu ☛P326

Default Normal: use Style Theme setting Custom: Tile display Describe function: ON
Type of tile display: Use Style Theme setting Type of animation: Use Style Theme setting
Icon display effect: OFF Default MENU: Normal Active shortcut: Custom

1 MENU i

2 **Select each item to set**

Normal : Sets the display format for the normal menu.

Custom : Sets the display format for the custom menu.

Describe function : Sets whether to display the function description.
- Not displayed when ***Animation*** is selected in ***Menu Settings***.

Type of tile icons : Sets the type of tile icons for the normal menu.
- It can be set only when ***Normal*** is set to ***Tile display***.
- ***Custom1*** or ***Custom2*** is set when changing the menu icons or background images and creating the design of the original menu.

Type of animation : Sets the type of animation for the normal menu.
- It can be set only when ***Normal*** is set to ***Animation***.

Icon display effect : Sets whether to magnify the tile icons or 3D icons when selecting a menu.

Default MENU : Sets which of the normal and custom menus are displayed when pressing MENU on the standby display.

Active shortcut : Sets the shortcut operations to be used for the custom menu.
- ***Normal***: The same item numbers as the normal menu can be used for shortcut operations.
- ***Custom***: The item numbers for the positions of the respective functions on the custom menu can be used for shortcut operations.

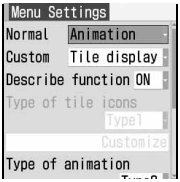
3 **Press** 📖

Creating the original menu design

Two kinds of the design of the menu screen can be created by changing the icons or background images of the menu.

- When the image size exceeds 96 x 96 for icons and 240 x 240 for background images, they are reduced to be displayed.

1 MENU ▶ **Select *Tile display* in *Normal* field**



2 **Select *Custom1* or *Custom2* in *Type of tile icons* field ▶ Select *Customize***

3 **Select a function ▶ Select a folder ▶ Select an image**

■ **Canceling a menu icon: Highlight an icon ▶ MENU 1 ▶ Select *Yes***

- To cancel all: MENU 2 ▶ Select ***Yes***

4 ▶ **Select a folder ▶ Select an image**

■ **Canceling a background: MENU 4 ▶ Select *Yes***

5

INFORMATION

● Created animation, Flash movie or images in ***Item*** folder cannot be set. Also, if an animation is set, the first frame is displayed.

● The settings for ***Custom1*** and ***Custom2*** of ***Type of tile icons*** cannot be changed while PIM Lock is on.

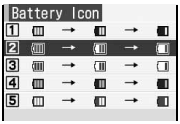
Changing the battery level icon

Battery Icon

Default use Style Theme setting

1 MENU 8 2 4

2 1 **to** 5



Setting the lighting pattern for incoming calls/mails

Alert Lighting Setting

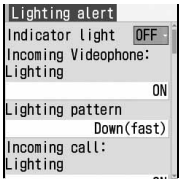
Set whether to flash keys or not when there is the newly-arrived information such as missed calls or unread mail. It also sets whether to light/flash the keys and its lighting pattern when receiving a call/mail.

- This setting is also reflected to the lighting set in Incoming Call Setting, Incoming Videophone Setting, Incoming Msg. Setting, Incoming Chat Mail Setting, Incoming Msg. Alert or Settings for melody.

Default Indicator light: OFF Incoming Videophone, Incoming call: ON/Down(fast) Incoming Mail, Incoming Message R, Incoming Message F, Incoming Chat Mail: ON/Free step(fast) Alarm, Schedule: OFF Play melody: ON/Rhythm(Normal)

1 MENU 8 2 6

2 Set each item



■ **Setting *Indicator light*: Select *Indicator light* field ▶ 1 or 2**

- When ***ON*** is set, 7 8 9 * 0 # flash for about 0.1 second at intervals of about 6 seconds repeatedly when there is a missed call (voice call/videophone call/recorded message) or when there is unread information (mail/chat mail/SMS/Message R/Message F). If the newly-arrived information is confirmed, the keys stop flashing.
- When ***OFF*** is set, the keys do not flash even if there is new arrival information.

■ **Setting *Incoming Videophone, Incoming call, Incoming Mail, Incoming Message R, Incoming Message F, Incoming Chat Mail, Alarm, Schedule, Play melody*:**

① **Select *Lighting* field ▶ 1 or 2**

- When ***ON*** is selected, keys light/flash.
- When ***OFF*** is set, the lighting pattern cannot be set.
- When the incoming setting for Incoming Chat Mail Setting is set to ***Same:Msg setting, Incoming Chat Mail*** cannot be set.

② **Select *Lighting pattern* field ▶ 1 to 9**

- Press ○ to switch the pages.
- The keys light/flash by the highlighted pattern.
- When the incoming setting for Incoming Chat Mail Setting is set to ***Same:Msg setting, Incoming Chat Mail*** cannot be set.

- The lighting pattern can be selected among the follows:
  - ***Down(fast/Normal/Slow)***
  - ***Up & Down(fast/Normal/Slow)***
  - ***Rhythm(fast/Normal/Slow)***
  - ***Wave(fast/Normal/Slow)***
  - ***Lighting***
  - ***Gradation***
  - ***Up(fast/Normal/Slow)***
  - ***Block(fast/Normal/Slow)***
  - ***Free step(fast/Normal/Slow)***
  - ***Swing(fast/Normal/Slow)***
  - Blinking

3 Press ▭

■ **Priority of the lighting**

When the lighting is set in multiple functions, the keys light/flash by the following priority when receiving the incoming call or mail, SMS, Chat Mail or Message R/F.

① The setting of the FOMA terminal phonebook

② Group Setting of the FOMA terminal phonebook

③ Alert Lighting Setting/Incoming Call Setting/Incoming Videophone Setting/Incoming Msg. Setting/Incoming Chat Mail Setting/Incoming Msg. Alert
- In case the lighting is set in Alarm Clock, the setting of Alarm Clock takes precedence over this setting.

INFORMATION

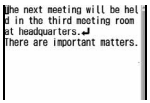
- The keys light/flash in blue and cannot be changed.
- Even when ***Indicator light*** is set to ***ON***, the keys do not flash in the following cases:
  - During receiving a call
  - During talking
  - In Public mode (Driving mode)
  - During All Lock
  - During activating Camera/Movie Camera/Sound Recorder
  - During the keys are lighting
- Even when ***Indicator light*** is set to ***ON***, if there have been no newly-arrived information for about 6 hours since there was the first arrival or if 1 1 (with the number of newly-arrived information) on the display are removed, the keys stop to flash even if the information are not confirmed.

Changing the font size

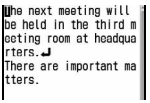
Font Size

The character size can be changed from 5 types for entering characters by full-screen entry.

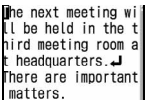
***Minimum*: 12 dots**



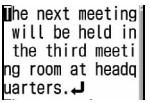
***Small*: 16 dots**



***Standard*: 20 dots**



***Large*: 24 dots**



***Maximum*: 28 dots**

Default Standard

1 MENU 8 2 7 1

2 1 **to** 5
- The example in the highlighted character size is displayed.

INFORMATION

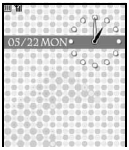
- The font size cannot be changed for entering mail messages, entering characters by in-line entry or for the predict conversion options displayed when entering characters.
  However, when setting to ***Maximum***, the following character size is changed:
  - The size of character not fixed on the entry screen for message
  - The character size of the predict conversion options displayed when entering characters (a little smaller size than the maximum).
- The character size is changed for displaying a site screen, screen memo and Message R/F. However, if set to ***Minimum***, the ***Small*** character size is set. If set to ***Maximum***, the ***Large*** character size is set.

Setting the clock display

Set whether to display the clock on the stand by display. The clock design, the time display format (24 hour format/12 hour format), the clock display position and the language used to display the day of the week can also be set.

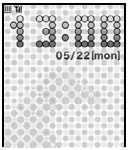
Default use Style Theme setting

Displaying *Analog 1* at the center

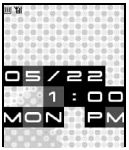


Displaying *Analog 2* at the top

Displaying *Digital 1* by 12 hour format at the center



Displaying *Digital 2* by 24 hour format at the top



Displaying *Digital 3* by 12 hour format at the bottom

Displaying *Digital 4* by 24 hour format at the center

1 MENU 8 5 4

2 Select each item to set

Style : Sets whether to display the clock. Also, sets the displayed clock design.
- When ***ON*** is set, select the design.
- When ***OFF*** is set, ***Clock layout*** and ***Day*** cannot be set.

Time format : Specifies 24 hour format or 12 hour format to display the clock.
- The display of the analog clock is not changed.

Clock layout : Sets the position to display the clock.

Day : Specifies whether to display a day of the week in Japanese or English.
- When ***Terminal settings*** is set, the display depends on the setting for Select Language.

3 Press

INFORMATION

- In the following cases, the clock is displayed by the digital clock (the fixed design) on the upper part of the display regardless of the setting for ***Style*** or ***Clock layout***.
  - When video/i-motion or Chara-den is displayed on the standby display
  - When the i-αppli Standby Display is displayed
- While All Lock is on, the clock is displayed on the upper part of the display regardless of this function's setting.
- On the screen other than the standby display, the clock is displayed on the upper right of the display. The time display format (24 hour format/12 hour format) follows this function's setting.

Coordinating according to the color of FOMA terminal

Style Theme

The standby display, battery icon, clock display, color theme and the menu icon are coordinated in total by the color of FOMA terminal. They can also be changed to be coordinated corresponding to the other colors.

Functions and items to be coordinated		Style Theme				
		BlueLED	*DotWall*	*CheckPattern*	*Shopping*	*Taxi*
Standby Display Setting		*Blink*	*Dot picture*	*Check motion*	*Shopping cart*	*Taxi*
Battery Icon		(Light blue)	(Gray)	(Blue)	(Orange)	(Yellow)
Clock Display Format	*Style*	*ON/Digital 1*	*ON/Digital 2*	*ON/Digital 3*	*ON/Analog 2*	*ON/Digital 4*
	Time format	*24 hour*	*24 hour*	*24 hour*	*24 hour*	*24 hour*
	Clock layout	*Center*	*Top*	*Center*	*Top*	*Top*
	Day	*English*	*English*	*English*	*English*	*English*
Color Scheme		*BlueBlack*	*DotWhite*	*NavyBlue*	*UrbanOrange*	*WarningYellow*
Menu Setting	*Normal*	*Animation*	*Animation*	*Tile display*	*Tile display*	*Tile display*
	Type of tile icons	—	—	*Type3*	*Type4*	*Type5*
	Type of animation	*Type1*	*Type2*	—	—	—

• Default is as follows:

Body color of FOMA terminal	Style Theme
METAL BLACK	*BlueLED*
SHINY WHITE	*DotWall*
SPARKLE BLUE	*CheckPattern*

1 MENU 8 2 8

2 1 to 5

Safety Settings

Security code

Security codes 126
Changing the terminal security code ..... Change Security Code 127
Setting the PIN code 127
Unblocking the PIN lock 129

Restricting Mobile Phone Operations

Various lock functions 129
Preventing unauthorized use of your terminal ..... All Lock 130
Preventing unauthorized use of your terminal by remote access ..... Remote Lock 131
Preventing making/receiving calls ..... Self Mode 132
Preventing display of the phonebook or schedule ..... PIM Lock 133
Prohibiting keypad dial ..... Keypad Dial Lock 134
Preventing unauthorized use of the functions such as phonebook or mail ..... Privacy Mode Setting 134
Preventing inadvertent use of keys ..... Key Lock 136
Displaying the data with Secret Attribute set ..... Secret Mode 137

Restricting outgoing/incoming or sending/receiving

Rejecting/accepting incoming calls from the specified phone numbers ..... Reject/Accept Call 138
Setting the operations for incoming calls with no caller ID ..... Anonymous Caller 139
Setting not to answer a call from the party not registered in the phonebook ..... Mute Ring Time Setting 140
Rejecting calls from phone numbers not registered in the phonebook ..... Reject non-Reg. Caller 141

Other “Safety settings”

Other “Safety settings” 142

Security codes

Some FOMA terminal functions for convenient use require the entry of security codes. There are security codes such as the network security code for use in network services and the password for i-mode in addition to the terminal security code for various terminal functions. Fully use your FOMA terminal by choosing the security code to suit your needs.

Precautions for security codes

- As for the security code to set, please avoid the number intelligible for others, such as a “birth date”, “a part of phone number”, “an address number or a room number”, “1111”, and “1234”. In addition, please be careful not to forget the set security code by taking a memorandum etc.
- Please be careful never to reveal your security code to others. If your security code is known and misused by others, DoCoMo accepts no responsibility whatsoever for the damages.
- DoCoMo will never ask your security code.
- Please note that, if you forget the security codes, you need to bring the identification (driver’s license etc.), your FOMA terminal and the UIM to a DoCoMo Shop. For the detail information, contact General Inquiries on the back of this manual.

Terminal security code

The default terminal security code is “0000”, which can be changed to a code of your own choice. ☛P127

Network security code

Network security code is the arbitrary 4-digit code that is set when you subscribed to FOMA terminal for various procedures for the DoCoMo e-site and usage of network services. You can change the code. If you have “My DoCoMo ID/password” of “My DoCoMo” which is the total support site for PC, you can do change procedure from a PC to a new network security code.

- Please refer to the back of this manual for “My DoCoMo” and “DoCoMo e-site”.

i-mode password

A 4-digit i-mode password is required to store/delete sites in My Menu and apply to/cancel message services or i-mode pay sites (in addition, there may be passwords required by individual information providers).
The default i-mode password is “0000”, which can be changed to a code of your own choice.
When changing from i-mode, select ***iMenu*** ⇒ ***ENGLISH*** ⇒ 4***Options*** ⇒ 2***Change i-mode Password***.

PIN1 code/PIN2 code

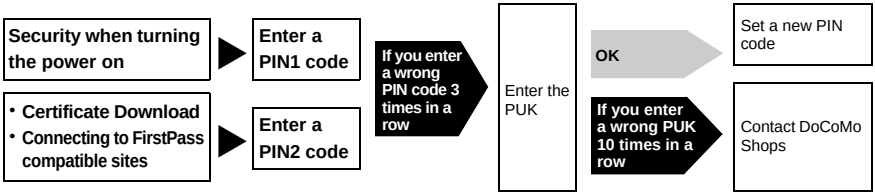
The PIN1 and PIN2 codes can be set for the UIM. The default PIN1 and PIN2 codes are “0000”, which can be changed to a code of your own choice. ☛P128
The PIN1 code is the 4 to 8 digit security code entered to confirm the user every time the UIM is inserted to FOMA terminal or the power of FOMA terminal is turned on to protect your FOMA terminal from unauthorized use by the third party. Entering the PIN1 code enables making or receiving calls and FOMA terminal operations.
The PIN2 code is the 4 to 8 digits code required when resetting the total calls cost or using a user certificate or requesting the issue of it.

- The settings of the PIN1/PIN2 codes and PIN1 Code ON/OFF are recorded in the UIM. When using the current UIM to FOMA terminal you newly purchased, the PIN1/PIN2 codes that you set previously can be used likewise.

PUK (PIN Unblocking Key)

The PUK is an 8-digit number for canceling the state where the PIN1 code or PIN2 code is locked. You cannot change it.

- If a wrong PUK is entered 10 times consecutively, the UIM is locked.



INFORMATION

- To prevent tampering, change the terminal security code, PIN1 code, PIN2 code or i-mode password to a code of your own choice after the subscription.
- If a wrong terminal security code is entered 5 times consecutively, the power is automatically turned off.

Changing the terminal security code

Change Security Code

- Enter the 4 to 8 digit number for the terminal security code.
- The entered terminal security code is masked with "✳".

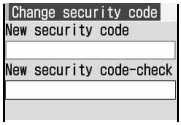
Default 0000

1 MENU 8 3 5

2 **Enter the current terminal security code**

- If the entered terminal security code is not correct, the message indicating that is displayed. Press ⊙ and enter the correct terminal security code.

3 **Select *New security code* field ▶ Enter a new terminal security code**



4 **Select *New security code-check* field ▶ Enter the same terminal security code as entered in Step 3**

5 **Press** ⊡

Setting the PIN code

- The PIN1/PIN2 code can be changed.
- Enter the 4 to 8 digits number for the PIN1/PIN2 code.
- The entered PIN1/PIN2 code is masked with "✳".

Setting to require the entry of the PIN1 code when turning the power on

PIN1 Code ON/OFF

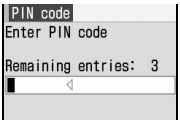
Subscribed to FOMA OFF

1 MENU 8 3 4 3

2 1

- To cancel the setting: 2

3 Enter the PIN1 code



- The PIN1 code is set to “0000” at the time of subscription.
- When the entered PIN1 code is not corrected, the message indicating that is displayed. Press ○ and enter the correct PIN1 code. If a wrong PIN1 code is entered 3 times consecutively, the PIN1 code is locked. Press ○ and cancel the PIN lock.
- The PIN1 code entry screen is displayed only when you change the current setting.

When PIN1 Code ON/OFF is set to *ON*

When the power of FOMA terminal is turned on, the PIN1 code entry screen is displayed. After entering the correct PIN1 code, the standby display appears.

- Making/receiving calls or operating the communication functions is unavailable if a wrong PIN1 code is entered.
- If a wrong PIN1 code is entered 3 times consecutively, the PIN1 code is locked. Press ○ and cancel the PIN lock.

Changing the PIN1/PIN2 code

Change PIN1/PIN2 Code

- To change the PIN1 code, set PIN1 Code ON/OFF to *ON*.

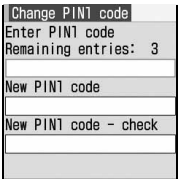
Subscribed to FOMA PIN1 code, PIN2 code: 0000

Example Changing the PIN1 code

1 MENU 8 3 4 1

■ **Changing the PIN2 code:** MENU 8 3 4 2

2 Enter the terminal security code ▶ Enter the current PIN1 code



3 Select *New PIN code* field ▶ Enter a new PIN1 code

4 Select *New PIN code - check* field ▶ Enter the same PIN1 code as entered in Step 3

5 Press

- If the current PIN1/PIN2 code is not correctly entered, the message indicating that is displayed. Press ● and enter the correct PIN1/PIN2 code. If a wrong PIN1/PIN2 code is entered 3 times consecutively, the PIN1/PIN2 code is locked. Press ● and cancel the PIN lock.

INFORMATION

● Even if a wrong PIN2 code is entered 3 times consecutively and FOMA terminal is locked, making/receiving calls or sending/receiving mail is available, but if a wrong PIN1 code is entered 3 times consecutively and FOMA terminal is locked, those operations become unavailable.

Unblocking the PIN lock

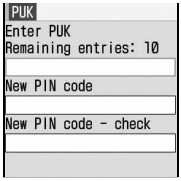
If a wrong PIN1/PIN2 code is entered 3 times consecutively on the PIN code entry screen, the PIN code is locked. In that case, cancel the lock and set a new PIN code.

- Please be notified that, if you forget the PUK or the PIN lock is locked completely, you need to bring FOMA terminal, the UIM in use, and the identification (driver's license, etc.) to a DoCoMo Shop.
- The PUK and PIN1/PIN2 code entered are masked with "✳".

Example Unblocking the PIN1 code's lock

1 ● on the confirmation screen of the PIN code's lock

2 Enter the 8-digit PUK



3 Select *New PIN code* field ▶ Enter a new PIN1 code

4 Select *New PIN code - check* field ▶ Enter the same PIN1 code as entered in Step 3

5 Press

The PIN lock is canceled and a new PIN1 code is set.

Various lock functions

A variety of lock functions are available to prevent unauthorized use of your FOMA terminal by others or to keep your private information and the phonebook entries confidential. You can select the function to suit your needs.

- You can set multiple lock functions at the same time.
- The settings of lock functions other than Key Lock and Secret Mode are retained even if the power is turned off.
- You can make emergency calls (110, 119 or 118) even when the lock functions are set.

Item	Description	Page
All Lock	Disables operating the menu functions to prevent unauthorized use by others.	P130
Remote Lock	Prevents unauthorized use of your FOMA terminal by others by setting All Lock by remote control in case your FOMA terminal is lost or stolen.	P131
Self Mode	Disables using the communication functions such as making/receiving of calls, sending/receiving of mail and the infrared communication.	P132
PIM Lock	Disables using the private information functions such as Phonebook, Own Number and Scheduler and prevents the display of and tampering with private information.	P133
Keypad Dial Lock	Disables pressing dial keys to make calls.	P134
Privacy Mode Setting	Disables displaying the phonebook and logs, mail, My Picture, i-motion, schedule or i-αppli and prevents unauthorized viewing by others.	P134
Key Lock	Disables the key operations to prevent inadvertent operations.	P136
Secret Mode	When you set Secret Attributes for the phonebook or schedule data, the data is displayed only when the terminal security code is entered and Secret Mode is set.	P137

Preventing unauthorized use of your terminal

All Lock

Disables operating the menu functions to prevent unauthorized use of your FOMA terminal by others. Calls cannot be made or received when All Lock is on.

To make emergency calls (110,119 or 118) when All Lock is on, enter the emergency call number on the standby display and press [☎]. At this time, the emergency call number is displayed as "＊" in the entry field of the terminal security code.

- When All Lock is on, the set standby display is canceled and the default image is displayed. When All Lock is canceled, the set standby display reappears.

Default not set

1 MENU 8 3 1 1

2 Enter the terminal security code

All locked. is displayed.

■ **Canceling: Enter the terminal security code on the standby display**

INFORMATION

- When All Lock is on, the alarm or schedule alarm does not operate even when the specified date and time arrives.
- When All Lock is on, even if Key Lock Timer is set to ***ON*** and the specified time has elapsed, Key Lock is not set.
- When All Lock is on, the i-channel information is not displayed as ticker on the standby display.
- If a wrong terminal security code is entered 5 times consecutively when canceling All Lock, the power is automatically turned off.
- You can turn the power on/off. In addition, when Auto Power ON/OFF is set, it is executed.

● The calls received during All Lock are rejected and the other party hears busy signals, but they are recorded as missed calls in the received call history. When All Lock is canceled, 1 with the number of missed calls is displayed on the standby display.
● i-mode Mail, SMS and Message R/F can also be received when All Lock is on, but the receiving screen, icon for the received mail and reception result screen are not displayed. When All Lock is canceled, the icon for the received mail is displayed.

Preventing unauthorized use of your terminal by remote access Remote Lock

If you make a voice call to FOMA terminal under the preset operating conditions in case your FOMA terminal is lost or stolen, Auto Lock is set to prevent unauthorized use by others.

Default OFF

Setting the Remote Lock operating conditions

1 MENU 8 3 1 3

2 **Enter the terminal security code ▶ Select each item to set**

Remote lock : Sets whether or not to enable Remote Lock.
- When ***OFF*** is set, the following items cannot be set.

Monitoring period : Sets the time limit from the time of the first incoming call to the time until the specified number of calls will be received (in the 1 to 10 minutes range). Even after the time limit has expired, if the specified number of calls are not received, Remote Lock is not activated. In addition, the number of incoming calls that have been counted is reset.

Received calls : Sets the number of voice calls received before Remote Lock is activated (between 3 to 10 times).

Sender1* to *3 : Sets the original phone number that activates Remote Lock. The number of payphone can also be set.

■ **Setting the sender's information**

① **Select *Sender1* to *3* field:**

② **Select *Select sender* field ▶ 1 or 2**
- When ***Sender number*** is set, enter a phone number in the entry field. Press [i-mode] to enter from the phonebook.

③ [Phonebook]

3 **Press** [Phonebook]

INFORMATION

● If the phonebook data in which a pause (P) or timed pause (T) has been set is registered to the sender's information, the information registered after the pause (P) or timed pause (T) is deleted.

Setting Remote Lock

Remote Lock is activated by making a voice call to FOMA terminal under the preset conditions.

- Send your caller ID and make a call to FOMA terminal.
- In the following cases, the counting of incoming calls is not started and Remote Lock is not set.
  - When the other party receives a call (including the case that the call is handled by Response and Hold or Answer Machine, or received by Auto Answer)
  - When FOMA terminal is busy
  - When the call cannot be received because FOMA terminal is outside the service area, the power is turned off or Self Mode is on, etc.
- If the following states occur before making the specified number of calls, the time counting is reset.
  - When the other party receives a call (including the case that the call is handled by Response and Hold or Answer Machine, or received by Auto Answer)
  - When the power of FOMA terminal is turned off
  - When the set monitoring period has passed

1 Make a voice call to FOMA terminal under the set conditions

The guidance notifying that FOMA terminal is locked is played and Remote Lock is set for the terminal.

■ **Canceling:** Enter the terminal security code in FOMA terminal with Remote Lock set.

INFORMATION

- The count of incoming calls is only effective for the first call made from the specified sender. After the counting has been initiated, additional received calls from other senders are not counted.
- Even if a call is rejected, or transferred by Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service (excluding when the ringing time is ***0 sec***), that call is counted as an incoming call.
- When Answer Machine or Auto Answer is set, end the call before Answer Machine or Auto Answer starts.
- Even if a call arrives while Remote Lock is on, the call is disconnected. If a call arrives from phone numbers that are set as sender, the guidance informing that Remote Lock is on is played and then the call is disconnected.

Menu 884

Preventing making/receiving calls

Self Mode

Disable all functions that require communications such as making/receiving calls or sending/receiving mails. Infrared communication and infrared remote control are also disabled.

Default OFF

1 ch/クリア (for over a second) ▶ Select *Yes*

Self Mode is set and self is indicated on the standby display.

- When you use shortcut operations: 1 ▶ Select *Yes*

■ **Canceling:** ch/クリア **(for over a second)**

- When you use shortcut operations: 2

INFORMATION

- Note that if an emergency calls (110, 119 or 118) is made in Self Mode, Self Mode is canceled.
- If you receive a call when Self Mode is on, a guidance is played for the caller that radio waves are hard to reach or the power of your terminal is turned off. You can use Voice Mail Service and Call Forwarding Service.
- i-mode Mail or Message R/F sent when Self Mode is set is stored at the i-mode Center and SMS is stored at the SMS Center. When you receive messages, cancel Self Mode and perform Check i-mode Message or Check SMS.

Preventing display of the phonebook or schedule

PIM Lock

PIM Lock prevents the display of and tampering with private information:

- This function cannot be set when Reject Non-Reg. Caller is set to ***ON***.
- When this function is set to ***ON***, the previous redial data and received call history are deleted. Note that making or receiving calls after the setting are recorded and dialing from the redial data or received call history can be performed.

Default OFF

1 MENU 8 3 1 2

2 **Enter the terminal security code** ▶ 1

PIM Lock is set and 🔒 is indicated on the standby display.

- To cancel the setting: 2

When PIM Lock is on

- The following all operations or some settings become unavailable.
  - Mail/Chat Mail/SMS/Message R/F *1
  - iMenu
  - Bookmark
  - Internet
  - Screen Memo
  - Last Visited URL
  - i-αppli
  - Phonebook
  - Answer Machine/Voice Memo
  - My Picture (***Image***)
  - i-motion
  - Melody
  - Chara-den
  - Camera
  - Movie Camera
  - Sound Recorder
  - Bar Code Reader
  - Scheduler
  - Call Cost Limit
  - Delete All Data
  - Notepad
  - Headset Button Control
  - Alarm Clock
  - Software Update
  - Own Number
  - Virus Scan Function
  - i-channel
  - Data transfer via infrared communication
  - Menu Setting (changing the settings for ***Custom1*** or ***Custom2*** of ***Type of tile icons***)

*1 Messages can be received but the receiving screen, the icon for the received mail and the reception result screen are not displayed.

- If the menu is displayed, the icon is indicated by 🔒 and the characters are grayed out not to select them. However, when ***Normal*** is set to ***Animation*** in Menu Setting, the display is not changed and if you select a menu item, a message indicating that PIM Lock is being set is displayed.
- Even if a call is received from a caller registered in the phonebook, only phone number is displayed without the caller's name.
- 📨 is not indicated on the standby display because Answer Machine does not operate even when Answer Machine is set. An icon for a recorded message which has not been played is not displayed either.
- The i-channel information is not displayed as ticker on the standby display.

INFORMATION

- When the data which is subject to PIM Lock has been set for the standby display, the substitute image for videophone call or ring tone, the default setting becomes active while PIM Lock is on. The setting you made is restored when PIM Lock is canceled. However, when data saved in ***Preinstalled*** folder is set, however, the setting becomes the set standby display or ring tone even if PIM Lock is on.
- When PIM Lock is on, the alert tone or vibrator does not notify that the number of voice messages of Voice Mail Service is increased.

Prohibiting keypad dial

Keypad Dial Lock

Disable making a call by dialing a phone number (Keypad Dial).

- You can make a call using the phonebook and redial data.
- When this function is set to ***ON***, the previous redial data and received call history are deleted. Note that the numbers dialed from the phonebook after the setting is made are recorded under the redial data.

Default OFF

1 MENU 8 3 3

2 **Enter the terminal security code ▶ 1**

Keypad Dial Lock is set and is indicated on the standby display.

- To cancel the setting: 2

When Keypad Dial Lock is on

- The following operations become unavailable:
  - Dialing from the received call history
  - Editing, adding, deleting the phonebook data
  - Editing and resetting Own Number data
  - Phone To (AV Phone To) and Mail To functions
  - Transferring the phonebook data to/from the external devices
  - Sending i-mode Mail/SMS
    (Mail can be sent by specifying addresses using the phonebook or mail from the party registered in the phonebook can be replied.)
  - Reading mail template from the mail composition screen
  - Composing mail on the template list/view screen (Composing mail is available from the template of which the address registered in the phonebook is entered in the address field.)
  - Using the network services by the dial key operation

Preventing unauthorized use of the functions such as phonebook or mail

Privacy Mode Setting

Setting the Privacy Mode operation

Set whether to enter the terminal security code when using the phonebook, mail or My Picture while Privacy Mode is on. Also, you can set Privacy Mode to manually start or to automatically start when no operation has taken place in a certain period of time.

- To enable Privacy Mode Setting, you need to start Privacy Mode.

Default Phonebook & Logs, Mail, My picture, i-motion, Schedule, i-αppli: Show all Auto start: OFF

1 MENU 8 3 6

2 **Enter the terminal security code ▶ Select each item to set**

- When you use the following functions in Privacy Mode, set whether to enter the terminal security code. In addition, set the time period until Privacy Mode is started automatically when no operation has taken place in standby.

Phonebook & Logs :
Sets for displaying the phonebook, redials, received calls, recorded messages or voice memos.

Mail : Sets for displaying the mail messages.
- Setting ***Hide secret fldrs*** hides the folders with the privacy set to ***ON***.

My picture : Sets for using My Picture.

i-motion : Sets for using i-motion.

Schedule : Sets for using schedules.

i-αppli : Sets for using i-αppli.

Auto start : Sets the time period until Privacy Mode is started automatically.

3 ▶

INFORMATION

- If all items except ***Auto start*** are set to ***Show all***, Privacy Mode is not started. In addition, when Privacy Mode has been started, it is canceled automatically.

Starting Privacy Mode

- If you set Privacy Mode to start automatically in Privacy Mode Setting, it is started according to the setting.

1 (for over a second)

■ **Canceling: (for over a second) ▶ Enter the terminal security code**
- While Privacy Mode is on (when ***Mail*** is set to ***Hide secret fldrs***) and the privacy of ***Inbox***, ***Outbox*** or ***Unsent messages*** has been set to ***ON***, holding down クリア for over a second on the applicable folder list screen and entering the terminal security code cancels Privacy Mode temporarily and displays the folders.

INFORMATION

- While Privacy Mode is on (***Authorized access*** set for ***Phonebook & Logs***), the name of the other party registered in the phonebook is not displayed for incoming/outgoing calls/mails, only the phone number or mail address is displayed. In addition, neither the ring tone, vibrator nor the videophone substitute image set in the phonebook data operates. They operate according to the settings for FOMA terminal.
- When you select the mail folder for Message i-αppli or download i-αppli, while Privacy Mode is on (***Authorized access*** set for ***i-αppli***), entry of the terminal security code is required.
- When you delete Message i-αppli while Privacy Mode is on (***Authorized access*** set for ***Mail***), entry of the terminal security code is required.
- When Privacy Mode is on (***Authorized access*** set for ***My picture*** and ***i-motion***), the terminal operates according to Sound Setting, Incoming Call Setting or Incoming Videophone Setting instead of the setting for the phonebook or Group Setting of the phonebook for which the data other than the ***Preinstalled*** folder data is set for the ring alert or image in the FOMA terminal phonebook. Note that when you set the data except for the ***Preinstalled*** folder data in the image setting of Sound Setting, Incoming Call Setting or Incoming Videophone Setting, Privacy Mode operates by the default setting.
- When Privacy Mode is on (***Authorized access*** set for ***My picture***), in still image shooting or video recording, shooting while setting a frame cannot be performed.
- When Privacy Mode is on (***Authorized access*** set for ***i-motion***), editing tickers directly after recording video cannot be performed.

● When you use the function which is set to ***Authorized access*** in Privacy Mode, if you enter the terminal security code once, entry of the terminal security code is not required until the standby display is returned. It is also the same as when using multiple items which are set to ***Authorized access***.

(Example) In case you try to send the image saved in My Picture by mail in Privacy Mode (***Phonebook & Logs*** and ***My picture*** set to ***Authorized access***), entry of the terminal security code is not required even when trying to access to the phonebook from the mail composition screen because the terminal security code is already entered in starting My Picture.

● While Privacy Mode is on (***Authorized access*** set for ***My picture, i-motion*** and ***i-αppli***), if you try to perform the following operations, after the terminal security code is entered, a message is displayed indicating that the items set not to be displayed in Privacy Mode Setting are reflected when Privacy Mode is canceled.

- Outgoing Call Setting
- Incoming Call Setting
- Videophone Dialing Image
- Incoming Videophone Setting
- Outgoing Msg. Image
- Incoming Msg. Image
- Retrieving Image
- Image Setting (videophone)
- Registering new entry/editing data of the phonebook
- Incoming Call Setting/Incoming Msg. Setting of Group Setting
- Sound Setting
- i-αppli settings of Standby Display Setting
- Anonymous Caller
- Incoming Msg. Alert
- Incoming Msg. Setting
- Incoming Chat Mail Setting
- Alarm Clock or editing schedule alarm settings (when ***i-motion*** is selected)
- Editing Own Number
- Incoming setting for Multi Number

Preventing inadvertent use of keys

Key Lock

Disable the key operations and prevent wrong operations while you carry the terminal around by putting it into the bag.

Default not set

1 MENU **(for over a second)**

Key Lock is set and ⚷ is indicated on the standby display.

■ **Canceling:** ☎ ▶ **Select *Yes***

- If you perform the following operations after pressing ☎, Key Lock is set continuously.
  - Select ***No***
  - Press the keys other than ◎
  - About 5 seconds have elapsed

INFORMATION

● When the power is turned off by Auto Power OFF or Remote Lock is set while Key Lock is on, Key Lock is canceled.

● Even while Key Lock is on, the following key operations can be performed:

- Receiving a voice call by ☎ or a videophone call by 📹 or ☎
- Putting the incoming call on hold by ☎ (Response and Hold)
- Handling an incoming call by Answer Machine by holding down 📷 for over a second
- Stopping the alarm sound (Only 📷 is available for incoming calls.)
- Quitting the function such as alarm during operation by ☎
- Holding down a switch such as a flat type earphone/microphone set with switch for over a second to make a voice call or receive a voice/videophone call.

If an incoming call is received or the call is handled by Response and Hold or Answer Machine, Key Lock is canceled temporarily and the key operations can be performed. If the standby display reappears, Key Lock is set again.

● Even while Key Lock is on, pressing ☎ lights the display.

Setting Key Lock automatically

Key Lock Timer

If the set time (10 seconds to 5 minutes) passes with no operation on the standby display, Key Lock can be set automatically.

Default OFF

1 MENU 8 3 8

2 **Select *Key lock timer* field ▶ 1**

- To cancel the setting: 2 ▶ Go to Step 4

3 **Select *Timer* field ▶ 1 to 5**

4 **Press ⊡**

INFORMATION

- In the following cases, Key Lock is not set even if Key Lock Timer is set to ***ON*** and the set time has elapsed:
  - When other than the standby display is displayed
  - While All Lock is on
  - While Remote Lock is on
- When video/i-motion, animation, Flash movie or Chara-den is set for the standby display and if the set time has elapsed without operating during playing the video/i-motion, etc. on the standby display, Key Lock is set. For the video/i-motion, playing stops and the first frame is displayed. For animation or Flash movie, playing continues. For Chara-den, playing stops.
- When the standby display returns without key operation by the end of call, or the automatic end of camera, Key Lock may be set before the set time elapses after returning to the standby display without key operation.

Displaying the data with Secret Attribute set

Secret Mode

If Secret Mode is set, the phonebook data/schedule data with Secret Attribute set can be displayed. When you set/cancel Secret Attribute, you need to set Secret Mode on.

Default not set

1 MENU 8 3 2

2 **Enter the terminal security code**

Secret Mode is set and 🔒 is indicated on the upper part of the display.

■ **Canceling: ☎ on the standby display**

- Also, press MENU 8 3 2 on the standby display to cancel it.

INFORMATION

- If an animation, Created animation or Flash movie is set on the standby display in Secret Mode, the first frame is displayed. If you press ☎, Secret Mode is canceled and the animation, Created animation or Flash movie is played.
- When a call/mail is received from the other party with Secret Attribute set while Secret Mode is on, the ring tone, the incoming vibrator and the incoming lighting set in the phonebook data are used. While not in Secret Mode, each setting in Sound Setting, Vibrator Setting and Alert Lighting Setting is used.

Rejecting/accepting incoming calls from the specified phone numbers Reject/Accept Call

Reject/Accept Call is set for each phone number registered in the FOMA terminal phonebook.

- To use this function, set Reject/Accept Call for each phone number and then enable Reject/Accept Call in this setting. The items to be set and operations of rejecting/accepting incoming calls are as follows.

Reject/Accept Call	Reject/Accept Call setting for each phone number		
	Accept call	*Reject call*	*No setting*
Accept call	Accept	Reject*1	Reject*1
Reject call	Accept	Reject*1	Accept
Cancel settings	Accept	Accept	Accept

*1 Even if a call is received from the set phone number, the call is disconnected without the ring tone sounding and the other party hears busy signals.

- This function is available only when the other party notifies the caller ID.
- The rejected calls are recorded as missed calls in the received call history.
- If the ringing time is set to ***0 sec*** for Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service, Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service is activated and the call is not recorded as a received call.
- Combination with Caller ID Request Service and Anonymous Caller is recommended when used.

Specifying phone numbers to reject/accept

Reject/Accept Call is set for the phone numbers registered in the FOMA terminal phonebook.

- Reject/Accept Call cannot be set for the phone numbers registered in the UIM phonebook.

1 **Search the phonebook ▶ Highlight the target ▶** MENU 8 1 3

2 **Enter the terminal security code ▶ Select phone numbers**

3 1 **or** 2

- is indicated to the right side of the phonebook No. on the details screen of the phonebook data for which Reject/Accept Call is set.
- To cancel the setting: 3

INFORMATION

- On the FOMA terminal phonebook details screen, press MENU and select ***Set/Check*** → ***Settings*** → ***Accept/Reject call***.
- If the phone number with Reject/Accept Call set is changed or deleted, this function's setting is canceled. In that case, set Reject/Accept Call for the phone number changed or registered again.

Enabling Reject/Accept Call

- The setting of this function applies to all phone numbers with Reject/Accept Call set.
- Reject Call and Accept Call cannot be enabled at the same time.

Default Cancel settings

1 MENU 8 6 7 1

2 **Enter the terminal security code ▶** 2 **or** 3

- To cancel the setting: 1

INFORMATION

- If a call with no caller ID is received from a party that you set Reject Call to, FOMA terminal operates according to Anonymous Caller regardless of this function's setting.
- i-mode Mail or SMS is received regardless of this function's setting.

Setting the operations for incoming calls with no caller ID

Anonymous Caller

The operation for an incoming call with no caller ID is set for each reason for no caller ID.

- As for the ring tone and image for an incoming voice call with no caller ID, this function's setting is prioritized over Incoming Call Setting and Sound Setting.
- When there is an incoming videophone call with no caller ID, this function operates only when ***Call Rejection*** is set for the operation of the corresponding reason for no caller ID. If set otherwise, it operates as set in Sound Setting or Incoming Videophone Setting.

Default Disable settings (all)

1 MENU 8 6 3 ▶ **Enter the terminal security code**

2 1 **to** 3

- Perform Step 2 to 4 repeatedly for each reason to hide the caller ID.
- The reason for no caller ID ☛P58

3 **Select each item to set**

Incoming setting:
Sets the operation for an incoming call with no caller ID.

- When ***Disable settings*** is set, the ring tone set to ***Phone*** in Sound Setting sounds.
- Setting ***Call Rejection*** rejects an incoming call.
- Setting ***Ring alert off*** makes the ring tone to be silent.
- When ***Select ring tone*** or ***Movie ringtone*** is selected, select a melody or video/i-motion file.
- When ***Disable settings*** or ***Call Rejection*** is set, ***Show image*** cannot be set. When ***Movie ringtone*** is set, ***Show image*** is set to ***Sync ring alert***.

Show image: Sets an image displayed for an incoming call with no caller ID.

- When ***Standard image*** is selected, the default image is set.
- When ***Select image*** (under ***Show image***) is selected, select ***Select image*** (under ***List images***) to select an image.
- When ***i-motion*** is selected, select a video/i-motion file from the folder list. When the folder list is not displayed, select ***Select image*** (under ***List images***).

- Playing and checking a melody or video/i-motion file when selecting ☛P104

4 **Press** 📖

INFORMATION

- When Reject non-Reg. Caller is set and a call without caller ID is received, the setting for Reject non-Reg. Caller is prioritized over this function.
- When ***Call Rejection*** is set, the rejected calls are recorded as missed calls in the received call history.
- When the video/i-motion with only sounds (i-motion with no image such as the vocals of singers) is set for ***Movie ringtone*** in the incoming setting, ***Standard image*** is set. Note that the image except for Flash movie can be changed by selecting ***Select image*** in ***Show image*** field.

Setting not to answer a call from the party not registered in the phonebook

Mute Ring Time Setting

The ringer action by a ring tone or vibrator is set to be activated for an incoming voice call or videophone call from a caller who is not registered in the phonebook or does not notify the phone number after the specified time has elapsed. The function is effective to nuisance calls such as “One-Ring Call”.

- This function cannot be set when Reject non-Reg. Caller is set to ***ON***.

Default OFF

1 MENU 8 1 8

2 **Select each item to set**

Delayed ring alert : Specifies whether to enable Mute Ring Time Setting.
- When ***OFF*** is set, the following items cannot be set.

Delay time (sec) : Sets the time period between the arrival of calls and the start of ringing (between 1 to 99 seconds).

Missed call : Sets whether to display a missed call which ends in less than the time set in ***Delay time*** in the received call history.

3 **Press** [Save]

When Mute Ring Time Setting is set

When there is an incoming call from a caller who is not registered in the phonebook, the call will be notified only on the display for the set time period. After the set time has elapsed, normal ringer action will start.

- Even before the set time passes, answering an incoming call or replying by Answer Machine can be performed. In that case, even if ***Missed call*** is set to ***Not display***, the incoming call is recorded in the received call history.
- This function operates even for an incoming call from the party registered in the phonebook while PIM Lock or Privacy Mode is on (***Authorized access*** set for ***Phonebook & Logs***).
- This function also operates in the following cases:
  - When a call with no caller ID is received even if the party is registered in the phonebook.
  - While not in Secret Mode, when there is an incoming call from the party registered in the phonebook as an entry with Secret Attribute set.

INFORMATION

- The following functions and services are operated regardless of this function's settings:
  - Public mode (Driving mode)
  - Answer Machine
  - Voice Mail Service
  - Call Forwarding Service
- If you receive a call from the phone number set to be rejected in Anonymous Caller, Anonymous Caller is prioritized over this function.
- In case ***Delay time*** is set to the same number of seconds as the set time for Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service, the ring tone may sound.

Rejecting calls from phone numbers not registered in the phonebook

Reject non-Reg. Caller

- Combination with Caller ID Request Service is recommended to use.
- When ***Delayed ring alert*** in Mute Ring Time Setting is set to ***ON***, this function cannot be set.

Default OFF

1 MENU 8 6 7 2

2 **Enter the terminal security code ▶ 1**

- To cancel the setting: 2

When Reject non-Reg. Caller is set

When there is an incoming call from the party who is not registered in the phonebook, the call is disconnected without activating the ring tone and the caller hears busy signals.

- The rejected calls are recorded as missed calls in the received call history.
- The call is also rejected in the following cases:
  - When a call with no caller ID is received even if the party is registered in the phonebook.
  - When there is an incoming call from the party who is registered in the phonebook as an entry with Secret Attribute set while not in Secret Mode.

INFORMATION

- When there is an incoming call with no caller ID, this function's setting is prioritized over Anonymous Caller.
- i-mode Mail or SMS is received regardless of this function's setting.

Other “Safety settings”

The following Safety settings can be used.

Purpose	Function or Service	Page
To receive only necessary mail messages out of large-volume messages received	Receive Option Setting	P217
To change mail addresses	Change Mail Address	See “ i-mode User’s Manual”.
To receive only mail messages sent from the specified domain	Receive Mail from Selected Domains	
To receive/reject mail messages only between i-mode terminals	Receive/Reject only i-mode mail	
To reject unsolicited AD mail messages	Reject Unsolicited Ad Mail	
To reject i-mode Mail messages after 200th messages sent from an i-mode terminal in a day	Reject Mass i-mode Mail Senders	
To register/check the safety of relatives by using i-mode when a disaster occurs	i-mode Disaster Message Board Service	
To receive/reject only mail messages from the specified addresses	Receive/Reject Selected Mail	
To reject all SMS, SMS with no caller ID, International SMS or SMS with no caller ID and International SMS	Reject all SMS/ Reject SMS with no caller ID/ Reject International SMS/ Reject SMS with no caller ID and International SMS	
To stop mail function temporarily	Suspend Mail	
To reject “Nuisance calls” including malicious calls and repeating misdialed calls	Nuisance Call Blocking Service	P303
To enable safe and reliable data communications by using the electronic authentication service, “FirstPass” (FirstPass-compatible sites only)	FirstPass	P167 P181
To update FOMA terminal software by using packet communication	Software Update	P352
To protect FOMA terminal from viruses by deleting data that may cause problems or stopping the starting of applications	Virus Scan Function	P356

Camera

Before using the camera 144
Shooting still images with Camera ..... Still Camera 147
Recording videos with Movie Camera ..... Movie Camera 149
Setting the still image/video size or the saving method
..... Still Image Setting/Recording Setting 151
Shooting by various methods 152
Changing the settings for shooting 153
Sending still images shot during voice calls ..... One-shot Message 156
Using Bar Code Reader ..... Bar Code Reader 157

Before using the camera

Still images and videos can be shot with your FOMA terminal camera. Still images and videos can be displayed/played on FOMA terminal, sent via i-mode Mail as attachments or sent via infrared communication.

About the camera

- Note that though the camera is manufactured using extremely accurate technology, some pixels and lines may always be displayed to be lighter or darker than you expect. Noise such as dots and lines may increase especially when you shoot in a place with very low light intensity, but note that such noise is not a malfunction.
- When the lens is exposed to direct sunlight for a long period of time, the inside color filter will become discolored and images may be correspondingly discolored as well.
- When you attempt to shoot a strong light source such as the sun or a lamp or when the battery level is low, the image may become dark or degraded.
- Depending on the characteristics of the lens, displayed images may be distorted.
- If you shoot under illumination flickering at high frequencies such as fluorescent lights, mercury vapor lights, and sodium lights, a striped pattern may appear on the screen, but this is not a malfunction. To minimize the pattern, change the angle or distance of shooting, or move to a slightly different place.
- Images taken with the camera may differ from the actual subjects in color and brightness, depending on conditions.

Points of concern when shooting images

- If the lens is contaminated with fingerprints or skin oil, you cannot shoot clean images. Use a soft cloth to remove any such contaminants before shooting.
- Hold your FOMA terminal firmly to prevent blurring when shooting. If you use auto timer, you can avoid blurring of images due to hand shake because the shutter is automatically released. ☛P152
- Do not cover the lens with fingers or strap.
- Set the brightness depending on the situation of the shooting. ☛P153
- With the out-camera, shoot an object from 50 cm or more. Switch to Macro when shooting from a very short distance. ☛P153
- There is a small time lag between taking a picture and pressing ● or ▭●. Do not move FOMA terminal for period after pressing ● or ▭●. If you shoot a fast moving subject, the shot image might slightly differ from the subject displayed on the screen when you press ● or ▭●.
- If you shoot the quickly moving subjects in the Movie Camera mode, the image may be blurred.
- When you direct the camera toward yourself by using the in-camera, the screen displays a mirror image, but shot still images and videos are normal. For still images, setting ***Auto save*** of Still Image Setting to ***No*** can be used to save as mirror images.
- When you use the camera from i-αppli, the shot still images and the recorded videos are not saved in ***Image*** (My Picture) or ***i-motion*** folder but saved in i-αppli. However, some i-αppli may be saved in ***i-mode*** or ***Deco-Mail picture*** folder of ***Image*** (My Picture) or ***i-mode*** folder of ***i-motion***. Shot images and videos may be automatically sent to the server.
- If the battery power goes out before saving a shot still image or video, it is not saved.
- Because the camera consumes a lot of battery power, do not leave the camera activated long time or do not keep shot images long time without being saved.
- Some settings may require extra time to show an image on the shooting screen after you start the camera.

About copyrights and portrait rights

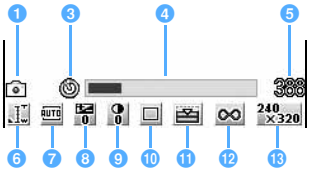
The copyright laws prohibit unauthorized use, such as reproduction, alteration and modification, of photographs or videos and i-mode or Internet web site information obtained by using the FOMA terminal without the permission of the relevant copyright holders except for personal use. Please refrain from

unauthorized use of portraits or names of other persons that may infringe on portrait rights. When you release shot or recorded work on Internet web pages, use care not to infringe on copyrights or portrait rights. Note that shooting or recordings at some demonstrations, performances or exhibitions may be prohibited even when only for personal use.

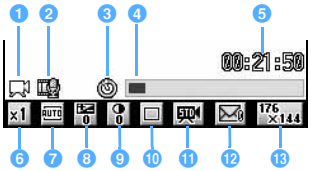
Please be considerate of the privacy of individuals around you when taking and sending images using camera-equipped mobile phones.

Shooting screen and files

Viewing the shooting/recording screen



Still image shooting screen



Video recording screen

❶**Function/status** : Indicates the functions in progress or the status of shooting.
: Still Camera ☛P147 : Movie Camera ☛P149

❷**Recording type** : Indicates the type of the video to be recorded. ☛P151

❸**Auto timer** : Indicates during the setting. ☛P152

❹**Indicator** : **During standby for shooting**
Indicates the available storage space during the normal shooting. During auto timer countdown, indicates the remaining time untill the shutter is released.
During video recording/pause
Indicates the size rate of the recorded image size to the file size set for the size restrictions.

❺**Counter** : **During standby for shooting**
During the normal shooting, it indicates the maximum number (estimates) of still images or the maximum recording time (estimate) of videos that can be saved to FOMA terminal in the current setting. Indicates the remaining time untill the shutter is released during auto timer count down.
During video recording/pause
Indicates the elapsed/remaining time (estimated remaining time before the recording stops).

❻**Zoom** : Indicates display magnification of the image. ☛P152

❼**Scene mode/effect**
: Indicates the scene mode/effect. ☛P155

❽**Brightness** : Indicates the brightness of the still image or video to be shot. ☛P155

❾**Color density** : Indicates the color density of the still image or video to be shot. ☛P155

❿**Frame setting** : Indicates the current frame setting. ☛P154

⓫**Quality** : Indicates the setting of the quality of the still image and video. ☛P155

⓬**Size restrictions** : Indicates the size restrictions of the file to be saved. ☛P156

⓭**Image size** : Indicates the size of the still image to shoot and the video to record. ☛P154

INFORMATION

- The indicator, counter and size restrictions are not displayed when the screen is started from i-αppli. You can only switch the in-camera/out-camera, start auto timer and zoom in/out can be operated.
- During video recording, when the horizontal shot for 320 x 240 (QVGA) is taken place, ■STANDBY (recording standby), ● REC (recording) and ❚❚PAUSE (in pause) are indicated and the display position for the counter is changed.

Still image files/video files

Item	Still image file	Video file
File format	JPEG (compatible to Exif format, PRINT Image Matching Ⅲ)	MP4 (MobileMP4)
Encoding method	—	Video: MPEG-4 Sound: AMR
Extension	jpg	3gp
File name/display name/title	Automatically set by the shooting date/time. Example: For 12:34:56 on May 22, 2006 → 20060522123456 • The file name and display name can be changed after shooting. ☛P264 • If the date and time of FOMA terminal are not set, the file name, display name and title (for video only) appear as "----------".	
Mail attachment/ output	Files can be attached to the mail to send and can also be imported to PCs and other terminals by using the proprietary data link software.	

Maximum saved number of still images/maximum recording time of videos

The number of still images that can be saved in D702i varies depending on the settings of quality, image size and size restrictions or the shooting conditions. The available video recording time varies depending on the settings of quality, image size, recording type and size restriction or the recording conditions.

- The quality, image size and size restrictions of still images can be set in Still Image Setting. The quality, image size, recording type and size restrictions of video can be set in Recording Setting.

■ Number of still images that can be saved (estimates)

Unit: number of images

Size / Quality	96 x 72	128 x 96	176 x 144	240 x 320	352 x 288	640 x 480	480 x 640	960 x 1280	1024 x 1280
Economy	759	759	759	564	435	208	208	80	72
Standard	759	759	737	417	330	149	145	49	44
Fine	759	737	504	252	208	87	87	27	24

■ Recording time of videos that can be saved (estimates)

Size restrictions	Size	Recording type	Recording time per 1 recording (unit: second)				Total recording time that can be saved (unit: minute)			
			Quality				Quality			
			LP	STD	HQ	HQ+	LP	STD	HQ	HQ+
Msg attach (S)	128 x 96	Video + Voice	112	71	51	21	63	38	28	11
		Video only	185	94	70	24	106	51	39	13
	176 x 144	Video + Voice	86	45	30	11	48	24	16	5
		Video only	125	54	36	12	71	28	19	6
	320 x 240	Video + Voice	31	17	13	6	17	9	7	6
		Video only	36	18	14	6	19	8	6	5
Msg attach (L)	128 x 96	Video + Voice	188	119	87	36	63	39	28	11
		Video only	316	160	120	41	107	51	39	13
	176 x 144	Video + Voice	146	76	51	20	49	24	16	6
		Video only	211	89	62	21	72	28	20	6
	320 x 240	Video + Voice	54	28	23	10	18	9	7	6
		Video only	61	30	24	10	20	8	6	5

- A shutter sound is heard even when ***Silent*** is set in Ring Volume Setting or Silent Mode or Public mode (Driving mode) is on. The shutter sound volume cannot be changed.
- When you activate Camera or shoot an image, the keys light. You cannot change the setting of whether or not to light the keys and the lighting pattern.
- While the shooting screen is displayed, the camera indicator is lit. When you shoot, the camera indicator goes off and then lights again. While a still image is being saved, a confirmation screen is displayed, or you are selecting a menu, the camera indicator is off.

1 (for over a second)

Still image shooting screen

Camera is activated.

- To activate Camera by shooting with the in-camera: (for over a second)
- During shooting standby, the following operations are enabled:
  - 9: Switches the screen between the full mode/standard mode
    - When the full mode is set, the icons and guide row disappear at the bottom of the screen.
  - : Switches the in-camera/out-camera.
  - (for over a second): Switches between Still Camera/Movie Camera.

2 Point the camera at the object and or

The shutter sound sounds, a still image is shot and a confirmation screen is displayed.

- If ***Auto save*** of Still Image Setting is set to ***Yes***, the shot still image is saved and the shooting screen reappears. The operations after Step 3 are not needed.

3 View and confirm the still image

- To save the still image immediately: Go to Step 4
- To retake another image without saving the shot image: clr/クリア
- To enlarge the still image with the display size of 176 x 144 (QCIF) or smaller and check it:
  - Press to return to the original size.
- To display the still image with the display size of 640 x 480 (VGA LANDSCAPE) or more at the same size and check it:
  - to scroll. Press clr/クリア to return to the original size.

Sending the shot still image via mail:

A confirmation screen is displayed asking whether or not to save the shot still image. Select ***Yes*** to save the image in FOMA terminal, and the mail composition screen is displayed. Depending on the image size or file size setting, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to convert the image to the standby display size or save it to Data Box. ☛P197

- A confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to adjust the file size of the shot still image depending on the settings of image size and size restrictions. Select ***No limit*** to save the shot still image at the original size and select ***Msg attach:Small*** to save the shot still image smaller than 9,000 bytes in FOMA terminal.
- If the shot and saved image is smaller than 9,000 bytes, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether you attach the shot still image into the mail text. Select ***Yes*** to attach it into the mail text, select ***No*** to set it to the attached file.

■ **Setting the image for the standby display: MENU 2 1 ▶ Select *Yes***
The shot still image is saved and set for the standby display.
- If zooming is available for the still image, select ***Yes (Same size)*** to maintain the image size or select ***Yes (Large size)*** to enlarge it to the screen size.
- If the i-αppli standby display has been set, a confirmation screen asking whether or not to cancel it is displayed continuously.

■ **Adding the image to phonebook entries (only when the image size is 96 x 72 (phonebook)): MENU 2 ▶ 2 or 3 ▶ Select *Yes***
The shot still image is saved to FOMA terminal and the phonebook registration screen is displayed.
- To register updating, select the phonebook data to register.

■ **Changing the title: MENU 3 1 ▶ Enter the title (up to 31 characters regardless of one-byte or two-byte) ▶ 📖**

■ **Adjusting the brightness or color balance: 📖**
This brings you to the still image correction mode. For the subsequent steps, ☛P251
- When the image size is 640 x 480 (VGA LANDSCAPE), 480 x 640 (VGA PORTRAIT), 960 x 1280 (SXGA) or 1024 x 1280 (1.3M), it cannot be corrected.

■ **Saving as mirror image (only when shooting with the in-camera): MENU 4 1**
- When a frame is set, mirror image saving is unavailable.

■ **Switching the normal display/mirror display (only when shooting with the in-camera): MENU 4 2**

■ **Displaying the list of images stored in FOMA terminal: MENU 6**

4 ● or 📷

The shot still images are saved in ***Camera*** folder of ***Image*** (My Picture).

■ **Checking the saved still image immediately: 📖 ▶ Select the still image**
- For the operations while displaying the images ☛P246 Step 3 in “Displaying images”
- Press ch/クリア twice to return to the still image shooting screen.
- The images cannot be checked when Camera is started from the phonebook, mail or i-αppli.

INFORMATION

- Saving the shot still image may take time depending on the image size or quality.
- When there is not enough available storage space to save, or you have exceeded the maximum allowable number of images, delete unnecessary images or change the settings of image size and quality to lower values according to the screen.
- Shooting still images during a voice call may interrupt the call.
- If there is an incoming call before the shutter sound is heard during standby for shooting still image, shooting will stop. When the shutter sound has been heard and a still image has been shot already, the still image is saved automatically if ***Auto save*** is set to ***Yes***. If ***Auto save*** is set to ***No***, a confirmation screen is displayed after the end of the call. However, the shot still images may be discarded depending on the timing of receiving calls.
- You cannot use the following functions at the confirmation screen when Camera is started from the phonebook or mail:
  - Composing mail
  - Standby display settings
  - Saving images in the phonebook
  - Adjustment
  - Displaying the same size
  - Displaying the image list
- Even if you shoot while setting ***Shooting date/time*** to ***Date*** or ***Date*** ＋ ***Time*** in Still Image Setting, the date or the time is not displayed on the confirmation screen. The date or the time is displayed on the saved still image. In addition, on the still image with the display size of 640 x 480 (VGA LANDSCAPE) or more, if you press 📷 on the confirmation screen and display the still image at the same size, the date or the time is displayed.
- Following settings should be set for the out-camera and the in-camera respectively. When you switch between them, the settings also change accordingly.
  - Scene mode/effect
  - Frame
  - Image quality
  - Size restrictions
  - Image size

- At the time of purchase, the video with sound is set to be shot. It can be changed in Recording Setting.
- Shutter sound is heard even when ***Silent*** is set in Ring Volume Setting or Silent Mode or Public mode (Driving mode) is active. The shutter sound volume cannot be changed.
- When you activate Movie Camera, record video or pause recording, the keys light or flash. You cannot change the setting of whether or not to light/flash the keys and the lighting pattern.
- While the video recording screen is displayed or recording is paused, the camera indicator is lit. While recording, the camera indicator is flashing. While a video is being saved, a confirmation screen is displayed, or you are selecting a menu, the camera indicator is off.

1 MENU 6 4

Video recording screen

Movie Camera is activated.

- During standby for recording, the following operations are enabled:

9 : Switches the vertical shot/horizontal shot. (only when the image size is set to 320 x 240 (QVGA))*1

: Switches the in-camera/out-camera.

(for over a second) :
Switches between Movie Camera/Still Camera.

*1 You can perform this operation only when shooting with the out-camera.

2 Point the camera at the object and press ● or 📷

The shutter sound is heard and recording is started and switches to ●.

- Press ● to pause while recording. ● switches to ❚❚. Press ● or 📷, and the recording restarts.

3 📖 or 📷

The shutter sound is heard and recording is finished. A confirmation screen is displayed.

- If ***Auto save*** of Recording Setting is set to ***Yes***, the shooting screen reappears after saving the video shot. The operations after Step 4 are not needed.
- If the size of video file reaches the limit while recording, recording is automatically stopped and video recorded up to that point is saved.
- If 📖 is pressed to end the recording while in pause, the video recorded up to that point is saved.

4 View and confirm the video shot

- To save the video immediately: Go to Step 5
- To retake another video without saving the shot video: ch/クリア
- To play the video: 📖
  - When ***Auto Play*** in Recording Setting is set to ***Yes***, the recorded video is played automatically.

■ **Sending the recorded video via mail:** ✉

A confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to save the recorded video. Select ***Yes*** to save the recorded video in FOMA terminal, and the mail composition screen is displayed.

- When the image size is set to 320 x 240 (QVGA), the video cannot be attached.

■ **Setting the video for the standby display: MENU 2 1 ▶ Select *Yes***

The recorded video is saved to FOMA terminal and set for the standby display.

- If zooming is available for the shot video, select ***Yes (Same size)*** to maintain the image size or select ***Yes (Large size)*** to enlarge it to the screen size.
- If the i-αppli standby display has been set, a confirmation screen asking whether or not to cancel it is displayed continuously.

■ **Adding the video to phonebook entries: MENU 2 ▶ 2 or 3 ▶ Select *Yes***

The recorded video is saved to FOMA terminal and the phonebook registration screen is displayed.

- To register updating, select the phonebook data to register.
- Videos can be added to the phonebook entry only when the image size is set to 128 x 96 (Sub-QCIF) or 176 x 144 (QCIF) and the recording type is set to ***Video only***.

■ **Changing the title: MENU 3 1 ▶ Enter the title (up to 31 characters regardless of one-byte or two-byte) ▶ 🔍**

- The changed title will be valid after the video is saved.

■ **Inserting a ticker: MENU 3 2 ▶ Select *Yes***

The recorded video is saved to FOMA terminal and the ticker setting screen is displayed. Follow the procedure from Step 3 in “Inserting tickers”. ☛P256

- When the image size is set to 320 x 240 (QVGA), a ticker cannot be inserted.

■ **Displaying the list of videos saved in FOMA terminal: MENU 5**

5 Press ● or 📷

The recorded video is saved in ***Camera*** folder of ***i-motion***.

■ **Checking the saved video immediately: 🔍 ▶ Select a video**

- After the confirmation, press 戻る/クリア twice to return to the video recording screen.
- The check is not available when Movie Camera is started from the phonebook, mail or i-αppli software.

INFORMATION

- When key operation is made or recharging is started during recording, operation tone may be recorded.
- Recording may be stopped before the file size reaches the limit set for the size restrictions, depending on data you record.
- When there is not enough memory or the saved data exceeds the maximum number, delete unwanted videos or sounds or change settings of the size restrictions according to the screen.
- The recording stops if a call arrives, the time set for the alarm or schedule alarm arrives, or 📷 is pressed during recording. The data recorded before the stop is saved automatically when ***Auto save*** is set to ***Yes***. When ***Auto save*** is set to ***No***, a confirmation screen is displayed.
- If the battery is almost exhausted during recording, the low battery message appears and the recording process stops. If ***Auto save*** is set to ***Yes***, the data that has been recorded till then is automatically stored; pressing ● returns you to the recording screen. If ***Auto save*** is set to ***No***, pressing ● displays a confirmation screen. Even after you return to the recording screen, you cannot operate it while you see a message indicating that the battery level is too low for recording.
- If an alarm or battery alarm interrupts recording, you may hear the alarm or battery alarm recorded at the end of the saved video/sound.
- You cannot use the following functions on the confirmation screen when Movie Camera is started from the phonebook or mail.
  - Composing mail
  - Standby display settings
  - Saving videos in the phonebook
  - Inserting a ticker
  - Displaying the video list
- The following should be set for the out-camera and the in-camera separately. When you switch between the cameras, the settings are also switched accordingly.
  - Scene mode/effect
  - Frame
  - Image quality
  - Size restrictions
  - Image size
  - Recording type

Setting the still image/video size or the saving method

• Images/videos cannot be set when Still Camera or Movie Camera is started from the phonebook, mail or i-αppli software. In this case, ***Camera time-out*** is automatically reset to ***1 min***.

Default

● **Still Image Settings**
Image size: 240 x 320 (standby) for the out-camera, 352 x 288 (CIF) for the in-camera Quality: Standard
Shooting date/time: None Size restrictions: None Auto-timer duration: 10 sec. Auto save: No
Camera time-out: 1 min. Shutter sound: Shutter sound1 Set lighting: Always on

● **Recording Settings**
Quality: STD Recording Type: Video + Voice Size restrictions: Msg attach: Small Size: 176 x 144 (QCIF)
Auto-timer duration: 10 sec. Auto Play: No Auto save: No Camera time-out: 1 min.
Shutter sound: Shutter sound1 Set lighting: Always on

Example When changing Still Image Setting

1 **(for over a second)** ▶ MENU 6

■ **When changing Recording Setting:** MENU 6 4 ▶ MENU 6

2 **Select each item to set** ▶

Details on the set items

○ : Setting available × : Setting not available

Item	Still image	Video/sound	Description
***Image size/ Size**1**	○	○	Sets the image size for still images/video to be shot. ☛P154 • The image size cannot be set to 240 x 320 (standby), 640 x 480 (VGA LANDSCAPE), 480 x 640 (VGA PORTRAIT), 960 x 1280 (SXGA) or 1024 x 1280 (1.3M) during shooting still images with the in-camera.
***Quality**1**	○	×	Sets the quality for the still image files to be saved. ☛P155
Shooting date/ time	○	×	Sets whether to insert the shooting date and time at the lower right of the still image.
***Quality**1 (video)**	×	○	Sets the quality of video/sound files to be saved. ☛P155
***Recording Type**1**	×	○	Sets the type of video/sound to be recorded. : ***Video + Voice*** : ***Video only*** : ***Voice only*** (Sound Recorder)
***Size restrictions**1**	○	○	Sets the size restrictions of files to be saved. ☛P156
Auto-timer duration	○	○	Sets the duration of time until the shutter is released while using auto timer (2 to 15 seconds).
Auto Play	×	○	Sets whether to play the video/sound automatically when a confirmation screen is displayed.
Auto save	○	○	Select ***Yes*** to save the shot still images or video/sounds automatically. Selecting ***No*** displays a confirmation screen after shooting/recording.
Camera time-out	○	○	Sets the duration of time until Still Camera/Movie Camera/Sound Recorder turns off when no operation is made.
Shutter sound	○	○	Select the shooting confirmation sound from shutter sounds 1 to 5. • The selected sound is played.
Set lighting	○	○	When ***Always on*** is set, the lighting of the display stays on while the still image shooting/video recording screen is displayed. Setting ***Phone settings*** applies the settings of Display Light Setting (☛P118).

*1 Items that are separately set by an out-camera and in-camera. The out-camera setting while using the out-camera and the in-camera setting while using the in-camera will be changed when the item is set.

INFORMATION

- ***Shooting date/time*** cannot be set when ***Image size*** is set to 96 x 72 (phonebook) in Still Image Setting.
- In Still Image Setting, 352 x 288 (CIF), 640 x 480 (VGA LANDSCAPE), 480 x 640 (VGA PORTRAIT), 960 x 1280 (SXGA) or 1024 x 1280 (1.3M) for ***Image size*** and ***Msg attach:Small*** for ***Size restrictions*** cannot be set simultaneously.
- In Recording Setting, ***LP*** or ***HQ+*** for ***Quality*** and ***Voice only*** for ***Recording Type*** cannot be set at the same time.
- If Recording Setting is set in Movie Camera or Sound Recorder, both settings for Movie Camera and Sound Recorder are changed. However, the qualities are separately set with Movie Camera and Sound Recorder.

Shooting by various methods

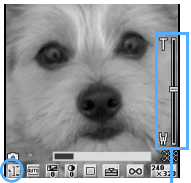
Zooming

• The available display magnifications depend on the image size, which are as shown below:

Shooting by	Image size	Display magnification
Still Camera	96 x 72 (phonebook), 128 x 96 (Sub-QCIF), 176 x 144 (QCIF), 240 x 320 (standby)	1 to 4 times (16 levels)
	352 x 288 (CIF), 480 x 640 (VGA)	1 to 2 times (6 levels)
	640 x 480 (VGA), 960 x 1280 (SXGA), 1024 x 1280 (1.3M)	Zoom unavailable
Movie Camera	128 x 96 (Sub-QCIF), 176 x 144 (QCIF), 320 x 240 (QVGA, horizontal shooting)	1, 2, and 4 times
	320 x 240 (QVGA, vertical shooting)	1 and 2 times

• Zoom is unavailable during in-camera shooting.

1 ◎ on the still image shooting screen/the video recording screen



Still image shooting screen

Each time you press, the slider shifts.

- You can also press 1, then shift the slider with ◎ and press ◎.
- Shooting procedures for still images and videos are the same as in normal shooting.

■ **Still image shooting:**

Normal ↔ ↔ ↔ ↔ ↔ Maximum

■ **Video recording:**

×1: Normal ×2: 2 times ×4: 4 times

Using auto timer

Since the shutter is automatically released after the specified number of second has elapsed, you can take your own picture and avoid blurring of images due to hand movement.

• The number of second until the shutter is released can be set in Still image Setting or Recording Setting.

1 MENU 4 on the still image shooting screen/the video recording screen

Auto timer is set and ⏲ is indicated.

• To cancel the setting: MENU 4 again

2 Point the camera at the object and press ● or ■

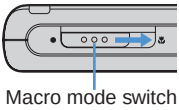
The countdown sound is heard and the auto timer countdown starts. The indicator and counter show an estimate of the remaining time before shooting and the remaining number of seconds. The intervals of sounds become shorter as the shooting time approaches. After the specified number of second has elapsed, the shutter sound is heard and shooting is started.

- The keys and the camera indicator flash during auto timer countdown. As the shooting time approaches, flashing intervals of the camera indicator become shorter. Also, the keys stop flashing and light.
- To stop the auto timer on the way: C
- Note that shooting is stopped if the time set for the alarm or schedule alarm arrives or ■ is pressed during auto timer countdown.

Shooting nearby object

Macro

When shooting a nearby object with the out-camera, slide the macro mode switch on the side of the terminal to (Macro) to enable shooting from a very short distance.



- Slide the switch fully to the position till it stops.
- Shoot an object from 7 to 10 cm distance in the macro mode and from 50 cm or more in the normal mode.
- The shooting method is the same as the standard shooting.
- When the macro mode shooting ends, return the macro mode switch to the position (normal mode). If you forget to return the switch, you are likely to shoot a distant object next time with (Macro) and not to get a clean shot.
- Switching to (Macro) will not change the shooting distance with the in-camera.

Changing the settings for shooting

Frames, image size, scene mode/effect, brightness, color density, quality or size restrictions can be set.

- The following settings will be kept even if you finish using Camera or Movie camera.
  - Image size
  - Brightness
  - Color density
  - Quality
  - Size restrictions

Default Frame: not set Size: (Still image)240 x 320 (standby) for the out-camera, 352 x 288 (CIF) for the in-camera (Video)176 x 144 (QCIF) SceneModes: Full auto Brightness: ± 0 CololDnsty: ± 0 Quality: (Still image)Standard (Video)STD Size Limit: (Still image)None (Video)Msg attach S

Example Setting a frame

1 ● to highlight the icon of frame on the still image shooting screen or the video recording screen

- Similarly, to change other settings than a frame, highlight each icon.
- Keys 1 to 8 are assigned to the icon in order from the left. The cursor also moves by pressing the following keys:

1 : Zoom ☛P152	4 : Color density	7 : Size restrictions
2 : Scene mode	5 : Frame	8 : Image size
3 : Brightness	6 : Quality	

2 ◎ to change a frame ▶ ●

- As in the case of changing other settings, change the value with ◎ and press ●.
- For scene mode, frame, quality, size restrictions and image size, you can also set the value by pressing the corresponding keys (2, 5 to 8) and then pressing ●.

Frames

You can select frames saved in FOMA terminal or frame images downloaded from sites.

: Frame is set : Frame is canceled

- The frames registered by default are applicable to image sizes of 176 x 144 (QCIF) and 240 x 320 (standby). ☛P328
- Frames cannot be set when 96 x 72 (phonebook), 640 x 480 (VGA LANDSCAPE), 480 x 640 (VGA PORTRAIT), 960 x 1280 (SXGA) or 1024 x 1280 (1.3M) for image size of still image, or 320 x 240 (QVGA) for image size of video is set.
- Frames cannot be applied when Camera is started from the phonebook, mail or i-αppli software.
- To cancel the setting: 5 (for over a second)

INFORMATION

- You can also select frames from the list by pressing MENU 3 1 on the still image shooting screen or video recording screen.
- If you select a frame that is opposite in horizontal and vertical values to the image size, the frame is displayed after rotating 90 degrees clockwise; for example, suppose that you have selected a 144 x 176 frame when the image size is 176 x 144 (QCIF). In this case, the frame rotates 180 degrees by pressing MENU 3 3 on the still image shooting screen or video recording screen. Note that your frame cannot be rotated if it is the same as the image size in terms of horizontal and vertical values.
- If the frame is downloaded from a site during shooting, the added frame becomes selectable by pressing MENU 3 4 on the still image shooting screen or video recording screen.

Image size

You can set the following image size:

Shooting method	Size	Icon	Sending mail available/not available
Still Camera	96 x 72 (phonebook)	96×72	Images can be attached to i-mode Mail to send to an i-mode terminal or PC. In addition, these sizes are suitable for attaching to Deco-mail.
	128 x 96 (Sub-QCIF)	128×96	
	176 x 144 (QCIF)	176×144	
	240 x 320 (standby)*1	240×320	
	352 x 288 (CIF)	352×288	Images can be attached to i-mode Mail to send to an i-mode terminal or PC. A confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to convert to 240 x 320 or 320 x 240 (standby) when attaching files to mail.
	640 x 480 (VGA LANDSCAPE)*1	640×480	
	480 x 640 (VGA PORTRAIT)*1	480×640	
	960 x 1280 (SXGA)*1	960×1280	
	1024 x 1280 (1.3M)*1	1024×1280	
Movie Camera	128 x 96 (Sub-QCIF)	128×96	Images can be attached to i-mode Mail to send to an i-mode terminal or PC.
	176 x 144 (QCIF)	176×144	
	320 x 240 (QVGA)	320×240	Images cannot be attached to i-mode Mail.

*1 This is a valid image size only when shooting with the out-camera.

- The maximum size of an image file that can be sent to the i-mode terminal is 500 Kbytes.
- The still image size best suited for viewing on the i-mode terminal is 240 x 320 (standby).
- The size restrictions setting may be changed automatically depending on the image size setting.

• During i-αppli running, the image size cannot be set to 1024 x 1280 (1.3M). If the still image shooting screen is displayed during i-αppli running when the image size is set to 1024 x 1280 (1.3M), the image size is changed to 960 x 1280 (SXGA).

Scene mode/effect

8 setting types are available according to color tone and shooting situation.

Full auto : Standard scene mode/effect. Use this mode normally.

Backlight : Compensates backlight images by adjusting brightness of the darkened part such as face.

Sepia : Shoots in sepia colors.

Monochrome : Shoots images like black-and-white photographs.

Twilight : Suitable for shooting the beautiful sunset scenery. With high intensity, images tend to look rather cyan.

Surf&Snow : Enhances the blue of the sky and sea, and the white of snow.

Scenery : Suitable for shooting nature or cityscape vividly. Intensity and sharpness are set rather high.

Night : Slows the shutter speed for night shooting. Hold the mobile firmly to prevent blurring.

• ***Scenery*** and ***Night*** is unavailable in the Movie Camera mode. ***Backlight*** is unavailable during the in-camera shooting.

• In ***Night*** mode, color is captured more precisely; due to the camera characteristics, there may be noise (such as lines) in the image when shootings are done in a low-light situation.

• Press MENU/ 1 on the still image shooting screen/video recording screen to select a mode while viewing the description of each mode.

Brightness

-2 -1 ± 0 +1 +2

• Adjusting brightness may not have much effect depending on the object.

Color density

-2 -1 ± 0 +1 +2

• Adjusting color density may not have much effect depending on the object.

Quality of still images/videos

■ During still image shooting

Economy : Provides the lowest quality. The file size is reduced.

Standard : Provides the standard quality.

Fine : Provides the highest quality. The file size is enlarged.

■ During video recording

LP : Provides the lowest quality. The file size is reduced and the recording time becomes the longest.

STD : Provides the standard quality.

HQ : The video motion becomes smooth.

HQ+ : Provides the highest quality. The file size is enlarged and the recording time becomes the shortest.

Size restrictions

■ **During still image shooting**

When the file size of the shot still image is larger than the limit value, this setting automatically degrades the quality or reduce the file size to save the image.

***Msg attach:Small**1**：

Restricts the file size to 9000 bytes or fewer. The image with this file size is suitable for attaching to i-mode Mail.

***Msg attach:Large**1**：

Restricts the file size to 500 Kbytes or fewer. You can attach the image to i-mode Mail without changing the file size.

None：

Not restrict the file size.

- ***Msg attach:Small*** can be set only for the image with the size of 240 x 320 (standby) or smaller.
- The setting for size restrictions may be changed automatically depending on the setting for the image size.

*1 When you select the icon, ***Msg attach S*** or ***Msg attach L*** is displayed on the screen.

■ **During video recording**

When the file size of video exceeds the limit value during video recording, recording ends automatically.

***Msg attach:Small**1**：

Restricts the file size to 290 Kbytes or fewer. The image with this file size can be attached to i-mode Mail and sent to the terminal which does not support large message.

***Msg attach:Large**1**：

Restricts the file size to 490 Kbytes or fewer. The image with this file size can be sent to the terminal which supports large message.

*1 When you select the icon, ***Msg attach S*** or ***Msg attach L*** is displayed on the screen.

Restoring the default settings during shooting

Reset the settings for the scene mode/effect, brightness and color density to the default settings.

- For the scene mode/effect, only the out-camera setting is reset during the out-camera shooting; only the in-camera setting is reset during the in-camera shooting.

1 MENU 2 3 **on the still image shooting screen/the video recording screen**

2 **Select *Yes***

Sending still images shot during voice calls

One-shot Message

Send the still image shot during a voice call by attaching it to i-mode Mail to the other party during the call.

1 **during a voice call**

2 **Shoot a still image**

- When ***Yes*** is set for ***Auto save*** in Still Image Setting, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to attach the shot image to mail. If ***Yes*** is selected, the shot still image can be checked.

3 ▶ **Select *Yes***

The shot still image is saved to FOMA terminal and the mail composition screen is displayed. If the mail address of the other party during talking has been registered in the phonebook, the other party's address is inserted in the receiver field automatically. However, the mail address is not inserted when Privacy Mode is active (***Authorized access*** set for ***Phonebook & Logs***).

- Depending on the image size or the file size of the shot image, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to convert the image to the standby display size or save the image to Data Box. ☛P197
- A confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to adjust the file size of the shot still image depending on the settings of the image size and size restrictions. Select ***No limit*** to save the shot still image at the original size, select ***Msg attach:Small*** to save the shot still image in the file size smaller than 9,000 bytes to FOMA terminal.
- If the file size of the shot and saved image is smaller than 9,000 bytes, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to paste the shot still image into the mail text. Select ***Yes*** to paste it into the mail text, select ***No*** to set to the attached file.
- Press clr to return to the shooting screen without composing i-mode Mail. To cancel shooting, press clr on the shooting screen.

4 **Compose i-mode Mail and send it**

- To return to the talking screen: clr

Using Bar Code Reader

Bar Code Reader

Data such as text and number contained in the JAN code or QR code can be scanned using the camera. The scanned data can be saved as the phonebook or bookmark data. Also, the Phone To (AV Phone To), Mail To and Web To functions are available from the data.

- You can save the scanned data up to five items.
- Bar Code Reader can be used only with the out-camera.
- The barcodes and two-dimensional codes other than JAN and QR codes cannot be scanned.
- Some barcodes may not be scanned depending on the types and sizes.
- Scratches, dirt, damages, the low print quality, the strong reflection of light or some QR code versions may prevent the codes from being scanned.
- You can activate Bar Code Reader on the character entry screen and enter the scanned data directly. ☛P317

JAN Code

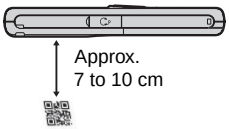
The JAN code is one of the barcodes indicating numbers with the vertical lines (bars) of different width. The barcodes of 8 digits (JAN8) or 13 digits (JAN13) can be scanned.
The left JAN code shows the numeral data "4942857123425".

QR Code

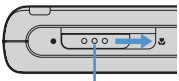
The QR code is one of the two-dimensional codes indicating a string of alphanumeric and other characters (kanji, kana and pictograms) or data such as melody or image with the vertical and horizontal patterns.
The left QR code shows the text data "FOMA D702i".

Scanning the code

Keep the out-camera about 7 to 10 cm away from the code to scan.



1 MENU 6 1 ▶ Slide the macro mode switch to (Macro)



- When Bar Code Reader ends, return the macro mode switch to the ● position (normal mode). If you forget to return the switch, you are likely to shoot a distant object with (Macro) and not to get a clean shot.
- To scan large size codes, switch to the normal mode.

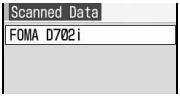
2 Scan the code

When you point the out-camera toward the code, the code is scanned automatically. If scanned correctly, a confirmation sound is played and the scanned data is displayed.

- When it is hard to scan the code, if you adjust the distance, angle or direction of the code and the out-camera, the code may be able to be scanned.
- If the data exceeds 11,000 one-byte or 5,500 two-byte characters, the exceeded characters are not displayed, but can be saved.
- When scanning is paused such as while a submenu is displayed, the icon indicated at the upper right of the screen changes to .

■ **Re-scanning the code:**

3 MENU 4



The scanned data is saved to FOMA terminal.

- When five data has already saved or the memory is not enough, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to delete the saved data. Select ***Yes*** to delete the saved data.

■ **Copying the text data in the scanned data:**

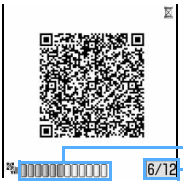
① MENU 1 ▶ **Select the start position to copy**

- To copy the entire text data: MENU

② **Select the end position to copy**

Scanning divided QR codes

When the data is divided into multiple parts (up to 16), scan them one by one according to messages displayed on the screen.



- Press ch/クリア to cancel scanning on the way. Select ***Yes*** when a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to discard the scanned QR code data.

This grid indicates the total number of QR codes.
Green: last scanned Blue: scan completed Gray: yet unscanned
Remaining number of QR codes/total number of QR codes

INFORMATION

- Even if you press MENU on the still image shooting screen or video recording screen and select ***Switch mode*** → ***Bar code reader***, Bar Code Reader can be used.
- When the ring volume for call and mail is set to ***Silent*** or Silent Mode or Public mode (Driving mode) is on, the confirmation sound for scanning the barcode does not sound.
- Press MENU 1 on the barcode reading screen and press 1 or 2 to switch to Still Camera or Movie Camera. When Bar Code Reader is started from other than the standby display, switching is not available.
- The scanned data is given a file name made up of the scanned date and time + serial file number + .jan or .qr (".jan" is for JAN code and ".qr" for QR code). The file name "20060522123400.jan", for example, means the JAN code scanned at May 22, 2006 12:34. When there are any previously saved data in the same date and time, 1 is added to the serial file number. Note that the date and time part of the file name appears as "----------" if the date and time of FOMA terminal is not set. The file name cannot be changed.

Using the scanned data

The available operations vary depending on the scanned data.

Example Adding data to the phonebook

1 MENU 6 1

2 📖 ▶ **Select the scanned data**

■ **Deleting the scanned data: Select the data ▶ MENU 3 1 ▶ Select *Yes***

- To delete all: MENU 3 2 ▶ Enter the terminal security code ▶ Select ***Yes***

3 **Select the data to add to the phonebook ▶ MENU 3 1 (Add new data) or MENU 3 2 (Update) ▶ 1 or 2**

The registration screen for the phonebook is displayed with the selected data entered.

- To register updating, select the phonebook data.

■ **Adding all data to the phonebook at one time: Select *Add to phonebook* ▶ 1 or 2**

The registration screen for the phonebook is displayed. The name and the reading are also entered depending on the data.

■ **Sending i-mode Mail: Select a mail address or *Compose message***

The mail composition screen is displayed.

- When ***Compose message*** is selected, the subject and the text are entered depending on the data.

■ **Connecting i-mode sites or Internet websites: Select a URL ▶ Select *Yes***

■ **Saving URLs as bookmarks:**

① **Select a URL ▶ MENU 3 3 or select *Add bookmark***

② **Select a folder**

- When ***Add bookmark*** is selected, the site name is also saved depending on the data.

■ **Starting i-αppli: Select *Start i-αppli***

■ **Making a voice call or a videophone call:**

① **Select a phone number ▶ Set the call conditions** ☛P53

② MENU ▶ **Select *Yes***

■ **Saving still images:**

① **Select a file name of a still image ▶ Select *Save***

- To display a still image: Select ***Display***

② **Select each item to set ▶** 📖 ☛P264

③ **Select a folder to save**

■ **Saving melodies:**

① **Select a file name of melody ▶ Select *Save***

- To play the melody: Select ***Play***

② **Enter the display name ▶**

The melody is saved in ***Data transfer*** folder of ***Melody*** of Data Box.

i-mode/i-motion

What's i-mode? 162

Displaying sites

Displaying sites 166
Reading and operating sites 168
Using My Menu ..... My Menu 169
Changing your current i-mode password ..... Change i-mode Password 170
Displaying Internet websites ..... Internet Connection 170
Registering websites and i-mode sites for quick browsing .... Bookmark 171
Saving site contents ..... Screen Memo 172

Downloading images and melodies from sites

Downloading images from sites and messages ..... Save Image 173
Downloading melodies from sites ..... i-melody 174
Downloading Chara-den from sites 174

Useful functions of i-mode

Useful functions of i-mode 175

Making i-mode settings

Making i-mode settings ..... i-mode Setting 176

Using Message Service

When Message R/F is received ..... Receive Message R/F 178
Displaying saved Message R/F ..... Message R/Message F 179

Using certificate

Operating certificates 181

Using i-motion

i-motion 183
Downloading i-motion from sites 183
Setting whether to play i-motion automatically ..... i-motion Setting 184

What's i-mode?

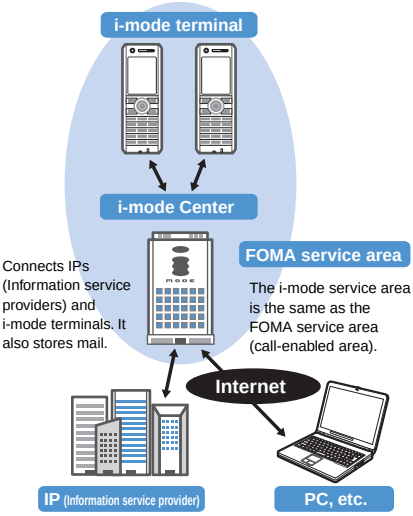
With i-mode, you can use online services such as connecting to Sites (Programs) or Internet websites, or sending and receiving i-mode Mail by using the display of i-mode compatible FOMA terminal (hereinafter called as i-mode terminal).

■ **Sites (Programs) connection**
You can access various online services such as weather information or news provided by IPs (Information service providers) from Menu List of iMenu. You can also download and enjoy games and standby images, etc.

■ **Internet Connection**
You can view a wide variety of i-mode compatible websites by directly entering the URLs into your i-mode terminal.

■ **i-mode Mail**
You can exchange e-mail (of up to 5,000 two-byte characters) with other i-mode terminals and with anyone with Internet mail address. You can also transmit Deco-mail, mail with still image and video.

Service schematic



Provides Sites (Programs).

- i-mode is an optional service to be charged requiring subscription. Please refer to the back of this manual for further information on subscription.

INFORMATION

- When you newly subscribe to the FOMA service, all services are available as of the first day.
- The contents of My Menu are carried over as it is when you change the mova service (with i-mode subscription) to the FOMA service. However, some sites may not the carried over to My Menu of the FOMA service. In that case, register them again. You can check the sites that can be carried over to My Menu in " お知らせ&ヘルプ " of iMenu.
- i-mode service is charged based on the sent/received information volume (packet count). This manual does not include fee-related information. For details of usage fees, see "i-mode User's Manual" you received when you subscribed to i-mode.
- i-mode service contents are subject to change; for details, see the latest "i-mode User's Manual".

Sites (Programs) connection

You can access sites using simple key operations and use various online services provided by IPs (Information service providers).
For example, you can check your bank balance, make wire transfers, reserve tickets, watch news, search dictionaries, download melodies, etc.

Displaying sites

When you are connected to the i-mode Center, iMenu is displayed first. From this menu, you can access Sites (Programs) or *週刊 i ガイド*, etc.

- Sites displaying procedure ☛P166
- The screen shown here is for information purpose only. The display may differ depending on the settings.

1 *マイメニュー* **(My Menu)**
You can register your favorite sites and quickly access the sites later. ☛P169
Pay sites in iMenu are automatically registered. Up to 45 sites can be registered.

2 *週刊 i ガイド* **(Weekly i Guide)**
The latest site information including new and recommended sites is released and updated every day from Monday to Friday every week.

3 *メニューリスト* **(Menu List)**
Lists all sites by categories or regions. You can access the desired site from here.

4 *とくするメニュー* (**Tokusuru Menu**)
Includes information of exciting campaigns, gifts, and discount coupons. The information is updated every week (provided by D2 Communications).

5 *i エリア* **(i-area)**
You can check the weather, map and town information of your place or vicinity.

6 *かんたん検索* **(Easy Search)**
You can search sites easily by keyword from categories such as game and standby display.

i アプリサーチ **(i-αppli Search)**
Introduces i-αppli based on usage purposes, e.g. free of charge, game, etc.

便利サイトサーチ **(Useful Site Search)**
Introduces useful sites in Menu List that can be used daily according to usage scenarios.

7 *マイボックス* **(My Box)**
This is a service for members to access more conveniently to certain shop information and sites through advance registration.

8 *オプション設定* **(Options)**
Used to set i-mode Mail and change i-mode password, etc.

9 *お知らせ&ヘルプ* **(News & Help)**
Includes information from DoCoMo, i-mode operation procedure and rules.

■ *料金&お申込* **(Charges & Applications)**
You can confirm or pay the fees, change subscriptions, or apply for services.

ENGLISH
iMenu changes to English display.

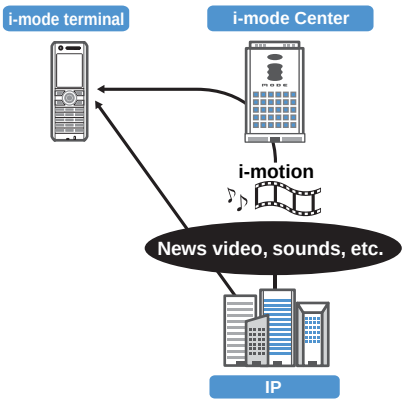
INFORMATION

- You may need to pay information fee to access certain sites (i-mode pay sites).
- You may need to subscribe to use some services provided by IPs (Information service providers).
- You will not be charged for packet communication unless the i-mode Center is accessed, even if ▮ flashes.
- The screen such as iMenu appears different for Dual Network Service subscribers.

Other convenient functions

■ **i-channel**
This service is provided by DoCoMo or IPs and delivers graphical information such as news and weather information to your i-mode terminal. You can receive information regularly, and read the latest information as it appears on the standby display as ticker. You can also view the information in the channel list that is displayed by pressing clr/クリア. In addition, you can download rich, detail information by selecting your favorite channel in the channel list.
- Supporting models: i-channel compatible models. For more information, see “i-mode User’s Manual”.

■ **i-motion**
You can download videos and sounds from sites to your i-mode terminal and play or set them for the standby display.
- Downloading i-motion ☛P183
- Playing i-motion ☛P252
- Setting auto-play of i-motion ☛P184



■ **Movie ringtone (Chaku-motion)/Chaku-Uta®**
i-motion can be downloaded from i-mode sites to your i-mode terminal and set as ring tone or incoming image. The vocals of your favorite singers can be used as ring tone as well as melodies (some i-motion may not be set for Movie ringtone).
- Setting Movie ringtone ☛P104, P254
- Chaku-Uta is a registered trademark of Sony Music Entertainment (Japan) Inc.

■ **i-αppli**

You can conveniently use your i-mode terminal by downloading i-αppli from sites. For example, you can download games to play or i-αppli stock software to automatically check stock prices periodically. Furthermore, because the map-related i-αppli downloads only necessary data, smooth scrolling can be performed.

- Downloading i-αppli ☛P231
- Starting i-αppli ☛P232
- Automatically starting i-αppli ☛P236

■ **i-αppli standby display**

On the i-αppli standby display, i-αppli can be used as the standby display, which also allows directly receiving mails and making phone calls. The function of the standby display can be enhanced by setting it to display news and weather forecast update or by using your favorite character to inform you of incoming mail and alarms.

- Setting i-αppli Standby Display ☛P112

■ **i-αppli DX**

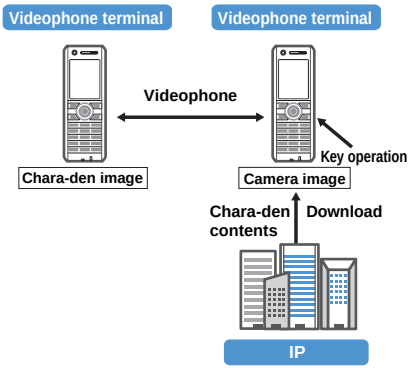
i-αppli DX is more useful and enjoyable i-αppli. In conjunction with the i-mode terminal data (such as mail, call log or phonebook data), i-αppli DX allows you to compose a message on your favorite character screen and to inform you of the caller of incoming call by character's comments. Also, i-αppli DX updates stock price information, game status, or other information in real time in conjunction with mail.

- i-αppli DX ☛P230

■ **Chara-den**

When using videophone, you can have a character displayed on the other party's videophone terminal instead of your image, move its mouth in response to sounds, and make motions by key operation. You can download your favorite character and set it for the standby display. Also, you can record the Chara-den in an image or video file and set the file for the standby display or attach it to mail to send (you cannot send image/video files that are prohibited from being attached to mail or output from FOMA terminal).

- Downloading Chara-den ☛P174
- Displaying Chara-den ☛P258
- Setting Chara-den ☛P77, P82, P258
- Operating Chara-den ☛P258
- Recording Chara-den ☛P259



■ **Infrared communication function**

Phonebook data, mail, bookmarks, etc. can be exchanged with mobile phones, PCs and other devices that are provided with the infrared communication function.*1

In addition, by using the infrared communication with i-αppli, you can use your terminal in a wide range of ways in conjunction with other devices provided with the infrared communication function. For example, a mobile phone with this function can be used as a TV remote control or member card, etc.

*1 Some types of data may not be exchanged depending on the other party's device, even if it is provided with the infrared communication function.

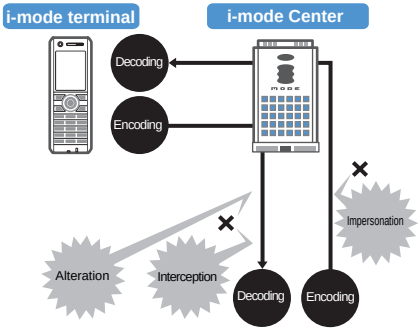
- Using infrared communication ☛P266, P240

■ **SSL communication**

SSL is a safer data communication method that uses certification/encryption technology to protect privacy. On SSL pages, data is encrypted and sent/received to prevent information interception, impersonation or alteration, thus allowing personal information such as credit card numbers and street addresses to be exchanged more safely.

There are 2 types of SSL communication: one is to display SSL compatible sites (SSL pages) using the CA certificate stored in your i-mode terminal and the other is to display SSL compatible sites (SSL pages) using the user certificate downloaded from the FirstPass center. The certificates used to display sites differ depending on the site. ☛P181

- Using the CA certificate stored in your i-mode terminal ☛P181
- Using the user certificate of FirstPass ☛P181



Impersonation: A third party pretends to be a valid site to obtain customer information illegally.

■ **UIM operation restriction function**

When the UIM containing user information (phone numbers, part of phonebook data, etc.) is inserted in your i-mode terminal, this function restricts operations of melodies, still images and i-motion downloaded from sites or received by mail. When the terminal is turned on with another UIM or no UIM inserted, playing or displaying of these obtained files will be disabled. ☛P37

- This function does not apply to still images or videos you shot with the camera, or files saved to your i-mode terminal via infrared communication.
- This function resets the ring tone, standby display or other settings, if any, made in your i-mode terminal.

■ **i-melody**

You can download the latest music or your favorite music from sites to your i-mode terminal and use them as ring tone. ☛P174

■ **i-anime**

You can download your favorite animation from sites to your i-mode terminal and use it as the standby image or incoming image. ☛P173

■ **Flash™**

Flash is an animation technology that uses images and sounds, which makes colorful animations and expressive sites be displayed. Images using Flash movie can be downloaded to i-mode terminals and set for the standby display. Some Flash movies provide the information of your i-mode terminal. The information to be used is as follows:

- Battery level
- Received signal level
- Time information
- Ring Volume Setting
- Select Language
- Model information

■ **Message Service**

Message Service is a service that automatically delivers desired information (messages) to your i-mode terminal. There are 2 types of Message Service: Message R (request) and Message F (free).

Message Request (Message R)	Information is delivered automatically after subscribing to a site that provides Message Service.
Message Free (Message F)	Messages are delivered free of packet communication fee.

- Receiving Message R/F ☛P178, P203
- If you apply to the i-mode service at the same time as new subscription to FOMA on or after October 1, 2004, the initial Message F (free) setting is *受信する* (Receive). Please note that, if you do not like to receive Message F, you have to change the setting to *受信しない* (Not receive) by yourself.
  - If you like to use Message F in cases other than above, you have to make the setting from "オプション設定" of iMenu in advance. The initial setting is *受信しない*.
- Message R/F is stored in the i-mode Center when i-mode terminal is off or outside the service area.
- The maximum number of Message R/Fs and the period they are stored at the i-mode Center are as follows. Message R/F will be deleted after the maximum storage period expires. When the maximum number of messages that can be stored is exceeded, Message R/F is deleted beginning with the chronologically oldest message.

Message type	Maximum number of items	Maximum storage period
Message R	300	72 hours
Message F	300	72 hours

- You can use Check i-mode Message (☛P203) to receive Message R/F stored in the i-mode Center.

■ **トクだねニュース便 (Convenient News)**

This service is provided by DoCoMo and delivers information such as news and weather information to your i-mode terminal using Message R (request).

Separate application (pay) is required. After application, this service is automatically registered in My Menu, and you can access the same information from My Menu.

- Reading the Message R screen ☛P180

■ **i-mode password**

You need an i-mode password to subscribe to pay sites, register and cancel sites in My Menu, or make i-mode Mail settings. By default, the i-mode password is set to “0000”. Be sure to change it to a 4-digit number of your own choice. ☛P170

Be careful never to reveal your i-mode password to others.

Internet Connection

You can display i-mode compatible websites via the Internet by entering the addresses (URLs).

- Displaying procedures ☛P170

INFORMATION

- Internet websites other than i-mode compatible websites (sites created using i-mode compatible tags) may not be displayed correctly.
- Sites may be displayed differently on a PC.
- Internet websites with the URLs longer than 512 characters may not be displayed.
- If you have a PC, data such as mail and bookmarks can be saved to the PC by using data link software and the FOMA USB cable (optional).

Before using i-mode

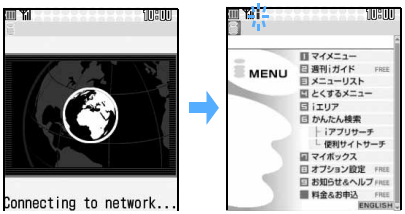
- The contents of Sites (Programs) and Internet websites are usually protected by copyright laws. All or any portion of text, image or other data downloaded to your i-mode terminal from a Site (Program) or Internet website cannot be used or altered except for personal use, and cannot be sold or redistributed in any form without the express permission of the copyright holder.
- Data saved/registered in your i-mode terminal (mail, Message R/F, screen memo, i-αppli, i-motion, and bookmark) may be erased due to failure, repair, or other handling of i-mode terminal. It is recommended that you maintain a separate record of the data you saved/registered in your i-mode terminal. We are not responsible for any lost data.
- When i-mode terminal is sent for repair etc., the data you downloaded using i-mode, i-αppli or i-motion (except some data) is not transferred to the new mobile terminal in accordance with copyright laws. You may not be able to display and play still images/i-motion/melodies downloaded from sites, files attached to sent/received mail (still image, video or melody), screen memos and Message R/Fs when the power of your terminal is turned on with another UIM or no UIM inserted.
- When data with the UIM operation restriction enabled is set for the standby display or ring tone, the settings return to default if another UIM other than yours or no UIM is inserted. It returns to the previous settings when the UIM that was used during downloading the data is inserted.

Menu 21

Displaying sites

1 ● 1 ▶ **Select *ENGLISH***

Flashes in i-mode communication.



- Press ● on the connecting screen to stop connection.
- Hold down 8 for over a second during site display to disconnect i-mode.
- Item with the number such as 1 or 2 can be selected by pressing the key of number corresponding to the item (Direct key function). However, you may not be able to select them on some sites.

2 **Select 3 *Menu List***

- Press ▭ while accessing the page to stop it.

3 **Select an item**

You are connected to a site. You can display the target page by repeating this operation.

4 ☎ **when you finish viewing the site ▶ Select *Yes***

INFORMATION

- When you display a site containing an image, the following icons may be displayed instead of the image:
  - : When ***Not display*** is set for ***Image*** in Image & Effect Setting (for undownloaded images of Message R/F)
  - : When the image data is invalid or cannot be found, or when the image cannot be received because FOMA terminal is out of service area while receiving the image
  - : When the image cannot be displayed for the incorrect URL
- i-mode requires online connection and cannot be used outside the service area.
- To return to iMenu during site display, press MENU and select ***iMenu***.
- When a site requests your "FOMA terminal/FOMA card (UIM) serial number", a confirmation screen is displayed. When you select ***Yes***, your "FOMA terminal/FOMA card (UIM) serial number" is sent. The IP (Information service provider) uses "FOMA terminal/FOMA card (UIM) serial number" that has been sent to identify you for providing the customized information and determining whether your FOMA terminal supports the site contents provided by the IP (Information service provider). Since your "FOMA terminal/FOMA card (UIM) serial number" is sent to the IP (Information service provider) via the Internet, there is a possibility the information could be intercepted by third parties. However, your information such as FOMA terminal's phone number, your address, age, and sex will never be disclosed to the IP (Information service provider) with this operation.
- When a site requests entry of the user name and password, the entry screen is displayed. Enter the user name and password of the site and press .

Connecting to SSL pages

You can display SSL compatible sites (SSL pages) by the same operation as for ordinary sites.

- Some SSL pages may not allow connection unless the date and time are set.
- To connect to a FirstPass compatible site, you need to download a user certificate for the site from the FirstPass center and save it in the UIM.

Connecting to an SSL page

A screen informing SSL session is started is displayed. SSL appears at the top of the screen when the SSL page is displayed.

■ **Displaying a certificate during SSL page display:** MENU 9 2

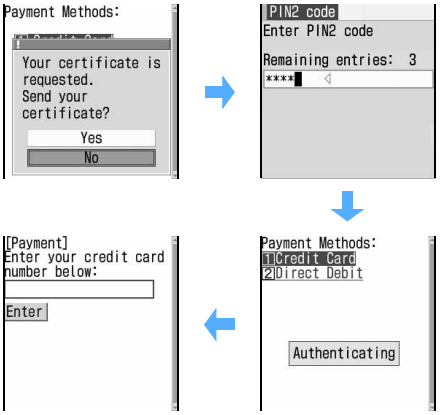
- Certificate ☛P181

Displaying an ordinary page from an SSL page

A confirmation screen is displayed. Select ***Yes*** to display an ordinary page and SSL disappears from the top of the screen.

Connecting to a FirstPass compatible page

The following screens are displayed:



① **Select *Yes***

② **Enter the PIN2 code**

The user certificate is sent and the FirstPass compatible page is displayed.

- If the correct PIN2 code is not entered within 60 seconds, the SSL communication is disconnected.

INFORMATION

- Establishment of SSL session requires electronic information called "certificate" for the connected site and FOMA terminal issued by the same certifier. ☛P181
- Packet communication fee while being connected to FirstPass compatible sites will be included in the Pake-Houdai service. However, the fee for data communication using a connected PC will not be included in the Pake-Houdai service.

Menu 25

Reconnecting to the last page displayed

Last Visited URL

Last Visited URL allows you to quickly reconnect to the page displayed last.

- Some pages may not be displayed. In addition, pages different from the last visited one may be displayed.

1 ● 5

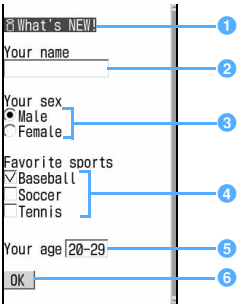
- When no last visited URL is recorded, a message indicating that there is no record appears.

2 **Press** ●

Reading and operating sites

Selecting links and items

Selectable items and entry fields appear depending on the page. Press ◉ to highlight an item or entry field and press ● to select the item or enter characters.



1 Link

Select to jump to a related page. The link is highlighted when the cursor is placed over.

2 Character entry field

Enter characters. The character types and maximum number of characters that can be entered depend on the character entry field.

3 Radio button (: Unselected : Selected)

You can select only one from selections.

4 Check box (: Unselected : Selected)

You can select multiple items from selections. Press ● to switch between and .

5 Pulldown menu

Select an item from the item list.

6 Button (name differs depending on the site)

You can send page settings to a site or cancel the settings.

INFORMATION

- Some images may have links.
- Items with numbers such as 1 and 2 can be selected by pressing the corresponding numbers (Direct key function). You may not be able to select them on some sites.
- In the i-mode password field or other field, the entered characters may be masked with "＊".
- On the character entry screen, press MENU 8 2 to enter the JAN code or QR code read by Bar Code Reader.
- Depending on the pulldown menu, multiple items can be selected by pressing ●. After selecting items, press 戻る.
- The information set or entered using radio buttons, check boxes, pulldown menus, or character entry fields does not replace the contents of registered bookmarks or screen memos.

Flash movie displays

Flash movie allows expressive sites to be displayed.

- Flash movie is not displayed when ***Not display*** is set for ***Image*** in Image & Effect Setting.
- Some sites that use Flash movie may not be operated or displayed in the same way as normal sites.
- When saved as image or screen memo, some Flash movies may appear different from those displayed on sites because part of the image is not saved.
- The sound of Flash movie set for the standby display or incoming image does not play.
- Even if Flash movie is displayed, it may not operate correctly. Also, you may not be able to save Flash movie that does not operate correctly.
- If an error occurs while playing Flash movie, the image cannot be saved.
- Even if ◇ is not indicated, some Flash movies may be operated.
- To play Flash movie from the beginning, press MENU 9 6.
- Some Flash movies may have sound effects. The volume conforms to the ring alert volume for calls. To disable sound effects during site display, press MENU 9 3 and set ***Sound effect setting*** to ***OFF***.
- Even if Vibrator Setting is other than ***OFF***, FOMA terminal does not vibrate when the sound of Flash movie plays.
- Note that some Flash movies may vibrate FOMA terminal during play even if Vibrator Setting is ***OFF***.
- If no operation is performed for 30 seconds or longer while playing Flash movie, it is brought to a pause. To replay, press ●, ◉, 電話帳, iモード, メール, 戻る, 0 to 9, ＊, ＃ or カメラ.
- Some Flash movies use the information of i-mode terminal. To allow use of the terminal information, set ***Use phone information*** to ***Yes*** in Image & Effect Setting. It is set to ***Yes*** by default. The information to be used is as follows:
  - Battery level
  - Received signal level
  - Time information
  - Ring Volume Setting
  - Select Language
  - Model information

Displaying previous or next pages

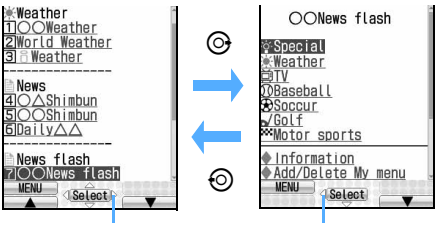
FOMA terminal keeps a record of the last 20 pages displayed in a cache.

- Cache is a storage space in FOMA terminal that temporarily records the displayed pages. You can

display the recorded pages by pressing ◎ without establishing communication. In case the cache is full or a page that is set by the site to load the latest page is displayed, FOMA terminal starts communication.

- This function is unavailable while being connected to the FirstPass center (☛P181).

1 page before the current page **Current page**

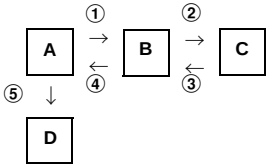


Indicates you can proceed to the next page.

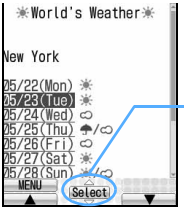
Indicates you can return to the previous page.

INFORMATION

- Records in the cache may be deleted when it is full. Pressing ◎ may not return to previous pages.
- Information such as entered characters or settings is not recorded.
- When you terminate i-mode, all records in the cache are deleted.
- The operation may differ when Flash movie is displayed.
- When you display page A → page B → page C in this order (①, ②), return to page A (③, ④), and proceed to page D (⑤), the display record of page A → page B → page C is deleted. You can return to page A from page D but you cannot then return to page B.



Scrolling the screen



When there are additional rows or selectable link items, △ or ▽ is indicated in the guide row.

- Press ◎ to scroll the screen. Hold down the button to scroll continuously.
- Press [i-αppli] or [Mail] to scroll the screen by a page. Hold down the button to scroll the screen continuously by a page.

Reloading data

When sites cannot be displayed because of connection interruption etc., you may be able to display the sites by reloading.

1 [MENU] [5] during site display

Displaying the URL of current site

1 [MENU] [9] [1] during site display

INFORMATION

- In the URL history list, bookmark list, i-mode shortcut list, or screen memo list, press [m].

Using My Menu

My Menu

You can register i-mode sites in My Menu, which allows you to quickly access the sites later.

- Up to 45 sites can be registered.
- You need the i-mode password to register sites. The i-mode password is set to "0000" by default.
- When you submit an application to a pay site registered in Menu List of iMenu, the site is automatically registered in My Menu.
- Only the sites listed in Menu List of iMenu can be registered in My Menu. However, some sites cannot be registered in My Menu. To register Internet websites, use Bookmark.

Registering sites in My Menu

1 Select *マイメニュー登録* (Register) during site display

- Since the page structure differs depending on the site, press the key of the number corresponding to the item or select the applicable item.

2 Select the i-mode password entry field ▶ Enter the i-mode password

- The entered i-mode password is masked with "✳".

3 Select *決定* (OK)

Displaying sites from My Menu

1 Select 1 *My Menu* in iMenu (English) ▶ Select a site

Changing your current i-mode password

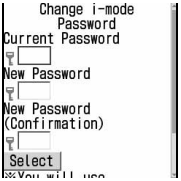
Change i-mode Password

Your i-mode password is required to register/delete sites in/from My Menu, subscribe to/cancel Message Service or i-mode pay sites, or make the mail settings. The i-mode password is set to “0000” by default; be sure to change it to your own number (4 digits). Be careful never to reveal your i-mode password to others.

- The entered i-mode password is masked with “✳”.
- Please note that, if you forget the i-mode password, you need to bring the identification (drivers license, etc.) to a DoCoMo Shop.

1 Select 4 *Options* in iMenu (English) ▶ Select 2 *Change i-mode Password*

2 Select *Current Password* field ▶ Enter the i-mode password



3 Select *New Password* field ▶ Enter a new password

4 Select *New Password (Confirmation)* field ▶ Enter the same password as entered in Step 3

5 Select *Select*

- When there is an error or omission in the entered contents, an error screen is displayed. Select ***Re-enter*** and operate again.

Menu 231

Displaying Internet websites

Internet Connection

- Internet websites incompatible with i-mode may not be displayed correctly.

1 ○ 3 1

- From the next time, the last URL you connected to appears.

2 Enter a URL (up to 256 one-byte characters) ▶ ✉

- Press 1 repeatedly in the alphabet input mode to enter “ / ”, “ . ”, “ - ”, etc. To enter “http://www.”, “.co.jp”, “.ne.jp”, “.com” and “.html”, press ✳ repeatedly in the alphabet input mode.

INFORMATION

- On the site screen, press MENU and select ***Go to location → Enter URL***.
- A message is displayed when received data exceeds the maximum size for a page. Press ⏻ to clear the message and display the received data.
- The operation procedures when displaying Internet website are the same as when displaying i-mode site.

Menu 232

Displaying sites using URL history

URL History

FOMA terminal keeps a record of the last 20 URLs you connected to. You can use this URL history to connect to Internet websites.

1 ○ 3 2

2 Select the URL of an Internet website

- When a full URL is not displayed, highlight the URL and press ✉.

■ **Deleting URL history:**

① Highlight a URL in the URL history list ▶ MENU 4 1

- To delete all: MENU 4 2 in the URL history list ▶ Enter the terminal security code

② Select *Yes*

INFORMATION

- On the site screen, press MENU and select ***Go to location → URL history***.
- When the number of recorded URLs exceeds 20, the oldest URL is overwritten.

Displaying characters correctly Character Encode

When characters are not displayed correctly on i-mode or Internet web sites, they may be displayed correctly by changing the character encode. Character encode is a generic term for encoding schemes and structure developed for making characters available on computers.

1 MENU 9 5 1 during i-mode or Internet web site display

- Each press of these keys switches the character encode in the following order: ***Auto switch***→SJIS→EUC→JIS→UTF8. If you repeat this operation 5 times, the original display reappears. In addition, press MENU 9 5 2 to return to ***Auto switch***.
- When you display an i-mode or Internet web site, ***Auto switch*** is set.
- Some characters may not be displayed correctly even if you repeat this operation.
- Changing the character encode when characters are displayed correctly may not display the characters correctly.

Registering websites and i-mode sites for quick browsing Bookmark

If you frequently browse the same pages of sites, you can register them in the bookmark for convenient access later. You can quickly display the pages by only selecting bookmarks.

- The maximum number of bookmarks that can be registered ☛P36
- You cannot register URLs longer than 256 one-byte characters in the bookmark.
- Some sites may not be registered in the bookmark.

Registering in the bookmark

- Sites are registered in one of 20 bookmark folders.

1 Display a site ▶ MENU 2 1 ▶ Select a folder to save the bookmark to

INFORMATION

- In the screen memo list, screen memo display, or URL history list, press MENU and select ***Add bookmark***. You can also perform the same operation after displaying the URL history list by pressing MENU during site display and selecting ***Go to location*** → ***URL history***.
- When the number of bookmarks exceeds the maximum number, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to overwrite registered bookmarks. To register, select the bookmark to overwrite.

Menu 22

Displaying websites or i-mode sites from Bookmark

1 ○ 2

2 Select a folder

: No bookmark
: Bookmark present

3 Select a bookmark

■ **Checking the URL: Highlight a bookmark ▶ 📖**

INFORMATION

- On the site screen, press MENU and select ***Bookmark*** → ***Display***.

Renaming bookmark folders

1 ○ 2 ▶ Highlight a folder ▶ MENU 3

2 Change the folder name (up to 16 one-byte or 8 two-byte characters) ▶ 📖

Renaming bookmark titles

1 ○ 2 ▶ Select a folder ▶ Highlight a bookmark ▶ 📝

2 Change the title (up to 24 one-byte or 12 two-byte characters) ▶ 📖

- If you save the bookmark without entering a title, the URL is displayed in the bookmark list.
- When the title is longer than 21 one-byte or 10 two-byte characters, 19 one-byte or 9 two-byte characters followed by "…" are displayed in the screen memo list.

Connecting to sites using simple key operation i-mode Shortcut

When you register bookmarks as i-mode shortcut, you can quickly display i-mode or Internet web sites from the standby display.

1 ○ 2 ▶ Select a folder

2 Highlight a bookmark ▶ MENU 2

3 Select the registration destination

- The icon number (0 to 9) corresponds to the dial key (0 to 9) used to display the site.
- In the bookmark list, the icon changes from to 0-9 when registered.

Canceling i-mode shortcut

Menu 291

1 ○ 9 1 ▶ Highlight a bookmark ▶ MENU 1 ▶ Select *Yes*

■ **Canceling from the bookmark list: ○ 2 ▶ Select a folder ▶ Highlight a bookmark ▶ MENU 2**

Displaying a site using i-mode shortcut

1 The dial key (0 to 9) for an i-mode shortcut number ▶ ○

■ **Displaying a site from the i-mode shortcut list: ○ 9 1 ▶ Select a bookmark**

Deleting bookmarks

- Bookmark folders cannot be deleted.

1 ○ 2 ▶ Select a folder

■ **Deleting all bookmarks: MENU 2 in the folder list ▶ Enter the terminal security code ▶ Go to Step 3**

■ **Deleting all bookmarks in the folder: Highlight a folder ▶ MENU 1 ▶ Enter the terminal security code ▶ Go to Step 3**

2 Highlight a bookmark ▶ MENU 3 1

■ **Deleting selected bookmarks: MENU 3 2 ▶ Select bookmarks ▶ m**

■ **Deleting all bookmarks in the folder: MENU 3 3 ▶ Enter the terminal security code**

3 Select *Yes*

INFORMATION

● If you delete an i-mode shortcut bookmark, i-mode Shortcut is also canceled.

Moving bookmarks

Bookmarks can be moved to other folders.

1 ○ 2 ▶ Select a folder

2 Highlight a bookmark ▶ MENU 6 1

■ **Moving selected bookmarks: MENU 6 2 ▶ Select bookmarks ▶ m**

3 Select a folder to move the bookmark to

Sorting bookmarks

Sort

The bookmark list is temporally sorted. When you quit the display, the sort order is reset.

- All the folders are the target of sorting.
- You can select from ***By access date***, ***By title***, ***By URL*** or ***By access frequency***.

Default: By access date

1 ○ 2 ▶ Select a folder ▶ MENU 7 ▶ 1 to 4

INFORMATION

● When ***By title*** is set, if one-byte, two-byte, alphabetic, and kanji characters and URLs are mixed in titles, the result may not be in the order of the Japanese syllabary.

Saving site contents

Screen Memo

Saving screen memos

- The maximum number of screen memos that can be saved ☛P36
- The maximum size of a screen memo that can be saved is 100 Kbytes including images on the screen, etc.

1 Display a site ▶ MENU 4 1

- The site title is automatically saved. If a site has no title, the screen memo is saved as ***No title***.

INFORMATION

● When the memory is not enough or the maximum number of saved items is exceeded, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to overwrite saved screen memos. Follow the instructions on the screen and delete the screen memos. The protected screen memos are not overwritten.

Menu 24

Displaying screen memos

1 ○ 4

2 Select a screen memo

: Ordinary screen memo
: Protected screen memo

- The available operations are the same as on site displays with a few exceptions. ☛P168

INFORMATION

- On the site screen, press MENU and select ***Screen memo*** → ***Display***. At this time, if the character encode has been changed, it is reset to ***Auto switch*** when returning to the site from the displayed screen memo.
- To play Flash movie again on the screen memo screen, press MENU and select ***Display*** → ***Retry***.

Renaming screen memo titles

1 ○ 4 ▶ Highlight a screen memo ▶ i

2 Change the title (up to 24 one-byte or 12 two-byte characters) ▶ m

- When you save the screen memo without entering a title, ***No title*** is displayed in the screen memo list.
- When the title is longer than 21 one-byte or 10 two-byte characters, 19 one-byte or 9 two-byte characters followed by "…" are displayed in the screen memo list.

INFORMATION

- During screen memo display, press MENU and select ***Rename title***.

Protecting screen memos

- The maximum number of screen memos that can be protected ☛P36

1 ○ 4

2 Highlight a screen memo ▶ MENU 1 1

The screen memo is protected and the icon changes from to .

- To cancel protection: Highlight a screen memo ▶ MENU 1 3

■ **Protecting selected screen memos: MENU 1 2 ▶ Select screen memos ▶ m**

■ **Canceling protection of selected screen memos: MENU 1 4 ▶ Select screen memos ▶ m**

■ **Canceling protection of all screen memos: MENU 1 5**

INFORMATION

- During screen memo display, press MENU and select ***Protect*** or ***Release***.

Deleting screen memos

- Protected screen memos cannot be deleted. Cancel protection first and then delete them.

1 ○ 4

2 Highlight a screen memo ▶ MENU 2 1

■ **Deleting selected screen memos: MENU 2 2 ▶ Select screen memos ▶ m**

■ **Deleting all screen memos: MENU 2 3 ▶ Enter the terminal security code**

3 Select *Yes*

INFORMATION

- During screen memo display, press MENU and select ***Delete***.

Downloading images from sites and messages

Save Image

Images or frames can be downloaded and saved from sites, Message R/F or i-αppli. The saved images can be viewed from ***Image*** (My Picture) or set for the standby display.

- The maximum number of images that can be saved ☛P36
- The maximum size of an image that can be saved is 100 Kbytes.
- Images in GIF, JPEG or Flash format can be saved.

Example Downloading an image from site

1 Display a site ▶ MENU 6 1

■ **Saving the background image on site: Display a site ▶ MENU 6 2 ▶ Go to Step 3**

2 Select an image

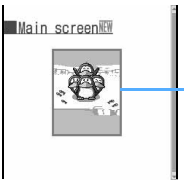


Image to be saved is surrounded with a frame.

3 Select each item to set

- You cannot change file restriction for image files downloaded from sites.
- For images that are prohibited from being attached to mail or output from FOMA terminal (file restriction set to ***File restricted***), you can change the display name only.
- Press MENU to display the menu list for setting images for the standby display etc. ☛P247
- Display name can contain up to 36 one-byte or two-byte characters.
- File name can contain up to 36 characters including one-byte alphanumerics, " . ", " - " and " _ ". However, " . " cannot be used for the first character of file name.
- Comment can contain up to 100 one-byte or two-byte characters.
- To use the image as frame or stamp, select an item to set and press 1 or 2.

4 Select the folder to save the image to

INFORMATION

- Some items may not be available for setting depending on the image file.
- Some images may not be displayed correctly.
- Images with horizontal and vertical (or vertical and horizontal) sizes exceeding 640 x 480 in GIF format or 1728 x 2304 in JPEG format cannot be saved. Also, some JPEG images may not be saved.
- Images with horizontal and vertical (or vertical and horizontal) sizes exceeding 352 x 288 cannot be used as frame. Images with the sizes of 240 x 320 and larger cannot be used as stamp.
- When the memory is not enough or the maximum number of saved items is exceeded, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to delete saved images. Follow the instructions on the screen and delete images. Before deletion, an image can be displayed by pressing in the image list and detail information on the image can be displayed by pressing MENU.
- When displaying a site containing an image wider than the display, the image will be reduced.

Downloading melodies from sites

i-melody

Your terminal can download melodies from sites and play and save them (compatible with i-melody). The saved melodies can be played from ***Melody*** or used as ring tone.

- The maximum number of melodies that can be saved ☛P36
- The maximum size of a melody that can be saved is 100 Kbytes.
- Melodies in the SMF and MFi formats can be saved.

1 Display a site ▶ Select a melody

- Press to stop downloading.

2 Select *Save*

- To play the melody: Select ***Play***
- To cancel saving: Select ***Back*** ▶ Select ***No***

3 Enter a display name (up to 50 one-byte or 25 two-byte characters) ▶

The melody is saved in ***i-mode*** folder of ***Melody***. ☛P261

INFORMATION

- Some melodies may not play correctly.
- When the memory is not enough or the maximum number of saved items is exceeded, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to delete saved melodies. Follow the instructions on the screen and delete the melodies. Before deletion, you can play a melody by pressing in the melody list and view detail information on the melody by pressing MENU.

Downloading Chara-den from sites

Chara-den can be downloaded and saved from sites.

- The maximum number of Chara-den that can be saved ☛P36
- The maximum size of a Chara-den image that can be saved is 100 Kbytes.

1 Display a site ▶ Select Chara-den

- Press to stop downloading.

2 Select *Save*

- To display the Chara-den: Select ***Display***
- To cancel saving: Select ***Back*** ▶ Select ***No***

3 Select each item to set

- Display name can contain up to 36 one-byte or two-byte characters.
- Comment can contain up to 100 one-byte or two-byte characters.

4 Press [Mail]

The Chara-den is saved in ***i-mode*** folder of ***Chara-den***. ☛P258

INFORMATION

- When the memory is not enough or the maximum number of saved items is exceeded, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to delete Chara-den. Follow the instructions on the screen and delete it. Before deletion, Chara-den can be displayed by pressing [Mail] on the Chara-den deletion screen and detail information can be viewed by pressing [MENU].
- If preinstalled Chara-den has been deleted, it can be downloaded from the i-mode site, "My D-style". ☛P330

Useful functions of i-mode

Using Phone To (AV Phone To)/Mail To/Web To

When phone numbers, mail addresses or URLs are displayed on the screen (site, screen memo, Message R/F, etc.), select them to make voice calls or videophone calls (Phone To/AV Phone To), compose i-mode Mail (Mail To), or connect to sites (Web To).

- Some functions may not be available depending on the sites.

1 Display a site ▶ Select a phone number, mail address, or URL

- Only highlighted phone numbers, mail addresses and URLs can be selected.

■ **Phone To (AV Phone To):**
The screen for setting dialing conditions is displayed.
① **Set dialing conditions** ☛P53
② [MENU] ▶ **Select *Yes***

■ **Mail To:**
The mail composition screen with the selected mail address set as the receiver is displayed.
① **Compose and send i-mode Mail**

- When multiple addresses are listed with no space in between, the Mail To function may not be available.

■ **Web To:**
You are connected to the selected site.

Copying the URL

Copy the URL of the site or screen memo being displayed. The copied text can be pasted in entry fields on the mail composition screen, phonebook registration screen, etc.

- The copied text is recorded until the power of FOMA terminal is turned off. You can paste it in other locations any number of times.
- Only one item can be recorded. When you copy a new item, it overwrites the previously copied text.

Example Copying the URL of current site

1 Display the URL of a site ▶ [MENU] [1]

- Displaying the URL ☛P169

2 Select the start position of the copying range ▶ Select the end position

- Press [MENU] [5] to select all the text.
- Press [4 GYO] to specify the start position again.
- Press [MENU] or [Mail] after specifying the start position to move the cursor to the beginning or end of the text.

3 Display a character entry screen ▶ Paste the copied text

INFORMATION

- In the URL history list, i-mode shortcut list, or screen memo list, press [MENU] and select ***Copy URL***. In the bookmark list, press [MENU] and select ***Enter URL/Copy URL*** → ***Copy URL***. When you operate from any of these screens, the whole URL is copied.
- To paste the URL of current site to mail, press [MENU] during site display and select ***Compose message***. The mail composition screen is displayed with the URL of the site pasted in the message text.

Registering phone numbers and mail addresses in the phonebook

Add to Phonebook

When phone numbers or mail addresses are displayed on the screen (site, screen memo or Message R/F), you can register them in the phonebook.
You can register a new entry or add data to a registered entry.

・You may be able to register the data other than displayed items depending on the sites.
・The previously registered data may be changed when you add to a registered entry. Confirm the data on the phonebook edit screen.

Example Registering a phone number or mail address displayed on the site screen

1 Display a site containing a phone number or mail address

・You can register only highlighted phone numbers or mail addresses.

2 Highlight a phone number or mail address ▶ MENU 8 1 to register a new entry or MENU 8 2 to add to an existing entry

3 1 to register in the FOMA terminal phonebook or 2 to register in the UIM phonebook

4 Register the phonebook entry

■ **Registering a new entry: Set the name etc. and register the entry**

■ **Adding to the registered phonebook entry: Select a phonebook entry ▶ Confirm the data and register the entry**

INFORMATION

● During screen memo display, press MENU and select ***Phonebook*** → ***Add to phonebook*** or ***Update phonebook***, and on the Message R/F view screen, press MENU and select ***Record*** → ***Add to phonebook*** or ***Update phonebook***.

Registering URLs in the phonebook

Add URLs to the phonebook from the bookmark list or screen memo list. You can register a new entry or add the data to a registered entry.

・The previously registered data may be changed when you add to a registered entry. Confirm the data on the phonebook edit screen.

Example Registering a URL from the bookmark list

1 ○ 2 ▶ Select a folder

2 Highlight a bookmark ▶ MENU 8 1 to register a new entry or MENU 8 2 to add to a registered entry

3 Register the phonebook entry

■ **Registering a new entry: Set the name etc. and register the entry**

・To check the URL, display ***Other*** screen by pressing ○.

■ **Adding to the registered phonebook entry:**
① Select a phonebook entry
② Confirm the data and register the entry

・To check the URL, display ***Other*** screen by pressing ○.

INFORMATION

● In the screen memo list, press MENU and select ***Phonebook*** → ***Add to phonebook*** or ***Update phonebook***.
● When displayed from a site screen, the URL cannot be saved.

Making i-mode settings

i-mode Setting

Menu 294

Setting the connection time out

Connection Timeout Setting

Set the timeout for connection to the i-mode Center. If a connection is not established correctly, it is automatically interrupted after the set period of time and you do not need to perform any key operation.

Default 60 seconds

1 ○ 9 4 ▶ 1 to 3

INFORMATION

● Even if you set the connection timeout to ***Unlimited***, a connection with the i-mode Center may be interrupted due to poor signal conditions, etc.

Menu 295

Changing the host from i-mode

ISP Connection Communication

You do not have to change the settings when using DoCoMo i-mode service.

Default i-mode (FOMA Card)

■ **About ISP connection communication**

You can connect to various providers (ISP) by changing the host of i-mode terminal of DoCoMo. Packet communication fee is charged for the ISP connection communication.

- Please note that the packet communication fee for connection to the ISP is not included in the Pake-Houdai service.
- You do not need to additionally subscribe to DoCoMo.

■ **About provider subscription**

- You need to separately subscribe to a provider to use the ISP connection communication. Contact the provider for details on services (site and Internet connection, mail function, etc.) and subscription.
- Information fee may be charged for some services, but DoCoMo will never charge you for it.
- Your phone number may be notified to the provider for some sites you visit.
- Up to 10 hosts can be registered.
- You cannot make or change the host settings during communication.

1 ○ 9 5

2 **Highlight one from *User host 1* to *10* ▶ MENU ▶ Enter the terminal security code**

■ **Restoring settings for using i-mode: Select *i-mode (FOMA Card)* ▶ Go to Step 5**

■ **Changing to the previously set host: Select a host ▶ Go to Step 5**

3 **Select each item to set ▶ 📖**

- Host name can contain up to 16 one-byte or 8 two-byte characters.
- Access point can contain up to 99 one-byte alphanumeric characters.
- Host address and host address 2 can contain up to 30 one-byte alphanumeric characters. Host address 2 is the host of i-channel. ☛P243
- You can delete all contents entered by pressing MENU.

4 **Select the edited host**

5 **Press 📖**

Menu 292

Setting image display, lighting and sound effects

Image & Effect Setting

You can set image display, lighting and sound effects (when playing Flash movie) on a site, screen memo, Message R/F, etc.

Default: Image, Animation: Display
Use phone information: Yes
Set lighting: Terminal settings
Sound effect setting: ON

1 ○ 9 2

2 **Select each item to set**

***Image*:**
Specifies whether to display images.
- When ***Not display*** is set, images and Flash movie are not displayed and instead 📄 is indicated. Also, ***Animation*** and ***Use phone information*** cannot be set.

***Animation*:**
Specifies whether to display animation.
- When ***Not display*** is set, the first frame of animation is displayed.

***Use phone information*:**
Specifies whether to use the data saved in FOMA terminal when displaying Flash movie.

***Set lighting*:**
Sets how the display is illuminated.
- When ***Terminal settings*** is set, Display Light Setting (☛P118) applies.
- When ***Always on*** is set, the display always lights up while site screens, etc. are displayed.

***Sound effect setting*:**
Specifies whether to play Flash sounds.

3 **Press 📖**

INFORMATION

- During site display, press MENU and select ***Display*** → ***Set image & effect***.
- When ***Not display*** is set for ***Image***, the images attached to i-mode Mail using the Web To function cannot be displayed or saved.
- Even if ***Not display*** is set for ***Animation***, Flash movie plays.
- For Message R/F, the setting for ***Image*** applies to images inserted in the message. This setting does not apply to images attached as attachment. The setting for ***Sound effect setting*** does not have effect on Message R/F, either.
- When ***Yes*** is set for ***Use phone information***, information such as the battery level, received signal level, time, Ring Volume Setting, Select Language, and terminal model may be sent to IPs (Information service providers) via the Internet, which may give the information to the third parties.

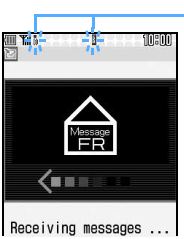
When Message R/F is received

Receive Message R/F

When Message R/F is received, you are informed by the screen display, ring alert, vibrator, and/or keys. The received Message R/F is saved in FOMA terminal.

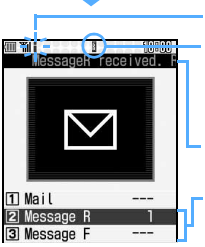
- The maximum number of Message R/Fs that can be saved ☛P36

1 A Message R/F is received



Receiving screen

Reception completed



Reception result screen

When reception fails, "x" is indicated after ***Message R*** or ***Message F***. To receive unreceived messages, perform Check i-mode Message.

and R or F flash and ***Receiving messages...*** is displayed.

When reception is completed, the Message R/F ring alert sounds, the keys light/flash, and the reception result screen is displayed.

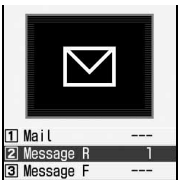
- Press ⏻ on the receiving screen to stop reception.
- If you do not press any key for about 15 seconds after the reception result screen is displayed or until the ring tone stops sounding, the display returns to the screen displayed prior to reception. When Message R/F to which Auto-display is set is received, the contents of unread Message R/F are displayed before the display returns to the previous screen.
- To return to the previous screen immediately: dh/クリア

INFORMATION

- When there is not enough available storage space or the maximum number of saved items is exceeded, the received Message R/Fs except unread ones are overwritten, oldest first. Be sure to protect Message R/F you want to keep. ☛P180
  - If the message cannot be overwritten because the storage space is filled with unread Message R/F and protected Message R/F, Message R/F reception is stopped and R (red) or F (red) is indicated on the screen (☛P27). To receive new messages, display the contents of unread Message R/Fs (☛P179), delete unnecessary Message R/Fs (☛P180) or cancel message protection (☛P180) beforehand.
- The receiving screen and reception result screen are not displayed depending on the setting for Display Priority. ☛P220
- Incoming Message R/F is stored in the i-mode Center in the following cases:
  - When the power is off
  - During a videophone call
  - In Self Mode
  - When reception fails
  - While being out of service area
  - While receiving SMS
  - During infrared communication
  - While connecting to the FirstPass center
  - When the storage space is filled with unread Message R/F and protected Message R/F
- When FOMA terminal receives Message R/F, the Message R/F in the i-mode Center is deleted.
- If there is unreceived Message R/F in the i-mode Center, , , or (☛P27) is indicated. However, the icon may not be indicated even when there are Message R/Fs in the i-mode Center. When the maximum number of Message R/Fs that can be stored in the i-mode Center (☛P165) is reached, the icon changes to , or (☛P27).

Displaying newly-received Message R/F

1 2 or 3 on the reception result screen



- The received Message R is saved in ***Message R*** and the received Message F is saved in ***Message F***.

2 Select a Message R/F

- When a melody is attached, it plays automatically. Auto-play can be turned off. ☛P218
- Reading the Message R/F screen ☛P180

Menu 2731

Displaying Message R/F automatically

Auto-display

Message R/Fs can be automatically opened and displayed for about 15 seconds upon reception. You can set the priority of messages to be displayed when both Message R and Message F are received.

Default MessageR preferred

1 ○ 7 3 1 ▶ 1 to 5

INFORMATION

- Auto-display is available only from the standby display. When you display a mail or Message R/F from the reception result screen or when you receive a Message R/F using Check i-mode Message, auto-display is not performed.
- When this function is set, the contents of received Message R/F are automatically displayed when the Message R/F reception result screen returns to the screen displayed prior to reception. If you do not press any key during auto-display, the Message R/F is saved as unread one.

Menu 2734

Setting operations for incoming Message R/F

Incoming Msg. Alert

Default Select ring alert: Melody/ パターン 2 (Pattern 2)
Incoming msg. lighting: ON/Free step(fast)
Set vibrate alert: OFF Ring time (sec): 10

Example Setting operations for incoming Message R

1 ○ 7 3 4 1

■ **Setting operations for incoming Message F:** ○ 7 3 4 2

2 Select each item to set

Select ring alert :

Selects ***Melody*** or ***movie ringtone*** and then selects a melody or video/i-motion file. To disable the ring alert, select ***OFF***.

- Playing and checking a melody or video/i-motion when selecting ☛P104

Incoming msg. lighting :

Sets whether or not to light the keys for incoming messages and the lighting pattern.

- If ***OFF*** is set, you cannot set the lighting pattern.

Set vibrate alert :

Sets the vibration for incoming messages.

Ring time (sec) :

Sets the sound duration of ring tone (1 to 30 seconds).

3 Press

INFORMATION

- Even if you set ***Sync melody*** for ***Set vibrate alert***, synchronization may not occur depending on the melody.
- When the ring alert for Message R/F is changed in this setting, the ring alert for Message R/F in Sound Setting is also changed. When the incoming lighting is changed, the setting for incoming Message R/F in Alert Lighting Setting is also changed.

Menu 271 / Menu 272

Displaying saved Message R/F

Message R/Message F

- If unread Message R/F exists, R or F is indicated on the standby display.

Example Displaying Message R

1 ○ 7 1

■ **Displaying Message F:** ○ 7 2

2 Select a Message R

INFORMATION

- When an image is inserted in the message, the image is displayed.
  - The image can be downloaded and saved in FOMA terminal. The operation procedure is the same as for saving images from sites.
  - If you could not receive the image, an icon is displayed. The icon is the same as when you cannot display a image on a site (☛P167). Reload the image to receive them again.
  - You cannot delete the image in the message.

Reading the Message R/F list/view screen

Reading Message F is the same as that of Message R.

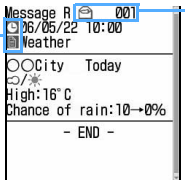
■ **Message R/F list screen**

Page No./total number
Reception date/time and subject

- In the reception date/time column, the time is displayed on the current day and the date is displayed on the other days.

1 ✉: Unread 📭: Read 🔒: Protected
2 🖼: Image attached 🎵: Melody attached
🖼🖼: Multiple attachments

■ **Message R/F view screen**



Status icon, attachment icon (only when there is an attachment), Message R/F number

🕒: Reception date and time 📄: Subject

- You can display the previous/next Message R/F by pressing ⊙.

● When a file is attached, its icon, file name, file size, etc. are displayed on the Message R/F view screen. Handling of attachments is the same as for i-mode Mail.

- Description of image icons ☛P204
- Description of melody icons ☛P206

Reloading images in Message R/F

Reload

Unreceived images in the message of Message R/F text can be reloaded.

- When ***Not display*** is set for ***Image*** in Image & Effect Setting, images cannot be received by reload.
- Some images may not be displayed even if reload is attempted.

1 Display the Message R/F list

2 Select a Message R/F

- 📄 indicates unreceived image data.

3 MENU 1

The image is loaded.

Protecting Message R/F

Protect Message

- The maximum number of Message R/Fs that can be protected ☛P36
- Unread Message R/F cannot be protected.

1 Display the Message R/F list

2 Highlight a Message R/F ▶ MENU 2 1

The Message R/F is protected and the icon changes from ✉ to 🔒.

- To cancel protection: Highlight a Message R/F ▶ MENU 2 3

■ **Protecting selected Message R/Fs:** MENU 2 2 **▶ Select Message R/Fs ▶** ▣

■ **Canceling protection of selected Message R/Fs:** MENU 2 4 **▶ Select Message R/Fs ▶** ▣

■ **Canceling protection of all Message R/Fs:** MENU 2 5

INFORMATION

● On the Message R/F view screen, press MENU and select ***Protect*** or ***Release***.

Deleting Message R/F

Delete Message

- Protected Message R/Fs cannot be deleted. Cancel protection first and then delete them.

1 Display the Message R/F list

2 Highlight a Message R/F ▶ MENU 1 1

■ **Deleting only read Message R/Fs:** MENU 1 2

■ **Deleting selected Message R/Fs:** MENU 1 3 **▶ Select Message R/Fs ▶** ▣

■ **Deleting all Message R/Fs:** MENU 1 4 **▶ Enter the terminal security code**

3 Select *Yes*

INFORMATION

● On the Message R/F view screen, press MENU and select ***Delete***.

Selecting the type of Message R/F to display

Display by Type

- You can select from ***Display all***, ***Display unread only***, ***Display read only***, or ***Display protected***.

・Closing the Message R/F list resets the display type to ***Display all***.

1 Display the Message R/F list ▶ MENU 3 ▶ 1 to 4

・When you select ***Display read only***, the protected Message R/F is not displayed.

Operating certificates

Perform the operation of certificates required for the SSL communication.

Menu 2961

Displaying certificates and setting certificate validity/invalidity

Certificate Setting

Default CA Certificate1 to 9, DoCoMo Cert1

Displaying a certificate

・User certificate is displayed after it has been downloaded.

・When the blue UIM is inserted in FOMA terminal, ***DoCoMo Cert*** and ***User Certificate*** are not displayed.

1 ⊙ 9 6 1 ▶ Select a certificate

CA Certificate:

It is a certificate issued by the certifier. It is stored in FOMA terminal by default.

DoCoMo Cert:

It is a certificate required for connecting to the FirstPass center and FirstPass compatible sites. It is saved in the UIM in advance.

User Certificate:

It is a certificate required for connecting to FirstPass compatible sites. You request the FirstPass center to issue the certificate and download. The downloaded certificate is saved in the UIM.

INFORMATION

● Certificate contents displayed:

User

CN= :(Common Name) Server name, administrator name, or discrimination number

O= :(Organization) Company name, etc.

C= :(Country) Country name

Issued by

CN= :(Common Name) Server name, administrator name, or discrimination number

OU= :(Organization Unit) Departments or other positions in the company

O= :(Organization) Company name, etc.

Expiration date

Serial number

● When a certificate has no information on the user, issuer and/or expiration date, only the item names are displayed.

Setting validity/invalidity of the certificate

1 ⊙ 9 6 1

2 Highlight a certificate ▶ MENU

・Each press switches ***On/Off***.

3 Press ▭

The checked certificate is set as valid.

INFORMATION

● ***DoCoMo Cert2*** cannot be set to ***Off***.

● The settings for ***DoCoMo Cert*** and ***User Certificate*** are saved in the UIM.

Menu 2962

Setting FirstPass

Certificate Download

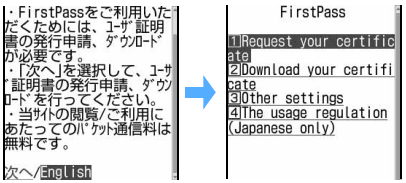
Connect to the FirstPass center to request an user certificate and download it.

・The screens and operations displayed by the FirstPass center may be changed.

・Mail cannot be sent/received and Message R/F cannot be received while being connected to the FirstPass center.

1 ⊙ 9 6 2

2 Select *English* ▶ Select 1 *Request your certificate*



■ **Invalidating the issued certificate:**

① **Select *English* ▶ Select 3 *Other settings***

② **Select 1 *Revoke your certificate* ▶ Select *Yes***

③ **Enter the PIN2 code ▶ Select *Continue***

④ **Select *Continue***

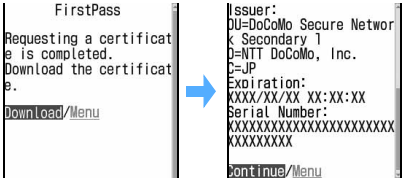
⑤ **Select *Continue***

3 Select *Continue*

4 Enter the PIN2 code

- If the PIN2 code is not entered within 60 seconds, the request is canceled.

5 Select *Download* ▶ Select *Continue*



- The downloaded user certificate is added to the certificate list. ☛P181

INFORMATION

- The packet communication fee is not charged for connection to the FirstPass center.
- The user certificate certifies that you have subscribed to the FOMA service. The downloaded user certificate is saved in the UIM and it can be used in FirstPass compatible sites.
- If you install FirstPass PC software in the attached CD-ROM to your PC, you can connect FOMA terminal to the PC and perform communication using FirstPass. For details, see “FirstPassManual” in the attached CD-ROM. To view “FirstPassManual” (PDF format), Adobe Reader (version 6.0 or later is recommended) is required. If Adobe Reader is not installed in your PC, download the latest version from the Adobe Systems Incorporated website (communication fee is required separately for downloading). See the Adobe Systems Incorporated website for details.

Using FirstPass

- FirstPass is DoCoMo’s electronic authentication service. Using FirstPass allows client authentication, in which a site and FOMA terminal exchange and verify each other’s certificate for authenticating each other.
- FirstPass can be used for Internet communication using FOMA terminal and for Internet communication using FOMA terminal that is connected to a PC. To use FirstPass with a PC, FirstPass PC software in the attached CD-ROM is needed.
- When requesting a user certificate, be sure to read FirstPass usage regulation displayed on the screen and accept the terms and conditions.
- Use of a user certificate requires entry of the PIN2 code.
- All operations made after entry of the PIN2 code are regarded as operations you made. Use abundance of caution not to let the UIM or PIN2 code used by any third party.
- If the UIM is lost or stolen, you can contact “General Inquiries” on the back of this manual to have the user certificate nullified.
- Under no circumstances shall DoCoMo have any obligation or held responsible for sites and information provided by FirstPass compatible sites. Any issue that arises must be settled between you and the FirstPass compatible site concerned.
- Neither DoCoMo nor the certifier provides any guarantee for security etc. in use of FirstPass and SSL. Use the services on your own judgment and responsibility.

Menu 2963

Changing the certificate host

Certificate Host

If you use services other than FirstPass, set the connection destination. If you change this setting, you cannot connect to the FirstPass center.

Usually, you do not need to change this setting.

Default DoCoMo

1 ○ 9 6 3

2 Select *HOST* field ▶ 2

- To restore settings for connecting to FirstPass: Select *Host* field ▶ 1 ▶ Go to Step 5

3 Select *User host* field ▶ Enter the connection destination (up to 99 one-byte alphanumeric characters)

4 Select *User host URL* field ▶ Enter the URL (up to 100 one-byte alphanumeric characters)

5 **Press** 📖

i-motion

You can download images and sounds from i-mode or Internet web site to play or save them. The saved images or sounds can be played as i-motion or can be set for Movie ringtone (Chaku-motion). The vocals of your favorite singers can be used as ring tone as well as melodies (some i-motion may not be set for Movie ringtone).

- Some i-motion may not be played or saved. You cannot change or select the type of i-motion when downloading.

Downloading i-motion from sites

1 Display a site ▶ Select i-motion

When downloading i-motion is finished, a message indicating that appears.

- When trying to download streaming type i-motion, that cannot be played and saved while being downloaded, or i-motion larger than 500 Kbyte, a message appears indicating that the i-motion cannot be played. Such i-motion cannot be played and saved.

■ **i-motion played while the data is being downloaded:**
i-motion is played while the data is being downloaded. After finishing the play, the operation is the same as the i-motion played after downloading data.

Amount of received data/total data

- During playback, the following operations are enabled:
  ● : Pause/play ◎ : Adjust volume
  📖 : Stop (Press ● to play from the beginning.)
  MENU : Display the detail information
- Even if you pause or stop playing, the data reception continues.
- When the operation is interrupted, a confirmation screen is displayed. Select ***Yes*** to interrupt.
- When ***Auto replay setting*** in i-motion Setting is set to ***Auto Play OFF***, i-motion is not played automatically.

■ **i-motion played after downloading data:**
i-motion is played automatically when downloading is completed.

- During playback, the following operations are enabled:
  ● : Pause/play ◎ : Adjust volume
  ◎ : Play at fast speed
  ◎ : Rewind and play
  📖 : Stop (The message is displayed indicating the completion of downloading.)
  MENU : Display the detail information
- When ***Auto replay setting*** in i-motion Setting is set to ***Auto Play OFF***, i-motion is not played automatically.

2 Select *Save*

- Streaming i-motion or i-motion larger than 500 Kbytes cannot be saved.
- To play i-motion again: Select ***Play***
- To display detail information: Select ***File property***
- To cancel saving: Select ***Back*** ▶ Select ***No***

3 Enter a display name (up to 36 one- or two-byte characters) ▶ 📖

The downloaded i-motion is saved in ***i-mode*** folder of ***i-motion***.

■ **When a link is set within ticker stream of downloaded i-motion:**
When a link to phone number, mail address, or site is set in a ticker, if playing is finished or interrupted, you can use Phone To, AV Phone To, Mail To or Web To. For Phone To or AV Phone To, the setting screen for dialing conditions is displayed. For Mail To or Web To, a confirmation screen is displayed.

- When the link type is Phone To (AV Phone To), pressing [m] allows you to add phone numbers to the phonebook. Selecting ***Add to phonebook*** allows you to add mail addresses to the phonebook when the link type is Mail To.
- When i-motion is not saved, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to save i-motion.
- When there are two or more link items, only one item will be effective. The item which is to become effective depends on i-motion data.

■ **Setting for the standby display: [MENU] [1] ▶ Select *Yes***

- If zooming is available, select ***Yes (Same size)*** to maintain the image size or select ***Yes (Large size)*** to enlarge it to the screen size.
- When the i-αppli standby display has been set, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to cancel it.

■ **Registering a new phonebook entry: [MENU] [2] ▶ Set the name, etc. and register**

■ **Adding to an existing phonebook entry: [MENU] [3] ▶ Select a phonebook entry ▶ Confirm the contents and register**

- If video/i-motion is already set, it is replaced by the selected video/i-motion.

■ **Setting as Movie ringtone: [MENU] [4] ▶ [1] to [6]**

■ **Setting as memory ring alert (call, mail): ① [MENU] [4] ▶ [7] or [8] ▶ Select a phonebook entry ② [m] after confirming the contents**

- When a ring alert has been set, it is replaced by the selected video/i-motion.
- For entering phonebook No., follow Step 3 of "Editing saved phonebook entries". ☛P97

■ **Setting as incoming image (voice call, videophone call): [MENU] [5] ▶ [1] or [2]**

- When an incoming image has been set, it is replaced by the selected video/i-motion.

INFORMATION

- For the usage precaution for setting to the standby display or phonebook ☛P254
- Only the i-motion in MP4 (Mobile MP4) format can be downloaded and played. i-motion in ASF format cannot be downloaded and played.
- The replay restrictions such as the number of replayable times or expiration of playback may be set for i-motion files.
- When i-motion is played while the data is being downloaded, playing may be temporarily stopped in wait for data reception. The playing is automatically resumed when data reception is started.
- When i-motion is played while the data is being downloaded, i-motion may become unable to play or the image may be blurred depending on radio wave conditions. In such a case, the i-motion can be played after the completion of downloading if the data is normally received. However, some i-motion files may allow reception of data, but may not be played correctly.
- Even for the type of i-motion which is played while the data is being downloaded, it may not be played during downloading depending on the status of sites.
- When i-motion data is improper, reception of i-motion may be canceled.
- When the memory is not enough or the maximum number of saved items is exceeded, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to delete the saved video/i-motion. If you save it, follow the instructions on the screen and delete it. Before deletion, you can play video/i-motion by pressing [m] in the video/i-motion list and view detail information on it by pressing [MENU].

Menu 293

Setting whether to play i-motion automatically

i-motion Setting

Default Auto Play ON

1 [●] [9] [3]

2 **Select *Auto replay setting* field ▶ [1] or [2]**

- Even when ***Auto Play OFF*** is set, i-motion can be played by selecting ***Play*** after downloading i-motion.

3 **Press [m]**

INFORMATION

- On the site screen, press [MENU] and select ***Display*** → ***i-motion settings***.

Mail

FOMA terminal mail function....186

Composing i-mode Mail/Deco-mail

Composing and sending i-mode Mail.... Compose Message 190
Composing and sending Deco-mail.... Deco-mail 192
Attaching files.... Attachment 196
Using mail templates....198
Saving i-mode Mail for sending later.... Save Mail 199
Composing mail quickly.... Quick Mail 200

Receiving and handling i-mode Mail

Receiving i-mode Mail.... Mail Auto Receive 200
Selecting i-mode Mail to receive.... Receive Option 202
Checking for i-mode Mail.... Check i-mode Message 203
Replying to received i-mode Mail.... Reply to Mail 203
Forwarding received i-mode Mail.... Forward Mail 203
Displaying and saving attached images.... Display/Save Image 204
Playing and saving i-motion from i-motion Mail....205
Playing and saving attached melodies from i-mode Mail
.... Play/Save Melody 206
Deleting attachments.... Delete Attachment 207

Using the mail box

Displaying mail in Inbox/Outbox.... Inbox/Outbox 207
Useful functions of mail....213

Setting mail

Setting mail functions of FOMA terminal.... Mail Setting 214

Using chat mail

Composing and sending chat mail.... Chat Mail 220

Using SMS (Short Message)

Composing and sending SMS.... Compose SMS 223
When SMS is received.... Receive SMS 224
Checking for SMS.... Check SMS 225
Making SMS settings.... SMS Setting 226
Saving SMS to the UIM.... Save SMS to UIM 226

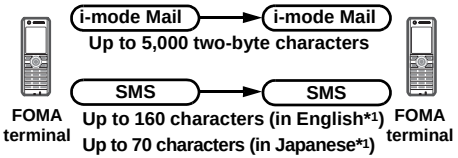
FOMA terminal mail function

FOMA terminal provides 2 mail functions: i-mode Mail and SMS.

- To use i-mode Mail, an i-mode subscription is required.
- You can use SMS without an i-mode subscription.

Sending and receiving mail

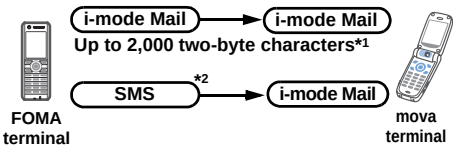
FOMA terminal → FOMA terminal



*1 Set with ***Font type*** in SMS Setting.

FOMA terminal → mova terminal

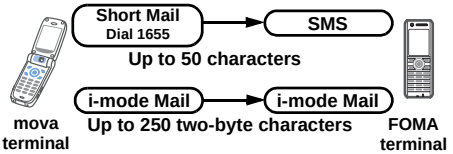
The mova terminal receives SMS sent from FOMA terminal as i-mode Mail.



*1 The limit varies by the settings of mova terminal.
*2 When the delivered report is set to ***Request*** in SMS Setting, SMS cannot be sent to the mova terminal.

mova terminal → FOMA terminal

FOMA terminal receives Short Mail sent from mova terminal as SMS message.



- Short Mail Service allows the exchange of text messages between DoCoMo mobile phones.

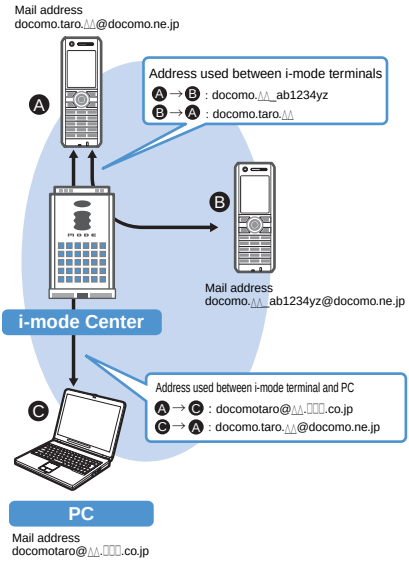
i-mode Mail

i-mode subscribers can send and receive mail to and from other i-mode terminals (including mova terminals) or via Internet e-mail.
The mail address for i-mode subscribers is constructed as follows:

When you newly subscribe to i-mode
The part of the address preceding the @ symbol is a combination of random alphanumeric characters. Be sure to check your mail address after subscribing to i-mode.
Example: abc1234-789xyz@docomo.ne.jp

- **Checking your mail address**
  iMenu → ***ENGLISH*** → 4***Options*** → 1***Mail Settings*** → ***Confirm Mail Address***

- For mail exchange between i-mode terminals (including mova terminals), mail can be sent also with the part preceding the @ symbol in the address.
- For receiving e-mail from a PC, use the whole address including @docomo.ne.jp.



- Sending mail ☛P190
- Receiving mail ☛P200

■ Receiving selected mail

You can check the subject of i-mode Mail stored in the i-mode Center and select the mail to receive or delete mail without receiving it. ☛P202

Setting mail

The following settings can be made for mail:

Setting procedure
iMenu → *ENGLISH* → 4*Options* → 1*Mail Settings* → [Follow each settings in 【】below]

- For details, see "i-mode User's Manual" you received when you subscribed to i-mode.

■ **Changing the mail address [*Change Mail Address*]**
You can change the part preceding the @ symbol to another address like "docomo.△△_ab1234yz@docomo.ne.jp".

■ **Registering a secret code [*Mail Address* (*Other Settings*) → *Register a Secret Code*]**
When you use the phone number address, a 4-digit secret code can be registered in addition to the mail address. Since mail with no secret code specified is not received, you can avoid receiving unnecessary mail.

■ **Resetting the mail address [*Mail Address* (*Other Settings*) → *Reset Mail Address*]**
You can set your mail address to "mobile phone number@docomo.ne.jp".

■ **Checking mail address [*Confirm Mail Address*]**
You can check your current mail address.

■ **Receiving/rejecting specified mail**
You can restrict incoming mail by setting to receive/reject mail in one of the following methods:

① **Receiving mail from specified domains [*Receiving Mail* (*Reject/Receive Mail Settings*) → *Receive Mail from Selected Domains*]**
- You can receive the mail through the specified carrier(s) out of au, Vodafone, TU-KA, and WILLCOM.
- Of the mail through carriers other than above, those from the specified domain(s) are received.
- Mails from NTT DoCoMo's i-mode, i-shot, charge notice service, e-billing charges notification, and visualnet are all received.

② **Receiving/rejecting mail from specified addresses [*Receiving Mail* (*Reject/Receive Mail Settings*) → *Receive Selected Mail, Reject Selected Mail*]**
- Of all received mails, you receive/reject only those from the specified addresses.

③ **Receiving/rejecting only i-mode Mail [*Receiving Mail* (*Reject/Receive Mail Settings*) → *Receive only i-mode mail*, *Reject only i-mode mail*]**
- You receive (reject mail via the Internet)/reject mail only between i-mode terminals.

④ **Rejecting mass i-mode Mail senders [*Receiving Mail* (*Other Settings*) → *Reject Mass i-mode Mail Senders*]**
- The 200th and later i-mode Mail messages sent from an i-mode terminal (including mova) in a single day are rejected. The initial setting is ***Reject*** and you do not need to make any settings to reject mail from large-volume senders.

⑤ **Rejecting Unsolicited Ad Mail (mail with 未承諾広告※) [*Receiving Mail* (*Other Settings*) → *Reject Unsolicited Ad Mail*]**
- Unsolicited mail sent for the purpose of advertising and publicity without receivers consent that is marked with "未承諾広告※" at the beginning of the subject can be rejected. The initial setting is ***Reject*** and you do not need to make any settings to reject such mail. (The sender is required by law to add 未承諾広告※ (6 two-byte characters) at the beginning of the subject.)

⑥ **Rejecting SMS [*Receiving Mail* (*Other Settings*) → *Set/Confirm SMS Rejection Settings*]**
- You can set to reject SMS to be received and select from 4 types, rejecting all SMS, rejecting SMS with no caller ID, rejecting international SMS, or rejecting SMS with no caller ID and international SMS. In addition, you can confirm the current settings.

Only one of ***Receive Mail from Selected Domains***, ***Receive Selected Mail***, ***Reject Selected Mail***, ***Receive only i-mode mail***, and ***Reject only i-mode mail*** can be set at a time.

■ **Checking current settings [*Confirm Settings*]**
You can check the current settings for receiving/rejecting mail, etc.

■ **Restricting mail size [*Limit Mail Size*]**
You can restrict the i-mode Mail to receive to the specified size.

■ **Suspending i-mode Mail function [*Suspend Mail*]**
If you do not use the mail function, you can stop it in the i-mode Center.

Number of characters that can be sent/received

The number of characters that can be sent and received in i-mode Mail is as follows:

Item	One-byte characters (alphanumeric, katakana, etc.)	Two-byte characters (kanji, hiragana, pictograms, etc.)
Subject	30 characters	15 characters
Mail address	50 characters	—
Message	10,000 characters	5,000 characters

INFORMATION

- The message of i-mode Mail can contain up to 5,000 two-byte characters (10,000 bytes), but the maximum number of characters that can be sent/received may be smaller depending on the size of any attachment.
- When the message exceeds the number of characters that can be received, "/" or "//" is inserted at the end of message and the excessive characters are deleted automatically.
- When you send i-mode Mail to a mova terminal, the message can contain up to 2,000 two-byte characters. i-shot Mail or i-motion Mail is sent as mail containing a URL, and the other attachment is deleted.
- When the subject exceeds the maximum number of characters that can be received, the excessive characters are deleted.
- Except for mail exchanges between i-mode terminals (including mova terminals), do not use one-byte katakana characters or pictograms. They may not be displayed correctly at the receiver side.

When you cannot receive mail

i-mode Mail received by the i-mode Center is immediately sent to your i-mode terminal. However, when you cannot receive mail because the power of your terminal is turned off or the terminal is out of the service area, i-mode Mail is stored in the i-mode Center. When mail is stored in the i-mode Center, it is resent a maximum of 3 times at a certain interval. You can also select i-mode Mail stored in the i-mode Center and receive it using Receive Option Setting.

INFORMATION

- The maximum storage number of i-mode Mail items and the storage period they are stored at the i-mode Center are as follows:

Item	Maximum number of items	Maximum storage period
i-mode Mail	207 to 1,000 items (up to approx. 2 MB)	720 hours

- i-mode Mail is automatically deleted after the maximum storage period expires.
- The maximum number of items that can be stored depends on the data size of i-mode Mail. When the maximum number is exceeded, the i-mode Center no longer accepts a mail and returns it to the sender together with an error message. At this time, or is indicated on your i-mode terminal.
  When Receive Option Setting is on, however, or is not indicated even if the maximum number is exceeded.
- When i-mode Mail stored in the i-mode Center is received by your i-mode terminal, the mail is deleted from the i-mode Center. The received mail is saved in your i-mode terminal.
- Extremely large volume i-mode Mail may not be accepted by the i-mode Center.
- You can use Check i-mode Message or Receive Option to receive i-mode Mail stored in the i-mode Center. In addition, if a new mail arrives, you can receive it with other stored mails and Message R/Fs.

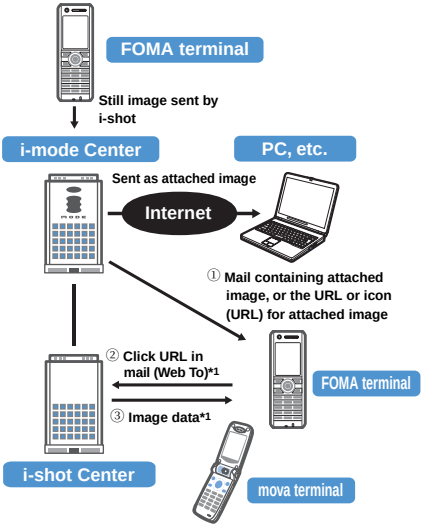
Other convenient functions

■ Mail with attachments

- **Attaching melodies to mail**
  You can send/receive melody files downloaded from i-mode or Internet web sites by attaching them to i-mode Mail (you cannot send melody files that are prohibited from being attached to mail or output from FOMA terminal).
  ・Sending ☛P196 ・Receiving ☛P206
- **Attaching images to mail**
  You can send/receive still image files obtained from i-mode or Internet web sites or via infrared communication by attaching them to i-mode Mail (you cannot send still image files that are prohibited from being attached to mail or output from FOMA terminal).
  ・Sending ☛P196 ・Receiving ☛P204

■ i-shot

Still images shot by a terminal with the camera function can be attached to mail and sent/received to/from i-mode terminals (including mova terminals), PCs, or other company's mobile phones. The still images are sent as attachments or mail containing a URL (or icon) for viewing the still image with the storage period. Click the received URL to download the image.
The maximum number of characters that can be sent to a mova terminal is 184 two-byte characters (369 bytes). If you attach multiple files to mail, the attachments are deleted from the mail and only the message text is notified.
・Sending ☛P196 ・Receiving ☛P204



*1 When mail containing the URL for attached image is received

- The i-shot Center stores images for a maximum period of 10 days and deletes the images automatically after that period.
- i-mode terminal can send still image files of up to 500 Kbytes. When you send an image exceeding 20 Kbytes as mail attachment to an i-mode terminal, the image is automatically reduced and downloaded to the receiver's terminal.

■ i-motion Mail

Videos recorded with an i-motion Mail compatible terminal or downloaded from sites can be sent/received to/from i-motion Mail compatible terminals, PCs, or other company's mobile phones (you cannot send video files that are prohibited from being attached to mail or output from FOMA terminal).

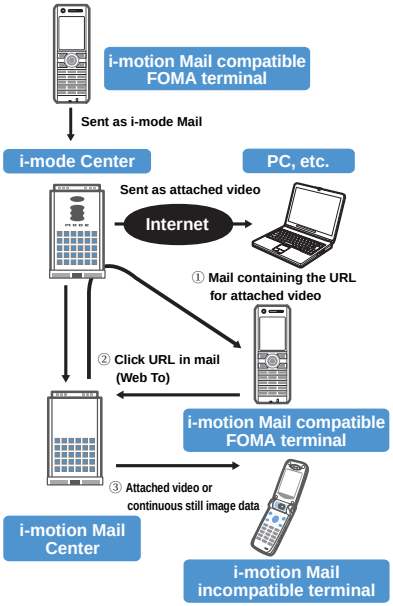
・Sending ☛P196 ・Receiving ☛P205

- **Service schematic**

  Video files attached to i-motion Mail are sent to the i-motion Mail Center and stored there (if the destination is a PC, the file is directly sent to the PC as an attachment).

  When i-motion Mail is received by an i-motion Mail compatible terminal, the video can be downloaded by clicking the URL displayed in the message text.

  When i-motion Mail is sent to an i-motion Mail incompatible terminal, the i-motion file is converted to continuous still images and received as mail containing the URL. The receiver can download the continuous still images by clicking the displayed URL.



- The i-motion Mail Center stores images for a maximum period of 10 days and deletes the images automatically after that period.
- i-motion Mail compatible terminals can receive video files of up to 500 Kbytes. When the attached video is downloaded, the image size is automatically changed to fit the terminal screen.

■ Deco-mail

You can compose and send your original i-mode Mail messages by changing the character size or background color, or by pasting images in the text when editing i-mode Mail message, and enjoy receiving decorated mail (when decorated mail is received from a PC, operations may not be the same as on the PC because some decorations are not supported by i-mode terminals).

When Deco-mail is sent to an incompatible terminal, it is received as mail containing a URL. The receiver can view Deco-mail by clicking the displayed URL.

・Editing Deco-mail ☛P192
・Sending Deco-mail ☛P192
・Supporting models:
  Deco-mail compatible models. For details, see "i-mode User's Manual".

■ Sending mail to multiple addresses

You can send i-mode Mail to multiple addresses (up to 5 addresses) at one time. ☛P191

- The communication fee is the same as for sending one mail (however, the communication fee increases corresponding to the information volume for additional addresses).

■ **Sending/receiving CC and BCC**

When editing i-mode Mail, you can select the address type from TO, CC and BCC in the same way as on PCs.

If there is no TO address, however, mail cannot be sent. ☛P191

■ **Chat Mail**

Mail can be sent and received to/from multiple addresses like making conversation.

- The communication fee for chat mail to multiple addresses is the same as for sending mail to multiple addresses at one time.

SMS (Short Message)

Text messages can be exchanged between FOMA terminals.

- Sending ☛P223
- Receiving ☛P224
- Checking for SMS ☛P225

Address of SMS

The address of SMS is “subscribing mobile phone number”.

- You can exchange SMS via overseas carriers other than DoCoMo. For more information, please visit the DoCoMo website.

Number of characters that can be sent/received

The maximum number of characters is different depending on the font type setting (☛P226).

Item	*English*	*Japanese*
Address	20 characters (numbers only)*1	
Message	160 one-byte characters*2	70 one- or two-byte characters

*1 If a one-byte “+” is contained, up to 21 characters can be entered.

*2 One-byte alphanumerics and symbols (except for ` 。「」、・ ゛ and °) can be sent.

When symbols (| ^ { } [ ] ~ and ¥) are entered, the number of characters that can be sent is reduced.

When you cannot receive SMS

SMS sent to your FOMA terminal is received by the SMS Center and sent to your FOMA terminal immediately. However, when you cannot receive messages because the terminal is turned off or outside the service area, the messages are stored in the SMS Center.

INFORMATION

- The SMS Center stores messages for a maximum of 72 hours. The sender can specify the storage period. ☛P226
- SMS is automatically deleted after the maximum storage period expires.
- You can use Check SMS to receive the messages stored in the SMS Center.
- When FOMA terminal receives the SMS message, the messages stored in the SMS Center are deleted. The received SMS is stored in FOMA terminal.

Other convenient functions

■ **Delivered report**

You can receive a delivery report that informs whether the other party has received the sent SMS. ☛P226

■ **Saving to the UIM**

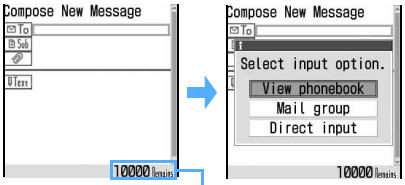
You can save received and sent SMS to the UIM. ☛P226

Menu 12 / ✉2

Composing and sending i-mode Mail

Compose Message

1 ✉ **(for over a second) ▶ Select** To **field**



Mail composition screen

Remaining number of one-byte characters that can be entered

2 Select *Direct input* ▶ Enter the address (up to 50 one-byte characters)

- When sending mail to an i-mode terminal, you may omit “@docomo.ne.jp” in the mail address.
- In 5-touch Input Method, press 1 repeatedly in the alphabet input mode to enter “@”, “ . ”, “ - ”, etc. In addition, “.co.jp”, “.ne.jp”, “.com”, etc. can be entered by pressing ✱ repeatedly in the alphabet input mode.
- When the other party has registered a secret code, enter the other party’s i-mode terminal phone number followed by the 4-digit secret code.

■ **Searching the phonebook: Select *View phonebook* ▶ Select a phonebook entry ▶ Select a mail address**

■ **Entering from a mail group: Select *Mail group* ▶ Select a mail group**

- Mail addresses must be registered in a mail group in advance.
- If the total of entered addresses exceeds 5, the mail group cannot be added.
- Press MENU to check the mail group details.

3 Select Sub field ▶ Enter the subject (up to 30 one-byte or 15 two-byte characters)

4 Select Text field ▶ Enter the message (up to 10,000 one-byte or 5,000 two-byte characters)

- Line feeds can be inserted in the message. Press # to enter a line feed in 5-touch Input Method (except in the one-byte and two-byte numeric modes). A line feed is counted as a character in the message.
- A space is also counted as a character in the message.
- Text can be decorated. ☛P192

■ **Inserting a signature: MENU 5**

- Signature must be registered beforehand.

5 Press

- Press ⏻ on the connecting screen to stop connection. Press 📖 on the sending screen to stop sending and to save the i-mode Mail in ***Unsent messages*** folder of ***Unsent messages***. However, even when saved in ***Unsent messages*** folder, the i-mode Mail may be sent depending on the operation timing.
- When you are outside the service area and the number of saved auto-send mails is less than 5, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to send mail automatically in the service area. When you select ***Yes***, the mail is saved as auto-send mail in ***Unsent messages*** folder of ***Unsent messages***.

INFORMATION

- When mail exceeding 10,000 bytes was automatically saved due to start of other functions, a part of the mail being composed may not be saved.
- Depending on signal conditions, characters may not be displayed correctly at the receiver side.
- When transmission is completed correctly, the i-mode Mail is saved in ***Outbox*** folder of ***Outbox***. However, when the sent mail matches the criteria specified in Sort Criteria, it is saved in the specified folder. When there is not enough available storage space, or the maximum number of saved items is exceeded, the oldest sent mail is overwritten. Be sure to protect sent mail you want to keep.
- When transmission fails, an error message is displayed and the i-mode Mail is saved in ***Unsent messages*** folder of ***Unsent messages***. You can edit and send i-mode Mail from ***Unsent messages***.
- Even if i-mode Mail is sent correctly, ***Transmission failed.*** may be displayed and saved in ***Unsent messages*** folder of ***Unsent messages*** depending on signal conditions.
- Except for exchanges between i-mode terminals (including mova terminals), be sure not to use one-byte katakana characters or pictograms. They may not be displayed correctly at the receiver side. Depending on the model of the receiver's i-mode terminal, some pictograms may not be displayed correctly.
- Depending on the settings of the receiver's terminal such as the number of characters that can be displayed, the font or its display size, face marks may not be displayed correctly, their shapes and views may be different from the original ones.
- An error message for address unknown etc. may not be received when mail is sent to addresses other than DoCoMo.
- When there is not enough available storage space, or the maximum number of saved items is exceeded, i-mode Mail cannot be composed. Delete unnecessary i-mode Mail and/or SMS from ***Unsent messages***. ☛P213

Adding receivers Add Address

You can send i-mode Mail to up to 5 addresses at one time (Multi-address transmission).

- There are 3 address types: To (TO), Cc (CC) and Bcc (BCC).
  - To : The main receiver
  - Cc : The receiver to which you want to send a copy of the mail
  - Bcc : The receiver to which you want to send a copy of the mail but which you do not want to be known to other receivers
- Mail with no address entered in To field cannot be sent.
- The mail address entered in Bcc field is not shown to other receivers.

1 Highlight the address field on the mail composition screen ▶ ✉

Address field is added.

- Repeat operation until the number of fields you want is added.

■ **Adding CC and BCC:**

① MENU 7 **on the mail composition screen ▶ Select an entry method**

② **Select *CC* or *BCC* ▶ Enter a mail address**

- ***TO*** can be also selected.
- When you have added by selecting ***Mail group***, TO, CC and BCC are set as registered for the mail group.

■ **Changing TO, CC and BCC: Highlight an address field ▶ MENU 9 ▶ Select an address type**

■ **Deleting the added address field: Highlight an address field ▶ MENU 8 ▶ Select *Yes***

- Only the address in the field is deleted when there is only one field.

2 Enter the address in the added field ▶ 📖

- The operation procedure is the same as when there is only one address field.

INFORMATION

- The mail address entered in To field and Cc field can be seen at the receiver side. However, it may not be displayed depending on the receiver's terminal, device, or mail software.
- When sending of mail to some addresses fails, an error message is displayed. Pressing ⏲ may display a list of mail addresses for which transmission failed.

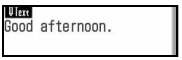
Composing and sending Deco-mail

Deco-mail

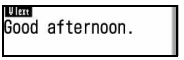
You can decorate the i-mode Mail message by changing the font size, font color or background color, or inserting still images including the ones shot with the camera to compose Deco-mail. Deco-mail can be composed in 2 ways: entering characters after specifying decoration (☛P193) and setting decoration after selecting the range of entered characters (☛P195). The composed Deco-mail can be viewed with the preview function.

■ **Examples of decoration**

❶ Changing font color

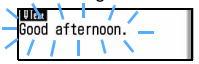


❷ Changing font size

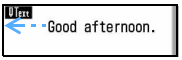


❸ Inserting images

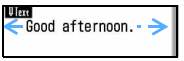
❹ Blinking characters



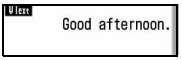
❺ Setting ticker



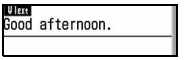
❻ Swinging characters left and right



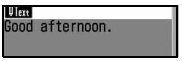
❼ Changing word alignment



❽ Inserting lines (ruled lines)



❾ Changing background color



■ **Flow of Deco-mail composition**

Step 1	Display the message text entry screen
↓	Start composing i-mode Mail and display the message text entry screen.
Step 2	Enter characters and decorate
↓	• Enter decorated characters and images: ✉ ▶ Select the decoration method ▶ Enter characters • Decorate entered characters: ✎ at the start position of decoration ▶ ⏲ at the end position ▶ Select the decoration method • Press MENU 8 during editing to check the decoration.
Step 3	Confirm the decoration and send
	Check the decoration on the mail composition screen.

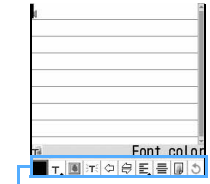
INFORMATION

- Even if you delete decorated characters, only the decoration data remains and the number of characters to be entered may be fewer. Cancel the decoration first and delete characters. Holding down [ch/クリア] for over a second and deleting all the characters deletes all the decoration data (except the background color).
- If you send or receive mail from other than Deco-mail compatible FOMA terminal such as PC, the decoration in Deco-mail may not be correctly displayed.
- The actions of decoration such as blink, ticker, swing, and animation stop automatically after a certain period of time when viewed from the mail composition screen or the preview screen.
- When a Deco-mail is sent to an incompatible terminal, it is received as a mail containing a URL for viewing the Deco-mail. The Deco-mail cannot be viewed from the mail containing the URL that has been transferred or by entering the URL directly (it can be viewed only on the terminal of the original receiver).

Entering characters after specifying decoration method

1 Select [Text] on the mail composition screen ▶ [✉]

2 Select a decoration ▶ Enter characters



Icon

Decoration selection screen

Highlight an icon on the decoration selection screen and press ● to select a decoration. You can set multiple decorations at the same time by selecting multiple icons. However, ***Ticker***, ***Swing*** and ***Word alignment*** cannot be set at the same time.

- To set multiple decorations: Highlight an icon on the decoration selection screen ▶ [MENU]
- To cancel the selected decoration and enter characters: Highlight the character entry position ▶ [✉] ▶ [✎]

Font color, ***Font size***, ***Blink***, ***Ticker***, ***Swing*** and ***Word alignment*** can be canceled.

Font color :
Changes the colors of characters and lines (ruled lines).

Font size :
Changes the font size.

Insert image :
Inserts images.

Blink :
Displays characters that blink.

Ticker :
Displays characters in a ticker (ticker display).

Swing :
Displays characters that swing left and right (swing display).

Word alignment :
Changes the positions of characters and images.

Insert line :
Inserts separating lines (ruled lines).

Background color :
Changes the background color of text.

Undo :
Restores the previous condition.

3 [MENU] [8] ▶ Check the decoration

You can check the set decoration and the accurate remaining number of bytes that can be entered.

4 ● after checking the details

■ **Changing the decoration: [MENU] [1] [8] ▶ Highlight the start position ▶ ●**

- For the subsequent steps, follow the procedure from Step 2 in “Specifying decoration method after entering characters”. ☛P195

■ **Canceling all decorations: [MENU] [1] [9]**

5 ● ▶ [📖]

INFORMATION

- You can also select decorations by pressing [MENU] on the message text entry screen and selecting ***Decorate mail***.

Operating on the Deco-mail decoration selection screen

- The number in parentheses ( ) indicates the number of example of decoration in P192.

■ **Changing the font color (example of decoration ❶): Select ■ ▶ Select a color ▶ Enter characters**

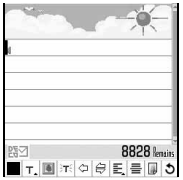
- Select from 20 standard colors or 64 colors in ***Other color***.
- The color of pictograms is also changed. To return to the original color, specify the range and select ***Default*** for font color. For the operation procedure, see “Specifying decoration method after entering characters”. ☛P195

■ **Changing the font size (example of decoration ❷): Select T (or T T) ▶ Select a size ▶ Enter characters**

***large* selected**

■ **Inserting images (example of decoration ❸): Select ▶ Select *Data Box* ▶ Select a folder ▶ Select an image**

- To shoot and insert a still image: Select ***Use still camera*** ▶ Shoot a still image ▶ ●
  - The size of still image is automatically set to 96 x 72 (phonebook).
- Deco-mail pictures set by default ☛P327



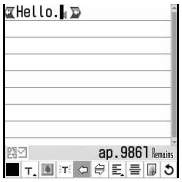
The image is inserted at the cursor position.

- You cannot select a video/i-motion file or an image larger than the attachable data size.

■ **Making characters blink (example of decoration ❹): Select T ▶ Enter characters**

The entered characters are blinking.

■ **Making characters into ticker to run from right to left (example of decoration ❺): Select ⇦ ▶ Enter characters**

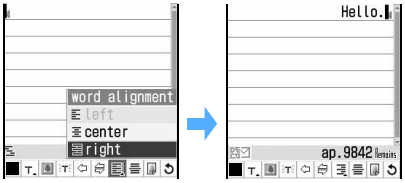


- Enter characters between 〔 and 〕.

■ **Making characters swing left and right (example of decoration ❻): Select ⇔ ▶ Enter characters**

- Enter characters between 〔 and 〕.

■ **Changing the word alignment (example of decoration ❼): Select ≡ (or ≡ ≡) ▶ Select the display position ▶ Enter characters**



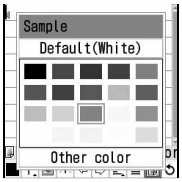
***right* selected**

- When characters are already entered and the cursor is placed between characters, a new blank line is started at the selected position.

■ **Inserting lines (ruled lines) (example of decoration ❽): Select** ≣

A line (ruled line) is inserted in the color specified with font color (■).

■ **Changing text background color (example of decoration ❾): Select** 📄 **▶ Select a background color**



• Select from 20 standard colors or 64 colors in *Other color*.

■ **Restoring the previous condition: Select** ↩

The last decoration or characters entered are canceled.

Specifying decoration method after entering characters

You can decorate entered characters and change the decoration of characters by specifying the range.

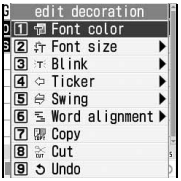
- The number in parentheses ( ) in Step 3 indicates the example of decoration in P192.
- You cannot insert lines or images, or change the background color. Specify the decoration first.

1 Highlight the start position on the message text entry screen ▶ ✉

2 Highlight the end position ▶ ●

- To move the cursor to the beginning of text: MENU
- To move the cursor to the end of text: 📖
- To select all the text: ✉

3 Select the decoration method



• The procedures for confirming and canceling decorations are the same as when entering characters after specifying decoration. ☛P193

■ **Changing the font color (example of decoration ❶): 1 ▶ Select a color**
- The color of lines (ruled lines) is also changed.

■ **Changing the font size (example of decoration ❷): 2 ▶ 1 to 3**

■ **Making characters blink (example of decoration ❹): 3 1**
- To cancel: 3 2

■ **Making characters into ticker to run from right to left (example of decoration ❺): 4 1**
- To cancel: 4 2

■ **Making characters swing left and right (example of decoration ❻): 5 1**
- To cancel: 5 2

■ **Changing the word alignment (example of decoration ❼): 6 ▶ 1 to 3**
- The display position of image is also changed.

■ **Copying characters: 7**

■ **Cutting characters: 8**

■ **Restoring the previous condition: 9**
- The last decoration or characters entered are canceled.

■ **Decorating characters continuously:** MENU **▶ Repeat Step 3**

4 ●

Selection of decorated characters is canceled.
- You can also unselect it by pressing ⊙.

5 ● ▶ 📖

INFORMATION

● On the message text entry screen, press MENU and select ***Decorate mail*** → ***Edit decoration***.

● Press MENU 8 on the message text entry screen to display the accurate remaining number of bytes that can be entered at the lower right of the screen.

Attaching melodies to Deco-mail

Melo-deco

1 on the decoration selection screen

- When a melody is already attached, the list of attached melodies is displayed. Go to Step 3, “Attaching another melody” or “Removing an attached melody”.

2 Select a folder

- Highlight a melody and press to play the melody. Press to attach it or clr/OUT to return to the list.
- Melodies that cannot be attached are not displayed.

3 Select a melody

The melody is attached and its file name and file size are displayed in the list of attached melodies.

■ **Attaching another melody: MENU ▶ Select a folder ▶ Select a melody**

■ **Removing an attached melody: Highlight a melody ▶ ▶ Select *Yes***

4

appears at the lower part of the screen.

5 ▶

Mail attachment melodies

The following melodies are registered in ***Mail Attach Melody*** folder by default.

Title	Song title (composer name in [ ])
クリスマス **(Christmas)**	JOY TO THE WORLD [HANDEL GEORGE FRIDERIC/ MASON LOWELL]
結婚式 **(Wedding)**	BRIDAL MARCH [WAGNER RICHARD WILHELM]
誕生日 **(Birthday)**	—
嬉しい **(Happiness)**	—
悲しい **(Sadness)**	—

- The composer’s name are described in accordance with the JASRAC website.

Attaching files

Attachment

You can send i-mode Mail with images, video/ i-motion and melodies attached.

- Attachable files and the maximum number of files that can be attached to one mail are as shown below:

File type	Maximum number of files
Melody (Melodies in MFi format cannot be attached)	10*4
Image of up to 10,000 bytes*1 (only images in JPEG and GIF formats can be attached; Created animation and Flash movie cannot be attached)	
Image exceeding 10,000 bytes and up to 500 KB*1 (only images in JPEG format can be attached)	1
Video/i-motion of up to 500 KB*2 (files with replay restriction set cannot be attached*3)	

*1 Depending on the receiver’s device (terminal, PC, etc.), images will be received as attachment to mail or mail containing a URL.

*2 Depending on the receiver’s model, video may be degraded or displayed as continuous still images. Video with the image size other than 176 x 144 (QCIF) or 128 x 96 (Sub-QCIF) cannot be attached regardless of the file size.

*3 Some files without replay restriction may not be attached.

*4 Up to 10 images and melodies in total can be attached on condition that the total size including the message text is 10,000 bytes or smaller. The number of files that can be attached, however, may be reduced depending on the size of the attachment.

- The maximum number of characters in a message differs by the size of attachment.
- When the remaining data amount that can be entered in the message text (after melodies and images are attached) is less than 200 one-byte or 100 two-byte characters (400 one-byte or 200 two-byte characters for Deco-mail), the video/ i-motion and images exceeding 10,000 bytes cannot be attached.

- Files prohibited from being attached to mail or output from FOMA terminal (except images with the file restriction set to ***File restricted*** on your terminal) and files with the UIM operation restriction set cannot be attached.
- Only one JPEG image can be attached and sent to a mova terminal. In that case, it is received as mail containing a URL (i-shot Mail).
- Recorded video of up to 500 Kbytes (excluding the message) can be attached to i-motion Mail.
- The data recorded with Sound Recorder is saved as i-motion and can be attached to mail.
- When sending a melody to the terminal to other than FOMA D701i, D701iWM, D702i, D901i, D901iS or D902i, the melody may not play correctly at the receiver side.

1 Select [📎] field on the mail composition screen

2 Select the attachment type ▶ Select a file

■ **Attaching an image:**

① **Select *Image***

② **Select *Data Box* ▶ Select a folder**

- To shoot and attach a still image: Select ***Use still camera*** ▶ Shoot ▶ ● ▶ Go to Step 3
  - The size of image to shoot is automatically set to 240 x 320 (standby).
- Highlight an image and press [📖] to display the image. Press ● to attach it or [クリア] to return to the list.
- Images that cannot be attached are not displayed.

③ **Select an image**

File name of the selected image is displayed in [📎] field of the mail composition screen.

- For JPEG image with the image size exceeding 240 x 320 or 320 x 240 (QVGA), a confirmation screen appears asking whether to reduce it to the standby size (QVGA). When the file size of the reduced image exceeds 10,000 bytes, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to save the image to Data Box. When you do not save it to Data Box or a message saying that indicating failed appears, the reduced image is not saved. Therefore, an if you save the attachment mail in ***Unsent messages*** and edit it, the image attachment is canceled. Also, the attachment to auto-send mail will not be sent.
- For JPEG image with the image size exceeding 500 Kbytes, it is automatically reduced to a size that can be attached to mail, and a confirmation screen appears asking whether to save the image to Data Box. This operation may take some time.

■ **Attaching video/i-motion (i-motion Mail):**

① **Select *i-motion***

② **Select *Data Box* ▶ Select a folder**

- To record and attach video: Select ***Use movie camera*** ▶ Record ▶ ● ▶ Go to Step 3
  - The size of video to record is automatically set to 176 x 144 (QCIF).
- Highlight video/i-motion and press [📖] to play the video/i-motion.
- Video/i-motion that cannot be attached are not displayed.

③ **Select a video/i-motion file**

File name of the selected video/i-motion is displayed in [📎] field of the mail composition screen.

■ **Attaching a melody:**

① **Select *Melody***

② **Select a folder**

- Highlight a melody and press [📖] to play the melody. Press ● to attach it or [クリア] to return to the list.
- Melodies that cannot be attached are not displayed.

③ **Select a melody**

File name of the selected melody is displayed in [📎] field of the mail composition screen and [♪] appears at the lower part of the screen.

■ **Recording and attaching sound (i-motion Mail): Select *Record sound* ▶ Record (Sound Recorder) ▶ ●**

File name of the recorded sound is displayed in [📎] field of the mail composition screen.

3 Press [📖]

- You can display or play the attached file by selecting [📎] field.

INFORMATION

- When you send mail with JPEG image with the image size exceeding 10,000 bytes attached to an i-mode terminal, the image is reduced in the i-shot Center to a size that can be sent to the i-mode terminal.
- When you send mail with GIF image, melody or sound attached to a mova terminal, the attached file is deleted and mail with no attachment is sent.

● Images exceeding 10,000 bytes can be reduced to 240 x 320 or 320 x 240 (QVGA). ☛P248
QVGA size is suitable for sending an image to the i-mode terminal.

Changing/removing attachments

Example Removing an attachment

1 Display the mail composition screen

2 Highlight field ▶

■ **Changing the attachment: Highlight field ▶ ▶ Attach a file ☛P196**

3 Select *Yes*

Using mail templates

You can register the contents of i-mode Mail in mail template beforehand for entering the same sentence at the beginning of messages or sending similar messages many times. You can easily compose i-mode Mail by using mail templates; adding and editing the contents. Deco-mail template is a template for Deco-mail that has the layout, decoration, etc. predefined and allows you to easily compose and send Deco-mail. Deco-mail template is read in the same way as a mail template.

- Mail templates set by default ☛P327
- You can register the created templates.
- You cannot use templates for SMS.

Using templates while composing mail

Read Template

You can read templates while composing new i-mode Mail.

- The templates cannot be read while Keypad Dial Lock is set.

1 MENU 6 1 on the mail composition screen ▶ Select a template

: Image of up to 10,000 bytes attached
: Melody attached
: Image and melody of up to 10,000 bytes attached

- When you read a template on the mail composition screen with any entered item, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to overwrite the mail under entering. When ***Read body only*** is selected, only the message text is overwritten with the template. When ***Read all*** is selected, the address, subject, attachment, and message text are all overwritten. Press clr/ひらがな to stop reading.
- Multiple templates cannot be read for one mail.

2 Edit the mail ▶

Menu 18

Displaying templates and composing mail

Display the list of registered templates and check the contents to set them on the mail composition screen.

- Templates cannot be read while Keypad Dial Lock is set. However, the template of which the address is registered in the phonebook is entered in the address field can be read.

1 8 ▶ Select a template

- Press ● to display the previous or next template.

2

The contents of the template are set on the mail composition screen.

3 Edit the mail ▶

Saving templates

Save Template

Composed mail or received/sent mail can be saved as template.

- The maximum number of templates that can be saved ☛P36
- You can edit a preinstalled template and save it as new template.
- Video/i-motion and images exceeding 10,000 bytes cannot be saved in templates.
- If none of address, subject, attachment or text is entered, the template cannot be saved.

1 MENU 6 2 on the mail composition screen ▶ Select *Yes*

2 Press

- To overwrite a saved template: ▶ Select a template ▶ Select *Yes*
  - The preinstalled templates cannot be overwritten.
- The subject of the mail is entered as display name (the date and time if no subject is set). Up to 20 one- or two-byte characters can be entered.

・The date and time is entered as file name. Up to 36 characters including one-byte alphanumerics, “ . ”, “ - ” and “ _ ”. However, “ . ” cannot be used for the first character of file name.

INFORMATION

- To check or change the detail information of saved templates, press [MENU] in the template list and select ***Detail info*** → ***View*** or ***Edit***. The detail information of preinstalled templates cannot be changed.
- If you try to save a template containing an image that cannot be sent, the image may be deleted.
- When the memory is not enough or the maximum number of saved items is exceeded, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to delete saved templates. Follow the instructions on the screen and delete them.

Downloading templates

Mail templates can be downloaded from sites. The downloaded mail templates can be read and edited on the mail composition screen.

・The maximum number of templates that can be saved ☛P36

1 Select a mail template during site display

・Press [▭] to stop downloading.

2 Select *Save*

・To cancel saving: Select ***Back*** ▶ Select ***No***
・To check the template: Select ***Display***

3 Press [▭]

The downloaded mail template is saved in ***Read templates***.

・To overwrite a saved template: [✉] ▶ Select a template ▶ Select ***Yes***
  ・The preinstalled templates cannot be overwritten.
・The display name can contain up to 20 one-byte or two-byte characters.
・The file name can contain up to 36 characters including one-byte alphanumerics, “ . ”, “ - ” and “ _ ”. However, “ . ” cannot be used for the first character of file name.

INFORMATION

- When the memory is not enough or the maximum number of saved items is exceeded, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to delete saved templates. Follow the instructions on the screen and delete them.
- When a mail template downloaded from a site has a file attachment, it cannot be saved until the attachment is deleted.
- When a mail template downloaded from a site has the image that cannot be attached to mail or output from FOMA terminal or the image that cannot be used on FOMA terminal, it cannot be saved until the image is deleted.

Deleting templates

・Preinstalled templates cannot be deleted.

Example Deleting a template

1 [✉] [8]

2 Highlight a template ▶ [MENU] [2] [1]

■ **Deleting selected templates:** [MENU] [2] [2] ▶ **Select templates** ▶ [▭]

■ **Deleting all templates:** [MENU] [2] [3] ▶ **Enter the terminal security code**

3 Select *Yes*

Saving i-mode Mail for sending later

Save Mail

Saving unsent i-mode Mail

・The maximum number of unsent mail that can be saved ☛P36

1 [MENU] [3] on the mail composition screen

i-mode Mail is saved in ***Unsent messages*** folder of ***Unsent messages***.

・If none of address, subject, attachment or text is entered, the mail cannot be saved.

■ **Sending a mail composed outside the service area automatically:** [MENU] [2]

The mail is saved as auto-send mail in ***Unsent messages*** folder of ***Unsent messages***.

・When the number of saved auto-send mails reaches 5, the mail is saved as normal mail.
・Auto-send mail is sent automatically once you enter the service area. When transmission fails, the mail is saved as auto-send failure mail.
・To cancel the auto-send setting: Highlight an auto-send mail in the unsent mail list ▶ [▭] ▶ Select ***Yes***

INFORMATION

- When the auto-send mail is saved, appears at the top of the screen.
- Auto-send mail is sent about 1 to 2 minutes after entering into the service area. flashes at the top of the screen while auto-send mail is being sent. When transmission fails, flashes.
- In the unsent mail list, select an auto-send mail to cancel the auto-send setting.
- In the unsent mail list, highlight an auto-send failure mail and press and select *Yes* to cancel the auto-send setting. Also, select an auto-send failure mail to display the reason for the failure and press to cancel the auto-send setting.
  - When a message indicating that sending to the broadcast addresses has failed appears, you can display the broadcast addresses by pressing . Press to cancel the auto-send setting.
- disappears when there is no auto-send failure mail in Unsent messages by canceling auto-send setting of auto-send failure mails, deleting them or replacing the UIM by another UIM.

Menu 14 / Menu 15

Editing and sending sent/saved i-mode Mail

Example Editing an unsent mail

1 4 ▶ **Select a folder**

- is indicated for SMS.
- To edit and send a sent mail: 5 ▶ Select a folder

2 **Select a mail**

- To edit the sent mail again: Highlight a mail ▶

3 **Edit the mail** ▶

INFORMATION

- You can also edit mail by pressing on the sent mail view screen.

Composing mail quickly

Quick Mail

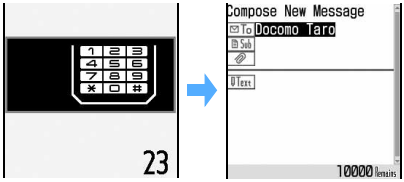
You can compose i-mode Mail and SMS easily for the parties saved to the phonebook No.0 to 99 in the FOMA terminal phonebook.

- The first mail address registered in the phonebook is set as the address of i-mode Mail and the first phone number as the address of SMS.

Example Sending i-mode Mail to the address of phonebook No. 23

1 **Enter the phonebook No. (2 3 in this case) ▶**

The first mail address registered in the phonebook is set as the address.



- Enter the phonebook No. without prefix 0.
- Composing and sending i-mode Mail ☛P190

■ **Composing SMS: Enter the phonebook No. ▶ (for over a second)**

- The SMS composition screen is displayed. The first phone number registered in the phonebook is set as the address.
- Composing and sending SMS ☛P223

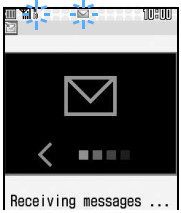
Receiving i-mode Mail

Mail Auto Receive

When there is incoming i-mode Mail, it is automatically received and you are informed by the screen display, ring tone, vibrator and/or keys. The received i-mode Mail is saved in Inbox.

- The maximum number of received mail that can be saved ☛P36

1 An i-mode Mail is received



Receiving screen

Flashes

and flash and ***Receiving messages...*** is displayed.

When reception is completed, the mail ring tone sounds, the keys light/flash, and the reception result screen is displayed.

Reception completed

Reception result screen

Flashes

: Unread i-mode Mail exists.

: Unread i-mode Mail and SMS exist.

Reception result scrolls.

Number of received i-mode Mail

When reception fails, "×" is indicated behind ***Mail***. To receive unreceived mail, perform Check i-mode Message.

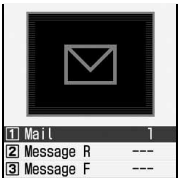
- Press ● while receiving a mail to stop reception, but depending on the receiving condition, the mail may be received.
- If you do not press any key for about 15 seconds after the reception result screen is displayed or until the ring tone stops sounding, the display automatically returns to the screen displayed prior to reception. To return to the previous screen immediately, press クリア.

INFORMATION

- As for the attachments that are not compatible with i-mode Mail and that are larger than the receivable data size (attachable data size), they are deleted at the i-mode Center. If the attachments are deleted, ［添付ファイル削除］(Attachment deleted) is inserted in the message. Attachable data size ☛P196
- If the data size of received mail (the number of characters, attachment file size) exceeds the number of characters (data size) set with ***Limit Mail Size*** in ***Options*** of iMenu, the attachments are deleted at the i-mode Center and cannot be received.
- When there is not enough available storage space or the maximum number of saved items is exceeded, the oldest received mail except unread one is overwritten. Be sure to protect received mail you want to keep.
- If the mail cannot be overwritten because the storage space is filled with unread mails and protected mails, reception of i-mode Mail is stopped and or is indicated on the screen (☛P27). To receive new messages, display unread mail, change unread mail to read one, delete the contents of unnecessary mail or cancel mail protection.
- i-mode Mail may not be received automatically soon after sending it. Perform Check i-mode Message.
- Extremely large i-mode Mail may not be accepted by the i-mode Center and be returned to the sender with an error message.
- The receiving screen and reception result screen are not displayed depending on the setting for Display Priority. ☛P220
- When new i-mode Mail is delivered, the i-mode Mail and chat mail stored in the i-mode Center are also received.
- When i-mode Mail is received by FOMA terminal, it is deleted from the i-mode Center.
- FOMA terminal shows which of TO, CC and BCC is specified for you when you receive a mail from a party who can specify TO, CC and BCC. ☛P209
- When i-mode Mail is received from a party with the incoming mail settings made in the FOMA terminal phonebook, the mail ring tone, incoming vibrator and keys operate according to the settings of the FOMA terminal phonebook. For details on checking with the phonebook, see "Name displays". ☛P86
  - When more than one i-mode Mail are received at the same time, they are activated according to the settings made for the party (sender) of the i-mode Mail received last.
- Incoming i-mode Mail is stored in the i-mode Center in the following cases:
  - When the power is off
  - During a videophone call
  - In Self Mode
  - When reception fails
  - While being out of service area
  - While receiving SMS
  - During infrared communication
  - When Receive Option Setting is ***ON***
  - While connecting to the FirstPass center
  - When the storage space is filled with unread mail and protected mail
- If there is unreceived i-mode Mail in the i-mode Center, or (☛P27) is indicated. However, the icon may not be indicated even when there is i-mode Mail in the i-mode Center. When the maximum number of mail that can be stored in the i-mode Center (☛P188) is reached, the icon changes to or .

Displaying newly-received i-mode Mail

1 [1] on the reception result screen



- The received i-mode Mail is saved in ***Inbox*** folder of ***Inbox***. However, when the received mail matches the criteria specified in Sort Criteria, it is saved in the specified folder.

2 Select a folder ▶ Select a mail

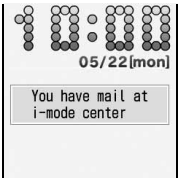
- When a melody is attached, it plays automatically. Auto play can be turned off. ☛P218
- Viewing the received mail ☛P207
- Select a Message i-αppli folder to start the corresponding i-αppli.

Selecting i-mode Mail to receive

Receive Option

You can select and receive i-mode Mail stored in the i-mode Center without receiving automatically.

When mail arrives



When Receive Option Setting is set to ***ON***, incoming i-mode Mail is stored in the i-mode Center and the message shown on the left appears.

- Even if i-mode Mail is stored in the i-mode Center, the mail ring tone or incoming vibrator does not operate.
- Press any key other than ◢▭ to clear the message.

INFORMATION

- During All Lock or PIM Lock, the notification message does not appear for mail coming to the i-mode Center.
- Even if Receive Option Setting is set to ***ON***, all i-mode Mail in the i-mode Center is received when Check i-mode Message is performed. If you do not want to receive mail, unselect the mail in Message Retrieval Setting.
- SMS and Message R/F are received automatically even if Receive Option Setting is set to ***ON***.

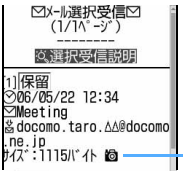
Menu 163

Selecting mail to receive

You can check the subjects of i-mode Mail stored in the i-mode Center and select only necessary mail to receive. You can also delete unnecessary i-mode Mail without receiving it.

- To select mails to receive, set Receive Option Setting to ***ON*** in advance.

1 ✉ 6 3



You are connected to the i-mode Center and the list of i-mode Mail stored appears.

: Image attached
: Melody attached
: i-motion attached

2 Select *保留* (Hold) for each mail ▶ Select *受信* (Receive), *削除* (Delete) or *保留*

- When *保留* is selected, the mail is stored in the i-mode Center. It can be received by using Check i-mode Message, etc.
- To delete all mail stored in the i-mode Center, select *削除* for *ｉモードセンターから全てのメールを* (All mail from the i-mode Center).
- When the mail list has more than one page, select *前ページ* (Previous page) and *次ページ* (Next page) at the end of the list to display the previous and next pages.

3 Select *受信／削除* (Receive/Delete) ▶ Select *決定* (OK)

Checking for i-mode Mail

Check i-mode Message

You can check whether i-mode Mail has been delivered to the i-mode Center while FOMA terminal was out of the service area or the power was turned off.
Also checks for Message R/F at the same time if it is set so in Message Retrieval Setting.

- Depending on signal condition, you may not be able to perform Check i-mode Message. Operate the terminal in locations with good radio wave condition.

1 ✉✉

Check i-mode Message is executed. If i-mode Mails stored in the i-mode Center, it is received.

- The operation on the reception result screen is the same as for auto receive. However, the screen does not return to the previous screen even if about 15 seconds has elapsed.

Replying to received i-mode Mail

Reply to Mail

- You may not be able to reply to some received mails.
- You cannot reply to SMS for which ***User unset***, ***Payphone*** or ***Not support*** is set as sender.
- Mail Reply Format allows you to set whether to quote the message in a reply mail and to select the character to be inserted at the beginning of the quoted message.

1 ✉ 1 ▶ Select a folder

2 Highlight a mail ▶ 🕮

The quick reply message selection screen appears.

- When Quick Reply Setting is set to ***OFF***, when a quick reply message is not registered or when you are replying to SMS, the quick reply message selection screen does not appear. Go to Step 4.

■ **Replying to all the addresses of received mails:** MENU 1 2

- You can reply to the sender and all the receivers except you.

3 Select a quick reply message

The sender's mail address or phone number of the received mail is entered in To field, "RE:" followed by the subject of the received mail in Sub field (for i-mode Mail only), and the quick reply message and quote character ">" followed by the received message text in Text field.

- To cancel inserting a quick reply message, select ***Compose Message***. The message text entry screen appears.

4 Edit the mail ▶ 🕮

- When you display the received mail list after replying, the icon for the received mail changes to ↩ or ↩🔒.

INFORMATION

- On the received mail view screen, press 🕮.
- The attachments to received mail are not attached to reply mail.
- The data attached in the message text of received mail (links to start i-αppli and melodies (MFi format)), is neither attached nor quoted as characters in reply mail.
- When received Deco-mail is quoted, the text is displayed with the decoration and inserted images quoted. However, if file restriction is set to the images, they are not quoted in reply mail.
- When you reply to the mail that was sent to multiple addresses by pressing 🕮, the mail addresses displayed in To field differ depending on the screen. When you reply from the received mail list, the mail address of the sender is displayed. When you reply from the received mail view screen, the mail addresses of the sender and all the receivers except you are displayed.

Forwarding received i-mode Mail

Forward Mail

- You can forward received SMS in the same way. i-mode Mail is forwarded as i-mode Mail and SMS is forwarded as SMS.

1 1 ▶ **Select a folder**

2 **Highlight a mail** ▶

"FW:" followed by the subject of the received mail is entered in Sub field (for i-mode Mail only) and the received message text in Text field.

- When forwarding received mail with an attachment, the attachment is also set.

3 **Edit the mail** ▶

- When you display the received mail list after forwarding, the icon for the received mail changes to ↩ or 🔒.

INFORMATION

- On the received mail view screen, press MENU and select ***Reply/Forward*** → ***Forward***.
- Regarding the attachments to received mail (image and melody), files that are prohibited from being attached to mail or output from FOMA terminal are not attached to forwarding mail.
- Even if files are not prohibited from being attached to mail or output from FOMA terminal, some melody files may not be attached depending on the type.
- The data attached in the message text of received mail (links to start i-αppli or melodies (MFi format) displayed in the message) is not attached to forwarding mail and it is not quoted as characters, either.
- When forwarding the mail with an image exceeding 10,000 bytes before download attached, the image will not be attached.
- When received Deco-mail is forwarded, the text is displayed with the decoration and inserted images quoted. When the maximum data size that can be forwarded is exceeded, a message indicating the mail cannot be sent is displayed when 📖 is pressed.

Displaying and saving attached images

Display/Save Image

Saved images can be viewed from ***Image*** (My Picture) of Data Box or set for the standby display.

- The maximum number of images that can be saved ☛P36

1 1 ▶ **Select a folder** ▶ **Select i-mode Mail with an image attached**

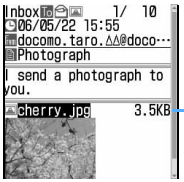


Image icon, file name and file size

: Can be attached to mail and output from FOMA terminal

: Cannot be attached to mail and output from FOMA terminal

: Image exceeding 10,000 bytes before download

: Image exceeding 10,000 bytes downloaded

: Attachment of image of which download failed exists

: Data error

■ **Switching between displaying and not displaying an image: Select the file name**

- You can switch displaying and not displaying on the view screen for sent mail or mail template in the same way as above.

■ **Checking the title: Highlight the file name** ▶ MENU 6 2

■ **Displaying the URL for image exceeding 10,000 bytes: Highlight the file name** ▶ MENU 6 3

- To display the URL before download: Highlight *保存期限* (Storage period) in the message ▶ MENU 6 2

2 **Highlight the file name** ▶ MENU 6 3

- A JPEG image exceeding 10,000 bytes is automatically downloaded and saved in ***i-mode*** folder of ***Image*** (My Picture). You cannot save the image again by pressing MENU 6 3. When the image cannot be downloaded because reception is interrupted or there is not enough storage space available for images, you can download it by selecting *保存期限* in the message.

■ **Saving an image displayed in Deco-mail:** MENU 4 4 ▶ **Select an image**

3 **Select each item to set**

- If the image is prohibited from being attached to mail or output from FOMA terminal (***File restricted*** is displayed), its information other than the display name cannot be changed.

• For the setting procedure, follow Step 3 in “Downloading images from sites and messages”. ☛P174

4 ▶ Select the folder to save the image to

• The saved images can be set for the standby display, etc. ☛P247

INFORMATION

- To check the image title on the view screen for sent mail or mail template, highlight the file name of the image, press MENU and select ***Attachment*** → ***Check title***.
- You can save images attached to sent mail in the same way as above.
- The file name of image inserted in Deco-mail is not displayed on the mail view screen.
- When an image is wider than the display, the reduced image is displayed.
- Some images may not be displayed correctly.
- The file name of the downloaded image can contain up to 36 one-byte characters, including alphanumerics, “ . ”, “ - ” and “ _ ”. However, “ . ” cannot be used for the first character of file name.
- Images with horizontal and vertical (or vertical and horizontal) sizes exceeding 288 x 352 cannot be used as frame.
- Images with horizontal and vertical (or vertical and horizontal) sizes more than 240 x 320 cannot be used as stamp.
- Images with horizontal and vertical (or vertical and horizontal) sizes exceeding 640 x 480 in GIF format or 1728 x 2304 in JPEG format cannot be saved. Also, some JPEG images may not be saved.
- When the memory is not enough or the maximum number of saved items is exceeded, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to delete saved images. Follow the instructions on the screen and delete them. Before deletion, an image can be displayed by pressing in the image list and detail information on the image can be displayed by pressing MENU.
- Images of up to 100 Kbytes in JPEG or GIF format can be downloaded.
- When received mail with an image attached is displayed, the attached image is automatically displayed. Note that, the image inserted in the message text of received Deco-mail is automatically displayed, but the image attached to Deco-mail is not displayed automatically. Select the file name of image to display the image.

Playing and saving i-motion from i-motion Mail

When video/i-motion is attached to mail and sent, it is stored in the i-motion Mail Center and mail containing a URL to view the i-motion is received. Select this URL to download and play or save the i-motion. The saved i-motion can be played from ***i-motion*** of Data Box or set for the standby display.

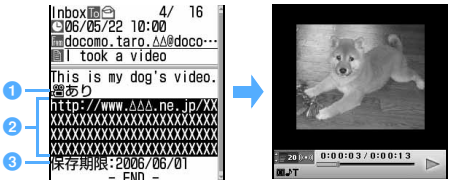
• The maximum number of i-motion files that can be saved ☛P36
• i-motion of up to 500 Kbytes can be downloaded.
• The volume for playing i-motion follows Settings (i-motion).

1 1 ▶ Select a folder ▶ Select i-mode Mail containing a URL for i-motion

2 Select the URL ▶ Select *Yes*

FOMA terminal is connected to the i-motion Mail Center and i-motion download/playback starts.

• Playback screen operating procedure ☛P253



1 Indicates that i-motion is attached.
2 URL for i-motion
3 Storage period of i-motion in the i-motion Mail Center

3 Select *Save* when the play ends

• Select ***Play*** to play the i-motion.
• Select ***File property*** to display information on the i-motion.

4

The downloaded i-motion is saved in ***i-mode*** folder of ***i-motion***.

• Display name can contain up to 36 one-byte or two-byte characters.

■ **Setting for the standby display:**
MENU 1 ▶ Select *Yes*

• Video/i-motion without image, i-motion with replay restrictions set and i-motion with the image size exceeding 320 x 240 cannot be set for the standby display.

- If zooming is available for video/i-motion, you can select the same size or large size.
- If the i-αppli standby display has already been set, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to cancel it. If ***Yes*** is selected, the i-αppli standby display is canceled and the selected video/i-motion is set for the standby display.
- Playing the video/i-motion set as the standby display ☛P111

5 Select *Back*

INFORMATION

- You can play video/i-motion attached to sent mail by selecting the file name in the same way. However, you cannot play the video/i-motion if it has been deleted from FOMA terminal.
- When the memory is not enough or the maximum number of saved items is exceeded, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to delete saved video/i-motion. Follow the instructions on the screen and delete them. Before deletion, you can play video/i-motion by pressing [📖] in the video/i-motion list and view detail information by pressing [MENU].
- Playing i-motion attached to mail on a PC requires special software. ☛P344
- When i-motion Mail is sent to an i-mode terminal, i-motion can be downloaded up to 50 times for each URL for viewing i-motion saved at the i-motion Mail Center. When 50 times have been exceeded, i-motion download will be disabled.

Playing and saving attached melodies from i-mode Mail

Play/Save Melody

Saved melodies can be played from ***Melody*** of Data Box or used as ring tone.

- If the sender uses a terminal other than FOMA D701i, D701iWM, D702i, D901i, D901iS or D902i, the received melodies may not play correctly.
- The maximum number of melodies that can be saved ☛P36

1 [✉] [1] ▶ Select a folder ▶ Select i-mode Mail with a melody attached

- There are 2 types of display formats for attached melodies depending on the file type.

Displayed under message (SMF format)

Melody icon, file name and file size

Displayed in message (MFi format)

Melody icon, title and file size

♪ : Can be attached to mail and output from FOMA terminal

♪© : Cannot be attached to mail and output from FOMA terminal

♪× ♪©× : Data error

■ **Playing the melody: Select the melody**

The melody plays at the ring volume for calls set in Ring Volume Setting.

- To stop playing: [ﾒﾓ/ｸﾘｱ]

■ **Checking the title:**

- For melodies displayed under the message (SMF format): Highlight the melody ▶ [MENU] [6] [5]
- For melodies displayed in the message (MFi format): Highlight the melody ▶ [MENU] [6] [4]

■ **Displaying the data as text (Data display):**

- This function is not available with melodies displayed under the message (SMF format).

① **Highlight the melody ▶ [MENU] [6] [5]**

- To return to the title display: Highlight the first row of the melody data ▶ [MENU] [6] [5]

2 Highlight the melody ▶ [MENU] [6] [2]

3 Press [📖]

The melody is saved in ***i-mode*** folder of ***Melody***.

- The set display name is displayed. To set a display name, enter the display name (up to 50 one-byte or 25 two-byte characters) on the save melody screen.

INFORMATION

- To play and save the melody during data display, highlight the first row of the displayed data, press [MENU] and select ***Attachment*** → ***Play*** or ***Save***.
- On the sent mail view screen, highlight a melody, press [MENU] and select ***Attachment*** → ***Save***.
- You can play melodies attached to sent mail and mail template in the same way.
- When the memory is not enough or the maximum number of saved items is exceeded, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to delete saved melodies. Follow the instructions on the screen and delete them. Before deletion, you can play a melody by pressing [C] in the melody list and view detail information about the melody by pressing [MENU].
- When an attached melody in MFi format has no title, the mail reception date and time are displayed as the title.

Deleting attachments

Delete Attachment

You can delete images and melodies attached to received mail.

- Melodies (MFi format) displayed in the message or links to start i-αppli cannot be deleted.
- Images exceeding 10,000 bytes can be deleted from ***i-mode*** folder of ***Image*** (My Picture).

Example Deleting an attached image

1 [✉] [1] ▶ **Select a folder** ▶ **Select i-mode Mail with an image attached**

2 **Highlight the file name** ▶ [MENU] [6] [4]

- To delete all attachments: [MENU] [6] [5]

3 **Select *Yes***

- The file name of the deleted attachment is displayed in a light color and cannot be selected.

INFORMATION

- On the sent mail view screen, highlight an image or melody, press [MENU] and select ***Attachment*** → ***Delete*** or ***Delete all***.
- When you delete an image exceeding 10,000 bytes attached to received mail, the image cannot be selected in the mail displayed and the storage period is displayed in a light color.

Displaying mail in Inbox/Outbox

Inbox/Outbox

You can check received/sent/unsent i-mode Mail and SMS. The received i-mode Mail and SMS are saved to folders in ***Inbox*** and the sent i-mode Mail and SMS are to folders in ***Outbox***. Folders in ***Unsent messages*** contain the i-mode Mail and SMS that were saved without sending and that failed to be sent and the i-mode Mail that is set to be sent automatically upon entering the service area.

- The maximum number of mail that can be saved ☛P36

Example Displaying received mail in ***Inbox***

1 [✉] [1]

- To display sent mail in ***Outbox***: [✉] [5]
- To display unsent mail in ***Unsent messages*** : [✉] [4]

2 **Select a folder**

The received mail list is displayed.

- Select a Message i-αppli folder to start the corresponding i-αppli.
- To display mail in a Message i-αppli folder without starting i-αppli: Highlight the folder ▶ [MENU] [1]

3 **Select a mail**

- You can make calls, send i-mode Mail, or display sites using phone numbers, mail addresses, or URLs. You can also register the phone numbers, mail addresses, or URLs in the phonebook and the URLs in the bookmark. In addition, you can copy text. ☛P213
- Selecting mail from the unsent mail list displays the mail composition screen.

Reading the folder list screen

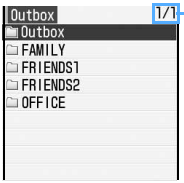
■ **Received mail list screen**

Storage space status bar and page No./total number

(in gray) : No mail
(in yellow) : No unread mail
:No unread mail (Privacy on)
:No unread mail (used for Message i-αppli)

:Unread mail exists
:Unread mail exists (Privacy on)
:Unread mail exists (used for Message i-αppli)

■ **Sent/unsent mail folder list screen**

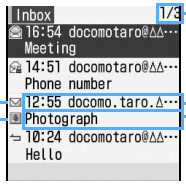


Page No./total number

(in gray) : No mail
(in yellow) : Mail exists
: Privacy on
: Message i-αppli

Reading the mail list screen

■ **Received mail list screen**



Page No./total number
Reception date/time and sender
Subject (for SMS, the beginning of message)

1 : Unread
: Unread (unable to reply)
: Read
: Read (unable to reply)
: Read (replied)
: Read (forwarded)
: Protected
: Protected (unable to reply)
: Protected (replied)
: Protected (forwarded)

- For replied/forwarded mail, icon indication priority is given to the last operation made.

2 : Image of up to 10,000 bytes attached
: Image exceeding 10,000 bytes attached
: Melody attached
: Image and melody of up to 10,000 bytes attached
: SMS
: i-αppli To
: Mail used for Message i-αppli

- When ***Display 1 row*** is set in Mail List Setting, is indicated at the beginning of the subject of mail with attachment.
- When an image exceeding 10,000 bytes is attached, the icons for attached images of up to 10,000 bytes and melodies attached are not displayed.
- When the sender is registered in the phonebook, the name is displayed.
- For SMS sent from overseas, "+" is appended at the beginning of the sender address.
- In the reception date/time field, the time is displayed on the current day and the date is displayed on the other days.
- The subject may not be displayed depending on the received i-mode Mail.
- For SMS which contains an error, is indicated and the reception date/time becomes "--/--" (only on the reception day). The sender is not displayed.

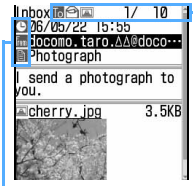
■ **Sent/unsent mail list screen**

Page No./total number
Sent or saved date/time and receiver
Subject (for SMS, the beginning of message)
No icon: Unprotected
: Protected
: Auto-send mail
: Protected (auto-send)
: Auto-send failure
: Protected (auto-send failure)
: Image of up to 10,000 bytes attached
: Image exceeding 10,000 bytes attached
: Melody attached
: i-motion
: Image and melody of up to 10,000 bytes
: SMS
: Mail used for Message i-αppli

- When ***Display 1 row*** is set in Mail List Setting, is indicated at the beginning of the subject of mail with attachment in the sent mail list.
- When i-motion or an image exceeding 10,000 bytes is attached, the icons for attached images of up to 10,000 bytes and attached melodies are not displayed.
- In the sent or saved date/time field, the time is displayed on the current day and the date is displayed on the other days.
- When the receiver is registered in the phonebook, the name is displayed.

Reading the mail view screen

■ Received mail view screen



Receiver icon*1, status icon, attachment icon, SMS icon, and mail number/count

*1 TO, CC or BCC is indicated (for i-mode Mail).

: Reception date and time

: Sender

: Receiver (TO)

: Receiver (CC) (for i-mode Mail only)

: Subject (***Received SMS***, ***Delivered report*** or ***Notify missed call*** for SMS)

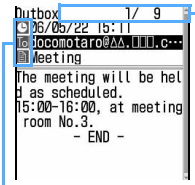
: Sender (unable to reply)

: Receiver (To) (unable to reply) (for i-mode Mail only)

: Receiver (CC) (unable to reply) (for i-mode Mail only)

- For SMS which contains an error, is indicated.

■ Sent mail view screen



Status icon, attachment icon, SMS icon, and mail number/total count

: Sent date and time

: Receiver (TO)

: Receiver (CC) (for i-mode Mail only)

: Receiver (BCC) (for i-mode Mail only)

: Subject

INFORMATION

- When decorated mails were received from PCs, the operations may not be the same as on PCs.
- When there are more than one data items attached in the message text (links to start i-αppli or melodies (MFi format) displayed in the message), the attached data becomes invalid. In this case, is indicated for the attached data.
- When viewing Deco-mail, URLs for downloading images or i-motion may not be visible depending on the background color of the mail.
- For i-mode Mail, the mail address of sender or receiver is checked with the mail address field in the phonebook data. For SMS, the phone number of sender or receiver is checked with the phone number field in the phonebook data. For details on checking with the phonebook, see “Name displays”. ☛P86
- The subjects and senders of SMS, delivered report, and missed call notice are displayed as shown below:

Item	SMS	Delivered report	Missed call notice
Subject	Received SMS	Delivered report	Notify missed call
Sender	Phone number	SMS Center	DoCoMo SMS

  - When the phone number is registered in the phonebook, the name is displayed in the sender field.
  - When the caller ID is not notified, the following characters are displayed in the sender field:
    User unset : Sent by setting not to notify the caller ID
    Payphone : Sent from a payphone
    Not support : Sent using a procedure that cannot notify the caller ID
- When there are attachments or links to start i-αppli, the icon, file name, etc. are displayed on the view screen.
  - Description of image icons ☛P204
  - Description of melody icons ☛P206
  - Links to start i-αppli ☛P237

Adding and deleting folders

Adding folders

- In ***Inbox***, you can add up to 40 folders other than ***Inbox*** folder and Message i-αppli folders.
- In ***Outbox*** or ***Unsent messages***, you can add up to 10 folders other than ***Outbox*** folder or ***Unsent messages*** folder and Message i-αppli folders respectively.
- Folder settings for ***Inbox***, ***Outbox*** and ***Unsent messages*** folders and Message i-αppli folders cannot be changed.

Example Adding a folder in ***Inbox***

1 1

- ***Outbox*** ☛P207
- ***Unsent messages*** ☛P207

2 MENU 1

■ **Changing folder settings: Highlight a folder ▶** MENU 3

3 Select each item to set

***Folder name*:**

Enter a folder name (up to 16 one-byte or 8 two-byte characters).

***Privacy*:**

When ***ON*** is set, the folder is not displayed when Privacy Mode is on (***Hide secret fldrs*** set for ***Mail***).

4 Press ▭

Deleting folders

- ***Inbox***, ***Outbox*** and ***Unsent messages*** folders registered by default cannot be deleted.
- The folders containing protected mail cannot be deleted. Cancel protection and then delete the folders.
- Message i-αppli folders cannot be deleted when the i-αppli corresponding to the folder exists.

Example Deleting a folder in ***Inbox***

1 ✉ 1

- ***Outbox*** ☛P207
- ***Unsent messages*** ☛P207

2 Highlight a folder ▶ MENU 2

3 Enter the terminal security code ▶ Select *Yes*

Checking the number of mail items

Msgs. in Folder

You can check the number of received, sent or unsent mail saved in each folder.

Example Checking the number of received mail saved

1 ✉ 1

- Sent mail ☛P207
- Unsent mail ☛P207

2 Highlight a folder ▶ MENU 5

INFORMATION

● On the mail list screen, press MENU and select ***Display*** → ***Check No. of items***.

Checking mail addresses

Display Address

You can view an entire mail address when the whole address is not displayed or the address is registered in the phonebook and only the name is displayed.

Example Checking the mail address of a received mail

1 ✉ 1 **▶ Select a folder ▶ Select a mail**

- Sent mail ☛P207
- Mail templates ☛P198

2 Select a sender or receiver

INFORMATION

● To check multiple mail addresses at one time, press MENU on the mail view screen and select ***Display*** → ***Display address***. In the received/sent/unsent mail list, highlight the mail to display mail address, press MENU and select ***Display*** → ***Display address***. All receiver's addresses are displayed for sent/unsent mail, and the addresses of sender and all receivers (except you) for received mail (***TO***: and ***CC***: are also displayed).

Moving received/sent mail to another folder

Move Mail

Saved mail can be moved to another folder.

Example Moving a received mail to another folder

1 ✉ 1 **▶ Select a folder**

- Sent mail ☛P207
- Unsent mail ☛P207

2 Highlight a received mail ▶

MENU 4 1 1

■ **Moving selected mails:** MENU 4 1 2 **▶ Select mails ▶** ▭

■ **Moving all the received mails in the folder:** MENU 4 1 3

3 ◉ **▶ Select the destination folder ▶ Select *Yes***

INFORMATION

● If a mail is received when multiple received mails are selected, ***Unable to display message.*** appears and the operation till then may be canceled.

● When i-mode Mail with the auto-send setting is moved to a Message i-αppli folder, the auto-send setting is canceled.

Searching mail Mail Search

Search received/sent mail by specifying sender/receiver or by received/sent date.

- Received mails are searched by specifying sender or received date.
- Sent mails are searched by specifying receiver or sent date.

Example Searching received mails by sender

1 [✉] [1]

- Sent mail ☛P207

2 [MENU] [9] [1] ▶ **Select the phonebook entry to use for search**

- To search by received date or sent date: [MENU] [9] [2] ▶ Select the date
- When you highlight a phonebook entry or a date, the first 2 mails that meet the search condition are displayed.
  - Press ● to display all mails in the list.
  - When you search sent mails by receiver, they mails are searched even if the party registered in the phonebook is set in the address after the second item (the first address is displayed on the screen under selection).
- To display the phonebook entry with Secret Attribute set, activate Secret Mode.

3 **Select a mail to display**

- The search result screen can be operated in the same way as the mail list.

INFORMATION

- On the received/sent mail list screen, press [MENU] and select ***Message search*** → ***With phonebook*** or ***With calendar***. Only the mails in the selected folder are searched.

Sorting received/sent mails Sort

You can temporarily change the order of received or sent mails on the list screen. Closing the list resets the sorting order to ***By date***.

- You can select from ***By date***, ***By sender*** (***By address*** for sent mail), and ***By title***.
- You cannot change the order of unsent mails and received/sent SMS in the UIM.

Default By date

Example Sorting the received mails on the list screen

1 [✉] [1] ▶ **Select a folder**

- Sent mail ☛P207

2 [MENU] [7] [4] ▶ [1] to [3]

■ **Sorting the sent mails list:** [MENU] [5] ▶ [1] to [3]

INFORMATION

- When ***By sender*** or ***By address*** is set, the mails are sorted by mail address not by name in the phonebook even if the mail address is registered in the phonebook.
- When ***By title*** is set, if the subject contains both one-byte and two-byte characters, the mails may not be properly sorted in the order of the Japanese syllabary.
- When ***By title*** is set, the mails are not be properly sorted in the order of the Japanese syllabary if any SMS is saved in the same folder and the beginning of the message is displayed on the list screen.

Changing the read/unread status of received mails

- You cannot change the read/unread status of protected received mails.

Example Changing a read mail to unread

1 [✉] [1] ▶ **Select a folder**

2 **Highlight a mail** ▶ [MENU] [5] [2]

■ **Changing an unread mail to read:**
Highlight a mail ▶ [MENU] [5] [1]

■ **Changing multiple read mails to unread:**
[MENU] [5] [4] ▶ **Select mails** ▶ [▣] ▶ **Select *Yes***

■ **Changing multiple unread mails to read:**
[MENU] [5] [3] ▶ **Select mails** ▶ [▣] ▶ **Select *Yes***

■ **Changing all mails in the folder to unread:**
[MENU] [5] [6] ▶ **Select *Yes***

■ **Changing all mails in the folder to read:**
[MENU] [5] [5] ▶ **Select *Yes***

Protecting received/sent mail Protect Mail

You can protect the received, sent and unsent mail to avoid accidental deletion or being overwritten when there is not enough storage space.

- The maximum number of mail that can be protected ☛P36
- Unread mail cannot be protected.

Example Protecting a received mail

1 1 ▶ **Select a folder**

- Sent mail ☛P207
- Unsent mail ☛P207

2 **Highlight a mail** ▶ MENU 3 1

The mail is protected and the icon changes to one of the following:

Received mail:

(read) (replied)
(unable to reply) (forwarded)

Sent/unsent mail:

- To cancel protection: Highlight a mail ▶ MENU 3 4

■ **Protecting selected mails:** MENU 3 2 ▶ **Select mails** ▶ 🕮

- Selecting all is not possible when the number of saved but unprotected mails exceeds the limit.

■ **Protecting all mails in folder:** MENU 3 3

■ **Canceling protection of selected mails:** MENU 3 5 ▶ **Select mails** ▶ 🕮

■ **Canceling protection of all mails:** MENU 3 6

INFORMATION

- On the mail view screen, press MENU and select ***Protect*** or ***Cancel protection***.
- If mail is received when multiple received mails are selected, ***Unable to display message.*** appears and the operation may be canceled.
- When ***Protect all*** is selected, mails are protected in the chronological order, most recent first, until the limit is reached.

Deleting received/sent mail Delete Mail

Unnecessary mail can be deleted from ***Inbox***, ***Outbox*** and ***Unsent messages***.

- The protected mail cannot be deleted. When you delete all mail at one time, protected mail remains undeleted even if it matches the specified criteria. Cancel protection first and then delete them.

Deleting received mail

○ : Available × : Not available

Deletion method	Screen for starting operation		
	Folder list	Mail list	Mail view
All messages	○	×	×
Read in folder	○	○*1	×
All in folder	○	○*1	×
7days past in fldr[*3]	○	○*1	×
14days past in fldr[*3]	○	○*1	×
30days past in fldr[*3]	○	○*1	×
One item/Selected item[*2]	×	○	○
Selected items	×	○	×
All search result	×	○*2	×

*1 Not available from the mail search results list
*2 Available only from the mail search results list
*3 Mail is deleted when the specified number of days has passed since it was received.

- When you delete all mails at one time, unread mails that match the specified criteria are also deleted.

Example Deleting a received mail

1 1

■ **Deleting all mails:** MENU 4 6 ▶ **Enter the terminal security code** ▶ **Go to Step 4**

2 **Select a folder**

3 **Highlight a received mail** ▶ MENU 2 1

■ **Deleting selected mails:** MENU 2 2 ▶ **Select mails** ▶ 🕮

■ **Deleting read mail in folder:** MENU 2 3

■ **Deleting all received mails in folder:** MENU 2 4 ▶ **Enter the terminal security code**

■ **Deleting mail when the specified number of days has passed since it was received:** MENU 2 ▶ 5 **to** 7

4 **Select *Yes***

INFORMATION

- On the mail view screen, press MENU and select ***Delete***.
- If mail is received when multiple received mails are selected, ***Unable to display message.*** appears and the operation may be canceled.

Deleting sent/unsent mail

○ : Available × : Not available

Deletion method	Screen for starting operation		
	Folder list	Mail list	Mail view (sent mail)
All messages	○	×	×
All in folder	○	×	×
*All items**1	×	○	×
*One item/Selected item**2	×	○	○
Selected items	×	○	×
All search result	×	○*2	×

*1 Delete all mails in the folder
*2 Available only from the sent mail search results list

Example Deleting a sent mail

1 [✉] [5]

- Unsent mail ☛P207

■ **Deleting all mails: [MENU] [4] [2] ▶ Enter the terminal security code ▶ Go to Step 4**

2 Select a folder

3 Highlight a mail ▶ [MENU] [2] [1]

■ **Deleting selected mails: [MENU] [2] [2] ▶ Select mails ▶ [□]**

■ **Deleting all sent mails in folder: [MENU] [2] [3] ▶ Enter the terminal security code**

4 Select *Yes*

INFORMATION

- In the folder list, press [MENU] and select ***Delete message***.
- On the mail view screen, press [MENU] and select ***Delete***.

Useful functions of mail

When a mail message contains phone numbers, mail addresses or URLs, select them to make voice/videophone calls (Phone To/AV Phone To), compose i-mode Mail (Mail To), or connect to sites (Web To). You can also copy characters in the message of the i-mode Mail or SMS being displayed and register phone numbers or mail addresses, etc. in the phonebook.

Using Phone To (AV Phone To)/Mail To/Web To

- The operation procedure is the same as when performing the Phone To (AV Phone To), Mail To, or Web To function from sites.
- When mail is received from a PC etc., the Phone To (AV Phone To), Mail To, or Web To function may not be available.

Copying text

You can copy characters in the i-mode Mail, SMS, or mail template being displayed. The copied text can be pasted in the entry fields on the mail composition screen, phonebook registration screen, etc.

- For SMS stored in the UIM, you can copy the message text, receiver and sender.
- For Deco-mail, only the text can be copied without decoration.
- The copied text is recorded until FOMA terminal is turned off. You can paste them in other locations any number of times.
- Only one item can be recorded. When you copy a new item, it overwrites the previously copied text.

Example Copying the text from the received mail view screen

1 Display the received mail view screen

- When copying a selected item, highlight the item to copy.

2 [MENU] [2]

- When a template is displayed, press [MENU] [3].

3 Select the copying method

Copy text:
Copies the specified range of the message text.

Copy title:
Copies the subject.

Copy selected item:
Copies the highlighted item.

- For ***Copy text***, specify the copy range. For the specifying method, follow Step 2 in "Copying the URL" ☛P175

4 Display the character entry screen ▶ Paste the copied text

INFORMATION

- When text in the Date To format is included in the message, paste it to Notepad and save to as schedule.

Making calls from received/sent mail

Phone Call

Calls can be made to the sender of received mail or the receiver of sent mail.

- The mail address (except "mobile phone number@docomo.ne.jp") and phone number must be registered in the phonebook.
- When mail addresses are registered in the phonebook entry with Secret Attribute set, calls can be made only in Secret Mode.

Example Making a call from received mail

1 Display the received mail list

2 Highlight a mail ▶ MENU 6

- On the received/sent mail view screen, highlight the party to call (sender/receiver) and press MENU 7.
- When there are multiple receivers, the mail address selection screen appears. Select the mail address to make a call to.

3 Set dialing conditions

4 MENU ▶ Select *Yes*

Registering phone numbers, addresses and URLs in the phonebook

You can register mail addresses, phone numbers and URLs in the i-mode Mail or SMS being displayed in the phonebook. You can register the data as a new entry or add data to a registered entry.

Example Registering data on the received mail view screen

1 Display the mail containing an item

2 Highlight the item ▶ MENU 4

3 1 to register a new entry or 2 to add to a registered entry

- For the subsequent steps, follow the procedure from Step 3 in "Registering phone numbers and mail addresses in the phonebook". ☛P176

INFORMATION

- On the view screen for sent mail or SMS in the UIM, press MENU and select ***Save***.
- Registration may not be made from Deco-mail.
- When multiple addresses are listed with no space in the message text, you may not be able to register them.

Registering URLs in the bookmark

You can register URLs in the message text of the i-mode Mail or SMS being displayed in the bookmark.

Example Registering a bookmark on the received mail view screen

1 Display the mail containing a URL

2 Highlight the URL ▶ MENU 4 3

3 Select a folder

INFORMATION

- Registration may not be made from Deco-mail.

Setting mail functions of FOMA terminal

Mail Setting

Menu 193

Sorting mails automatically into designated folders

Sort Criteria

Received/sent i-mode Mail and SMS can be sorted into the specified folders automatically according to the set criteria.

- Up to 30 criterion can be registered for received mail and sent mail respectively.

Setting sort criteria

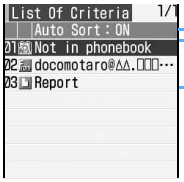
- To set or activate the sort criteria, set auto sort to ***ON*** for received mail and sent mail. It is set to ***ON*** by default. ☛P216
- The criteria is valid for the mails received/sent after setting the criteria. Previously received/sent mails are not sorted.
- You can sort normal mails to Message i-αppli folders.
- As for mail of Message i-αppli, if there is the corresponding Message i-αppli folder, it is saved in the folder regardless of the setting for sort criteria.

Example Sorting the received mails

1 9 3

2 1

• To sort sent mail: 2

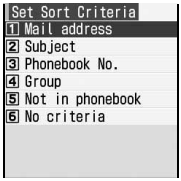


Auto sort On/Off

Registered sort criteria (listed in the order of priority)

: Receiver mail address
: Sender mail address
: Phonebook No.
: Not in the phonebook
: Subject
: Group
: No criteria

3 MENU 1 ▶ Specify the sort criteria



Sort criteria setting screen

■ **Specifying a mail address:**

Sorts mail by sender/receiver mail address. Specify an entire address including characters following the @ symbol (up to 50 one-byte characters). You cannot sort mail by specifying part of the mail address. If you specify a phone number, you can sort SMS as well.

① 1 2 ▶ **Enter the mail address** ▶ ✉

• To specify a mail address registered in the phonebook: 1 1 ▶ Select a phonebook entry ▶ Select a mail address

■ **Specifying a subject:**

Sorts mail having a subject that includes the specified characters (up to 30 one-byte or 15 two-byte characters). You cannot sort SMS by subject.

① 2 ▶ **Enter the subject** ▶ ✉

■ **Specifying a phonebook No.:**

Sorts mail that is to/from the mail address or phone number registered to the phonebook No. specified by the FOMA terminal phonebook i-mode Mail is sorted by checking the mail address in the phonebook. SMS is sorted by checking the phone number in the phonebook.

① 3 ▶ **Enter the phonebook No.** ▶ ✉

② **Select a phonebook entry**

■ **Specifying a group:**

Sorts mail that is to/from the mail address or phone number registered to the specified group.

① 4

② 1 **to search groups of the FOMA terminal phonebook or** 2 **to search groups of the UIM phonebook**

③ **Select a group**

■ **Specifying "Not in phonebook": 5**

Sorts mail that is to/from the mail address or phone number not registered in the phonebook. i-mode Mail is sorted by checking the mail address in the phonebook. SMS is sorted by checking the phone number in the phonebook.

■ **Setting no criteria: 6**

Sorts all mails without setting the criteria.

4 Select the folder to sort mail to

• When a Message i-αppli folder is selected, a message indicating that mail in the selected folder is used for i-αppli appears. To set as the folder to sort mail to, select ***Yes***.

5 Specify the order of priority

The new criteria is added above the selected row.

• To register the first criteria in the list: Select ***[Add last]***.
• To add the criteria to the end of the list: Select ***[Add last]***.
• The criterion are listed in the order of priority.
• When the registered criterion are changed, ***[Move to last]*** is displayed instead of ***[Add last]***.

INFORMATION

- If the sender uses an i-mode terminal with its phone number set as the mail address, only the phone number is received as the address. Therefore, no sorting occurs when “mobile phone number @docomo.ne.jp” is specified in the sort criteria.
- When the same mail address is registered in both of the FOMA terminal phonebook and the UIM phonebook, the mail addresses in the FOMA terminal phonebook are given priority for sorting. The sort priority set in this function may not apply.
- The criterion are checked in accordance with their priority. For example, when two criterion are set, mails are sorted as follows:
  ① Mail is checked to determine if it matches the criteria of the first priority; if so, it is saved in the specified folder. If not, the procedure goes to ②.
  ② Mail is checked to determine if it matches the criteria of the second priority; if so, it is saved in the specified folder. If not, it is saved in ***Inbox*** folder or ***Outbox*** folder.

Checking and changing sort criteria

1 9 3 ▶ 1 or 2

2 Select the sort criteria

- You can change or delete sort criteria while checking it.

■ **Changing the registered sort criteria:**
① **Highlight the sort criteria** ▶ MENU 2 ▶ **Specify the sort criteria**
- For the subsequent steps, follow the procedures from Step 3 in “Setting sort criteria”. ☛P215

② **Select *Yes***

■ **Changing the order of priority: Highlight the sort criteria** ▶ MENU 5 ▶ **Select the position**
- The criteria is moved to just above the selected row. To move to the end of the list, select ***[Move to last]***.

■ **Deleting the criteria: Highlight the sort criteria** ▶ MENU 3 ▶ **Select *Yes***
- To delete all: MENU 4 ▶ Enter the terminal security code ▶ Select ***Yes***

Setting whether to sort automatically

- Even if ***ON*** is set, no sorting occurs when the sort criteria is not set.

Default got mail criteria: ON
sent mail criteria: ON

Example Sorting the received mails

1 9 3

2 1 ▶ MENU 6
- To sort the sent mails: 2 ▶ MENU 6

3 1 or 2

Menu 194

Registering signature for mail Signature

You can register the signature to be inserted in the message of i-mode Mail and SMS. You can also set whether to automatically insert the signature when you compose mail.
- You can enter up to 100 one-byte or 50 two-byte characters for signature.

Default Auto insert: Yes Signature: not recorded

1 9 4

2 Select each item to set

Auto insert :
Sets whether to insert the signature automatically.
- To cancel auto insert, select ***No***.

Signature :
Enters the signature text.

3 Press ⌧

INFORMATION

- The signature cannot be inserted when composing new SMS if the font type is set to ***English*** in SMS Setting.
- The signature cannot be inserted when replying to or forwarding SMS for which the font type is set to ***English***.
- The signature text is counted as the number of characters in the message.
- When ***Auto insert*** is set to ***Yes***, the signature is always inserted at the end of message when replying to and forwarding mail.
- When a signature is registered, you can insert the signature by pressing MENU on the message text entry screen and selecting ***Add signature***, regardless of this function’s setting.
- When the registered signature includes phone number, mail address or URL and is sent to an i-mode terminal, the receiver can use the Phone To (AV Phone To), Mail To, or Web To function.

Menu 164 / Menu 2732 / ↓732

Setting items to inquire to i-mode Center Message Retrieval Setting

- ***Mail***, ***MessageR***, and ***MessageF*** are all selected as ☑ by default. If you do not check for any item, change it to ☐.

Default selected (all)

1 ✉ 6 4

2 Select the item to inquire

- You cannot save the setting with no items selected.

3 Press ▭

Menu 1972

Setting to select and receive only necessary mail

Receive Option Setting

Default OFF

1 ✉ 9 7 2 ▶ 1 or 2

- When *ON* is set, a message indicating that mail is not automatically received appears. Press ●

Menu 196

Registering addresses in a mail group

Mail Group Setting

By registering multiple mail addresses in a mail group, multiple addresses can be set by a simple operation when composing i-mode Mail.

- Up to 20 mail groups can be registered. Up to 5 mail addresses can be saved in each mail group.

1 ✉ 9 6

2 ▭

- **Renaming a mail group: Highlight a mail group ▶** MENU 2
- **Copying a mail group: Highlight a mail group ▶** MENU 3
- **Deleting a mail group: Highlight a mail group ▶** MENU 4 1 **▶ Select *Yes***
- **Deleting all mail groups:** MENU 4 2 **▶ Enter the terminal security code ▶ Select *Yes***

3 Enter a mail group name (up to 16 one-byte or 8 two-byte characters) ▶ ▭

- To add another group: ▭

4 Select a mail group

- **Editing a mail address: Select a mail address (or name) ▶ Edit the mail address ▶** ▭
- **Deleting a mail address: Highlight a mail address (or name) ▶** MENU 2 **▶ Select *Yes***
- **Displaying mail address details:** MENU 3 **▶** ● **after checking the details**

5 ✉ **▶ Select each item to set**

***Address Type*:**

Sets TO, CC and BCC. ☛P191

***Address*:**

Enters a mail address (up to 50 one-byte characters).

- To select from the phonebook: ☎ ☛P92

6 ▭

- When the mail address is registered in the phonebook, the name in the phonebook is displayed. When the mail address is not registered in the phonebook, the mail address is displayed.
- To add another mail address to the mail group: Repeat from Step 5

7 Press ▭

The mail addresses are registered in the mail group.

- Highlight a mail group and press ✉ to compose i-mode Mail.

INFORMATION

● If there is no TO address entered, mail cannot be sent.

Menu 1951

Setting whether to quote the message when replying

Mail Reply Format

You can set whether to quote the message text in the received mail when you reply to i-mode Mail or SMS. In addition, you can set the quote characters that are added to the quoted message.

Default Quote:Yes Quote characters:> (one-byte character)

1 ✉ 9 5 1

2 Select each item to set

***Quote*:**

Sets whether to quote the message when replying to mail.

- When *Yes* is selected, ***Quote characters*** can be set.

***Quote characters*:**

Up to 2 one-byte or 1 two-byte character can be entered.

- The quote characters are counted as the number of characters in the message.
- If a character that cannot be sent is specified, the default quote character is used.

3 Press [Mail]

Menu 1952

Setting whether to insert a quick reply message when replying

Quick Reply Setting

- Quick reply messages cannot be inserted in SMS messages.
- Even if ***ON*** is set, a quick reply message cannot be inserted when not registered.

Default ON

1 [Mail] [9] [5] [2] ▶ [1] or [2]

Menu 1953

Registering quick reply messages to be inserted when replying

Quick Reply Template

- Up to 5 messages can be registered.
- To add a new quick reply message when there are 5 default messages, select and edit, or delete a default message.

Default OK です。(OK)　NG です。(No Good)
ありがとう！ (Thank you!)
ゴメンなさい！ (Sorry!)
後ほど連絡します。(Get in touch later.)

1 [Mail] [9] [5] [3] ▶ **Select a message**

2 Enter the message (up to 40 one-byte or 20 two-byte characters) ▶ [Mail] ▶ **Select *Yes***

- A line feed cannot be inserted.

■ **Checking a registered message: Highlight a message in the quick reply message list** ▶ [Mail]

■ **Deleting a registered message: Highlight a message in the quick reply message list** ▶ [MENU] [1] ▶ **Select *Yes***

■ **Registering a new message: Select <*New reply template*> in the quick reply message list** ▶ **Enter the message** ▶ [Mail]

■ **Restoring the default settings:** [MENU] [2] **in the quick reply message list** ▶ **Enter the terminal security code** ▶ **Select *Yes***

Menu 1975

Setting the display style of the mail list

Mail List Setting

The display style of the mail list can be set for received/sent mail.

- The 2-row display applies to unsent mail and received/sent SMS in the UIM regardless of this setting.

Default Display 2 rows

Display 2 rows

Display 1 row

Sender address of the highlighted received mail (first receiver address for sent mail)

1 [Mail] [9] [7] [5] ▶ [1] or [2]

Menu 1973

Setting whether to receive attachments

Incoming Msg. Attach.

You can set whether to receive images and melodies attached to i-mode Mail.

Default Image/Melody

1 [Mail] [9] [7] [3] ▶ [1] to [4]

INFORMATION

- When ***Not receive*** or ***Melody only*** is set, images inserted in the message cannot be also received.
- Note that unreceived attachments are deleted in the i-mode Center and become unavailable.
- Melodies in MFi format pasted in the message are received regardless of this setting.

Menu 1974 / Menu 2733 / ↓733

Setting whether to play melodies automatically

Attachment Auto-play

You can set whether melodies attached to i-mode Mail or Message R/F play automatically when the mail or message is displayed.

Default Auto play

1 [Mail] [9] [7] [4] ▶ [1] or [2]

INFORMATION

- When ***Auto play*** is set, displaying received mail, sent mail, mail template or Message R/F with a melody attached plays the melody once at the ring volume for calls set in Ring Volume Setting. When more than one melodies are attached, the melodies play one after another. Press [クリア] to stop the play.

Selecting the type of mail to display

Display Type

Only mail of the specified type is displayed. Closing the list resets the setting to ***Display all items*** or ***Display all***.

- For received mail, you can select from ***Display all items***, ***Unread item only***, ***Read item only***, or ***Protected item only***.
- For sent mail, you can select ***Display all*** or ***Display protected***.
- You cannot change the display types of unsent mail and received/sent SMS in the UIM.

Default: Display all items (for received mail)/Display all (for sent mail)

Example Selecting the display type for received mail

1 ✉ 1 ▶ **Select a folder**

- Sent mail ☛P207

2 MENU 7 2 ▶ 1 **to** 4

INFORMATION

● When ***Read item only*** is set, protected received mail is not displayed.

Changing the mail font size

Font Size

You can change the font size of the displayed messages for received mail, sent mails and mail template.

- The setting applies to all mails including received mail, sent mail and mail template.
- The font size cannot be changed while composing and editing mail.

Default: Medium (standard)

Large: 24 dots

Medium (standard): 20 dots

Small: 16 dots

Example Changing on the received mail view screen

1 ✉ 1 ▶ **Select a folder**

2 **Select a mail** ▶ MENU 3 1

- When a mail template is displayed, press MENU 4 1.

3 1 **to** 3

INFORMATION

● The new font size is retained until it is changed.

Menu 191

Setting operations for incoming mails

Incoming Msg. Setting

You can set the operations that are performed when i-mode Mail or SMS is received.

Default: Select mail ring tone: Melody/ パターン 2 (Pattern 2)
Incoming msg. lighting: ON/Free step(fast)
Set vibrate alert: OFF
Ring time (sec): 10

1 ✉ 9 1

2 **Select each item to set**

Select mail ring tone:

Selects ***Melody*** or ***movie ringtone*** and then selects a melody or video/i-motion file. To disable the ring tone, select ***OFF***.

- Playing and checking a melody or video/i-motion when selecting file ☛P104

Incoming msg. lighting:

Sets whether or not to light the keys for incoming mails and the lighting pattern.

- If ***OFF*** is set, you cannot set the lighting pattern.

Set vibrate alert:

Sets the pattern of operation of vibrator.

Ring time (sec):

Sets the sounding duration of ring tone (1 to 30 seconds).

3 **Press** 📖

INFORMATION

● Even if you set ***Sync melody*** for ***Set vibrate alert***, synchronization may not occur depending on the melody.

● When a mail is received from a sender with the incoming mail settings made in the phonebook, it operates by the phonebook settings. ☛P89

Menu 1971

Setting mail reception notification

Display Priority

You can set whether or not to give priority to the display of receiving screen and reception result screen when i-mode Mail, SMS, or Message R/F is received during FOMA terminal operation.

Default: Show message

1 [Mail] [9] [7] [1] ▶ [1] or [2]

Continue operation :
Displays neither the receiving screen nor reception result screen.

Show message :
Displays the receiving screen and reception result screen.

INFORMATION

- When ***Continue operation*** is set, the receiving screen and reception result screen are not displayed and the mail ring tone does not sound while not in standby (other function is running). The keys for incoming mails do not light/flash, either.
- Even when ***Show message*** is set, the receiving screen or reception result screen is not displayed and the mail ring tone does not sound during a voice call, data communication, camera use, i-αppli operation, or alarm sounding. The keys for incoming mails do not light/flash, either.
- While All Lock, PIM Lock or Public mode (Driving mode) is on, the receiving screen and reception result screen are not displayed and the mail ring tone does not sound regardless of the setting. The keys for incoming mails do not light/flash, either.

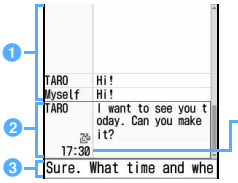
Composing and sending chat mail

Chat Mail

Mail can be sent and received to/from multiple addresses like making conversation. The sent and received mail can be read on the same screen.

- Mail addresses of the receivers must be registered as chat members in advance.
- Chat Mail is not available when Receive Option Setting is on or there is no available storage space for received/sent mail.
- When chat mail is sent to an incompatible terminal, it is received as a mail with the subject "チャットメール (Chat mail)". If a mail with the subject containing "チャットメール" is sent from a registered chat member who uses an incompatible terminal, FOMA terminal can receive it as chat mail.
- The communication fee for sending and receiving chat mails to/from multiple addresses is the same as that for sending mail to multiple addresses.

Viewing the chat mail screen



Received or sent date/time of the chat mail

1 Sent/received mail log
Press ◎ to scroll the log when △▽ is displayed in the guide row.
- To scroll by a page: [i-mode] [Mail]
- To move to the first row: [Menu] [5] [1]
- To move to the last row: [Menu] [5] [2]

2 Details field
Displays details of the latest chat mail or the highlighted chat mail. Up to 500 one-byte or 250 two-byte characters can be displayed.
- When the details cannot be displayed in a page, ◀▶ is indicated at the lower left and right corner. Press ◎ to switch between pages.

: Broadcast address not registered as a chat member exists.

3 Text entry field

Menu 13

Adding chat members

Chat Member Setting

- Up to 5 chat members can be registered. You cannot register the same mail address for multiple members.

1 [Mail] [3]
A confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to add chat members.
- When the member is already registered, the chat mail screen is displayed. To add another member, press [Menu] [7] and go to Step 3.

2 **Select *Yes***

3 [Mail]

4 **Select *Address* field ▶ Enter a mail address (up to 50 one-byte characters)**

・When registering a mail address for which a secret code is set, register the mail address in the phonebook, set the secret code, and then register only the other party's mobile phone number as chat member.

■ **Searching the phonebook: [i] ▶ Select a phonebook entry ▶ Select a mail address**

5 Select *Nickname* field ▶ Enter a nickname (up to 8 one-byte or 4 two-byte characters)

・When the mail address matches the address registered in the phonebook, the name registered in the phonebook (the first 8 one-byte or 4 two-byte characters) is displayed in ***Nickname*** field.
・When no nickname is entered, the first 8 characters preceding the @ symbol of the mail address are displayed on the chat mail screen.

6 Select *Font color* field ▶ Select a color

・The colors not used for registered members are displayed in the following priority order: blue, red, green, orange, and black.
・The nickname is displayed in the selected color on the chat mail screen.

7 [Address book]

The chat member is displayed.
・To add another member: [Mail] ▶ Repeat Step 4 to 7

8 Press [Address book]

Menu 13

Composing and sending chat mail

・Chat mail is sent to all registered members by default. You can select members when sending, but the setting returns to default when you quit chat mail or change chat member information.
・The sent chat mail is saved in ***Outbox*** folder of ***Outbox***. However, when the sent chat mail matches the criteria specified in Sort Criteria, it is saved in the specified folder.

1 [Mail] [3]

・When a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to add a member, select ***Yes*** and register it.

2 Select the text entry field ▶ Enter a message (up to 500 one-byte or 250 two-byte characters)

■ **Copying and pasting text from chat mail log:**
① Highlight a chat mail ▶ [MENU] [6] ▶ Specify the range
・Specifying the range ☛P317
② Select the text entry field ▶ Highlight a paste location ▶ [MENU] [3]

■ **Replying to all broadcast addresses of received mail: [MENU] [2] [2]**

■ **Selecting members to send mail: [MENU] [3] ▶ Select addresses ▶ [Address book]**

3 Press [Address book]

・When the chat mail is sent correctly, it is displayed on the chat mail screen.

INFORMATION

● Chat mail can also be displayed by the following operations:
・In the received mail list, highlight a chat mail and press [MENU] [7] [5].
・In the sent mail list, highlight a chat mail and press [MENU] [7] [4].
・On the received/sent mail view screen, press [MENU] [3] [3].

● If chat mail fails to be sent or is unsent when quitting chat mail, it is saved in ***Unsent messages*** folder of ***Unsent messages***. In this folder, only one chat mail item can be saved. If sending of another chat mail fails, the chat mail saved in ***Unsent messages*** folder is overwritten. In addition, the chat mail saved in ***Unsent messages*** folder is displayed in the text entry field next time Chat Mail is started. To resend unsent chat mail, start operation on the chat mail screen.

Receiving chat mail

Receive Chat Mail

When chat mail has been started

When mail with the subject containing "チャットメール" in one-byte or two-byte characters is received from a registered chat member, a message indicating that the log is updated appears and the received chat mail is added on the chat mail screen.

・When chat mail has been started, the ring tone does not sound and the incoming vibrator does not operate even if a chat mail is received. The keys for incoming chat mails do not light/flash, either.
・When chat mail is received from a sender not registered as a chat member, display the mail on the chat mail screen following the procedure in "When Chat Mail has not been started" below.

When Chat Mail has not been started

Chat mail is saved in ***Inbox*** folder of ***Inbox*** as i-mode Mail.

- When the received chat mail matches the criteria specified in Sort Criteria, it is saved in the specified folder.

1 Highlight the mail to display as chat mail in the received mail list ▶ MENU 7 5

- On the received mail view screen, press MENU 3 3.
- If the sender address of the selected mail is not registered as a chat member, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to register the sender address. Select ***Yes*** to register it. ☛P220
- Deco-mail or HTML mail received from PCs cannot be displayed on the chat mail screen.

Receiving chat mails stored in the i-mode Center

1 MENU 1 on the chat mail screen

If there is a chat mail stored in the i-mode Center, a message indicating that the log is updated appears and the received chat mail is added on the chat mail screen.

- When a chat mail is received by using Check i-mode Message, i-mode Mail is also received at the same time.

INFORMATION

- Even if the message on the chat mail screen contains a phone number, mail address or URL, the Phone To (AV Phone To), Mail To, or Web To function is not available. The i-αppli To function is also unavailable. No attachments are displayed. When you quit Chat Mail without deleting the chat mail and display the chat mail from ***Inbox***, these functions become available.
- When you delete chat mail from ***Inbox***, the nickname appears as "--------", date/time as "--/--" and text as ***Deleted.*** on the chat mail screen.
- When Chat Mail is not started, the chat mail received from a registered chat member is displayed on the chat mail screen next time Chat Mail is started.
- The chat mail received on the chat mail screen is marked as read in ***Inbox***.
- When mail is sent or received from Message i-αppli, the mail is displayed on the chat mail screen when received as chat mail.

Displaying broadcast addresses

Broadcast addresses of received mail can be displayed.

1 Highlight a mail on the chat mail screen ▶ MENU 4

- When a broadcast address is not registered as a chat member, ***Not recorded*** appears in the nickname field. When the mail address is registered in the phonebook, the registered name appears instead of the mail address. Press ● to display the mail address.

■ **Adding an unregistered broadcast address as a chat member: Highlight an address ▶ ▭**

- For the subsequent steps, follow the procedure from Step 5 in "Adding chat members". ☛P221

■ **Copying broadcast addresses: Highlight an address ▶ MENU 2**

Deleting all the chat mail logs

All the chat mail logs displayed on the chat mail screen can be deleted.

- The chat mails in ***Inbox*** or ***Outbox*** are also deleted except for the protected mail.

1 MENU 9 on the chat mail screen ▶ Select *Yes*

Editing chat members

You can edit chat member information and add/delete members. Also, you can check the information about all registered members and replace the registered members.

1 MENU 7 on the chat mail screen

2 Select a member ▶ Edit

■ **Deleting a member: Highlight a member ▶ MENU 2 ▶ Select *Yes***

■ **Displaying member details:**
① MENU 3
② ● **after checking the details**

■ **Adding a member: ✉**

■ **Replacing all members by mail group: MENU 5 ▶ Select a mail group ▶ Select *Yes***
All members are replaced by those registered in the selected mail group.

3 Press ▭

Setting personal information

You can set your nickname and text color displayed on the chat mail screen.

1 MENU 8 **on the chat mail screen**

2 **Select *Nickname* field ▶ Enter a nickname (up to 8 one-byte or 4 two-byte characters)**

- When no nickname is entered, ***Myself*** is displayed on the chat mail screen.

3 **Select *Text color* field ▶ Select a color**

4 **Press** 📖

Quitting chat mail

1 ☎ or ch/クリア **on the chat mail screen**

2 **Select *No***

Chat mail quits. The previous chat mail log is displayed when the next Chat Mail is started.

- When ***Yes*** is selected, all chat mails are deleted. In this case, the chat mail in ***Inbox*** or ***Outbox*** is also deleted except for the protected mail.

Menu 192

Setting operations for incoming chat mail

Incoming Chat Mail Setting

Set the operations for incoming chat mails when Chat Mail has not been started.

Default Incoming setting: Same:Msg setting

1 ✉ 9 2

2 **Select each item to set**

Incoming setting :

Specifies whether to set the operations for incoming chat mail or follow Incoming Msg. Setting.

- When ***Customize*** is set, the following items can be set.

Ring tone :

Selects ***Melody*** or ***movie ringtone*** and then select a melody or video/i-motion. To disable the ring tone, select ***OFF***.

- Playing and checking a melody or video/i-motion when selecting ☛P104

Lighting :

Sets whether or not to light the keys for incoming mails and the lighting pattern.

- If ***OFF*** is set, you cannot set the lighting pattern.

Vibrate alert :

Sets the operation of vibrator.

Ring time (sec) :

Sets the duration of ring tone (1 to 30 seconds).

3 **Press** 📖

INFORMATION

- When more than one mails are received at the same time, this function setting applies only when the last received mail is chat mail.
- Even if you set ***Sync melody*** for ***Vibrate alert***, synchronization may not occur depending on the melody.

Menu 171

Composing and sending SMS

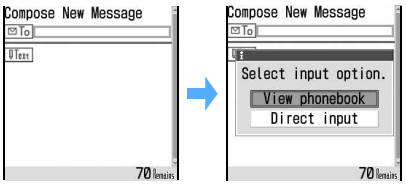
Compose SMS

Compose and send SMS messages. You can save SMS without sending it.

- The maximum number of sent/unsent messages that can be saved ☛P36
- If you use one-byte katakana and pictograms, they may not be displayed correctly on the receiver's terminal.
- International SMS can be sent and received from the parties that use overseas carriers other than DoCoMo. Please visit the DoCoMo website for the using method, the countries where the service is provided and overseas carriers available.
- Reading the received/sent/unsent SMS list/view screen ☛P208

Example Composing and sending an SMS message by entering address directly

1 ✉ 7 1 ▶ **Select** ✉To **field**



2 Select *Direct input* ▶ Enter the address (the other party's phone number)

- When the address is registered in the phonebook, the registered name is displayed in To field.
- To send to a party that uses an overseas carrier other than DoCoMo, enter "+" (by pressing 0 for over a second), the country code and the party's mobile phone number. Omit the first 0 of the phone number. You can also send by entering "010", the country code and the party's mobile phone number (add "010" when replying to a received SMS message from overseas).
- You can enter up to 26 characters in To field. However, up to 20 characters (21 characters if "+" is contained) can be sent as address.

■ **Searching the phonebook: Select *View phonebook* ▶ Select a phonebook entry ▶ Select a phone number**

3 Select Text ▶ Enter the message

- When the font type is set to ***Japanese*** in SMS Setting, up to 70 one-byte or two-byte characters can be entered. A space is also counted as a character in the message.
- When the font type is set to ***English*** in SMS Setting, up to 160 one-byte characters can be entered. Alphanumerics and symbols (except for ` 。「」、・゛ and °) can be sent. A one-byte space is counted as a character in the message.
- Line feeds can be inserted in the message. Press # to enter a line feed in 5-touch Input Method (except in the one-byte and two-byte numeric modes). A line feed is counted as a character in the message. However, it is replaced by a one-byte space on the receiver's terminal.

■ **Inserting a signature:** MENU 4

- Signature must be registered beforehand.

4 Press

■ **Saving SMS without sending:** MENU 2

- If neither the address nor message is entered, the SMS cannot be saved.
- You can edit and send the saved SMS. ☛P200

INFORMATION

- Depending on signal conditions, characters may not be displayed correctly on the receiver's terminal.
- Even if ***Not notify*** is set in Caller ID Notification, the caller ID is sent to the receiver when SMS is sent.
- If you enter some symbols (| ^ { } [ ] ~ and ¥) when the font type is English, the number of characters that can be sent is reduced. Therefore, you may not be able to send the message even if the number of characters is less than the limit. In this case, reduce the number of characters and send it again.
- When there is not enough available storage space, or the maximum number of saved items is exceeded, SMS cannot be composed. Delete unnecessary i-mode Mail and/or SMS from ***Unsent messages***. ☛P213
- Even when sending SMS has been completed, SMS cannot be received normally on the model which does not support SMS reception.
- The font type and whether to receive the delivered report are set in SMS Setting beforehand. You can also change the settings for the delivered report and storage period in the SMS Center while composing SMS.
- When transmission is completed correctly, SMS is saved in ***Outbox*** folder of ***Outbox***. However, when the sent SMS matches the criteria specified in Sort Criteria, it is saved in the specified folder. When there is not enough available storage space, or the maximum number of saved items is exceeded, the oldest sent mail is overwritten. Be sure to protect sent mail you want to keep.
- When transmission fails, an error message is displayed and SMS is saved in ***Unsent messages*** folder of ***Unsent messages***. You can edit and send the SMS from ***Unsent messages*** folder. ☛P200
- When you set the delivered report to ***Request*** and send SMS, you will receive a delivered report that notifies you that the message has been received by the other party's FOMA terminal. The delivered report is saved in ***Inbox***.

When SMS is received

Receive SMS

When there is incoming SMS, it is automatically received and you are informed by the screen display, ring tone, vibrator, and/or keys. The received SMS is saved in ***Inbox***.

- The maximum number of received messages that can be saved ☛P36

1 An SMS message is received

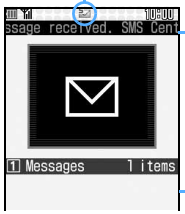
Receiving screen

Flashes

flashes and ***Receiving message...*** is displayed.

When reception is completed, the mail ring tone sounds, the keys light/flash, and the reception result screen is displayed.

Reception completed



Reception result screen

: Unread SMS exists.

: Unread SMS and i-mode Mail exist.

Reception result scrolls.

Number of received SMS

When reception fails, " × " is indicated after ***Messages***. To receive unreceived messages, perform Check SMS.

- Press [☎] while receiving the message to stop reception.
- If you do not press any key for about 15 seconds after the reception result screen is displayed or until the ring tone stops, the display returns to the screen displayed prior to reception automatically. To return to the previous screen immediately, press [クリア].

■ **Reading the received SMS immediately: ● or [1] on the reception result screen ▶ Select a folder ▶ Select an SMS message**

- You can reply to (☛P203) or forward (☛P203) the received SMS. The operation is the same as for i-mode Mail.

INFORMATION

- While receiving i-mode Mail or Message R/F, SMS is not automatically received. Perform Check SMS.
- When there is not enough available storage space, or the maximum number of saved items is exceeded, the oldest received mail except unread one is overwritten. Be sure to protect received mail you want to keep.
  - If the mail cannot be overwritten because storage space is full of unread mail and protected mail, reception of SMS is stopped. or is indicated on the screen (☛P27). To receive new messages, display unread mail, change unread mail to read, delete unnecessary mail or cancel mail protection.
  - When the UIM already contains 20 messages, SMS may not be received even though there is space available in ***Inbox***. or is indicated on the screen (☛P27). Move to FOMA terminal (☛P227) or delete SMS from the UIM (☛P228).
- When the received SMS has been set to be saved directly to the UIM, it will be saved directly in the UIM. Note that, when the number of messages in the UIM reaches 20, SMS cannot be received. Delete unnecessary messages and perform Check SMS again.
- The receiving screen or reception result screen may not be displayed depending on the setting for Display Priority.
- Short Mail sent from a mova terminal is received by FOMA terminal as SMS.
- When SMS is received from a party with the incoming mail settings made in the FOMA terminal phonebook, the mail ring tone, incoming vibrator and keys operate according to the settings of the FOMA terminal phonebook. For details on checking with the phonebook, see "Name displays". ☛P86
  - When more than one SMS messages are received at the same time, they operate according to the settings of the SMS received last.
- When SMS is received from overseas carriers other than DoCoMo, "+" is added before the sender address automatically. If the sender address prefixed with "+" is registered in the phonebook, the name in the phonebook is displayed.

Menu 162

Checking for SMS

Check SMS

You can make inquiry for any SMS delivered while FOMA terminal was out of service area or turned off.

- Depending on signal condition, you may not be able to perform Check SMS.

1 [✉][6][2]

If the SMS Center stores any messages, they are received.

INFORMATION

- It may take time to receive SMS with Check SMS.

Making SMS settings

SMS Setting

Usually, you do not need to change the settings for ***SMSC***, ***Address*** and ***Type of Number***.

Default
Font type: Japanese
Delivered report: Do not request
Keep in SMS center: 3 days
SMSC: DoCoMo
Address: 81903101652
Type of Number: international

1 ✉ 7 4

2 Select each item to set

Font type:

Selects Japanese or English language of messages to be sent. The maximum number of characters that can be sent differs depending on the font type.

Delivered report:

Specifies whether to request a delivered report when you send SMS.

Keep in SMS center:

Sets the storage period of sent SMS in the SMS Center in cases the receiver cannot receive the message.

SMSC:

Sets SMSC when you use SMS services other than DoCoMo.

- When ***Others*** is set, select ***Address*** field and enter the address (up to 20 one-byte characters).

Type of Number:

Selects either ***international*** or ***unknown***.

- When you select ***Others*** for ***SMSC*** and enter only numbers or numbers including "＊" or "#" in ***Address*** field, select ***unknown***.

3 Press 📖

INFORMATION

- On the SMS composition screen, press MENU and select ***SMS settings***. In this case, only ***Delivered report*** and ***Keep in SMS center*** can be set, and the settings are valid only for the SMS being composed.
- The settings for ***Font type***, ***Keep in SMS center***, ***SMSC*** and ***Type of Number*** are also saved in the UIM.

Saving SMS to the UIM

Save SMS to UIM

You can move or copy sent/received SMS from FOMA terminal to the UIM.

Moving/copying SMS to the UIM

- The maximum number of messages that can be saved in the UIM ☛P36
- SMS in ***Unsent messages*** cannot be saved to the UIM.
- When you move or copy sent SMS, any corresponding delivered reports are moved or copied to ***Received SMS*** (UIM) together. You cannot move or copy only delivered reports.

Example Moving a received SMS message to the UIM

1 ✉ 1 ▶ **Select a folder**

- Sent SMS ☛P207

2 Highlight an SMS message ▶

MENU 4 2 1

■ **Moving selected messages:**
MENU 4 2 2 ▶ **Select SMS messages** ▶ 📖

■ **Copying a message: Highlight an SMS message** ▶ MENU 4 3 1

■ **Copying selected messages:**
MENU 4 3 2 ▶ **Select SMS messages** ▶ 📖

3 Select *Yes*

INFORMATION

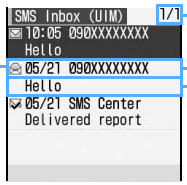
- On the received/sent mail view screen, press MENU and select ***Move/Copy*** → ***Move to UIM*** or ***Copy to UIM***.
- When the UIM already contains 20 messages, you cannot move or copy additional messages to the UIM. Delete unnecessary messages from the UIM.
- The protection setting is not moved/copied to the UIM.

Displaying SMS in the UIM

Example Displaying received SMS

1 ✉ 7 2

Received SMS is displayed in 2 rows on the received SMS (UIM) list screen.



Page No./total number

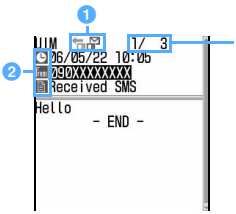
The received date/time and the sender or receiver

The beginning of the message, ***Delivered report*** or ***Notify missed call***

- ✉ : Unread (able to reply)
- ✉ : Unread (unable to reply)
- ✉ : Read (able to reply)
- ✉ : Read (unable to reply)
- ✉ : Delivered report/missed call notice

- The read/unread icon in the list indicates whether SMS in the UIM has been displayed. The status of unread/read before moving or copying is also carried over.
- In the reception date/time field, the time is displayed on the current day and the date is displayed on the other days.
- To display sent SMS: ✉ 7 3

2 Select an SMS message



Message No./total count

❶ : Received (able to reply)
: Received (unable to reply)
: Sent
: Delivered report/missed call notice
: SMS in the UIM

❷ : Date and time : Receiver
: Sender
: Sender (unable to reply)
: Subject (***Received SMS***, ***Sent SMS***, or ***Delivered report***)

- ***SMS Center*** is displayed as the sender of delivered report and ***DoCoMo SMS*** as the sender of missed call notice.
- When sent SMS is moved or copied to the UIM, the sent date and time are cleared from the SMS in the UIM.

INFORMATION

- When you reply to/forward or resend SMS in the UIM, the sent SMS is saved in ***Outbox*** of FOMA terminal.

Moving/copying SMS from the UIM to FOMA terminal

Move or copy SMS saved in the UIM to ***Inbox*** or ***Outbox*** of FOMA terminal.

- When you move or copy sent SMS, any corresponding delivered reports are moved or copied to ***Inbox*** together. You cannot move or copy only delivered reports.

Example Moving a received SMS message to FOMA terminal

1 ✉ 7 2

- To move/copy sent SMS: ✉ 7 3

2 Highlight an SMS message ▶ MENU 3 1

- **Moving selected messages:** MENU 3 2 ▶ **Select SMS messages ▶** 🕮
- **Copying a message: Highlight an SMS message ▶** MENU 3 3
- **Copying selected messages:** MENU 3 4 ▶ **Select SMS messages ▶** 🕮

3 ● **▶ Select the destination folder ▶ Select *Yes***

INFORMATION

- On the received/sent SMS (UIM) view screen, press MENU and select ***Move/Copy*** → ***Move to phone*** or ***Copy to phone***.
- When there is not enough available storage space or the maximum number of saved items is exceeded, you cannot move or copy SMS. Unprotected SMS and/or i-mode Mail are not overwritten. Delete unnecessary mail and messages.

Deleting SMS in the UIM

• When you delete sent SMS, any corresponding delivered reports are also deleted from the UIM.

Example Deleting a received SMS message in the UIM

1 ✉ 7 2

• To delete sent SMS: ✉ 7 3

2 Highlight an SMS message

▶ MENU 2 1

■ **Deleting selected messages:** MENU 2 2 ▶ **Select SMS messages** ▶ ⊡

■ **Deleting all messages:** MENU 2 3 ▶ **Enter the terminal security code**

■ **Deleting all delivered reports:** MENU 2 4 ▶ **Enter the terminal security code**

3 Select *Yes*

INFORMATION

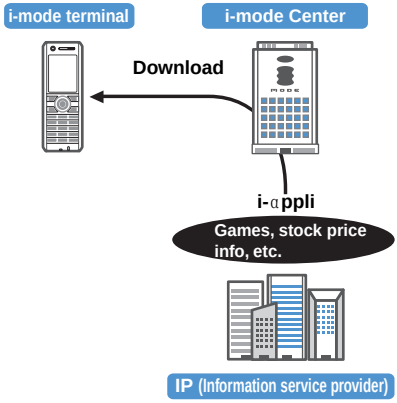
● On the received/sent SMS (UIM) view screen, press MENU and select ***Delete***.

i-αppli

i-αppli.....230
Downloading i-αppli from sites.....231
Starting i-αppli.....232
Starting i-αppli with One-key Shortcut..... One-key Shortcut 235
Starting i-αppli with Two-key Shortcut..... Two-key Shortcut 236
Automatically starting i-αppli.....236
Starting i-αppli from a site or mail..... i-αppli To 237
Operating i-αppli Standby Display..... i-αppli Standby Display 237
Managing i-αppli.....238
Using various functions from i-αppli.....240

i-αppli

Downloading i-αppli software from sites allows more convenient use of i-mode compatible FOMA terminal (hereinafter called as i-mode terminal). For example, various games can be downloaded to the i-mode terminal for amusement and i-αppli for stock price information can be downloaded for automatically checking stock prices at regular intervals. Map i-αppli downloads only necessary data and allows smooth scrolling. In addition, direct registration to the phonebook and schedule from i-αppli may be made and working with Data Box including saving and obtaining of image may be available with some i-αppli software.



- Downloading i-αppli ☛P231
- Starting i-αppli ☛P232
- Automatically starting i-αppli ☛P236

INFORMATION

- Some i-αppli may use the mobile phone or UIM serial number of your i-mode terminal.
- Some i-αppli attempts to make connection when running. Such attempts can be disabled by presetting not to make connection. ☛P233

Using saved data

Some i-αppli allows viewing, registering and operating of the data (phonebook entries, bookmarks, schedules, images and icons) saved in your i-mode terminal. The following operations can be performed using saved data:

- Register Phonebook entries
- Use icons
- Add bookmarks
- Save schedules
- Obtain images from Data Box
- Save images in Data Box

INFORMATION

- Some i-αppli software may not be used in Privacy Mode (***Authorized access*** set for ***Phonebook & Logs***, ***My picture*** or ***Schedule***).
- Any image saved by i-αppli is stored in ***i-mode*** or ***Deco-Mail picture*** folder of ***Image*** (My Picture) and/or i-αppli.

i-αppli DX

i-αppli DX is more convenient and enjoyable i-αppli. In conjunction with i-mode terminal information (such as mail, call log or phonebook data), i-αppli DX allows you to compose mail on your favorite character screen and inform you of a sender of an incoming call by character's comments when a call is received. Also, i-αppli DX updates desired information on stock price, game in progress or other information further in real time in conjunction with mail.

Using saved data

Some i-αppli DX allows viewing, registering and operating of saved data such as mails, redials, received calls and ring alerts in addition to the saved data available with standard i-αppli (phonebook entries, bookmarks, schedules, images and icons). The following operations can be performed using saved data:

- Register Phonebook entries
- View phonebook
- Use icons
- Add bookmarks
- Save schedules
- Use Mail menu
- Use i-mode Mail composition screen
- View latest redial
- View latest received call
- View latest unread mail
- Change ring alert (phone, mail, Message R/F)
- Obtain images from Data Box
- Save images in Data Box
- Save video in Data Box
- Save ring alert in Data Box
- Change image settings (standby display, incoming/outgoing call, incoming/outgoing videophone call, incoming/outgoing mail, Message R/F reception)

INFORMATION

- With i-αppli DX, communication may be made to confirm the validity of i-αppli regardless of the NW transmission setting of i-αppli. The number of attempts to make communication and the timing depend on i-αppli.
- Activating i-αppli DX requires Date and Time Setting of FOMA terminal.

● Some i-αppli DX cannot be used in Privacy Mode (***Authorized access*** set for ***Phonebook & Logs***, ***Mail***, ***My picture***, ***i-motion*** or ***Schedule***).
● Any image, video and ring alert saved by i-αppli DX is saved in ***i-mode*** or ***Deco-Mail picture*** folder of ***Image*** (My Picture), ***i-mode*** folder of ***i-motion/Melody*** or i-αppli DX respectively.

Message i-αppli

Message i-αppli is a type of i-αppli DX that allows more convenient and enjoyable use of i-αppli by providing real-time update of desired information on stock prices, games in progress, etc. through exchanging information by i-mode Mail.

- Mail messages used in Message i-αppli may not be correctly displayed.

Other convenient functions

■ **i-αppli standby display**
On the i-αppli standby display, i-αppli can be used as the standby display screen, which allows directly receiving mails and making phone calls. Also the i-αppli standby display enables you to check the latest news and weather forecast on the screen or to have your favorite character inform you of incoming messages and alarms. ☛P237

- This function is available with i-αppli supporting the i-αppli standby display.

■ **i-αppli auto start**
i-αppli can be automatically started at the user-specified time, date, day of week, etc. Some i-αppli allows auto start at the time intervals preset with i-αppli. ☛P236

■ **Shooting with camera**
Images can be taken with the i-mode terminal camera from i-αppli.

- This function is available with i-αppli supporting shooting with camera. ☛P240

■ **Infrared communication**
The data can be exchanged with the devices that are provided with the infrared communication function from i-αppli. It allows enhanced use by interacting with devices provided with the infrared communication function. ☛P240

- This function is available with i-αppli supporting infrared communication.
- Some types of data may not be exchanged depending on the other device, even if it is provided with the infrared communication function.

■ **Infrared remote control**
Various devices such as electrical appliances that support infrared remote control can be operated from i-αppli. ☛P270
For example, the preinstalled Gガイド番組表リモコン (G-GUIDE TV Remote Controller) allows using your terminal as an AV remote controller which works with TV programs. ☛P271

- This function is available with i-αppli supporting infrared remote control. i-αppli that supports the device to control is required.

Downloading i-αppli from sites

You can download your favorite i-αppli from sites and store it in FOMA terminal.

- Maximum number of software that can be saved ☛P36
- If i-αppli download has failed due to poor signal quality, etc., i-αppli will not be saved in FOMA terminal.

1 Display the site containing i-αppli ▶ Select i-αppli

The selected i-αppli is downloaded.

- To cancel downloading: ● ▶ Select ***Yes***

■ **When Software Info Display is set to *ON*:**
i-αppli information is displayed. When you select ***Yes***, i-αppli is downloaded.

- To check the detail information of i-αppli to be downloaded: 📖

■ **When downloading i-αppli that uses saved data or serial number of the mobile phone/UIM:**
A confirmation screen is displayed. When you select ***Yes***, i-αppli is downloaded.

- When ***Guide*** is displayed in the guide row, the details of the data to be used by i-αppli can be checked by 📖.

■ **When the selected i-αppli is already downloaded:**
Already downloaded is displayed. When the new version of i-αppli is released, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to upgrade. When you select ***Yes***, i-αppli is downloaded to upgrade.

■ **When the selected i-αppli is already downloaded to a UIM:**
A confirmation screen asking whether to overwrite or not is displayed. Select ***Yes*** to overwrite the downloaded i-αppli.

2 Select a folder to save i-αppli

3 Select each item to set ▶

Set i-αppli display :

For i-αppli which supports i-αppli standby display, sets whether to use it for the i-αppli standby display.

Set NW transmission :

Set whether to allow the communication by i-αppli.

Use icons :

Set whether to allow i-αppli to use icons such as mail and battery level.

- With some i-αppli applications, some setting items or operation setting screens are unavailable.

4 Select *Yes*

The downloaded i-αppli starts.

- To return to the site screen: Select ***No***

INFORMATION

- When there is not enough available storage space to save or the maximum allowable number is exceeded, follow the instructions on the screen to delete saved i-αppli. Deleted i-αppli cannot be restored even when i-αppli download has failed.
- When ***Use icons*** is set to ***No***, some i-αppli may not operate.

Downloading Message i-αppli

When Message i-αppli is downloaded, folders for Message i-αppli are automatically created in the lists of ***Outbox***, ***Inbox*** and ***Unsent messages***. The created folder is named with the name of Message i-αppli downloaded, which cannot be changed.

- Message i-αppli can be saved up to 5 applications (included in the 100 maximum number of i-αppli applications). If the maximum number of Message i-αppli is exceeded, follow the instructions on the screen to delete an existing Message i-αppli folder.
- If Message i-αppli that uses the same mail folder has already been saved in FOMA terminal, the software cannot be downloaded. However, i-αppli can be updated if a new version is available.

INFORMATION

- If a Message i-αppli application is tried to be downloaded again while only the relevant Message i-αppli folder remains, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to use the folder. When you select ***Yes***, the Message i-αppli is downloaded. If you choose not to use the mail folder, delete the folder before downloading the Message i-αppli. In addition, when you attempt to re-download or upgrade versions while Privacy Mode is on (***Authorized access*** set for ***Mail***), enter the terminal security code to continue the download or version update.
- If received mail that supports Message i-αppli to be downloaded has already been saved in FOMA terminal, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to move the received mail to the folder that was created at the time of downloading. When you select ***Yes***, the received mail is sorted. However, when Privacy Mode is on (***Hide secret fldrs*** set for ***Mail***), you cannot sort them.

Viewing i-αppli information when downloading

Software Info Display

You set whether to display i-αppli information when downloading.

Default OFF

1 MENU 3 2 3 ▶ 1 or 2

Menu 31

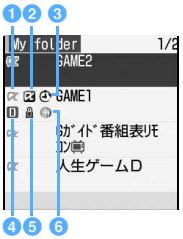
Starting i-αppli

1 (for over a second)

2 Select a folder

: No i-αppli : i-αppli present

3 Select an i-αppli application to start



1 : Normal i-αppli
: i-αppli DX
: Message i-αppli

2 : i-αppli that can be set for i-αppli standby display
: i-αppli that is set for i-αppli standby display

3 : i-αppli with Auto Start
: i-αppli at stopped condition by IP (Information service provider)
4 0 to 9 : i-αppli registered in Two-key Shortcut
5 : Protected i-αppli
SSL : i-αppli downloaded from SSL pages
SSL : Protected i-αppli which was downloaded from SSL pages
6 : i-αppli registered in One-key Shortcut

- When *Confirm every session* is set for *Set NW transmission* of i-αppli to be started, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to connect.

Quitting i-αppli

Quit i-αppli in the procedure specified for each.

- You can also quit i-αppli by pressing ☎ and selecting *Yes*.

INFORMATION

- i-αppli is interrupted in the following cases. When you quit the function being used and running, i-αppli is resumed. To resume i-αppli without quitting the current function, press ▰▭ and select *i-αppli*. However, i-αppli may not be resumed by ▰▭ depending on the function running. Some i-αppli may not return to the state before interruption when resumed.
  - When there is an incoming call (except when the ringing time of Voice Mail Service and Call Forwarding Service is set to *0 sec*)
  - When the time set in the schedule alarm or Alarm Clock has come
  - When you switch to another function
- When you are outside the service area or the saved data cannot be used, i-αppli may not start or not operate correctly.
- Images used on i-αppli or your entered data may automatically be sent to the server via Internet. Images used on i-αppli are images shot with the camera while i-αppli is activated, images obtained using the i-αppli infrared communication function, images downloaded by i-αppli from i-mode or Internet websites, or images obtained by i-αppli from Data Box.
- For some i-αppli, the IP (Information service provider) can access i-αppli saved in the mobile phone and directly stop its use. In this case, starting, setting for standby or upgrading of the i-αppli cannot be performed and only deleting and displaying the detailed information can be performed. To use again, please contact the IP (Information service provider) to release suspension of i-αppli.
- For some i-αppli, the IP (Information service provider) may send data to i-αppli saved in the mobile phone.
- When the IP (Information service provider) requests to stop/restart i-αppli or send data to i-αppli, FOMA terminal communicates and ▮ blinks. In this case, the communication charge is not required.
- Because of the 3D polygon*1 engine loaded, 3 dimensional image can be displayed with i-αppli.
  *1 By combining polygons (triangles and squares), 3 dimensional image with depth can be displayed.
- The volume of the sound which sounds during i-αppli operation is subject to Ring Volume Setting for phone. Note that when *STEPTONE* is set in Ring Volume Setting, the volume is level 4. Some i-αppli applications do not make sound.
- To i-αppli creators
  If i-αppli being created does not operate normally, trace display may help. Pressing MENU 3 3 4 on the standby display displays the trace. Note that trace information cannot be displayed if i-αppli created to record trace information is not saved.

Displaying history when operation finishes without using saved data — Security Error History

When i-αppli ended because of an error such that i-αppli cannot use the saved data, the name of i-αppli, date and time, cause of the security error is recorded.

- Last 20 records of security error history are recorded.

1 MENU 3 3 3

■ **Deleting the history:** 📖 ▶ **Select** *Yes*

Displaying i-αppli detail information — Detail Info

Detail information such as the name and version of i-αppli can be checked.

1 ◎ **(for over a second)** ▶ **Select a folder**

2 **Highlight i-αppli** ▶ 📖

3 **Check detail information**

- The displayed items differ depending on i-αppli.
- For i-αppli downloaded from SSL pages, you can check the site certificate by 📖.

Setting the operating conditions of i-αppli — Settings

- Items that can be set vary depending on i-αppli.
- This function is unavailable for i-αppli having no items to be set.

1 ● (for over a second) ▶ Select a folder

2 Highlight i-αppli ▶ MENU 7

3 Select each item to set

Set i-αppli display :
Used to set whether to set i-αppli which supports i-αppli standby display as your standby display.
- Only one i-αppli application can be set for i-αppli standby display.

Set NW transmission during i-αppli display :
Used to set whether to allow connection while the i-αppli standby display is operating.

Set NW transmission :
Used to set whether to allow connection while i-αppli is operating.

Use icons :
Specifies whether to enable i-αppli to use icons for mail, Message R/F, remaining battery level, Silent Mode and reception level.

Start from browser :
Used to set whether to start i-αppli from sites (i-αppli To).

Start from mailer :
Used to set whether to start i-αppli from mail (i-αppli To).

Start from external :
Used to set whether to start i-αppli from external devices (i-αppli To).

Allow ring tone/image changes by software[*1] :
Specifies whether to allow i-αppli to change the settings of ring tones or images on the screen such as the standby display. If ***Yes*** is set, the ring tone and image of the standby display may be changed automatically.

Confirm all changes[*1] :
Specifies whether i-αppli displays a confirmation screen each time the settings of ring tones or images are changed.

Allow access to phonebook/call records by software[*1] :
Specifies whether to allow i-αppli to refer to the phonebook or call log. If ***Yes*** is set, the phonebook or call log may be referred to automatically.

*1 This setting is available only for i-αppli DX.

4 Press ▭

- When ***Set i-αppli display*** is set to ***Yes***, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to set i-αppli as the standby display. Selecting ***Yes*** sets the i-αppli standby display.

INFORMATION

- When ***Set NW transmission*** are set to ***Yes***, some i-αppli will automatically connect to the network for communication.
- When i-αppli that connects to networks for communication is set as the i-αppli standby display and ***Set NW transmission during i-αppli display*** is set to ***Yes***, communication may automatically be carried out depending on i-αppli.
- Note that if you set ***No*** for ***Set NW transmission***, i-αppli may not be started and timely information such as stock prices or weather forecast may not be provided by i-αppli.
- If ***Yes*** is set for ***Use icons***, information about icons for unread mail, unread Message R/F, remaining battery level, Silent Mode, and icons within service area/outside service area may be sent to IPs (Information service providers) through the Internet, which may give the information to a third party.

Setting the lighting and vibrator during i-αppli running

Light/Vibrate Setting

Setting display light

- The i-αppli standby display light operation depends on the settings in Display Light Setting for the display.
- While Public mode (Driving mode) is on, the light does not operate while i-αppli is running even if ***Use software setting*** is set.

Default Use phone setting

1 MENU 3 2 4 ▶ 1 or 2

Use phone setting :
The light is turned on according to the settings in Display Light Setting for the display. ☛P118

Use software setting :
The light comes on according to i-αppli.

Setting vibrator

Allow the vibrator operation by i-αppli.
- While Public mode (Driving mode) is on, the vibrator does not operate while i-αppli is running regardless of this setting.

Default ON

1 MENU 3 2 5 ▶ 1 or 2

Starting another i-αppli application from i-αppli

You can start i-αppli specified by some i-αppli applications, and enjoy it without returning to the software list.

1 If a message appears indicating that the specified i-αppli will be started, press ●

INFORMATION

- If the i-αppli to start is not specified, select i-αppli.
- When the i-αppli does not exist in the software list even if specified, it is necessary to download it.

Using pre-installed i-αppli

The following i-αppli applications are registered by default:

- G ガイド番組表リモコン (G-GUIDE TV Remote Controller)
- 人生ゲーム D (The Game of Life D)
- で～すけと遊ぼう トランプ＆占い (Play with Daesuke, Cards & Fortune Telling)
- 旺文社 TOEIC アプリ forD (Obunsha TOEIC αppli for D)

Select each i-αppli application from the list to start.

- Some i-αppli names may be different from those on the display.
- If you delete i-αppli preloaded by default, you can download it from i-mode site "My D-style". ☛P330

G ガイド番組表リモコン (G-GUIDE TV Remote Controller)

This is a convenient application containing a TV program table and an TV remote control. For details ☛P271

人生ゲーム D (The Game of Life D)

This is an i-αppli version of the popular board game "The Game of Life". Spin a wheel on the screen and obey the instructions. The game finishes when all the players reach the goal.

: Select an item
: Determine the item, spin the wheel, and check the instruction
MENU : Sound on/off
: Return and cancel

©1960 LINK RESEARCH CORP.
©1990 MILTON BRADLEY COMPANY.
©TAKARA
©T2i Entertainment/SPACEOUT

- You can select the number of players from 2 to 4. The players other than you are controlled by FOMA.
- The instructions varies depending on the space you land.
- You can select operations from the icon menu during the game.

: Spin the wheel : Scroll the map
D : Show the items you get
OP : Options (Show the description, save or quit the game)
: Bank (borrow or return money)

- Select *説明* (Description) in the title screen or *オプション* (Option) of the icon menu to show how to play.

で～すけと遊ぼう トランプ＆占い (Play with Daesuke, Cards & Fortune Telling)

You can play card games with Daesuke and other cute characters. You can enjoy a fortunetelling game in addition to 3 games: 大富豪 (Ultrarich), ページワン (Page One) and ポーカー (Poker).

: Select a card(s)
: Draw/discard a card(s)
: Make the card selection
MENU : Display the menu
: Rule explanations

* : Pass (大富豪 only)/Check points (ポーカーonly)

旺文社 TOEIC アプリ forD (Obunsha TOEIC αppli for D)

This is an i-αppli version of English learning program for TOEIC® (Test of English for International Communication). Two types of lessons are available: TOEIC(R)テストイディオム (Idioms for TOEIC(R) Test) and TOEIC(R)テストボキャブラリー (Vocabulary Building for TOEIC(R) Test).
Each lesson provides two modes: *暗記モード* (Memorization) and *テストモード* (Test). In the *暗記モード*, answer the questions on the screen and then select *答えをめくる* (Show answers) to check your answers. In *テストモード*, choose an answer from multiple choices.
To show the menu, press on the screen of each lesson. For information about how to use, select *利用方法* (How to use) from the menu.

Starting i-αppli with One-key Shortcut

One-key Shortcut

Registering i-αppli to One-key Shortcut

- Only one i-αppli can be registered.

1 ● (for over a second) ▶ Select a folder

2 Highlight i-αppli ▶ MENU 9 1

- To cancel: Highlight i-αppli ▶ MENU 9 1

Starting i-αppli with One-key Shortcut

1 ⊙ **(for over a second)**

Starting i-αppli with Two-key Shortcut

Two-key Shortcut

Registering i-αppli to Two-key Shortcut

- Up to 10 i-αppli can be registered.

1 ⊙ **(for over a second) ▶ Select a folder**

2 Highlight i-αppli ▶ MENU 9 2

- To cancel: Highlight i-αppli ▶ MENU 9 2

3 Select the registration destination

- Number 0 to 9 correspond to the dial key 0 to 9 used to start i-αppli.

Starting i-αppli with Two-key Shortcut

1 Dial key (0 to 9) ▶ ⊙ **(for over a second)**

Displaying the Two-key Shortcut list

1 MENU 3 2 6

- To start: Highlight i-αppli
- To display details: Highlight i-αppli ▶ 📖
- To cancel registration: Highlight i-αppli ▶ MENU 2

Automatically starting i-αppli

Select whether to use auto starting and set different auto starting conditions for each i-αppli.

- Date and Time Setting of FOMA terminal is required to start i-αppli automatically.

Specifying whether to start automatically

Auto Start

- When set to ***OFF***, Auto Start is also disabled for i-αppli even if ***User*** of Auto Start Info Setting is set to ***ON***.

Default ON

1 MENU 3 2 2 **▶** 1 **or** 2

Setting the date and time of Auto Start

Auto Start Info Setting

Set Auto Start ON/OFF or the start time for each i-αppli application and display the preset details.

- The conditions that can be set depend on i-αppli.
- Some i-αppli may not be started automatically.
- When Auto Start is set to ***OFF***, this setting is not available.

1 ⊙ **(for over a second) ▶ Select a folder**

2 Highlight i-αppli ▶ MENU 6

3 Select each item to set

User : Select whether to set conditions of Auto Start.
- When ***OFF*** is set, the following items cannot be set.

Time : Enter the time to automatically start i-αppli.

Repeat : Set the condition for repetitive automatic starting of i-αppli.
- When ***OneTime*** is set, set the date for auto starting in ***Date*** field.
- When ***Daily*** is set, i-αppli starts automatically at the time set in ***Time*** field every day.
- When ***Weekly*** is set, set the day of week for auto starting in ***Weekly*** field.

Weekly : Set the day of week for auto starting when ***Weekly*** is set for ***Repeat***.

Date : Set the date for auto starting when ***OneTime*** is set for ***Repeat***.

Software :
Specify whether to automatically start at the intervals preset for i-αppli.

i-αppli 1 to ***4*** :
Depending on i-αppli DX, up to 4 conditions of Auto Start can be set while it is operated. Specify whether to enable the settings.

4 Press 📖

INFORMATION

● Even when auto starting is set, i-αppli is not started if the time of activation arrives in one of the following situations. If i-αppli is not started for the following reasons (except for the ones marked with*1), is indicated on the standby display and the name of i-αppli, the date and time and the reason for the start failure are recorded in Start Failure History.
- When FOMA terminal power is off*1
- When UIM operation is restricted (except for pre-installed i-αppli)

- When UIM cannot be detected
- When Auto Start is set to ***OFF***[*1]
- The interval of auto start is too short
- During a call or communication
- When a screen other than the standby display is displayed or i-αppli standby display operation is in progress
- When any other function is running (excluding the function during the list display and the frame composition of My Picture, the list display, replay, and edition of i-motion, the list display and replay of melody)
- In All Lock or PIM Lock
- When Privacy Mode is on (while ***i-αppli*** is set to ***Authorized access***)
- While an alarm or schedule alarm is sounding (including when the set time is the same as the time for Auto Start)
- When i-αppli usage is stopped by the IP (Information service provider)

● When two or more i-αppli applications are specified to start automatically at the same time, only one i-αppli is activated. The failed i-αppli information is recorded in Start Failure History, but is not displayed on the standby display.

● In the ***User*** settings, the same setting set for other i-αppli cannot be set.

● If all of the start time are set before the time set in Date and Time Setting, auto starting will be disabled.

Displaying history when Auto Start of i-αppli fails

Start Failure History

If automatic start of i-αppli fails, appears on the standby display and the i-αppli name, the date and time and the failure reason are registered.

- Up to 20 start failures are recorded. When there are more than 20 abnormal exits, the 21st exit is written over the oldest one.
- When you display the start failure history or when the next automatic start is successful, on the standby display disappears.

1 MENU 3 3 1

■ **Deleting the history:** ▶ **Select *Yes***

Starting i-αppli from a site or mail

i-αppli To

Select a link item that can start the site or i-αppli of the site or i-mode Mail and then start the i-αppli (i-αppli To).

1 Select a link item enabled to start i-αppli from the site or i-mode Mail

2 Select *Yes*

The connection to the site is terminated and i-αppli is started.

INFORMATION

● If the i-αppli you attempt to start with i-αppli To is not saved in FOMA terminal, the message that there is no specified i-αppli is displayed and i-αppli cannot be started. Note that some i-αppli may start just after downloaded from sites even if it is not saved.

- For i-αppli that starts just after downloaded from a site, a confirmation screen may be displayed asking whether to make communication while it is activated.
- When you quit i-αppli started just after downloaded from sites, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to save i-αppli. Note that some i-αppli may not be able to be saved in FOMA terminal.

● If the specified i-αppli is set not to start with i-αppli To, a message is displayed and i-αppli is not started. ☛P234

Operating i-αppli Standby Display

i-αppli Standby Display

When i-αppli is set for the standby display, you can start i-αppli from the standby display to operate. or is indicated at the top of the display when the i-αppli standby display is set.

- It is necessary to set i-αppli for the standby display beforehand. ☛P112

INFORMATION

● When you set i-αppli that performs communication, it may not operate correctly depending on radio wave conditions, etc.

● If All Lock, PIM Lock or Privacy Mode (***i-αppli*** is set to ***Authorized access***) is activated while setting the i-αppli standby display, the standby display will be canceled temporarily. If you cancel All Lock, PIM Lock, or Privacy Mode, the i-αppli standby display restarts.

● If the use of i-αppli set to the i-αppli standby display is stopped by IP (Information service provider), the i-αppli standby display is canceled.

● While the i-αppli standby display is activated, if an error that makes it difficult to continue the i-αppli standby display occurs, a confirmation screen appears asking whether you will cancel or not. When you select ***Yes***, the i-αppli standby display setting is canceled. At this time, the name of i-αppli and end date/time are recorded in Abnormal Exit History.

● You cannot connect to a site (Web To) from the i-αppli standby display.
● When FOMA terminal is turned on with i-αppli standby display set, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to start the i-αppli standby display. When you select ***Yes***, the i-αppli standby display starts. When you select ***No***, the i-αppli standby display setting is canceled. If you operate nothing within 5 seconds after the confirmation screen appeared, the i-αppli standby display starts automatically. When the power is turned on by Auto Power ON, the i-αppli standby display automatically starts, without displaying the confirmation screen.

Starting i-αppli of the i-αppli standby display

1 [ch/クリア] in the i-αppli standby display

The screen is changed to the i-αppli screen and [i] or [i] blinks at the top of the display.

Quitting i-αppli to return to the i-αppli standby display

1 [☎] while i-αppli is running ▶ Select *End*

i-αppli is ended and the i-αppli standby display is activated. The icon at the top of the display switches from [i] to [i], or from [i] to [i].

- The procedure to quit i-αppli and return to the i-αppli standby display depends on the type of i-αppli. [ch/クリア] makes some types of i-αppli return.
- Even if ***End*** is selected, the i-αppli standby display setting is not canceled. To cancel, select ***Cancel***. [i] and [i] at the top of the display disappear.

INFORMATION

● You can also cancel i-αppli by selecting i-αppli of the i-αppli standby display in the software list, pressing [MENU], selecting ***i-αppli display*** and then selecting ***Cancel***.

Displaying the exit history of i-αppli standby display

Abnormal Exit History

When an error that makes it difficult to continue the i-αppli standby display occurs, the name of i-αppli, date and time are recorded.

- Up to 20 abnormal exits are recorded. When there are more than 20 abnormal exits, the 21st exit is written over the oldest one.
- In the normal end, exits are not registered.

1 [MENU] [3] [3] [2]

■ **Deleting the history: [m] ▶ Select *Yes***

Managing i-αppli

Upgrading i-αppli

Upgrade

When i-αppli has been updated, it can be upgraded.

- i-αppli whose usage is stopped by IP (Information service provider) cannot be upgraded.

1 [●] (for over a second) ▶ Select a folder

2 Highlight i-αppli ▶ [MENU] [5] ▶ Select *Yes*

- When upgrade is unnecessary, the message that i-αppli is the newest is displayed.

INFORMATION

● When you upgrade i-αppli, data such as game scores stored by the i-αppli may be erased.
● Some i-αppli may inquire the DoCoMo server about the availability depending on the length of time of use/number of times of use. If the server gives a notice of i-αppli having been updated, it can be upgraded after confirming whether to upgrade it.
● Some i-αppli may be upgraded automatically.

Creating/deleting folders

Folders can be created to sort out i-αppli. Also folders can be moved up or down or deleted.

Creating a folder

- Up to 20 folders can be created including ***My folder***.

1 [●] (for over a second)

2 [MENU] [4]

■ **Changing the folder name: Highlight the folder ▶ [MENU] [1]**

■ **Moving up or down the folder: Highlight the folder ▶ [MENU] ▶ [5] or [6]**

3 Enter a folder name (up to 16 one-byte or 8 two-byte characters) ▶ [m]

Deleting folders

- Note that the folder cannot be deleted if it contains the protected i-αppli. Cancel the protection, and then delete it.

1 ○ **(for over a second)**

2 **Highlight i-αppli ▶** MENU **2** **1**

- To delete a folder with any i-αppli stored in it, enter the terminal security code.

3 **Select *Yes***

- If there is any Message i-αppli in the folder to be deleted, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to delete the mail folder at the same time. Select ***Yes*** to delete the mail folder and all messages stored in the folder. Select ***No*** to delete i-αppli only. However, if there is any protected message in the mail folder, you cannot delete the i-αppli or mail folder even when you select ***Yes***.

INFORMATION

- When the mail folder for Message i-αppli to be deleted is being used (including being displayed in the list), the i-αppli may not be deleted.
- When only i-αppli has been deleted and the mail folder used for Message i-αppli is left undeleted, the message can be displayed from the submenu in the folder list of mail. ☛P207

Protecting i-αppli

- Maximum number of software that can be protected ☛P36

1 ○ **(for over a second) ▶ Select a folder**

2 **Highlight i-αppli ▶** MENU **3** **1**

i-αppli is protected and 🔒 or SP 🔒 is indicated on the software list.

- To cancel: Highlight i-αppli ▶ MENU **3** **1**

■ **Switching the protection of selected items on/off:** MENU **3** **2** **▶ Select i-αppli ▶** ✉

■ **Switching the protection of all items in the folder on/off:** MENU **3** **3** **▶ Enter the terminal security code**

Deleting i-αppli

1 ○ **(for over a second) ▶ Select a folder**

2 **Highlight i-αppli ▶** MENU **2** **1**

■ **Deleting selected items:** MENU **2** **2** **▶ Select i-αppli ▶** ✉

■ **Deleting all items in the folder:** MENU **2** **3** **▶ Enter the terminal security code ▶ Select *All* or *w/o protect***

3 **Select *Yes***

- When you attempt to delete Message i-αppli, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to delete the automatically created mail folder at the same time. Select ***Yes*** to delete the mail folder and all messages stored in it. Select ***No*** to delete i-αppli only. However, if there is any protected message in the mail folder, you cannot delete the i-αppli or mail folder even when you select ***Yes***.

INFORMATION

- When deleting all i-αppli in a folder from the folder list, highlight the folder, press MENU, and select ***Delete*** → ***Delete software***.
- The protected i-αppli cannot be deleted by ***One item*** or ***Selected items***. To delete protected i-αppli, cancel its protection first and then delete it. Alternatively, select ***All items***, enter the terminal security code, and then delete i-αppli by selecting ***All***.
- If the folder for Message i-αppli to be deleted is in use (as while displaying a list), i-αppli may not be deleted.
- When only i-αppli has been deleted and the mail folder used for Message i-αppli is left undeleted, the message can be displayed from the submenu in the folder list of mail. ☛P207

Moving i-αppli to another folder

1 ○ **(for over a second) ▶ Select a folder**

2 **Highlight i-αppli ▶** MENU **4** **1**

■ **Moving the selected items:** MENU **4** **2** **▶ Select i-αppli ▶** ✉

■ **Moving all items in folder:** MENU **4** **3**

3 **Select the folder to move to ▶ Select *Yes***

Sorting i-αppli

Software Sort

Default | By download time

1 MENU **3** **2** **1**

2 **1** **to** **5**

- For ***By download time*** and ***By access time***, i-αppli is sorted by the time set in Date and Time Setting of FOMA terminal.
- For ***By name***, the sorted order may not match the order of the Japanese syllabary if two-byte and one-byte characters/alphabetic characters are included in the name of i-αppli.
- For ***By access frequency***, the frequency does not include the number of being started as the i-αppli standby display. The access frequency is carried over even when i-αppli version is upgraded.
- For ***By software size***, the total of the software size of i-αppli and scratchpad to be used is sorted from large to small.

Checking the number of i-αppli in a folder

Software in Folder

1 (for over a second)

2 Highlight a folder ▶

- Meaning of the icon ☛P232

Checking current settings of i-αppli

Software Information

1 (for over a second)

2 Press

Storage : Total size of i-αppli saved is indicated in bar and numeric.

Software count : Total number of i-αppli saved is displayed.

i-αppli display : Name and storage folder of i-αppli set as the i-αppli standby display are displayed.

One-key shortcut : The name and storage folder of i-αppli registered to One-key Shortcut are displayed.

Auto start : Name, storage folder and start time of i-αppli set for the next automatic start are displayed.

Using various functions from i-αppli

- Downloading i-αppli that supports individual functions beforehand is required.
- The operation varies for each i-αppli application and some i-αppli may not be used.

Making calls from i-αppli

1 Select a phone number ▶ Set the call conditions

- Setting of the call conditions ☛P53

2 MENU ▶ Select *Yes*

A call is made by the settings. When you make a call, i-αppli is interrupted.

Connecting to sites from i-αppli

1 Select *Yes* when a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to connect to sites

i-αppli is ended and the site is displayed.

Using Camera from i-αppli

1 Operate i-αppli to use Camera

INFORMATION

- Shot images or videos may be automatically sent form i-αppli to the server via communication.
- When Camera has been activated from i-αppli, shot images are saved in ***i-mode*** folder or ***Deco-Mail picture*** folder of ***Image*** (My Picture) or in i-αppli. Shot videos are saved in ***i-mode*** folder of ***i-motion*** or in i-αppli.
- Some i-αppli can change the image size or shooting size or set the frame, etc.

Using Bar Code Reader from i-αppli

1 Operate i-αppli to scan barcodes

- A message that scan results are used and saved in the i-αppli is displayed.

Using infrared communication from i-αppli

- Infrared communication may not be made depending on the other device, even if it is provided with the infrared communication function.

1 Operate i-αppli to perform infrared communication

- i-αppli can also be started by receiving i-αppli starting data via infrared communication.
- If you perform infrared communication while your terminal is connected to a site or sending/receiving mail, the site connection or mail transmission is stopped.

i-channel

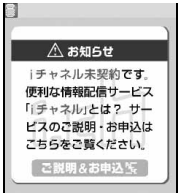
i-channel 242
Displaying i-channel ..... Channel List 243
Changing i-channel settings ..... Ticker Setting 244

i-channel

i-channel is a service in which DoCoMo or IP (Information service provider) delivers graphical information such as news and weather information to i-channel compatible terminals. Users can receive information regularly, and read latest information as it appears on the standby display as tickers, or view it in the channel list by pressing the i-channel compatible key (ch/クリア) (Displaying the channel list ☛P243). Additionally, users can obtain rich, detail information by selecting a desired channel in the channel list.

- i-channel information is displayed in Japanese only.
- For important notes on using i-channel and detail information about how to use i-channel, see “i-mode User’s Manual”.

Not signed



Before you sign up for i-channel.

After sign-up

After you sign up for i-channel, tickers automatically run on the standby display as information is received or as you display the channel list.

ch/クリア

Pressing ch/クリア displays the channel list. Each channel contains various information in a list form including those that ran as tickers.

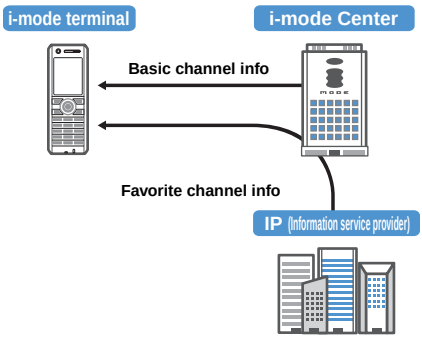
● **to make connection**

You can select each channel to view detail information.

- The screens shown above are for information purpose only and may differ from the actual screens.

There are 2 types of channels: “Basic channel” and “Favorite channel”. Basic channel is pre-registered channels provided by DoCoMo and ready for use immediately after i-channel sign-up. Packet communication fee for automatic information update in relation to Basic channel is included in the i-channel service fee. Favorite channel is provided by non-DoCoMo IPs (Information service providers) and users register their desired channel for viewing. Packet communication fee for automatic information update and other fees in relation to Favorite channel are not included in the i-channel service fee. Please note that only Basic channel information appears as tickers on the standby display.

- Information charge may be imposed to use Favorite channels.
- Some Favorite channels require separate sign-up to the IPs (Information service providers) who provide the channels.
- Viewing detail information from the channel list, whether Basic channel or Favorite channel information, causes separate packet communication fee that is not covered by the i-channel service fee.



i-channel is a pay service for which subscription is required. (You need an i-mode subscription in order to subscribe to i-channel.)

- Operating i-channel ☛P243
- Compatible devices: 701i, 702i, 902i series and P851i

Trial channel

Basic channels are available for free of service charge for a set period of time to i-mode subscribers who use an i-channel compatible terminal, and who have never signed up for the subscriber line. However, packet communication fee caused by viewing detail information from the channel list is to be borne by the users.

・For important notes on using Trial channel and detail information about how to use the service, see “i-mode User’s Manual”.

In principle, Trail channel automatically begins after a set amount of time once the UIM (FOMA card) is inserted and the i-channel compatible terminal goes into use. If Trial channel does not start automatically, you can start it by pressing ch/クリア.

Trial channel is available only once per subscriber line. Trial channel automatically stops after a certain period of time following the launch. For information about how to stop the channel, see “i-mode User’s Manual”.

INFORMATION

- Neither ring tone nor vibrator operates at the reception of information. The keys do not light or flash, either.
- When ***Show ticker*** is set to ***No*** in Ticker Setting, no tickers are displayed.
- If you cancel i-channel or i-mode service subscription, tickers are no longer displayed. Pressing ch/クリア displays the pre-subscription screen. Until the cancellation procedure has finished, however, tickers may be displayed on the screen and pressing ch/クリア may display the last received information in the channel list.
- In case FOMA terminal has been turned off or the information cannot be received due to the out-of-service area or poor signal quality, press ch/クリア to receive the information.
- blinks during reception of information.

Changing the i-channel host

You can change the i-channel host (although you usually do not need to change it).

① ○ 9 5

② **Highlight the user host** ▶ MENU ▶ **Enter your terminal security code**

③ **Select each item to set** ▶ 📖

・***Host address2*** should be filled with the address of the i-channel host (up to 30 one-byte characters).

・***Host address*** is the host for i-mode. ☛P176

④ **Select the host you have edited** ▶ 📖

- If you enter or change the address of ***Host address2***, the i-channel information will no longer be displayed on the standby ticker. Sometimes, the information will not be updated automatically. When you press ch/クリア on the standby display to view the channel list, the latest information is received and the tickers are shown on the standby display.

Menu 281

Displaying i-channel

Channel List

1 ch/クリア

The channel list appears.

・When video/i-motion, Chara-den or i-αppli is set as the standby display: ○ 8 1

・i-channel cannot be displayed even if ch/クリア is pressed.

2 **Select the channel**

Your terminal connects to the site and the information appears.

・Depending on the situation, information may be received when displaying the channel list.

Changing i-channel settings

Ticker Setting

You can set whether to run tickers of received i-channel information on the standby display. You can also set the ticker running speed.

- When ***Show ticker*** is set to ***Yes***, up to 10 tickers for the newest information are shown on the standby display each time the display appears until the display items disappear. When ***Show ticker*** is set to ***No***, no tickers are displayed.
- In the default state or when the UIM is replaced, or when the host address 2 is changed, if the i-channel information is automatically updated or if you press ch/クリア to display the channel list, the ticker is displayed and you can set the ticker setting.

Default Show ticker: Yes Ticker speed: Normal

1 ○ 8 2

2 Select each item to set

Show ticker :

Select ***Yes*** or ***No***.

- If ***No*** is selected, ***Ticker speed*** cannot be set.

Ticker speed :

Select from ***Slow***, ***Normal***, or ***Fast***.

3 Press ▭

- If ***Show ticker*** is set to ***Yes***, a confirmation screen appears when video/i-motion, Chara-den or i-αppli is set on the standby display. If you select ***Yes***, video/i-motion, Chara-den or i-αppli is released.

INFORMATION

● In the following cases, i-channel information cannot be displayed in the ticker.

- In All Lock
- In PIM Lock
- In Public mode (Driving mode)
- When UIM not inserted

Displaying/Editing/ Managing Data

Making full use of images

Displaying images ..... My Picture 246
Editing still images 248
Setting the operating conditions of images ..... Settings (My Picture) 252

Making full use of video/i-motion

Playing video/i-motion ..... i-motion 252
Editing video/i-motion 255
Setting the operating conditions of video/i-motion.... Settings (i-motion) 257

Making full use of Chara-den

Chara-den 258
Displaying Chara-den ..... Chara-den 258
Recording Chara-den ..... Record Chara-den 259
Setting the operating conditions of Chara-den ..... Settings (Chara-den) 261

Making full use of melodies

Playing melodies ..... Melody 261
Setting the operating conditions of melodies..... Settings (Melody) 262

Managing various data

Using the album 262
Checking/editing detail information of the data ..... View/Edit Detail Info 264
Deleting data 265
Sorting data ..... Sort 266

Making full use of infrared communication

About infrared communication 266
Sending data by infrared communication ..... Send Ir Data 267
Receiving data by infrared communication ..... Receive Ir Data 268
Activating infrared communication mode ..... Infrared Communication Mode 270
Using the infrared remote control function..... 270
Setting operations for data transfer..... Data Transfer Setting 272

Making full use of Sound Recorder

Recording sound with Sound Recorder ..... Sound Recorder 272
Changing the recording settings 274

Displaying images

My Picture

You can display images saved in ***Image*** (My Picture) in Data Box in FOMA terminal.

1 ● 1 ▶ Select a folder

The following images are stored in each folder:

Camera :
Still images shot by Camera or Chara-den and still images captured from video/i-motion

i-mode :
Images downloaded from a site, i-mode Mail or i-αppli

Deco-Mail picture :
Images preinstalled by default for Deco-mail and images downloaded from sites or read by Bar Code Reader

Item :
Frame images preinstalled by default and item images downloaded from sites

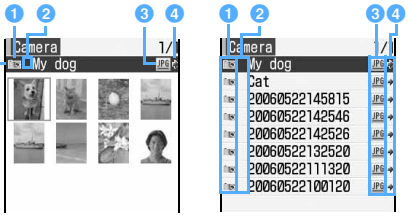
Preinstalled :
Images preinstalled by default

Data transfer :
Images read by Bar Code Reader and images received via data communications

Album :
Images moved from other folders
- Not displayed by default. To create ☛P262
- You can enter any album name in creating.

2 Highlight an image

Thumbnail display **Title display**



Display name and icons of the data at cursor

Image list

1 Originated

: Preinstalled : i-mode
: Camera : Frame/Stamp
: Data transfer : Chara-den

2 Type of image

No icon: Still image
: Created animation
: Animation/Flash movie

3 File format

GIF : GIF image JPG : JPEG image
: SWF (Flash movie)
No icon: Created animation

4 File restriction

(in blue) : Without file restriction
(in gray) : With file restriction

- Each time you press ▭, thumbnail display and title display are switched.
- Images with the UIM operation restriction function set are displayed with in the thumbnail display.
- Display name and other items can be modified. ☛P264

■ **Sending mail with images attached: Highlight an image ▶ ✉**

The mail composition screen is displayed with the selected image attached.
- When the file size of still image is under 9,000 bytes, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to paste in the text field. Select ***Yes*** to paste in the mail message and select ***No*** to attach to mail.
- Depending on the image size or file size of the still image, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to convert the image to the standby size or save it to Data Box. ☛P197
- Images that can be attached to mail ☛P196

3 Press ●

The image is displayed.
Display name
Comment

- Press ● to display the previous or next image.
- Animation, Created animation and Flash movies are replayed automatically when displaying. During playback, the following operations are enabled:

● : Pause/replay
MENU / ○ : Retry (replay from the beginning)
: Slow-down playback (only in stop for playing Created animation
▭ : Full-screen display

■ **Displaying images at the same magnification: ● ▶ ✣ to scroll**
- It is available for only the image that the size exceeds 240 x 320.

- Animation, Created animation and Flash movies cannot be displayed at the same magnification.
- Terminating displaying at the same magnification: dh/DUP

■ **Displaying the image using full-screen display:** i

The display name and guide row disappears and the image is displayed in the entire screen.

- Press ○ to display the previous or next image.
- The image smaller than the screen is not enlarged.
- In case the auto scroll setting during full-screen display is on in Settings, when the image of the JPEG format is larger than the screen, the image is displayed by magnification to fit either vertically or horizontally and scrolled automatically.
  - Press ● during the auto scroll to suspend/restart. The scrolling cannot be performed again after finishing the operation.
  - When the vertical and horizontal sizes of the image have about the same ratio as that of the screen, the entire image is displayed and not scrolled.
  - Even when the vertical or horizontal size is smaller than that of the screen, the image is not enlarged.

Setting images to the standby display or phonebook data

1 ○ 1 ▶ **Select a folder**

2 **Highlight an image** ▶ MENU 2

3 **Select an item**

■ **Setting to the standby display:** 1 ▶ **Select *Yes***

- In case an image can be enlarged, selecting ***YES(Same size)*** displays as the size of image and selecting ***YES(Large size)*** enlarges and displays according to the size of screen.
- If the i-αppli standby display has already been set, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to cancel it continuously.
- Setting may be unavailable depending on images.

■ **Adding to the phonebook:** 2

- Registering entries to the phonebook ☛P87

■ **Updating and registering to the registered phonebook:** 3 ▶ **Select phonebook data**

- If an image has already been set, the image is replaced by the selected image.

■ **Setting as call image:** 4 ▶ 1 **or** 2

■ **Setting as videophone call image, substitute image or on-hold image:** 5 ▶ 1 **to** 7

- Images whose size exceeds 176 x 144 and images unavailable for output from FOMA terminal can be set only as call image.

■ **Setting as outgoing/incoming msg. image or retrieving Image:** 6 ▶ 1 **to** 3

- The outgoing/incoming msg. image is also displayed even when Message R/F or SMS is sent or received.
- Flash movies cannot be set as retrieving image.

■ **Setting to the menu icon:** 7 **or** 8 ▶ 1 **to** 9 **or** 0

The selected image is set as a menu icon of ***Custom1*** or ***Custom2*** of tile display.

- Created animation, Flash movies and item images cannot be set as a menu icon.

Creating animation

You can create animation by selecting still images (up to 6) in the same folder.

- Animation, Created animation, Flash movies and still images with a size of more than 640 x 480 cannot be saved to Created animation.
- Still images saved in Created animation cannot be displayed or edited respectively.

1 ○ 1 ▶ **Select a folder**

2 MENU 4 1

■ **To cancel the setting: highlight the Created animation** ▶ MENU 4 2

3 **Select images**

The number is displayed on the image in the order of selection.

- Each time you press i, thumbnail display and title display are switched.
- Canceling all the selections: MENU

4 📖 ▶ **Enter a display name (up to 36 characters regardless of one- or two- byte)** ▶ 📖

In the image list, 🖼 and the display name are displayed. In the thumbnail display, the first cartoon panel is displayed.

Editing still images

You can edit still images saved in ***Image*** (My Picture). The editing items and the maximum editable image size are as follows:

Editing items	Maximum editable image size (dot)*1
Change size	1728 x 2304 (352 x 288 for zoom in/out)
Clip	1728 x 2304 (The still image of 1728 x 2304 cannot be clipped specifying the range.)
Brightness/Tone	352 x 288
Effects	240 x 320
Reverse/Rotate	480 x 640
Frames	352 x 288
Paste stamp	352 x 288
Paste text	352 x 288
Cut	240 x 320
Size limitation	1728 x 2304
Adjust	352 x 288

*1 When the image cannot be edited because the size of it is too large, it can be reduced to the editable size using ***Change size***.

- The following images cannot be edited:
  - Animation, Created animation, Flash movies, images in ***Item*** folder and images in ***Preinstalled*** folder
  - Still images not permitted to attach to mail or to output from FOMA terminal (excluding still images with file restriction set with your terminal)
  - Still images with either the vertical or horizontal size is under 8 dots
- Editing of ***Brightness/Tone*** or ***Effects*** may display the image smaller. The image size is not influenced. Save as it is. The size of saved images is correct.

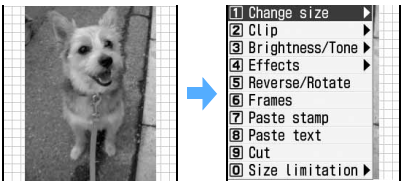
1 ● 1 ▶ Select a folder

2 Highlight a still image ▶ 📖

The still image edit screen appears.

- Adjustment ☛P251

3 MENU



Still image edit screen　Edit menu screen

4 Select an editing item ▶ Edit the still image

- 1 : ***Change size*** ☛P248
- 2 : ***Clip*** ☛P249
- 3 : ***Brightness/Tone*** ☛P249
- 4 : ***Effects*** ☛P250
- 5 : ***Reverse/Rotate*** ☛P250
- 6 : ***Frames*** ☛P250
- 7 : ***Paste stamp*** ☛P250
- 8 : ***Paste text*** ☛P250
- 9 : ***Cut*** ☛P251
- 0 : ***Size limitation*** ☛P251

5 ● after editing ▶ Select *Save*

Edited still image is saved as a new still image in the same folder.

- Select ***As frame/stamp*** to save as an image for frame or stamp. Images that can be available as frame/stamp ☛P264

INFORMATION

- After editing, the file size of still images may become larger.
- When there is not enough available storage space to save, or you have exceeded the maximum allowable number of images, you cannot save it. Save the image after deleting unnecessary images first.
- Areas in a still image edited which are transparent on FOMA terminal are displayed as white when viewed on a PC.
- Larger still images than display area are reduced. However, images are displayed at same magnification in the case of ***Paste stamp***, ***Paste text***, ***Cut*** and ***Zoom in/out*** of ***Change size***.

Changing the size

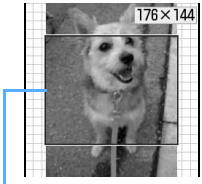
- Changing the size of still image may deteriorate the image quality.

1 1 on the edit menu screen

2 Change the image size

■ **Changing the image to the specified size: 1 to 8**

If the horizontal to vertical ratio of specified size and still image is same, the size is changed and the still image edit screen reappears. If the horizontal to vertical ratio differs, a size frame is displayed. Press ●/● to adjust the position of the size frame, and press ● to change the area encompassed by the size frame to the specified size.



- Putting the whole still image in the specified size by ignoring the aspect ratio (Stretch): MENU
- Putting the entire still image in the specified size by maintaining the aspect ratio (Fit): 📖

■ **Zooming in/out:**

① 9 ▶ ◎ **to zoom in/out**

You can zoom in/out by 5% with horizontal and vertical ratio held. The current image size and the rate of zoom in/out are displayed on the upper right of the screen.

- Press MENU to zoom out by 20% or press 📖 to zoom in by 20%.
- The portrait still image can be zoomed in up to 288 x 352 and the landscape still image can be zoomed in up to 352 x 288 (up to the limit of the either).
- Images can be reduced up to 8 dots in either of horizontal or vertical.

② ●

The still image edit screen reappears.

Clipping images to desired sizes

You can clip a part of the still image by specifying the size or range.

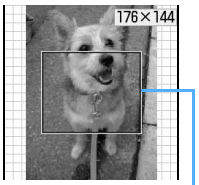
- When the original still image is less than 16 x 16, clipping is unavailable.

1 2 on the edit menu screen

2 Clip the still image

■ **Clipping the image to the specified size:**

① 1 **to** 8 ▶ ◎ **to adjust the clipping position**



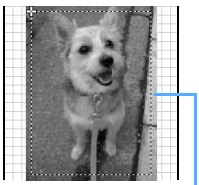
- Switching the vertical/ horizontal of the clipping frame: 📖
- Changing the clipping size: ⓕ
- Specifying the clipping range: MENU

② ●

The still image is clipped into the selected size and the still image edit screen reappears.

■ **Specifying the range and clipping:**

① 9 ▶ ◎ **to adjust the position of** ✣ ▶ ●



Range specification frame

The position of upper left of the range specification frame is set and ✣ is displayed on the lower right of the frame.

② ◎ **to adjust the position of** ✣ ▶ 📖

The clipping range is set and the range specification frame is displayed in solid line.

- Press ● instead of 📖 to change the position of the upper left again.
- ◎ after pressing 📖 to move the range specification frame.

③ ●

The still image is clipped into the specified range and the still image edit screen reappears.

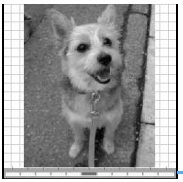
Changing brightness and tone

1 3 on the edit menu screen

2 Change the brightness and tone

■ **Adjusting the brightness:**

① 1 ▶ ◎ **to adjust the brightness**



- Maximizing: 🕮
- Minimizing: MENU

Level

② ●

The still image edit screen reappears.

■ **Changing the tone to monotone or sepia:**

2 **or** 3

The tone is modified and the still image edit screen reappears.

Applying special effects

1 4 on the edit menu screen

2 Select the type of effect

The effect is applied to the still image and the still image edit screen reappears.

Soften : Softens the image.
Spherical: Swells the still image spherically from the center.
Emboss : Turns leaden color and emphases concavity and convexity.
Spiral : Makes the still image look as if it is spiraling out from the center.
Shiny : Attaches a mark as glistening.
Mosaic : Attaches a mosaic.

Reversing/rotating

1 5 on the edit menu screen

2 Reverse/rotate the still image

◎ : Reverse up and down
◎ : Reverse left and right
MENU: Rotate 90 degrees to the left
🕮: Rotate 90 degrees to the right

3 Press ●

The still image edit screen reappears.

Overlaying a frame

- Frames registered by default ☛P328

1 6 on the edit menu screen

The same size frames as the still image being edited are listed.

- Images set as frame option in Edit Detail Info are displayed even if their size differs from that of the still image edited.

2 Select a frame

3 Check the still image ▶ ●

The still image edit screen reappears.

- Switching frames: ◎
- Rotating a frame 180 degrees: MENU

Pasting stamps

- Stamps registered by default ☛P329

1 7 on the edit menu screen

The smaller size stamps than the still image being edited are listed.

- Images set as stamp option in Edit Detail Info and stamps preset by default are displayed even if their size is larger than that of still image edited.

2 Select a stamp

The selected stamp is displayed in the center of the screen.

3 ◎ to move the stamp ▶ ●

A beep sound is heard and the stamp is pasted.

- You can paste stamp in another location continuously.

- Deleting all the pasted stamps: MENU
- The volume of a beep sound depends on Volume Setting.

4 Press 🕮

The still image edit screen reappears.

Pasting characters Paste Text

1 8 on the edit menu screen

2 Select each item to set

Text: Enters the text (up to 40 one-byte or 20 two-byte characters).

Font type : Sets the text type.
Font size : Sets the text size.
Font color : Sets the text color.
Font border color :
Sets the text bordering color.
Background color :
Sets the text background color.
Paste method :
If ***By block*** is set, text is pasted at the same time. If ***By character*** is set, text can be pasted on a different position by character.

3 📖

The text (in case of ***By character*** set for ***Paste method***, the first character) is displayed in the center of the screen.

4 ◉ to move the text ▶ ⊙

A beep sound is heard and text is pasted.
- You can paste text in another location continuously.

- When ***By character*** is set for ***Paste method***, each pressing of ⊙ pastes each character. When the last character is pasted, the first character appears.
- Deleting all the pasted text: MENU
- The volume of a beep sound depends on Volume Setting.

5 Press 📖

The still image edit screen reappears.

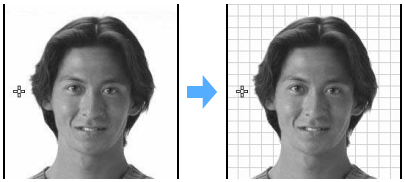
Cutting a desired section out

You can select a color and cut the section of the similar color.

1 9 on the edit menu screen

2 ◉ to place ✣ to the color to cut and ⊙

The section with a similar color as the color at ✣ is cut out.



- You can cut another area continuously.

3 Press 📖

The still image edit screen reappears.

Limiting file size for saving

You can limit the file size to a size below 9,000 bytes for ***Msg attach:Small*** and a size below 500 Kbytes for ***Msg attach:Large*** for saving.

1 O on the edit menu screen ▶ Select a size

The image is saved as a new image with a size below the specified size in the same folder.
- Still images with a size larger than 352 x 288 cannot be set as ***Msg attach:Small***.

Adjusting brightness and tone balance

- Adjusting may not have much effect depending on the still image.

1 📖 on the still image edit screen

The still image adjustment mode is activated and the current adjustment mode is indicated in the upper right of the screen.

2 ◉ to switch the adjustment mode

Close-up :
Makes appropriate adjustment for images such as still objects and plants.
Near view :
Makes appropriate adjustment for the background.
Distant view :
Gives vivid brightness and contrast to a landscape image.
Beautiful skin :
Gives an effect to make the skin look white and smooth on a portrait image.
Tanned :
Gives an effect to make the skin look tanned on a portrait image.
Pale : Gives an effect to make the skin look pale on a portrait image.
Drunk : Gives an effect to make the skin look ruddy on a portrait image.

• The adjustment mode can also be selected by pressing MENU and 1 to 7.

3 ◎ to adjust the level

• Maximizing : ✉
• Minimizing : 📧

4 Press ●

The still image edit screen reappears.

Setting the operating conditions of images

Settings (My Picture)

Default View format: Display 12 icons
Display title: Yes
Display number: Yes Display comments: Yes
Scale up image: No Sound effect: Yes
Auto scroll mode: No

1 ◎1 ▶ MENU 4

2 Select each item to set

View format :
The thumbnails appear when setting to ***Display 12 icons***, and the title display appears when setting to ***List view***.

Display title :
Sets whether to show a display name on the image display screen.

Display number :
Sets whether to display the number of images on the image display screen.

Display comments :
Sets whether to display comments on the image display screen.

Scale up image :
Sets whether to scale up an image smaller than the display area by maintaining its aspect ratio when displaying it.
• Even when set to ***Yes***, the image is not scaled up in case of the full-screen display.

Sound effect :
Sets whether to play effect sounds set for images when an image is displayed.

Auto scroll mode :
Sets whether the auto scroll is enabled when 📧 is pressed on the image display screen.

3 Press 📖

INFORMATION

● In the image list and image display screen, press MENU and then select ***Settings***.

Menu 52

Playing video/i-motion

i-motion

You can play video/i-motion saved in ***i-motion*** of Data Box in FOMA terminal.

• Video/i-motion files (MP4 files) with an image size from 48 x 48 to 320 x 240 can be played.

1 ◎2 ▶ Select a folder

The following video/i-motion files are stored in each folder:

Camera :
Videos recorded with Movie Camera or Chara-den and sounds recorded with Sound Recorder and movie memos

i-mode :
i-motion downloaded from sites or i-motion Mail

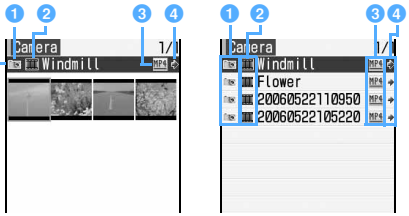
Preinstalled :
Videos preinstalled by default

Data transfer :
Video/i-motion files received by data communication

Album :
Videos/i-motion files moved from other folders
• Not displayed by default. To create ☛P262
• You can enter any album name in creating.

2 Highlight a video/i-motion file

Thumbnail display **Title display**



Display name and icons of the data at cursor

Video/i-motion list

1 Originated

: Preinstalled
: Camera
: Chara-den
: i-mode
: Data transfer
: Videophone

2 Replay restriction

: No restriction
: Restriction on the number of times
: Restriction on expiration
: Restriction on period

❸ **File types**

MP4 : MP4　　MP4 : MP4 with bookmark

❹ **File restriction**

(in blue) : Without file restriction

(in gray) : With file restriction

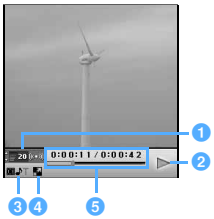
- Each time you press , thumbnail display and title display are switched.
- Sounds recorded with Sound Recorder or video/i-motion only with sound (i-motion without image such as singer's vocals) is displayed as and video/i-motion with the UIM operation restriction function set is displayed as in the thumbnail display.
- Display name and other items can be modified. ☛P264

■ **Sending mail with video/i-motion attached (i-motion Mail): Highlight a video/i-motion file ▶**

The mail composition screen with the video/i-motion attached is displayed.

- Video/i-motion that can be attached to mail ☛P196

3 Press



The video/i-motion is played.

❶ **Play volume**: Indicates the current volume.

❷ **Playing status**

: in play　: in stop

: in pause

❸ **File types**

: only image　: only sound

: only text　: image + sound

: image + text　: sound + text

: image + sound + text

❹ **Enlargement/reduction**

: enlarged

: reduced

No icon:

Displayed at the same magnification

- Whether to enlarge or not can be set in Settings.

❺ **Playing duration** : Indicates the current playing time/full duration in numeric and bar.

- In case ***Size adjustment*** is set to ***Normal*** in Settings, a confirmation message appears when trying to replay the video reduced. Press .
- For video/i-motion files with a bookmark set, a confirmation screen asking whether to play from the bookmark position is displayed. If you select ***Yes***, video/i-motion is played from the bookmark position and if you select ***No***, video/i-motion is played from the beginning.
- The following operations are available while playing video/i-motion:

: Pause/replay, Play from the beginning (after stopping)

: Adjust volume

: Stop

: Play at fast speed

: Rewind and play

: Return to the list

■ **Setting a bookmark: During playback, at the position to set a bookmark ▶ Select *Yes***

- The number of the bookmark to be set is only one in all the video/i-motion of FOMA terminal. If a bookmark is already set, it is discarded and the new bookmark is set.
- Playing continuously:
- Canceling the bookmark: Stop the playback and
- You cannot set in i-motion whose replay restriction is set. In addition, when playing from the phonebook registration screen, mail composition screen, setting screen for sound and display and i-αppli screen, a bookmark cannot be set.

■ **Playing horizontally:**

- Each time you press, playing horizontally and vertically are switched.
- For video/i-motion with the ticker, switching is unavailable.

INFORMATION

● When saving video/i-motion, acquisition of thumbnail images may not be available due to the effect of other functions. Such video/i-motion is displayed as in thumbnail display.

When the replay restriction is set

A confirmation screen is displayed before playback starts. Replay restriction types and contents to check are as follows:

■ **Restriction on the number of times**

Status	Description
Playback counts remain	***Available to replay x (x/all) time(s). Play?*** is displayed. To play, select ***Yes***; to stop, select ***No***.
Maximum number of plays reached	***This data can no longer be replayed. Delete?*** is displayed. To delete, select ***Yes***; to cancel, select ***No***.

■ **Restriction on expiration**

Status	Description
Within expiration	***Available to replay until year/month/date hour: minutes. Play?*** is displayed. To play, select ***Yes***; to stop, select ***No***.
After expiration	***Replay period has expired. Delete?*** is displayed. To delete, select ***Yes***; to cancel, select ***No***.

■ **Restriction on period**

Status	Description
Within period	***Available to replay from year/month/date hour: minutes to year/month/date hour: minutes. Play?*** is displayed. To play, select ***Yes***; to stop, select ***No***.
Before period	***Replay period has not yet started.*** is displayed. Press ○ to return to the video/i-motion list.
After period	***Replay period has expired. Delete?*** is displayed. To delete, select ***Yes***; to cancel, select ***No***.

- You can check remaining playback counts, replay expiration and playback period in View Detail Info.
- Even if you change the date and time, expiration time and period of restriction cannot be changed.
- The date and time information may be reset if the battery pack is removed from FOMA terminal for an extended period of time. If this happens, i-motion with a replay restriction on expiration or period cannot be played.

Setting video/i-motion to the standby display or phonebook data

- Video/i-motion without an image, i-motion whose replay restriction is set and i-motion whose image size is beyond 320 x 240 cannot be set as the standby display.
- Video/i-motion can be set for the phonebook, Movie ringtone (Chaku-motion) or incoming image when the image size is 128 x 96 (Sub-QCIF) or 176 x 144 (QCIF). However, only the video/i-motion with only image can be set for the phonebook or incoming image.
- The video/i-motion for which ***Available*** is set for ring tone and receive display settings in detail information can be set as Movie ringtone and incoming image. However, the setting is unavailable for the video/i-motion files sent back to your terminal after transferred to a PC or another FOMA terminal using infrared communication or the data link software.

1 ○ 2 ▶ **Select a folder**

2 **Highlight a video/i-motion file** ▶ MENU 2

3 **Select each item to set**

■ **Setting to the standby display:** 1 ▶ **Select *Yes***
- If zooming is available for the video/i-motion, select ***Yes(Same size)*** to maintain the image size or select ***Yes(Large size)*** to enlarge it to the screen size.
- If the i-αppli standby display has already been set, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to cancel it continuously.
- Playing the video/i-motion set as the standby display ☛P111

■ **Adding to the phonebook:** 2
- Registering entries to the phonebook ☛P87

■ **Updating and registering to the registered phonebook:** 3 ▶ **Select phonebook data**
- If video/i-motion has already been set, it is replaced by the selected video/i-motion.

■ **Setting as Movie ringtone:** 4 ▶ 1 **to** 6

■ **Setting as memory ring alert (call, mail):**
① 4 ▶ 7 **or** 8
② **Select the phonebook data**
③ **Check the content** ▶ ▭
- If any alert has already been set, it is replaced by the selected video/i-motion.
- For entering the phonebook No., follow Step 3 of "Editing saved phonebook entries". ☛P97

■ **Setting as incoming image (voice call, videophone call):** 5 ▶ 1 **or** 2
- If an incoming image has already been set, it is replaced by the selected video/i-motion.

INFORMATION

● Some video/i-motion files may not be set as the standby display and other items.

Editing video/i-motion

You can edit video/i-motion saved in ***i-motion***.

- The following video/i-motion can be edited:
  - The video shot with your terminal
  - The video/i-motion without file restriction or replay restriction except the video shot with your terminal
- Video/i-motion files registered by default cannot be edited. In addition, some video/i-motion cannot be edited depending on the file format.

Clipping a still image Capture

You can specify any position while playing video/i-motion and clip as a still image (Capture).

- Tickers are not displayed in the captured still image.
- The size of the still image is the same as that of displayed video/i-motion.

1 ◉ 2 ▶ **Select a folder**

2 **Select a video/i-motion file**

The selected video/i-motion is played.

3 MENU 3 **at a desired position to capture**

- Retrying the capturing: MENU ▶ Select ***Yes***

4 **Check the image** ▶ 📖

The still image is captured and saved in ***Camera*** folder of ***Image*** (My Picture).

- Capturing continuously: ◉ ▶ Repeat Step 3 to 4

■ **Sending mail with the captured still image attached:** ✉

The captured still image is saved in ***Camera*** folder in ***Image*** (My Picture) and the mail composition screen with the still image attached is displayed.

- If the file size of still image is below 9,000 bytes, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to paste in the text field. Select ***Yes*** to paste in the mail message and select ***No*** to attach to mail.

Clipping a part of video/i-motion Custom Edit

You can clip a part of video/i-motion from the beginning to the desired position.

1 ◉ 2 ▶ **Select a folder**

2 **Highlight a video/i-motion file** ▶ MENU 4 1

The custom edit mode is activated and ▮▮ is displayed below the playing duration.

- When tickers are inserted in video/i-motion, a screen indicating that tickers may be deleted is displayed. Select ***Yes*** to activate the custom edit mode. In this case, tickers may be deleted depending on the clipping position.

3 ◉ **(start position)** ▶ ◉ **at the position ending the clipping (end position)**

Current file size/ Maximum file size

- Press clr/クリア to retry the operation after pressing ◉ (start position). Press MENU to cancel clipping.
- If you have played until the end without pressing ◉ (end position), clipping is terminated automatically. In this case, the end position is set before the end of file a little.
- In case the size of video/i-motion file exceeds 490 Kbytes, clipping ends automatically when reaching 490 Kbytes regardless of the limit size.

■ **Setting the limit of clipping size:**

- This setting is available only when the original file size is larger than 290 Kbytes.

① MENU **in the screen before pressing ◉ (start position)**

② **Select *Msg attachment: S* (290 Kbytes), *Msg attachment: L* (490 Kbytes) or *No settings* (the size of the original file)**

- When the file size during clipping has reached the set clipping size, clipping ends automatically.
- When the original size of file exceeds 490 Kbytes, ***No settings*** is not available.

4 Enter the display name (up to 36 characters regardless of one- or two-byte) ▶

The clipped video/i-motion is saved as new data in the same folder as the original video/i-motion.

■ **Playing video/i-motion:**

■ **Sending mail with video/i-motion attached:**

The clipped video/i-motion is saved and the mail composition screen with the video/i-motion attached is displayed.

- Video/i-motion that can be attached to mail ☛P196

Clipping by specifying the file size Edit by Size

You can clip a part of video/i-motion from the beginning up to the specified file size.

- The file size which you can specify is from 10 to 490 Kbytes. However, the maximum size varies depending on the video/i-motion.

1 ▶ Select a folder

2 Highlight a video/i-motion file ▶ MENU 4 2

- When tickers are inserted in video/i-motion, a screen indicating that tickers may be deleted is displayed. Select ***Yes*** to activate the edit by size mode. In this case, tickers may be deleted depending on the clipping position.

3 Enter the size to clip

■ **Settings to the size that can be attached to mail:**

- This setting is available only when the original file size is larger than 290 Kbytes.

① MENU

② **Select *Msg attachment S* (290 Kbytes) or *Msg attachment L* (490 Kbytes)**

- When ***Msg attachment S*** is selected, the clip size is set to "290". When ***Msg attachment L*** is selected, the size is set to "490".

4 Enter the display name (up to 36 characters regardless of one- or two-byte) ▶

The clipped video/i-motion is saved as new data in the same folder as the original video/i-motion.

■ **Playing video/i-motion:**

■ **Sending mail with video/i-motion attached:**

The clipped video/i-motion is saved and the mail composition screen with the video/i-motion attached is displayed.

- Video/i-motion that can be attached to mail ☛P196

Inserting tickers Edit Ticker

- The number of tickers inserted differs depending on video/i-motion (up to 10).
- The contents of tickers already inserted cannot be changed. In case of inserting a new ticker, tickers already inserted are all deleted.
- Video/i-motion with inserted tickers cannot be set for Movie ringtone (Chaku-motion).

1 ▶ Select a folder

2 Highlight a video/i-motion file ▶ MENU 4 3 1

- If tickers are already inserted, a confirmation screen asking whether to delete and edit tickers is displayed. If ***Yes*** is selected, all tickers inserted already are deleted.

■ **Deleting tickers: MENU 4 3 2 ▶ Select *Yes***

All tickers inserted are deleted. Go to Step 9.

3 Select each item to set

Time interval to show :

Set to ***User specified*** to specify a desired position to insert the ticker.

Specify the number of tickers when setting to ***Regular interval***. Tickers of the number specified are inserted at regular intervals within video/i-motion replay duration.

Tickers :

Enters the number of tickers (1 to 10) when setting ***Time interval to show*** to ***Regular interval***.

4

- When ***Time interval to show*** is set to ***User specified***, a confirmation message appears and is displayed below the playing duration. Go to Step 5.
- If ***Regular interval*** has been set for ***Time interval to show***, go to Step 7.

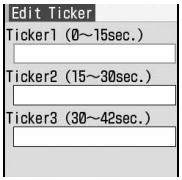
5 ● to start the replay ▶ ● at the ticker insertion position

Playing is not interrupted. Each time you press ●, the inserting position of tickers is set.

- Ending the insertion position setting: 📖
- When replay is started, the first inserting position is set at the beginning.
- When playback of a video/i-motion file ends or you have set up to 9 tickers, the settings are automatically ended.
- To display one ticker from the beginning to the end: ● to start the replay ▶ 📖

6 Select *Yes*

7 Select the ticker entry field ▶ Enter characters (up to 40 one-byte or 20 two-byte characters)



■ **Decorating tickers:**
① Highlight a ticker ▶ ✉
② Select each item to set

Ticker 1* to *10 :
Displays characters entered on the ticker edit screen. You can enter characters.

Font color :
Sets the text color. When it is set to ***Default***, white is set.
- The font color has no effect on pictograms.

Background color :
Sets the background color of tickers. When it is set to ***Default***, black is set.

Scroll :
Sets a text scrolling.
- Setting ***Scroll in*** gradually bring characters into view.
- Setting ***Scroll out*** gradually sends characters out of view.
- Setting ***Scroll in & out*** brings into view characters and sends them out of view.
- When setting to ***None***, characters cannot be scrolled.

Scroll direction :
Sets the scroll direction when set to other than ***None***.

Word alignment :
Sets the display position of characters.

Font size :
Sets the size of characters.

Under line :
Sets whether to underline the characters.

Blink :
Sets whether to blink the characters.

③ 📖

8 📖

- In case that the file size of video/i-motion without ticker is 300 Kbytes or less, if the file size of video/i-motion with ticker exceeds 300 Kbytes, a message appears meaning that the ***Msg attachment S*** size is exceeded. Press ● to insert the tickers anyway.

9 Enter the display name (up to 36 characters regardless of one- or two-byte) ▶ 📖

The video/i-motion with tickers is saved as new data in the same folder as the original video/i-motion.

■ **Replaying the video/i-motion:** 📼

■ **Sending mail with video/i-motion attached:** ✉

The video/i-motion with tickers is saved and the mail composition screen with video/i-motion attached is displayed.
- Video/i-motion that can be attached to mail ☛P196

Setting the operating conditions of video/i-motion

Settings (i-motion)

Default View thumbnails: Yes
Size adjustment: Normal
Repeat play: ON Backlight: Always on
Volume: Level20

1 ● 2 ▶ MENU 5

2 Select each item to set

View thumbnails :
The thumbnails appear when setting to ***Yes***, and the title display appears when setting to ***No***.

Size adjustment :

If ***Zoom*** is set, video/i-motion is enlarged/reduced and displayed with aspect ratio of the image held in accordance with display area when the display area and the size of video/i-motion to play are unsuitable.

Setting ***Normal*** does not zoom in/out. However, when video/i-motion with a size larger than the display area is played, it is reduced to fit the area by maintaining the aspect ratio.

Repeat play :

Sets whether to repeat play while playing an album.

Backlight :

When ***Always on*** is set, the display light is always on while displaying the video/i-motion list and playing. When set to ***Terminal settings***, it depends on Display Light Setting (☛P118).

Volume :

Sets the sound volume during play.

3 Press

INFORMATION

● In the video/i-motion list, press MENU and select ***Settings***.

Chara-den

Chara-den is a character to display on the other party's screen instead of your self image when you use the videophone. By pressing dial keys during a videophone call, you can move the character and make it express a feeling casually. In addition, you can set Chara-den to the standby display and have Chara-den make specific actions on standby or for missed calls. The displayed still image and video of Chara-den can be shot and saved.

- Some Chara-den can move their mouths in time with the sounds from the microphone.
- Chara-den can be downloaded from sites and stored.
- Action of Chara-den consists of ***Action*** (whole acts) and ***Action of Parts*** (partial acts). Some Chara-den have only either or no action.

Action: *喜ぶ* **(Joy)**

Action of parts: *足 ジャンプ* **(Jump)**

Menu 54

Displaying Chara-den

Chara-den

- Chara-den registered by default ☛P329

1 4 ▶ Select a folder

The following Chara-den is saved in each folder:

i-mode :

Chara-den downloaded from sites

Preinstalled :

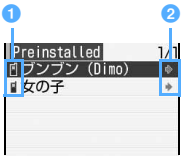
Chara-den preinstalled by default

Folder :

Chara-den moved from other folders

- Not displayed by default. To create ☛P262
- You can enter any name of folder in creating.

2 Highlight a Chara-den image



Chara-den list

1 Originated

: i-mode

: Preinstalled

2 File restriction

(in gray): With file restriction

- Display name and other items can be modified. ☛P264

■ **Making a videophone call using Chara-den:**

① Highlight a Chara-den image ▶ ☎

② Select the phone number field ▶ Enter the phone number ▶ ☎

- Phone number can be entered from the phonebook by pressing 📖.
- Press MENU to set the conditions and make a videophone call. ☛P53
- Operating procedure of the videophone ☛P72
- Using Chara-den while making a videophone call ☛P77

■ **Setting Chara-den to the videophone substitute image: Highlight a Chara-den image ▶ [Mail]**

- You can also set by holding down [Camera] for over a second in the Chara-den display screen.

■ **Setting Chara-den to the standby display:**

① Highlight a Chara-den image ▶ [MENU] [4]

② Set the type of action and the interval for action ▶ [Address]

- For the contents of the setting, follow Step ② to ③ in "Setting action of Chara-den". ☛P110

③ Select *Yes(Same size)* or *Yes(Large size)*

- If the i-αppli standby display has already been set, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to cancel it continuously.

3 Press [Camera]

The Chara-den image is displayed.

Action mode
ACTION : Action
PARTS : Action of parts

- Pressing a dial key performs action in accordance with the number.
- Stopping the action: [0]

■ **Switching between large size and same size display: [Camera] for large size and [Video] for same size**

■ **Switching Chara-den images:**

① [MENU] [9] [1] ▶ Select a folder

② Select a Chara-den image

■ **Displaying the action list: [Mail]**

The action list for the current action mode is displayed.

- Selecting an action activates the Chara-den.
- Highlight an action and press [MENU] to confirm the details.

■ **Switching between *Action* and *Action of Parts*: [Mail] (for over a second)**

- Each time you hold down, ***Action*** and ***Action of parts*** are switched.

INFORMATION

● Chara-den cannot be edited or saved by attaching mail or data transfer out of FOMA terminal.

Recording Chara-den

Record Chara-den

- Still images and videos shot are saved in the same file format as still images and videos shot with the camera. Image file saving format ☛P146

1 [Camera] [4] ▶ Select a folder

2 Highlight a Chara-den image ▶ [Address]

The Chara-den recording screen appears.

3 [Camera] to switch the recording types

- You can also switch by pressing [1] to [4] after pressing [MENU] [3].

Recording type

Action mode ☛P259

Video + Voice :
Records Chara-den with sounds from the microphone. For Chara-den that reacts with sounds from the microphone, the mouth in the image moves in time with the sounds.

Only video (w/ mic) :
Records only the image. The microphone is only valid for Chara-den that reacts with the sounds and moves its mouth in time with the sounds from the microphone. Sounds are not recorded.

Only video (w/o mic) :
Records only the image. Microphone becomes invalid.

Still image :
Shoots still images.

- Icon definitions of other than recording types or action modes ☛P145
- The size of images or the size restrictions of still images cannot be changed.
- Quality or size restrictions of video can be changed in Still Image Setting/Video Setting of Record Chara-den. ☛P260

■ **Switching Chara-den images:**

[MENU] [1] [1] ▶ Select a folder ▶ Select a Chara-den image

4 Execute an action to shoot ▶ ●

In case of shooting still images, the shutter sound is heard and the still image is saved. In case of recording videos, the shutter sound is heard and the shooting is started. Recording is stopped by pressing [Replay] or if the size of video file exceeds the limit and the video is saved after the shutter sound is heard.

- The still image/video recorded is saved in ***Camera*** folder of ***Image*** (My Picture) or ***i-motion***.
- Press ● during recording video to pause. Press ● to restart recording.
- Actions can be executed during recording the video as well.

■ **When *Auto save* is set to *No* in Still Image Setting or Video Setting**

A confirmation screen appears. The following operations are available on the confirmation screen:

- ● : Save the still image/video
- [i-αppli] : Cancel (Delete the still image/video without saving)
- [Mail] : Compose mail
- [Replay] : Replay (only video)

■ **Checking the saved still image/video immediately: [Replay] ▶ Select the still image/video**

- After checking, press [クリア] twice to return to the Chara-den recording screen.

INFORMATION

- For the notice for recording, refer to INFORMATION of "Shooting still images with Camera" (☛P148) and INFORMATION of "Recording videos with Movie Camera". (☛P150).
- Chara-den that reacts with the sounds from the microphone may not make motions correctly depending on the volume of the sounds from the microphone.
- When there is not enough available storage space to save, or you have exceeded the maximum allowable number, delete unnecessary image/video files following the instruction on the screen.

Setting the operation of still image/video recording

Still Image Setting/Video Setting

Default

- Still Image Setting
  Quality: Standard Shutter sound: Shutter sound1
  Rec.File Restriction: File unrestricted
  Auto save: Yes
  Display size: Large
  Set lighting: Terminal settings
- Video Setting
  Quality: STD (Standard)
  Size restriction: Msg attach:Small
  Shutter sound: Shutter sound1
  Rec.File Restriction: File unrestricted
  Auto save: Yes
  Display size: Large Set lighting: Terminal settings

1 [MENU] [4] on the Chara-den recording screen

2 Select each item to set

Quality **(Still Image Setting)** :

Sets the quality of still images to shoot. Higher quality requires a larger size of still image files.

Quality **(Video Setting)** :

Sets the quality of video to shoot. Higher quality requires a larger size of video files.

Size restriction **(Video Setting only)** :

Sets the size restrictions of the video to record. When the size of video file exceeds the limit while recording, recording is automatically stopped.

Shutter sound :

Selects the shutter sound from shutter sounds 1 to 5.

- Selected sound is played.

Rec.File Restriction :

When you send still images/videos to the other party's mobile phone via mail attachment or data transfer, you can set whether to restrict sending the still images/videos to other mobile phones from the received party's mobile phone.

- Downloaded Chara-den with ***File restricted*** preset cannot be set to ***File unrestricted***.

Auto save :

When ***Auto save*** is set to ***Yes***, the shot still image/video is automatically saved. When setting ***No***, a confirmation screen is displayed after recording.

Display size :

Specifies whether to enlarge Chara-den or to display in the same size.

- The setting takes effect the next time the recording screen is displayed.

Set lighting :

When ***Always on*** is set, the display light is always on while recording Chara-den. If you set ***Terminal settings***, it depends on Display Light Setting (☛P118).

3 Press [Replay]

INFORMATION

● If a still image/video is taken from the Chara-den for which file restriction is set in ***Rec.File Restriction*** of detail information (except for the case with ***Rec.File Restriction*** set with your terminal), this still image/video cannot be edited, forwarded or attached to mail.

Setting the operating conditions of Chara-den

Settings (Chara-den)

Default Display size: Large
Set lighting: Terminal settings

1 ● 4 ▶ MENU 4

2 Select each item to set

Display size :
Specifies whether to enlarge Chara-den or to display in the same size.

Set lighting :
When ***Always on*** is set, the display light is always on while displaying the Chara-den list or Chara-den. If you set ***Terminal settings***, it depends on Display Light Setting (☛P118).

3 Press 📖

Menu 53

Playing melodies

Melody

Play melodies saved in ***Melody*** of Data Box in FOMA terminal.

1 ● 3 ▶ Select a folder

The following melodies are saved in each folder:

i-mode :
Melodies downloaded from sites or i-mode Mail

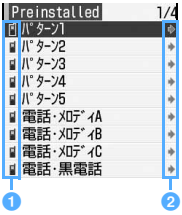
Preinstalled :
Melodies preinstalled in FOMA terminal

Mail Attach Melody :
Melodies for attaching to mail, which are preset by default

Data transfer :
Melodies read by Bar Code Reader or melodies received via data communication

Album :
Melodies moved from other folders
- Not displayed by default. To create ☛P262
- You can enter any album name in creating.

2 Highlight a melody



Melody list

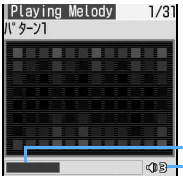
1 Originated
: i-mode
: Data transfer
: Preinstalled

2 File restriction
(in blue) : Without file restriction
(in gray) : With file restriction

- Display name and other items can be modified. ☛P264

■ **Sending mail with melodies attached: Highlight a melody ▶ ✉**
The mail composition screen with the melody attached is displayed.
- If the receiver is other than FOMA D701i, D701iWM, D702i, D901i, D901iS or D902i, the received melody may not be correctly played.
- Melodies that can be attached to mail ☛P196

3 Press ●



The melody is played.

- The following operations are available while playing a melody:
  ●: Adjust volume
  ●: Play the previous/next melody
  クリア/●: Stop

Setting melodies for ring tone

- Melodies in the ***Mail Attach Melody*** folder cannot be set as the ring tone.

1 ○ 3 ▶ **Select a folder**

2 **Highlight a melody** ▶ MENU 2

3 **Select the type of sound to set**

■ **Setting as ring tone for voice call, mail, chat mail, Message R/F or videophone:** 1 **to** 6

■ **Setting as memory ring alert (call, mail):**
① 7 **or** 8 ▶ **Select phonebook data to set**
② **Check the content** ▶ ☎

- If a ring tone has already been set, the ring tone is replaced by the selected melody.
- For entering the phonebook No., follow Step 3 of "Editing saved phonebook entries". ☛P97

Setting the operating conditions of melodies

Settings (Melody)

Default Volume: Level3 Lighting: ON
Lighting pattern: Rhythm (Normal)
Vibrator: OFF
Play position: Play all
Play background: Standard

1 ○ 3 ▶ MENU 5

2 **Select each item to set**

Volume :
Sets the volume in playing melodies.

Lighting :
Sets whether to light keys in playing melodies. ***Lighting pattern*** cannot be set when setting to ***OFF***.

Lighting pattern :
Sets the lighting pattern of keys in playing melodies.

Vibrator :
Sets the vibrator pattern in playing melodies.

Play position :
Specifies whether to play the whole (***Play all***) or part of the melody (***Play portion***) in playing melodies.

Play background :
Sets the image to be displayed on the screen for playing melodies. To set an image in ***Image*** (My Picture), set to ***Select*** and select an image.

3 **Press** ☎

INFORMATION

- In the melody list and melody play screen, press MENU and select ***Settings***.
- Even if ***Sync melody*** is set for the vibrator, it may not be synchronized for some melodies.
- Even if ***Play portion*** is set for play position, partial playing may not be performed for some melodies.

Using the album

You can create albums (folders) in ***Image*** (My Picture), ***i-motion***, ***Melody*** or ***Chara-den*** in Data Box in FOMA terminal and sort out the data. The album data in ***i-motion*** and ***Melody*** can be replayed at one time.

- In ***Chara-den***, the album is referred to as "folder".
- Names of the fixed folder registered by default cannot be changed or deleted.

Creating albums

- Up to 100 albums in ***Image*** (My Picture) and up to 10 albums respectively in ***i-motion***, ***Melody*** or ***Chara-den*** can be created.
- No album is set by default.

Example Creating the album in ***Image*** (My Picture)

1 ○ 1

2 MENU 1

■ **Changing the album name: Highlight the album** ▶ MENU 2

■ **Deleting albums:**
① **Highlight the album** ▶ MENU 3

- When data is saved in the album to delete, enter the terminal security code.

② **Select *Yes***

3 **Enter the album name (up to 20 one-byte or 10 two-byte characters)** ▶ ☎

INFORMATION

- In the folder list of ***i-motion/Melody***, press [MENU] and select ***Create album***.
- In the folder list of ***Chara-den***, press [MENU] and select ***Create folder***.

Moving/copying data to the album

Moving data to the album

You can move data in the fixed folder to an album or move it from album to album.

- Data can be moved between ***Deco-Mail picture*** folder in ***Image*** (My Picture) and other folders as well.
- Data saved in ***Preinstalled*** folder or ***Mail Attach Melody*** folder cannot be moved.

Example Moving data in ***Image*** (My Picture)

1 [○] [1] ▶ **Select a folder**

2 **Highlight data** ▶ [MENU] [5] [1] [1]

■ **Moving selected items:**

① [MENU] [5] [1] [2] ▶ **Select data**

- Each time you press [i-mode], thumbnail display and title display are switched.

② [Back]

■ **Moving all the data in folder:**

[MENU] [5] [1] [3]

3 **Select the destination album** ▶ **Select *Yes***

INFORMATION

- In the video/i-motion list, press [MENU] and select ***Move/Copy*** → ***Move to album*** → ***One item***, ***Selected items*** or ***All items***.
- In the image display screen, press [MENU] and select ***Move/Copy*** → ***Move to album***.
- In the melody list, press [MENU] and select ***Move*** → ***Move to album*** → ***Move one item***, ***Move selected items*** or ***Move all items***. In the melody play screen, press [MENU] and select ***Move*** → ***Move to album*** → ***Move one item*** or ***Move all items***.
- In the Chara-den list, press [MENU] and select ***Move*** → ***One item***, ***Selected items*** or ***All items***. In the Chara-den display screen, press [MENU] and select ***Move***.

Returning album data to the fixed folder

- Operation of returning to the fixed folder is unavailable for Chara-den.

Example Returning album data in ***Image*** (My Picture) to the fixed folder

1 [○] [1] ▶ **Select an album**

2 **Highlight data** ▶ [MENU] [5] [2] [1]

■ **Returning selected items:**

① [MENU] [5] [2] [2] ▶ **Select data**

- Each time you press [i-mode], thumbnail display and title display are switched.

② [Back]

■ **Returning all the data in the album:**

[MENU] [5] [2] [3]

3 **Select *Yes***

INFORMATION

- In the video/i-motion list, press [MENU] and select ***Move/Copy*** → ***Return to folder*** → ***One item***, ***Selected items*** or ***All items***.
- In the image display screen, press [MENU] and select ***Move/Copy*** → ***Return to folder***.
- In the melody list, press [MENU] and select ***Move*** → ***Restore to folder*** → ***One item***, ***Selected items*** or ***All items***. In the melody play screen, press [MENU] and select ***Move*** → ***Restore to folder*** → ***One item*** or ***All items***.
- In ***Deco-Mail picture*** folder, preinstalled images are moved to ***i-mode*** folder by returning data to the fixed folder.

Copying data

- The following data cannot be copied:
  - Created animation, images in ***Item*** folder, images in ***Preinstalled*** folder in ***Image*** (My Picture)
  - i-motion whose replay restriction is set
  - Melody, Chara-den
  - Data set to ***File restricted*** in file restriction
    Note that the data whose file restriction is set to ***File restricted*** with FOMA terminal and data in ***Data transfer*** folder are excluded.

Example Copying data in ***Image*** (My Picture)

1 [○] [1] ▶ **Select a folder**

2 **Highlight data** ▶ [MENU] [5] [3]

The copied data are saved in the same folder as the original data.

INFORMATION

- In the video/i-motion list or image display screen, press MENU and select ***Move/Copy*** → ***Copy***.
- If data copied in the album is returned to the fixed folder, it moves to the same fixed folder as the original data.

Playing the entire album data

You can play i-motion or melody data in an album continuously.

- The fixed folder data registered by default cannot be played.
- i-motion for which replay restrictions are set cannot be played.

1 ○ 2 **for *i-motion*, or** ○ 3 **for *Melody***

2 Highlight an album ▶ MENU 4

- The following operations are available while the video/i-motion album is played:
  ○: Pause/replay ○: Adjust volume
  /: Play the previous or next data item
  : Stop
- The following operations are available while the melody album is played:
  : Adjust volume
  ○: Play the previous/next melody
  /○: Stop

Checking/editing detail information of the data

View/Edit Detail Info

Check the detail information of data. The contents of some information can be changed.

Checking detail information

Example Displaying the image detail information

1 ○ 1 **▶ Select a folder**

2 Highlight an image ▶ MENU 3 1

- Press or to scroll by screen.
- Press to change a part of detail information.

INFORMATION

- In the image display screen, video/i-motion list, Chara-den list, Chara-den display screen, melody list or melody play screen, press MENU and select ***Detail info*** → ***View***.
- In the video/i-motion play screen, press MENU and select ***Detail information***.
- In the Chara-den recording screen, press MENU and select ***View detail info***.

Changing detail information

Example Changing the image detail information

1 ○ 1 **▶ Select a folder**

2 Highlight an image ▶ MENU 3 2

3 Highlight each item to set ▶

INFORMATION

- In the image display screen, video/i-motion list, Chara-den list, Chara-den display screen, melody list or melody play screen, press MENU and select ***Detail info*** → ***Edit***.
- For video/i-motion, Chara-den and melody, selecting ***Back to original*** returns the display name to the original title preset.

Displayed items and their availability

- Depending on the data, some items cannot be changed even when shown as "Changeable" in the list.

● : Changeable ○ : Displayed only — : Not displayed

Displayed item	Image	Video/ i-motion	Chara-den	Melody
Display name	●	●	●	●
Title (Original)/Original title	—	○	○	○
File name	●	●	○	●
Type	○	—	—	—
File restriction	●	●	○	●
Rec. file Restriction	—	—	○	—
Creator	—	●	—	—
Copyright	—	●	—	—
Description	—	●	—	—
Format/File format	○	○	—	○
Sound	—	○	—	—
Display size	○	○	○	—
File size	○	○	○	○
Duration/Playing time	—	○	—	○
Saved date & time	○	○	○	○
Use as frame	●	—	—	—
Use as stamp	●	—	—	—
Comment	●	—	●	—
Ring tone	—	○	—	—
Receive display	—	○	—	—
Replay restriction	—	○	—	—
Originated	○	○	○	○
Transfer for repair	○	—	—	○

Descriptions of displayed items

Display name :
Title to be displayed on FOMA terminal (Up to 36 characters regardless of one- or two-byte are available except for melody, and up to 50 one- or 25 two-byte characters are available for melody when changing).

Title (Original)/Original title :
Original title preset in data

File name :
File name displayed when attaching data to mail (up to 36 one-byte alphanumeric characters, ".", "-" or "_" are available when changing).
- "." cannot be used for the first character of the file name.

Type : Type of image

File restriction :
When you send data to the other party's mobile phone via mail attachment, you can set whether to restrict sending data to other mobile phones from the received party's mobile phone.
- i-motion/melodies downloaded from sites, etc. cannot be changed.

Rec. file Restriction :
Whether or not to set file restriction for the still image/video shot with Record Chara-den

Creator :
Creator's name (up to 256 characters regardless of one- or two-byte are available when changing)
- The name registered in Own Number appears in ***Creator*** when you have recorded video using your FOMA terminal. If the name is not registered in Own Number, ***Creator*** is not set.

Copyright :
The name of the author and the release date of the production (up to 256 characters regardless of one- or two-byte are available when changing)

Description :
Description of video/i-motion (up to 256 characters regardless of one- or two-byte are available when changing)

Format/File format :
File type ("---" for Flash movie)

Sound : Sound data type

Display size :
Display size of data (dot) (not displayed for Flash movie)

File size : The file size of data

Duration/Playing time : Playing time of data

Saved date & time :
Date and time when data was saved

Use as frame :
Classification whether the image can be pasted as frame image
- Images larger than 352 x 288, or merged with item images cannot be set.

Use as stamp :
Classification whether the image can be pasted as stamp image
- Images larger than 240 x 320 or merged with item images cannot be set.

Comment :
Description of data (Up to 100 characters regardless of one- or two-byte are available when changing)

Ring tone :
Classification whether the video/i-motion can be set to ring tone

Receive display :
Classification whether the video/i-motion can be set to incoming image

Replay restriction :
Replay restrictions on video/i-motion

Originated : Origination of data

Transfer for repair :
Classification whether your data can be moved at a DoCoMo's designated repair office when your FOMA terminal is repaired
- Please note that DoCoMo will assume no responsibility for the data loss in case your data cannot be moved or is lost or modified.

INFORMATION

- Even if ***Yes*** is set for ***Use as frame*** or ***Use as stamp*** in the image detail information, images are saved in the original folder and are not displayed in ***Item*** folder.
- ***Ring tone*** is always set to available for the video/sound recorded with the recording type of ***Video*** + ***Voice*** or ***Voice only*** set with your FOMA terminal, or the video/sound clipped from the same video/sound. However, for the video with the display size of 320 x 240 or with an inserted ticker, ***Ring tone*** is not set to available.

Deleting data

- The data saved in ***Preinstalled*** folder of ***Image*** (My Picture), ***i-motion*** or ***Melody*** or in ***Mail Attach Melody*** folder cannot be deleted.

Example Deleting data in ***Image*** (My Picture)

1 ⊙ 1 ▶ **Select a folder**

2 **Highlight the data** ▶ MENU 6 1

■ **Deleting selected items:**

① MENU 6 2 ▶ **Select the data**
- Each time you press ◧, thumbnail display and title display are switched.

② m

■ **Deleting all the data in a folder:**
MENU 6 3 ▶ **Enter the terminal security code**

3 Select *Yes*

INFORMATION

- In the video/i-motion list, melody list or Chara-den list, press MENU and select ***Delete*** → ***One item***, ***Selected items*** or ***All items***.
- In the image display screen or Chara-den display screen, press MENU and select ***Delete***.
- In the melody play screen, press MENU and select ***Delete*** → ***One item*** or ***All items***.
- If data set for the standby display or ring alert are deleted, each setting returns to the default. When data set to the phonebook are deleted, the operation follows the settings of Sound Setting or Mail/Call Image Setting.
- If you delete Created animation, the original images composing Created animation are also deleted.
- In the case where Chara-den, Deco-mail picture or frame registered by default has been deleted, you can download it from the i-mode site "My D-style". ☛P330

Sorting data

Sort

You can change the order of data of the list screen.

Default Sort criteria: Saved date & time
Order: Descending

Example Sorting data in ***Image*** (My Picture)

1 ● 1 ▶ **Select a folder**

2 MENU 7

3 Select each item to set ▶ 📖

Sort criteria : Sets the sorting method.
Order : Sets the sorting order of data.

INFORMATION

- In the video/i-motion list, melody list or Chara-den list, press MENU and select ***Sort***.
- If one-byte and two-byte characters are mixed in the display name, the sorted result may not correspond to Japanese syllabary.

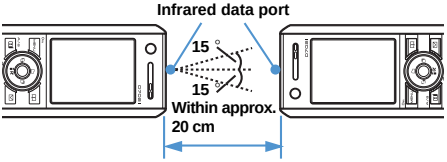
About infrared communication

You can send and receive data to/from other FOMA terminals, mobile phones or PCs provided with an infrared communication function. Also, by using the i-αppli compatible with infrared communication, you can link to devices having an infrared communication function.

- Infrared communication is not available while All Lock, PIM Lock or Self Mode is on.
- Infrared communication and USB connection cannot be performed at the same time.
- Data prohibited from outputting from FOMA terminal cannot be sent/received. Note that the data whose file restriction is set to ***File Restricted*** with the same terminal and data in ***Data transfer*** folder are excluded.
- During infrared communication, ⇌ is displayed on the top of the screen, and the terminal is in data transfer mode (the same status as outside the service area), so phone calls, i-mode connection and data communication are disabled. Also, you cannot switch to other functions by pressing ⏏.
- The infrared communication function of this terminal conforms to IrMC 1.1.
- Even if the terminal of the other party conforms to IrMC 1.1, some data may not be sent/received depending on the data type.
- The data including pictograms may not be displayed correctly when sent to other than i-mode terminals. Even when sending to i-mode terminals, the data including pictogram 2 may not be displayed correctly depending on receiving terminals.

Using infrared communication

The maximum communication range is approximately 20 cm and the angle is within 15 degrees from the center. Keep FOMA terminal pointing at the remote device's infrared data port and do not move it until all the data have been sent or received.



- Infrared communication may not be performed properly in areas of direct sunlight or directly under fluorescent lights.

Notes in receiving the data from the other FOMA terminal via infrared communication

- The folder name that was set by the other terminal may not be taken over even if you receive all items of mail data.
- If you receive mail, usual mail may be stored in the folder for the Message i-αppli in ***Inbox***, ***Outbox*** or ***Unsent messages***.
- With reception of all items of bookmark data, the data you will receive covers the entire of the folder created by the other terminal.
- Bookmarks received from the terminal other than D702i may be stored in the top folder.
- Images, video/i-motion or melodies received from the terminal other than D702i may be saved as notes.

Notes on sending the data in D702i to the other FOMA terminal via infrared communication

- The receiver may not save images, video/i-motion or melodies because of the difference in the data size limit.

Sending data by infrared communication

Send Ir Data

You can send data by selecting each item to send one at a time or by sending all items of the specified function data at once. The following data are available for sending:

Data type	Remarks
Phonebook*1	• Phonebook data for which Secret Attribute is set can be sent by sending one item only when Secret Mode is on. • Own Number data are also sent when sending all is performed. • Phonebook data cannot be sent when Keypad Dial Lock is on. • In ***Ph.book image sending*** of Data Transfer Setting, when sending all, it is possible to set whether to send still images saved in the phonebook data together. • Images saved in the phonebook data may not be received depending on the recipient.
Schedule*1	• Schedule data for which Secret Attribute is set can be sent by sending one item only when Secret Mode is on. • Date and Time Setting is required.
Received mail*1 **Sent mail*1** **Unsent mail*1**	• Attached data in the text (link items that activate i-αppli) are deleted.
Note*1	———
Bookmark*1	• Folder settings may not be reflected depending on the recipient. • When sending all, bookmarks are sent from the end of the list.
Image	• A display name of up to 18 one-byte or 9 two-byte characters can be sent. Characters that exceed the maximum number will be deleted. • Data of over 500 KB cannot be sent.
Video/ i-motion	• A display name of up to 18 one-byte or 9 two-byte characters can be sent. Characters that exceed the maximum number will be deleted.
Melody	• A title of up to 50 one-byte or 25 two-byte characters can be sent.
Own Number	• Images may not be received depending on the recipient.

*1 Sending all is enabled.

- Data may not be transferred correctly when communication is performed with the terminals other than D702i or the infrared communication devices. Items that cannot be saved by the receiver side are discarded.

Sending single data item

Example Sending a phonebook entry

1 Make FOMA terminal of the other party ready to receive

2 Search the phonebook ▶ Highlight the phonebook data to send ▶ MENU 7 1

3 Select *Yes*

- To cancel Send Ir Data: ⏻

INFORMATION

- In the sent mail list, unsent mail list or received mail list, press MENU and select ***Send Ir data*** → ***Selected item***.
- In the bookmark list or the list of notes, press MENU and select ***Send Ir data*** → ***Send***.
- In the image list, video/i-motion list or melody list, press MENU and select ***Send Ir data***.
- In the day view screen of the schedule, press MENU and select ***Infrared*** → ***Send Ir Data***.
- In the details screen of Own Number, press MENU and select ***Send own number***.

Sending all data items

You can send all the data of phonebook, schedule, mail, note and bookmark via infrared communication.

- To send all the data, the same authentication password must be entered both by the sender and receiver. Decide a 4-digit authentication password from 0000 to 9999 in advance.

1 Make FOMA terminal of the other party ready to receive

2 MENU 6 2 1

3 Select the data type ▶ Enter the terminal security code

4 Enter the 4-digit authentication password

The entered authentication password is masked with "✳".

5 Select *Yes*

- To cancel Send Ir Data: ⏻

INFORMATION

- In the bookmark list, sent mail list, unsent mail list, received mail list or the list of notes, press MENU and select ***Send Ir data*** → ***Send all***.
- In the folder list of the bookmark, sent mail, unsent mail or received mail, press MENU and select ***Send all Ir Data***.
- In the phonebook list, press MENU and select ***IrDA/UIM*** (***IrDA/Phone mem*** in the UIM phonebook) → ***Send all Ir data***.
- In the calendar screen or day view screen for schedule, press MENU and select ***Infrared*** → ***Send all Ir data***.
- When all the data items are sent, the order of data may change in receiver's side.

Receiving data by infrared communication

Receive Ir Data

You can receive data by selecting each item to receive one at a time or by receiving all items of the specified function data at once. Received data are saved directly in FOMA terminal, or are saved in FOMA terminal after the data are saved temporarily in ***INBOX*** of Receive Ir Data and checked. The following data are available for receiving:

Data type	Storage after receiving
Phonebook*1	Phonebook
Schedule*1	Scheduler
Received mail*1	***Inbox***
Sent mail*1	***Outbox***
Unsent mail*1	***Unsent messages***
Note*1	Notepad
Bookmark*1	Bookmark
Image	***Data transfer*** folder of ***Image*** (My Picture)
Video/i-motion	***Data transfer*** folder of ***i-motion***
Melody	***Data transfer*** folder of ***Melody***
Own Number	Phonebook

*1 Receiving all is enabled.

- Received data are saved in order as follows:
  - Phonebook data and Own Number data are saved in the smallest free phonebook No.
  - Schedules and mails are saved in order of date/time.
  - Notes are saved in order of reception.
  - Bookmarks, images, video/i-motion and melodies are added in the top of the list.
- If you receive all phonebook items, Own Number data except your phone number is overwritten.
- Phonebook data cannot be received when Keypad Dial Lock is set.
- Date and Time Setting is required for receiving a schedule.
- When invalid characters are included in the received data, they are replaced by blank spaces or cut away.

Receiving single data item

- You cannot receive data that exceed 512 Kbytes.

1 MENU 6 2 2 1

The receive method selection screen appears.

2 1 or 2

Confirm & save :

Received data are saved temporarily in ***INBOX***. Cannot be selected if ***INBOX*** has no free space. After receiving is finished, the ***INBOX*** data list appears.

Save :

Received data is saved in FOMA terminal. After receiving is finished, the receive method selection screen reappears without displaying ***INBOX***.

3 Select *Yes*

Receiving standby condition is activated.

4 Send single data item on the sender side

When ***Confirm & save*** is selected in Step 2, ***INBOX*** screen appears after receiving data.
For saving method of data, follow the procedure from Step 2 of "Saving received data". ☛P269
When ***Save*** is selected, the receive method selection screen reappears after receiving data.
・To cancel Receive Ir Data: ⓒ

Receiving all data items

You can receive all the data of phonebook, schedule, mail, note and bookmark via infrared communication.
・To receive all the data, the same authentication password must be entered both by the receiver and sender. Decide a 4-digit authentication password from 0000 to 9999 in advance.

1 MENU 6 2 2 2

The all receive method selection screen is displayed.

2 1 or 2

Confirm & save :
Received data are saved temporarily in ***INBOX***. Cannot be selected if ***INBOX*** has no free space. After receiving the data, the ***INBOX*** data list is displayed. ***Add*** or ***Overwrite*** can be selected when saving from ***INBOX***.

Overwrite :
Received data is overwritten and saved in FOMA terminal. After receiving is finished, the all receive method selection screen reappears without displaying ***INBOX***.

・Note that the original data in FOMA terminal are all deleted by overwriting and replaced by new data.
・If you select ***Confirm & save***, go to Step 4.

3 Select *Yes* ▶ Enter the terminal security code

4 Enter the 4-digit authentication password

・The entered authentication password is masked with "✳".

5 Select *Yes*

Receiving standby condition is activated.

6 Send all the data on the sender side

When selecting ***Confirm & save*** in Step 2, ***INBOX*** screen appears after receiving is finished.
For saving method of data, follow the procedure from Step 2 of "Saving received data". ☛P269
When selecting ***Overwrite***, the all receive method selection screen reappears after reception.
・To cancel Receive Ir Data: ⓒ

INFORMATION

● Receiving time differs depending on the type or number of received data. It may take time to receive the data of large capacity or a large number.
● For precautions of saving data, refer to INFORMATION in "Saving received data". ☛P270

Saving received data

You can save data stored in ***INBOX*** temporarily to FOMA terminal.
・If ***Confirm & save*** is selected when receiving a single data item or receiving all the data items, ***INBOX*** screen appears automatically after finishing receiving.
・The data saved in FOMA terminal are deleted from ***INBOX***.

1 MENU 6 2 2 3

2 Select the data

/ : single item/multiple items of phonebook data
/ : single item/multiple items of bookmark data
/ : single item/multiple items of mail data
/ : single item/multiple items of schedule data
/ : single item/multiple items of notes
: image
: video/i-motion
: melody

■ **Deleting one item: Highlight the data ▶ MENU 2 ▶ Select *Yes***

■ **Deleting all items: MENU 3 ▶ Enter the terminal security code ▶ Select *Yes***

3 Select *Yes*

■ **When selecting multiple items:**
① Enter the terminal security code
② Select *Add* to add data, or select *Overwrite* to overwrite data
・Note that the original data in FOMA terminal are all deleted by selecting ***Overwrite*** and replaced by new data.

INFORMATION

- Depending on the size of data to save, the maximum number of items that can be saved/registered in FOMA terminal may be fewer.
- ToDo data (a list function data to manage business) cannot be saved on D702i. When receiving all items of ToDo data and schedule data at once from the model other than D702i, only the schedule data is saved. Note that when all items of only ToDo data are received, all the schedule data registered in D702i are deleted if you select to overwrite the received data.
- When the data received all at once are saved by overwriting, the protected data in FOMA terminal are also deleted.
- When receiving the data unavailable on D702i, it may be displayed as notes in ***INBOX***. In this case, saving as notes may not be available.
- When receiving the PushTalk phonebook, it is registered as the ordinary phonebook.
- Mail data received from the device that can save mail by the folder may be saved in the Message i-αppli folder. To check the saved mail data, select the Message i-αppli folder in which the data is saved and press MENU 1.

Activating infrared communication mode

Infrared Communication Mode

Activate i-αppli by receiving the data to start i-αppli via infrared communication device having the function of starting i-αppli.

- It is necessary to download the specified software from sites, etc. beforehand.
- In case i-αppli is set not to start with the i-αppli To function via an external device, i-αppli cannot be activated.

1 MENU 6 2 2 1 2 ▶ **Select *Yes***

Receiving standby condition is activated.

2 Receive the data to start i-αppli via infrared communication device

i-αppli is activated.

- To cancel receiving data: ⏻

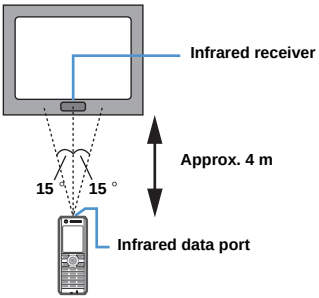
Using the infrared remote control function

FOMA terminal can be used as an infrared remote controller by downloading the i-αppli for infrared remote control.

- Download the i-αppli suited for the individual device.
- If the preset i-αppli Gガイド番組表リモコン (G-GUIDE TV Remote Controller) is activated, FOMA terminal can be used as an infrared remote controller for TV, etc. ☛P271
- This function is unavailable during Self Mode is on or infrared communication is executed.
- Communication may be influenced by the model of the supported device used and ambient luminance.
- Some equipment cannot be operated even if it is compatible with infrared remote control.

Remote control operation

Perform remote control operation with the infrared data port of FOMA terminal pointed at the infrared receiver of the supported device used (operating procedure differs depending on i-αppli). Angle for remote control is 15 degrees from the center and the distance is approximately 4 m at the maximum. However, the angle and distance allowed for the operation differs depending on the type of devices to operate and the level of brightness in the environment.



Using G ガイド番組表リモコン (G-GUIDE TV Remote Controller)

G-GUIDE TV Remote Controller is a useful application containing a TV program table and TV remote controller. TV program information you want can be obtained easily at any place and any time. You will be informed of the program title, contents, starting and ending times and G code®,etc of the station according to the region where you live. You can inform soon your friends of the program title, broadcasting schedule, etc. via mail by the function of *おすすめメール* (Recommendation mail) when you find an interesting program.
Also, remote control operation is possible for your TV (not compatible depending on some models).

- G-GUIDE TV Remote Controller can be used without monthly fee. Packet communication fee is charged separately.
- For details, refer to “i-mode User’s Manual”.

Activating G-GUIDE TV Remote Controller

1 ● (for over a second) ▶ Select a folder

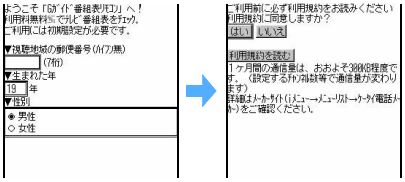
2 Select *G ガイド番組表リモコン*

G-GUIDE TV Remote Controller is activated. The initial setting screen appears when starting first. The main screen is displayed from the second time.

Making the initial setting

Make the initial setting according to the following procedures:

1 Make the settings of *視聴地域の郵便番号* (*7桁*) (a postal code number of the region; 7 digits), *生まれた年* (the birth year) and *性別* (the distinction of sex) ▶ 📖



2 Select *利用規約を読む* (Read the agreement) ▶ Read it and MENU

3 Select *はい* (Yes) if you consent to the agreement ▶ ● after finishing communication

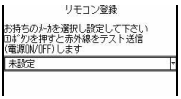
The main screen is displayed.

- Before use, make the registration for remote control and the settings of channels to use and remote-control channels successively according to the following procedures.
- For each setting, press ● and display *メニュー* (Menu) in the guide row before operating.

Registration for remote control

Register the information of a TV to operate by a remote controller.

1 📖 on the main screen ▶ Select *リモコン登録* (Registration for remote control)



2 ● ▶ Select a TV manufacturer

3 Point the infrared data port of FOMA terminal at TV and 1

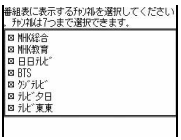
- Confirm that the TV power on/off is available.

4 📖 ▶ ● after completing the communication

Setting the channels to use

Make the setting of channels to display on the program table.

1 📖 on the main screen ▶ Select *視聴チャンネル* (Channels to use)



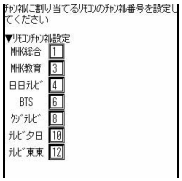
2 Select channels ▶ MENU ▶ 📖 ▶ ●

- Up to 7 channels can be selected.

Setting the remote-control channels

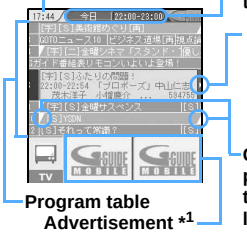
Set the channel number to assign for each channel.

1 **on the main screen ▶ Select *リモコンチャンネル設定* (Remote-control channel setting)**



2 **Set the channel number ▶ ▶**

Reading the main screen and operation



*1 Detailed information is displayed by placing the cursor at the advertisement. Pressing may allow to connect to the related sites via Web to function or use the functions of Mail to, Phone to.

- The screen shown here is for information purpose only and may differ from the actual screen. The actual screen displays the channel in your area.

■ **Remote control operations**

Item	Operation
Power on/off	1
Select a channel	Place the cursor at a program ▶
Switch the previous/ next channel	Previous channel: 2 Next channel: 8
Adjust volume	Up: 6 Down: 4 Silent: 7
Switch the input mode	3
Confirm the key function	MENU

- Some operations may be unavailable depending on the TV used.

■ **Other operations**

▶ Select an item from the menu

Item	Description
番組詳細 **(Details of the program)**	Detailed information of the program is displayed by obtaining via communication.
おすすめメール **(Recommendation mail)**	i-mode Mail can be composed with the program information entered in the text field.
HELP	How to use G-GUIDE TV Remote Controller is displayed.
最新に更新 **(Updating to the latest)**	Update the program table to the latest.
バージョン情報 **(Version data)**	Version of G-GUIDE TV Remote Controller is displayed. The version can be updated.
初期化 **(Initialization)**	Initialize the setting of G-GUIDE TV Remote Controller.

Setting operations for data transfer

Data Transfer Setting

Set operations for data transfer by infrared communication and USB connection.

Default End alert: OFF Auto Authentication: OFF Ph. book image sending: ON

1 MENU 6 2 3

2 **Select each item to set**

End alert :

Specifies whether to sound a communication end tone at the end of communication.

Auto Authentication :

Specifies whether to automatically exchange authentication codes with the other party while connecting to USB.

- To set ***ON***, enter the terminal security code and the 4 to 8-digit authentication codes for a mobile phone terminal (FOMA terminal)) and for PC (the other party), and then press .

Ph. book image sending :

Specifies whether to send images saved in the phonebook along with the phonebook data when sending all data items.

3 **Press**

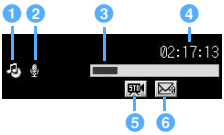
Recording sound with Sound Recorder

Sound Recorder

Sound can be recorded using Sound Recorder. Recorded sound can be sent by attaching to i-mode Mail or via infrared communication as well as playing on FOMA terminal.

・Recorded sound is saved as video/i-motion without image.

Reading the recording screen



1 Function/ Condition
Indicates the running function and recording condition.

2 Recording type
Indicates to record the sound.

3 Indicator
During standby for recording
Indicates the usage rate of the storage area.
During recording/pause
Indicates the rate of the recorded sound size to the file size set in size restrictions.

4 Counter
During standby for recording
Indicates the approximate maximum recording time of sounds that can be saved in FOMA terminal in the current settings.
During recording/pause
Indicates the approximate elapsed/remaining time (duration until the recording stops).

5 Quality
Indicates the quality of the sound to be saved. ☛P274

6 Size restrictions
Indicates the size restriction value of the file to be saved. ☛P274

Sound files

Item	Contents
File format	MP4 (MobileMP4)
Encoding method	AMR
Extension	3gp
File name/ Display name/Title	Recorded date and time is automatically set. (Example) In case of 12:34:56 on May 22, 2006. → 20060522123456 ・The display name and the file name can be changed after recording sound. ☛P264 ・When the date and time is not set in FOMA terminal, the display name, file name and title become"----------".
Mail attachment/ output	Sounds can be attached to mail to send and also be output to PCs and other terminals using the dedicated data link software.

Recording time of sound

The sound recording time that can be stored in D702i varies depending on the setting of quality and size restrictions.

・Quality and size restrictions can be set in Recording Setting. ☛P151

■ Recording time of sounds that can be stored (estimates)

Max. recording time	Quality	File size restrictions	
		Msg attach: Small	Msg attach: Large
For one operation	*STD*	4 min.	7 min.
	HQ	3 min.	5 min.
For total	*STD*	158 min.	159 min.
	HQ	104 min.	104 min.

Recording the sound

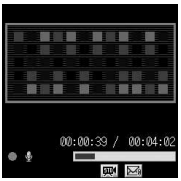
・Record the sound in as quiet a place as possible with no or little noise.
・Even when ***Silent*** is set for Ring Volume, Silent Mode or Public mode (Driving mode) is active and so on, the recording confirmation sound (shutter sound) is heard. Also, the volume of the recording confirmation sound (shutter sound) cannot be changed.
・Keys light/flash when Sound Recorder is being activated, recording and pausing. The setting that light/flash is unavailable or changing the lighting pattern cannot be made.
・The camera indicator lights when the recording screen is displayed or the recording is paused. The camera indicator flashes during recording. It goes off during saving the sound, displaying the confirmation screen or selecting the menu and so on.

1 MENU 6 5

Recording screen

Sound Recorder is activated.

2 ● or ▭📷



Recording is started after the shutter sound is heard. 🔊 is switched to ●.

- The sound is recorded from the microphone.
- Press ● to pause recording. ● switches to ❚❚. Recording is resumed by pressing ● or 📷.

3 📖 or 📷

The shutter sound is heard and recording is finished. A confirmation screen for the recorded sound is displayed.

- When ***Auto save*** in Recording Setting is set to ***Yes***, the recorded sound is saved and the recording screen reappears. Operations from Step 4 are not required.
- If the file size exceeds the limit, recording ends automatically and only the sound recorded up to that point can be saved.
- If 📖 is pressed to end the recording during pause, the sound recorded up to that point can be saved.

4 Confirm the recorded sound

- To save the sound immediately: Go to Step 5
- To record again without saving: クリア
- To replay the sound: 📖
  When ***Auto Play*** in Recording Setting is set to ***Yes***, the recorded sound is played automatically.

■ **Sending mail with the recorded sound attached:** ✉
A confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to save the recorded sound. Select ***Yes*** to save the recorded sound in FOMA terminal, and the mail composition screen is displayed.

■ **Changing the title: MENU 3 1 ▶ Enter the title (up to 31 characters regardless of one- or two-byte) ▶ 📖**
- The changed title is valid after saving the sound.

■ **Inserting a ticker: MENU 3 2 ▶ Select *Yes***
The recorded sound is saved in FOMA terminal and the ticker setting screen is displayed. Follow the procedure from Step 3 in “Inserting tickers”. ☛P256

■ **Displaying the saved sounds in the list: MENU 5**

5 ● or 📷

The recorded sound is saved in ***Camera*** folder of ***i-motion***.

- To confirm the saved sound immediately, press 📖 and select the sound to confirm.

INFORMATION

- Sound Recorder is activated by pressing MENU on the still image shooting screen or video recording screen and selecting ***Switch mode*** → ***Sound recorder*** as well. Also you can switch by setting the recording type for Recording Setting to ***Voice only*** during standby for recording with Movie Camera.
- For the usage precaution for Sound Recorder, refer to INFORMATION in “Recording videos with Movie Camera”. ☛P150
- For the procedure of playing the recorded sound, follow steps in “Playing video/i-motion”. ☛P252

Changing the recording settings

Setting the sound quality

1 ◎ on the recording screen to select the quality icon (STD , HQ)

- You can also press 6 to select.

2 ◎ to switch icons ▶ ●

STD Standard : The sound quality is standard.
HQ High quality : The sound quality is enhanced, but the available recording time becomes shorter.

- You can also set by pressing 6 to switch icons and pressing ●.

Restricting the file size

1 ◎ on the recording screen to select the icon (✉ , ✉) of size restrictions

- You can also press 7 to select.

2 ◎ to switch icons ▶ ●

✉ Msg attachment (S)*1 :
Restricts the file size to below 290 Kbytes. Being attached to i-mode Mail, data of this file size can be sent to the terminal unsupporting large capacity message.

✉ Msg attachment (L)*1 :
Restricts the file size to below 490 Kbytes. Data of this file size can be sent to the terminal which supports large capacity message.

- You can also set by pressing 7 to switch icons and pressing ●.

*1 When selecting the icon, ***Msg attach S*** or ***Msg attach L*** is shown on the screen.

Other Convenient Functions

Multiaccess ..... Multiaccess 276
Multitask ..... Multitask 277
Turning power on/off automatically at the specified time ..... Auto Power ON/OFF 278
Ringing alarms at set time ..... Alarm Clock 278
Setting to turn power on automatically at the time specified for the alarm ..... Alarm Auto Power ON 280
Managing schedules ..... Scheduler 280
Registering often-used functions ..... Custom Menu 287
Registering your own name and mail address ..... Own Number 289
Recording the voice and image..... Voice Memo/Movie Memo 290
Checking the call duration and the call cost..... Call Duration/Call Cost 291
Reset the call cost automatically ..... Reset Call Cost 292
Setting to notify the limit of call cost..... Call Cost Limit 292
Using Calculator ..... Calculator 293
Composing notes ..... Notepad 294
Using the earphone/microphone set with switch ..... Earphone/Microphone Set with Switch 295
Determining a service provider ..... NW Search Method 297
Reducing the start-up time after power-on ..... Quick Start-up 297
Checking current settings of functions..... Confirm Settings 297
Resetting functions ..... Reset 297
Deleting registered data collectively ..... Delete All Data 298

Multiaccess

Multiaccess

Multiaccess is a function that 3 functions (the voice call, packet communication, SMS) can be used at the same time.

- The icons for the functions in progress are displayed on the task bar.
- While executing the function, press ▰▭ to display ***New Task*** menu or ***Switch Task*** menu for the operation.
- The following functions can be used simultaneously:
  - Voice call: 1 line
  - i-mode, i-αppli, i-mode Mail or packet communication with PC connected: 1 line
  - SMS: 1 line
- Multiaccess combinations ☛P340

INFORMATION

● During Multiaccess you are charged separately for each communication.

Operations available during Multiaccess

You can receive i-mode Mail, SMS or voice call, or execute the other communication without interrupting the communication being connected.

Receiving i-mode Mail during a voice call

1 Receive mail during a voice call

While receiving, and blinks at the top of the display, and when receiving is finished, blinks and appears.

- stops blinking automatically.

Receiving a voice call during i-mode

You can receive a voice call with a site being displayed.

- Similarly, you can receive a voice call during packet communication with a PC connected.

1 A voice call is received during i-mode

- The screen displayed when a voice call is received depends on Priority Comm Mode.

2 Press ☎

- The talking and the site screens can be switched during operation. ☛P277
- To quit displaying the site: ☎ in the site screen ▶ Select ***Yes***
- To end the call: ☎ in the talking screen

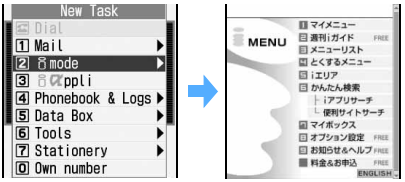
Connecting i-mode during a voice call

1 ▰▭ during a voice call

New Task menu appears.

- If you switch the call to use the speakerphone function on the talking screen, the site screen can be viewed while talking.

2 2 1



New Task menu

- The talking and the site screens can be switched during operation. ☛P277
- To quit displaying the site: ☎ in the site screen ▶ Select ***Yes***
- To end the call: ☎ in the talking screen

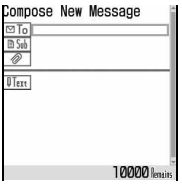
Sending i-mode Mail during a voice call

1 ▰▭ during a voice call

New Task menu appears.

- If you switch the call to use the speakerphone function on the talking screen, you can compose mail while talking.

2 1 2



When transmission of i-mode Mail is completed, the talking screen returns.

- You can switch between talking and the mail composition screen during operation. ☛P277
- To quit mail composition: [☎] in the mail composition screen
- To end the call: [☎] in the talking screen

Performing packet communication during a voice call

1 Send data from a PC during a voice call

This action starts packet communication.

- The screen displayed when packet communication is executed depends on Priority Comm Mode.
- To end the call: [☎] in the talking screen

Making a voice call during i-mode communication

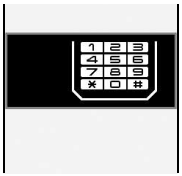
You can make a voice call with a site being displayed.

- Similarly, you can make a voice call during packet communication with a PC connected.

1 [✉] during i-mode communication

New Task menu appears.

2 [☎] ▶ Enter the phone number ▶ [☎]



- Select ***Phonebook & Logs*** from ***New Task*** menu to call from the phonebook, received call history or redial data.

- To quit displaying the site: [☎] in the site screen ▶ Select ***Yes***
- To end the call: [☎] in the talking screen

Multitask

Multitask

Multitask allows you to execute several functions at the same time and perform operations by switching the screen.

- The icons for the functions in progress are displayed on the task bar.
- While executing the function, press [✉] to display ***New Task*** menu or ***Switch Task*** menu for the operation.
- The number of functions that can be performed simultaneously is up to 2. However, the function of ***Dial*** or ***Own number*** can be activated even when other 2 functions are already active.
- Some functions may be restricted or unable to start simultaneously with one another. Multitask combinations ☛P341

Executing a new function

Example Displaying/registering a schedule during a voice call

1 [✉] during a voice call

New Task menu appears.

- If you switch the call to use the speakerphone function on the talking screen, the schedule screen can be viewed while talking.

2 [7] [1]

3 View/Register a schedule

- To quit the schedule: [☎] in the schedule screen
- To end the call: [☎] in the talking screen

INFORMATION

● If many functions are executed at once, for example, a mail arrives while video or animation is being played or Camera is operated, the image displayed on the screen may not appear smoothly or the sound may be disrupted during play.

Switching functions to operate

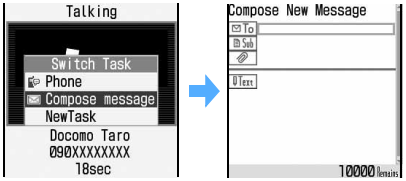
Pressing [✉] while you are using multiple functions, ***Switch Task*** menu appears, which allows you to switch screens and perform your desired operation.

Example Switching to the mail composition screen during Multitask of a voice call and i-mode Mail composition

1 [✉] during a voice call

Switch Task menu appears.

2 Select *Compose message*



Switch Task menu

- To return to the talking screen: ▶ Select ***Phone*** from ***Switch Task*** menu
- You can start a new function by pressing MENU in ***Switch Task*** menu to display ***New Task*** menu. Press MENU again to return to ***Switch Task*** menu.

INFORMATION

- Screens cannot be switched if the combination of the two functions is defined as not selectable in Multitask combinations (☛P341).
- The item names displayed in ***Switch Task*** menu may differ from the menu item names as shown below.
  - ***Dial input*** (phone number input)
  - ***AV comm.*** (videophone using the external device)
  - ***i-mode*** (i-mode site, Internet website, Bookmark, Screen Memo)
  - ***Mail*** (list screen or detail screen of i-mode Mail, SMS)
  - ***Compose message*** (i-mode Mail composition screen, SMS composition screen)
  - ***Receive message*** (reception screen for i-mode Mail and Message R/F)
  - ***Check new message*** (Check i-mode Message, Check SMS)
  - ***PPP data comm.*** (packet communication connected to a PC)

Quitting all running operations

You can quit all functions running in Multitask at a time.

1 during Multitask ▶ ▶ Select *Yes*

Turning power on/off automatically at the specified time

Auto Power ON/OFF

- Auto Power ON cannot be set to operate at the same time as Auto Power OFF.

Default Auto power ON: OFF Auto power OFF: OFF

Example Setting Auto Power ON

1 MENU 8 5 2

■ **Setting Auto Power OFF:**

MENU 8 5 3

2 Select each item to set

Auto power ON :

Set or cancel Auto Power ON.

- When set to ***OFF***, ***Time*** or ***Repeat*** cannot be selected.

Time :

Set the time to automatically turn the power on.

- Enter the time in the 24-hour clock. For single-digit hours or minutes, precede the digit with 0.

Repeat :

Set Auto Power ON to repeat.

- When set to ***OFF***, FOMA terminal is turned on only once at the set time and Auto Power ON is canceled.

3 Press

INFORMATION

- If the Auto Power OFF is set to ***ON*** at the same time with the time for the alarm or schedule alarm, Auto Power OFF is made after finishing the operation of the schedule or Alarm Clock. If a snooze operation is finished after the alarm sounds, Auto Power OFF takes place after releasing the snooze operation.
- Even if Auto Power OFF is set to ***ON***, when the specified time arrives while FOMA terminal is in any mode except standby, the power is not turned off. The power is turned off after the running function completes each job. However, if the specified time arrives while the terminal security code entry screen is displayed following the standby display or the PIN1 code or PIN2 code entry screen is displayed when FOMA terminal is turned on, the power is turned off.
- Set Auto Power ON to ***OFF*** in areas where mobile phone use is prohibited, such as in hospitals, medical facilities and airplanes.

Ringing alarms at set time

Alarm Clock

This function alerts you at the specified time with the alarm sound, vibration, and lighting or flashing of keys.

Default not set

Setting the alarm time and the sound

- When Alarm Clock is on, the default settings are as follows; ***Time: 00:00, Repeat: None, Alarm sound:*** *アラーム・アナログ時計* (Alarm/Analog clock)***, Volume: Level4, Vibrate alert: OFF, Lighting: Terminal settings, Lighting pattern: Terminal settings.***

1 MENU 7 3

2 1 **to** 9

- Up to 9 alarms can be set. SET is displayed on left of a title while setting an alarm.

■ **Canceling: Highlight the alarm title from the alarm list ▶** MENU

- To set the canceled alarm again: MENU

■ **Editing:**

① Select the alarm title in the alarm list

② Edit the alarm setting

3 Select each item to set

Time :

Enter the time to set an alarm.

- Enter the time in the 24-hour clock. For single-digit hours or minutes, precede the digit with 0.

Repeat :

Select the repeat setting.

- If ***None*** is set, the alarm is activated only once.
- If ***Every day*** is set, the alarm is activated everyday.
- If you select ***Day of week***, select the ***Day/Week*** to select the days of the week and press .

Title :

Up to 14 one-byte or 7 two-byte characters can be entered.

- The titles are set to *アラーム1* to *アラーム9* by default. If the title field is not entered, the alarm cannot be set.

4 to switch to *Set sound* screen ▶ Select each item to set

Alarm sound :

Select ***i-motion*** or ***Melody*** and select a video/i-motion file or a melody as an alarm.

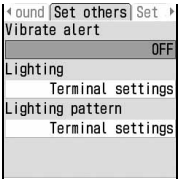
- Playing and checking a melody or video/i-motion ☛P104

Volume :

Select the volume.

- Adjusting the volume ☛P61

5 to switch to *Set others* screen ▶ Select each item to set



Vibrate alert :

Set the vibration used at the alarm time.

Lighting :

Set whether or not to light the keys for the alarm time.

- When ***OFF*** is set, ***Lighting pattern*** cannot be set.

Lighting pattern :

Set the pattern of the keys for the alarm time.

6 Press

In the standby screen, or (when a schedule alarm is also set) is displayed.

When the set time comes

The alarm screen appears and the alarm sounds. As the alarm screen, the following screen or the video/i-motion you set is displayed. The alarm sounds at the set volume. If lighting or vibrator is set, it operates according to its setting.

- Pressing [☎] while the alarm is sounding finishes the alarm sound and the display before sounding reappears.
- If the terminal is left unoperated for about 1 minute or a key other than [☎] is pressed, the alarm sound stops, and the terminal keeps ringing for 1 minute followed by a 4-minute silent period repeatedly for 30 minutes (snooze operation). If video/i-motion is set, the first image is displayed. If an incoming voice call or videophone call is received while the alarm sounds, snooze operation also starts in the same way.
- If some operation such as a call is going on at the set time, the terminal operates as follows:
  - During a call, the warning sound but the alarm occurs and the alarm screen appears. In addition, the vibrator does not operate even if FOMA terminal has been set to notify a call by vibration. During On-hold, the above operation is available after canceling On-hold.
  - When power is off, neither the power is turned on nor the alarm sounds. To sound the alarm, set Alarm Auto Power ON to ***ON***.
  - When the set time arrives during data transmission/reception (except packet communications) or while making, receiving or disconnecting a call, the alarm operates after those operation ends.

INFORMATION

- When multiple alarms are set for the same time, the alarm set for the smallest item number in the alarm list is activated.
- When an alarm and a schedule alarm are set for the same time, the screen that notifies the alarm appears at first, followed by the snooze operation and then the schedule alarm is notified. Even if the schedule alarm screen is finished, the snooze operation of the alarm is continued.
- When a Chara-den image is displayed at the set time, the alarm may sound a few seconds late.
- When All Lock or PIM Lock is activated, the alarm does not sound.

Setting to turn power on automatically at the time specified for the alarm — Alarm Auto Power ON

Set to automatically turn the power on and sound an alarm if the power is off when the date and time specified by Scheduler or Alarm Clock arrives.

Default OFF

1 [MENU] [8] [5] [5]

2 **Press [1]**

- To set not to turn the power on automatically: [2]

INFORMATION

- Set this setting to ***OFF*** in areas where mobile phone use is prohibited, such as in hospitals, medical facilities and airplanes.
- If Alarm Auto Power ON and PIN1 Code ON/OFF have been set to ***ON***, the alarm sounds before displaying the PIN1 code entry screen when the power is turned on at the set time for an alarm or schedule. When pressing [☎] to end the alarm, the PIN1 code entry screen is displayed. At this time, as the alarm, the melody preinstalled by default (*アラーム・アナログ時計* (Alarm・analog clock) is for the alarm, *アラーム・女性ボイス* (Alarm・Female voice) is for the schedule alarm) sounds even when the downloaded melody or i-motion is set for the alarm sound.

Menu 71

Managing schedules

Scheduler

Save various schedules. You will be notified of it with the display and/or alarm sound at the set time.

Displaying the calendar

The calendar screen allows displaying schedules.

1 [📖] **(for over a second)**

The calendar screen appears. Current day is displayed in pink, Saturdays are displayed in blue, and Sundays and national holidays in red. (The displayed color depends on the setting of Color Scheme).

- For a day with multiple schedules set, the item icon for the plan schedule planned for the earliest hour is indicated. Even if the time of the item set at the earliest time of the day is passed, the item icon set next is not displayed.

- ◎ to move the date. Pressing ● displays the day view screen.
- Pressing [C] displays the previous month and [✉] displays the next month.
- The calendar appears as set when quit last time.

■ **Specifying a particular day to display:**
① [MENU] [4] [2] **in the calendar screen**
② **Enter the year, month, and day**
- Enter the last 2 digits of the year. For single-digit months and days, precede the digit with 0.
- To return today: [MENU] [4] [1]
- In ***Day View*** screen, press [MENU] [5] [2]. Pressing [MENU] [5] [1] restores the current date display.

INFORMATION

● The national holidays on the calendar are based on the Law Concerning National Holidays and a law that revises part of the Old Age People's Welfare Law (law no. 59, June 22 in 2001) (as of February 2006). However, the Vernal Equinox and Autumnal Equinox may be different because the correct date is announced by an official gazette on February 1 of the previous year. The above law was in force on January in 2003. So, keep in mind that Marine day and Respect for the Aged day are not displayed on the date as before they are revised.

● The calendar can display dates between January 1, 2000 and December 31, 2060.

Setting display style for the calendar

Calendar View Mode

Default: Scroll mode: Monthly mode
Display mode: Normal mode

1 [📖] **(for over a second)** ▶ [MENU] [6] [1]

2 **Select each item to set**

Scroll mode :
Set the calendar display mode.
- Set ***Monthly mode*** to switch the display every month.
- Set to ***Slide mode*** to scroll the screen for each week.

Display mode :
Set the beginning of the week (leftmost position).
- Set ***Normal mode*** to be Sunday.
- Set ***Business mode*** to be Monday.

3 **Press** [📖]

Setting days off

Day Off Setting

You can set days off from the office or school. They can be set by specifying the date or day of the week.
- When setting days off by specifying dates, up to 30 items can be registered.

Example Setting days off by specifying dates

1 [📖] **(for over a second)**

2 **Highlight the date to set to a day off** ▶ [MENU] [6] [2] [1]
The color of the date specified as a day off changes.
- To set a day off to be repeated yearly: [MENU] [6] [2] [2]

■ **Canceling: Highlight the day to cancel day off setting** ▶ [MENU] [6] [2] [3]
- To cancel all: [MENU] [6] [2] [4]

■ **Setting days off by specifying the day of week:**
① [MENU] [6] [3]
② [1] **to** [7] **to select the day of the week to set to days off**
- By default, Sundays are set to days off.
- ***Reset*** is indicated in the guide row when a day of the week other than Sunday is selected or the selection of Sunday is canceled. Pressing [MENU] restores the default setting.

③ [📖]
- If you register the calendar display without selecting days off, it returns to the default state.

Setting national holidays

Holiday Setting

Holidays can be changed and up to 5 new entries can be registered.

1 [📖] **(for over a second)**

2 [MENU] [6] [4]

■ **Changing: Select the holiday** ▶ **Go to Step 4**

■ **Deleting: Highlight the holiday** ▶ [MENU] ▶ **Select *Yes***
- You cannot delete holidays set by default.

3 [📖]

4 **Select each item to set**

Holiday :

Enter the holiday name (up to 22 one-byte or 11 two-byte characters).

- You cannot change the holiday name set by default.

Mark on calendar :

Specify whether to display the set holiday.

- If you set ***OFF***, the holiday is not displayed. In addition, ***Date*** cannot be set.

Date :

Enter a date to set as a holiday. For a month and day from 1 to 9, add 0 before the digit.

- To change the date of holiday set by default, select ***Change*** and enter the date.

5 Press [Save]

Saving the schedule

You can save multiple schedules for the same day.

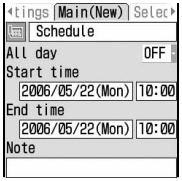
- Up to 300 items can be recorded.

1 [Save] (for over a second)

2 Highlight the date whose schedule you want to save ▶ [Save]

- In the day view screen, also press [Save].

3 Select each item to set



(Item icon) :

Select the icon.

- The selected icon is indicated in the schedule heading.

Schedule (Description input column) :

The description equivalent for the selected icon is displayed. Change the description as required (up to 200 one-byte or 100 two-byte characters).

- The entered description is not changed by changing the icon after changing the description.

All day :

Set whether to set the schedule to ***All day*** without specifying the time.

- If ***ON*** is set, the time and date display of the schedule is marked with ***AllDay*** on the day view screen. If ***All day*** is set for the long-term schedule, the date is followed by ***AllDay***.

Start time :

Enter a start date and time for the schedule.

- Enter the last 2 digits of the year. For single-digit months and days, precede the digit with 0.
- Enter the time in the 24-hour clock. For single-digit hours or minutes, precede the digit with 0.
- You can set dates up to December 31, 2060.
- You cannot set the time if you set ***All day***.

End time :

Enter an end date and time for the schedule.

- The input method of the date and time is the same as that of the start time.
- If you set this later than the start date, is displayed at the upper right of the date set on the calendar screen. Also, appears under the item icon on the day view and schedule details screens (Long-term schedule).

Note :

Enter schedule details (up to 600 one-byte or 300 two-byte characters).

4 [Navi] to switch to *Select members* screen

5 Select <*Select member list*> ▶ Select members to register

- Up to 5 members can be registered. You can make a call and also can send mail.
- The first phone number, mail address, URL in the phonebook data is registered.

■ **Deleting: Highlight the member ▶ [MENU]**

6 [Navi] to switch to *Set alarm* screen ▶ Select each item to set

Alarm **(Schedule alarm)** :

Set whether to set an alarm.

- To set an alarm, select ***Yes***, select ***i-motion*** or ***Melody*** from ***Alarm*** field, and select a video/i-motion file or a melody for the alarm.
  Playing and checking a melody or video/i-motion ☛P104
- If ***No*** is set, no alarm sounds.

Alarm in advance :

Set whether to enable an alarm before the start time of the schedule.

- The alarm selection method is the same as for ***Alarm***.
- If ***No*** is set, no alarm sounds and ***Alarm before time*** cannot be set.

Alarm before time :

Set how many minutes before the schedule you want the advance alarm to sound.

7 ○ to switch to *Other settings* screen ▶ Select each item to set

Repeat :

Select the repeat setting for a schedule.

- When you set a 31st day or February 29 in a leap year as the schedule starting date and ***Every month*** or ***Every year*** is selected in the repeat setting, the schedule repeating date becomes the last day of the same year/month without the specified date (that is, 30th or February 28).
- If ***None*** is selected, the schedule alarm is activated only once.
- If ***Day of week*** is selected, select ***Day/Week*** field. And select a day of the week when the alarm is sounded, then press [📖].
- When you set a repeat, ◥ is displayed at the upper right of the date set on the calendar screen. However, the item icon appears only on the first repeating date on the calendar. Also, ↻ appears under the item icon on the day view and schedule details screens (Repeat schedule).

Image :

Set whether to display images on the schedule alarm screen.

- When you set ***Yes***, select ***Image***, and then select an image. Flash movies cannot be set for images.
- If ***No*** is set, the default image is displayed.

8 Press [📖]

- When a schedule set with an alarm or advance alarm is saved, 📅 or 📅 (when Alarm Clock is also set) is indicated in the standby display.

Registering a schedule by simple key operation from the standby display

1 Enter the date and time (8 digits) to register schedule ▶ [📖]

Example: For 3 p.m. on May 22: Enter "05221500"

- When entering the time on the day, enter 4 digits with 2 digits for hour and for minute respectively.

2 Save the schedule

INFORMATION

- To change the schedule alarm screen, you can select a video/i-motion for ***Alarm*** or ***Alarm in advance*** in ***Set alarm*** screen or select an image for ***Image*** in ***Other settings*** screen. If you make settings on both screen, the last setting takes effect. When you have set voiced video/i-motion as an alarm and later set an image, the alarm sound becomes the standard melody. If you set voiced video/i-motion after the image as an alarm, the image setting becomes ***No***.
- It is recommended that you keep a separate written record of the contents of Scheduler.
  Data link software and the FOMA USB cable (optional) can be used to send and save the data to the PC.

When the set time comes

When the set time arrives, the schedule alarm screen appears and the alarm sounds. The date/time, schedule description and set image or video/i-motion appears on the schedule alarm screen. The alarm sounds at the ring volume for calls set in Ring Volume Setting. When the schedule of Alert Lighting Setting or the phone of Vibrator Setting is on, it operates according to its setting.

- An alarm in advance, when set, sounds before the schedule start time.

・Pressing [☎] while the alarm is sounding finishes the alarm sound and the previous display reappears. If the terminal is left unoperated for about 1 minute or a key other than [☎] is pressed, the alarm sound stops with the display as is when an image is set for the alarm. In case of setting video/i-motion, the first image is displayed and the alarm sound stops. Pressing [⏻] makes the screen as shown on the above disappear. If some operation such as call is going on at the set day and time, the terminal operates as follows:
  ・During a call, the warning sound but the set alarm sound occurs and the schedule alarm screen appears. The vibrator does not operate. During On-hold, the above operation is available after canceling On-hold.
  ・When the power is off, neither the power is turned on nor the alarm sounds even when the specified date and time arrives. To sound the alarm, set Alarm Auto Power ON to ***ON***.
  ・When the set time arrives during data transmission/reception (except packet communications) or while making, receiving or disconnecting a call, the alarm operates after finishing those operation ends. However, if the schedule data is received by data communication, it does not operate.

INFORMATION

- If a Created animation is set for ***Image***, the first image is displayed.
- When multiple schedules are set at the same date/time, after stopping the alarm sound, [●] to confirm the description of the other schedules set at the same time.
- When a schedule alarm and an alarm are set for the same time, the screen that notifies the alarm appears first, followed by the snooze operation, and then the schedule alarm is notified. Even if the schedule alarm screen is finished, the snooze operation of the alarm is continued.
- When a schedule alarm is set for ***All day***, the schedule alarm screen appears and alarm sounds at 00:00 of the set date.
- When a Chara-den image is displayed at the set time, the alarm may sound a few seconds late.
- When All Lock or PIM Lock is activated, the schedule alarm does not sound.

Checking saved schedule data

You can add, change and delete the schedules from the displayed screen.

1 [📖] (for over a second) ▶ Select the date of the schedule

Day view screen

・Pressing [●] in the day view screen switches dates.

■ **Displaying schedules for the specific item only (Display mode by item):**

① [📖] **(for over a second)**

② [MENU] [3] [2]

・To show all items: [MENU] [3] [1]

・In the day view screen, press [MENU] [4] [2]. To restore the all items display, press [MENU] [4] [1].

③ **Select an item icon**

2 Select the schedule to check

Details screen

■ **Changing:**

① [📖] **in the schedule details screen**

・In the day view screen, highlight a schedule and then press [MENU] [2].

② **Change the schedule data ▶** [📖]

③ **Select *Yes***

INFORMATION

- If the displayed schedule contains phone numbers, mail addresses and URLs, Phone To (AV Phone To), Mail To and Web To functions can be used.

Copying/Pasting schedules

You can copy a schedule and paste it elsewhere to use it as a schedule for another date.

・When a long-term or repeat schedule is copied and pasted, the entire schedule is pasted in all the corresponding days.

・The copied schedule is memorized until Scheduler is ended and can be pasted on another date any number of times. However, only one item can be memorized and copying new schedule overwrites the retained item.

1 (for over a second) ▶ **Select the date of the schedule**

2 **Highlight the schedule to copy** ▶ MENU 6 1

3 clr

4 **Highlight the date to paste the schedule to** ▶ MENU 5

- In the day view screen, press MENU 6 2.

Composing mail from schedules

Schedules can be sent as an i-mode Mail message.

- The number of schedule items that can be sent depends on the screen operated.

○: Available ×: Unavailable

Screen \ Sending type	Send selected item	Send selected day/ Send all*1
Calendar screen	×	○
Day view screen	○	○
Details screen	○	×

*1 Sends all saved schedules (including past schedules).

- Schedules are entered to a mail message in the Date To format. ☛P295
- If schedule data exceeds the mail message capacity, the excessive part will be deleted.
- When schedules are displayed in the display mode by type, only the displayed items are sent with mail.
- To send schedules for which Secret Attribute is set, set Secret Mode on.

Example Sending a schedule from the day view screen

1 (for over a second) ▶ **Select the date of the schedule**

- In the calendar screen, press MENU 8 1 and select ***Send selected day*** or ***Send all***.
- In the schedule details screen, press mail.

2 **Highlight the schedule to send by mail** ▶ mail

- To send all schedules registered for the selected day by mail: MENU 7 1 2
- To send all saved schedules at once: MENU 7 1 3

Searching mail from schedules

You can search mail sent and received on the day you select by using the schedule.

Example Searching received mail from the calendar screen

1 (for over a second) ▶ **Highlight the date of which mail you want to search**

2 MENU 8 2 1

- To display sent mail: MENU 8 2 2
- In the day view screen, press MENU 7 2 1 to display received mail. To display sent mail, press MENU 7 2 2.
- How to view received/sent mail ☛P207
- To cancel mail search: MENU 0

Deleting schedules

You can delete 1 entry or multiple entries.

○: Available ×: Unavailable

Screen \ Deleting type	Selected item	One day/ Before date/ Delete all
Calendar screen	×	○
Day view screen	○	○
Details screen	○	×

- If the long-term or repeat schedule is deleted, the schedule is deleted from all the days that include a long-term or repeat schedule in addition to the current day. Even when ***Before date*** is selected, if a long-term schedule includes the day before, all days of the schedule after the highlighted date are also deleted.

Example Deleting the schedule from the day view screen

1 (for over a second) ▶ **Select the date of the schedule**

2 MENU 3

3 1 to 3

- When ***One day*** or ***Before date*** is selected if the long-term schedule including the selected date is registered, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to delete the long-term schedule too.

■ **To delete all: 4 ▶ Enter terminal security code**

- If you delete the schedules without setting to Secret Mode, schedules with Secret Attribute set will not be deleted.

4 Select *Yes*

INFORMATION

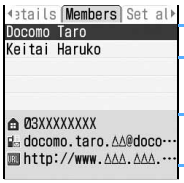
- On the calendar screen, press MENU, select ***Delete*** and then select ***One day*/*Before date*/*Delete all***.
- On the details screen, press MENU and select ***Delete entry***.

Using member lists

Make calls or compose i-mode Mail by selecting a member from the member list recorded in a schedule. Site display is also available from the registered URL in the phonebook data of the member list.

1 (for over a second) ▶ Select the date of the schedule

2 Select the schedule to use ▶ ● to display the member list screen



Recorded members

The first phone number, mail address and URL of the selected member

- For members with Secret Attribute set, the name and detail information are masked with "✳" unless Secret Mode is set. When Privacy Mode is activated (***Authorized access*** set for ***Phonebook & Logs***), the name and detail information of all members are also masked with "✳".

3 Use the Phonebook data

■ **Making a voice/videophone call: Highlight a member ▶ for a voice call, or for a videophone call**

A voice/videophone call is made to the displayed phone number.

- You can make a call by setting the conditions. ☛P53

■ **Composing i-mode Mail: Highlight a member ▶**

The selected mail address of the member is set for the receiver and the schedule is saved in the message in the Date To format.

- Press MENU 5 2 to send i-mode Mail to all the members.

■ **Displaying a site: Highlight a member ▶ MENU 6**

INFORMATION

- To use the second or subsequent phone number and mail address registered in the phonebook data, select a member from the member list screen to display the phonebook details (***Phone/Mail***) screen. You can make a call or compose i-mode Mail by highlighting the phone number or mail address. Note that, if i-mode Mail is composed from the phonebook details screen, the schedule is not entered in the message and the Date To function cannot be used.
- When you press the phonebook key on the member list screen, the member selection screen appears enabling you to add or delete members.

Protecting secret schedules Secret Attribute

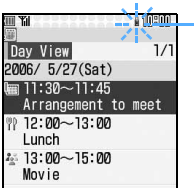
Once Secret Attribute is set, data can be displayed only in Secret Mode.

- Secret Attribute cannot be set or canceled when Secret Mode is not set.

1 Activate Secret Mode

2 (for over a second) on the standby display ▶ Select the date of the schedule

3 Highlight the schedule to set ▶ MENU 9



blinks when Secret Attribute is set for the selected schedule.

- To cancel: Highlight the schedule with Secret Attribute set ▶ MENU 9
- To set or cancel on the schedule details screen, press MENU 6.

INFORMATION

- The schedule alarm or alarm in advance of the schedule to which Secret Attribute is set cannot be displayed if Secret Mode is not set.
- Secret Attribute is automatically set for schedules made while Secret Mode is on.

Checking the number of registered schedule items

Check No. of Items

1 (for over a second) ▶ MENU 7

- Press ○ to return to the calendar screen.

INFORMATION

- The number of registered items includes the one that is set by Secret Attribute.

Registering often-used functions

Custom Menu

In addition to the normal menu displayed by default by pressing MENU, you can create your original menu (Custom Menu) by registering the functions you often use and the phonebook data of the person you frequently reach. It allows quick access and making a call easily.

Reading a template

You can also create a custom menu by reading templates and adding or deleting menu items.

- The 4 types of preset templates are provided.
- When a template is read, all custom menu items are replaced.

Default Standard

1 MENU

- When ***Custom*** is set for ***Default MENU*** of Menu Setting, press MENU on the standby display.

2 MENU 7 1 ▶ 1 to 4

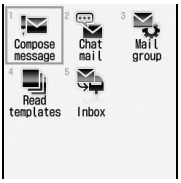
Standard :
Alarm Clock, Calculator, Sound Recorder, Receive Display, Alert Lighting Setting, Standby Display Setting, i-channel list, Change Security Code, Caller ID Notification

Security/Lock :
All Lock, PIM Lock, Remote Lock, Key Lock Timer, Secret Mode, Privacy Mode Setting

User-data related :
Bookmark, Screen Memo, Phonebook Search, Scheduler, Alarm Clock, Notepad, Save Word, Save Phrase

Mail :
Compose Message, Chat Mail, Mail Group, Read Template, Inbox

3 **Enter the terminal security code**



A template is read and set in the custom menu.

- When the custom menu is already set, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to use the new custom menu. Select ***Yes***.

Creating the custom menu

Use the template to create your custom menu.

- Up to 9 icons can be registered in a level of Custom Menu.

1 **Read a template sample**

- To create a new custom menu without a template sample, delete all the menu items. ☛P289

2 **Register the item**

- 9 icons have been already registered for ***Standard*** of the template. If any of these templates is read, unnecessary menu items are overwritten.

■ **Registering people:**

- When the phonebook data that contains Flash movie or video/i-motion is registered in the custom menu, a pre-registered icon is displayed on the menu screen instead of Flash movie or video/i-motion.

① MENU 1 1

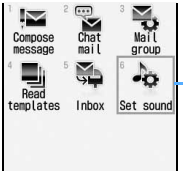
② **Select the person to register**

■ **Registering functions:**

① MENU 1 2

• The screen for selecting functions is displayed in the format of the normal menu set in Menu Setting (the sample screen is in the tile display format). However, when the normal menu is set to ***Animation***, the list is displayed.

② Highlight the menu item to register ▶ [📖]



Set sound is registered

• A menu item without submenus can be registered by pressing a key corresponding to the item number or by selecting the item.

■ **Registering groups:**

Create group folders to save phonebook entries and functions grouped by purpose.

① [MENU] [1] [3] ▶ Enter the group name (up to 18 one-byte or 9 two-byte characters)

② [📖]

■ **Registering in a group:**

When the 3rd level is displayed, only functions or persons can be stored.

① Select the group

The items in the group are displayed.

• When a group that does not register an item is selected, the item selection screen is displayed. When displaying the second level, no groups are registered.

② Add or replace the item

■ **Overwriting a registered item:**

① Highlight the item to overwrite ▶ [MENU] [2]

② [1] to [3] ▶ Select the item to register

• When you overwrite a group, a confirmation screen appears after pressing [1] to [3] to confirm that you really want to overwrite the group. Selecting ***Yes*** deletes all items in the group.

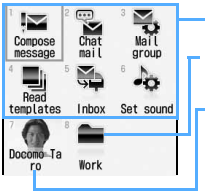
Using the custom menu

You can execute functions registered in the custom menu, and also make a call to a person registered in it.

1 [MENU] [📖]

• When ***Custom*** is set for ***Default MENU*** of Menu Setting, press [MENU] on the standby display.

2 Select the item



Function

Group

Person (Making a call or checking detail information is available.)

• To select a function or person from a group: Select the group ▶ Select the functions and people in the group

■ **Executing a function: Select the function**

• When the submenu exists, its items are displayed.

■ **Making a call: Highlight the person ▶ [📞] for a voice call, or [📹] for a videophone call**

• When two or more phone numbers are registered, select a phone number.

• When selecting a person and pressing [1], you can make a call by setting the conditions. ☛P53

If you have two or more phone numbers, select a person and then press [1]. When selecting a phone number that you use, the handling can be made similarly.

■ **Composing i-mode Mail: Highlight the person ▶ [✉]**

• When two or more mail addresses are stored, highlight a mail address and press [✉] or ●. When no mail address has been stored, the receiver field is left blank.

■ **Composing SMS: Highlight the person ▶ [✉] (for over a second)**

• When two or more phone numbers are stored, highlight a phone number and press [✉] or ●. When no phone number has been stored, the receiver field is left blank.

To execute registered functions quickly

A function registered in the custom menu can be started by pressing the corresponding dial key ([1] to [9]) for over a second on the standby display. However, when the menu item is a person or group or a menu that has submenus, the function is not activated.

INFORMATION

- Shortcut operations are also available while the custom menu is displayed. Shortcut operations depend on the setting of custom menu shortcut of Menu Setting.
- Persons cannot be selected when PIM Lock or Privacy Mode is on (***Authorized access*** set for ***Phonebook & Logs***). The icon changes to and the name of the person is displayed as “＊＊＊”.
- When Secret Attribute and PIM Lock are set, the phone operations and icon display are according to the PIM Lock function.
- If Secret Attribute is set for a person in the phonebook, the name of the person is displayed as “＊＊＊” unless Secret Mode is set. is displayed.

Editing the custom menu

The item arrangement, icon design and group names can be changed as well as deleting items displayed on the custom menu.

1 MENU 📖

- When ***Custom*** is set for ***Default MENU*** of Menu Setting, press MENU on the standby display.

2 Highlight an item ▶ Perform each operation

- To edit items in a group: Select a group ▶ Perform the individual operation

■ **Replacing items:** MENU 4 ▶ **Select the destination item ▶ Select *Yes***

■ **Changing icons:** MENU 5 ▶ **Select an icon**

- To restore the icon: MENU 5 ▶ 📖

■ **Changing group names:** MENU 6 ▶ **Enter the group name ▶** 📖

■ **Deleting items:** MENU 3 ▶ **Select *Yes***

- When the group is deleted, items in the group are also deleted.

Deleting all items in the custom menu

Delete all the menu items in the custom menu. This operation is performed to create a new custom menu.

1 MENU 📖

- When ***Custom*** is set for ***Default MENU*** of Menu Setting, press MENU on the standby display.

2 MENU 7 2 ▶ **Enter the terminal security code ▶ Select *Yes***

- Pressing ● displays the item selection screen.

Menu 47

Registering your own name and mail address

Own Number

Default My phone number: subscribed phone number
Other than that: not recorded

1 MENU 0

- ***My phone number*** shows the phone number of the UIM inserted in FOMA terminal.

2 📖

3 Enter the terminal security code ▶ Set the name and mail address

- The setting procedure for each item is the same as Step 3 to 4 of “Registering entries into the FOMA terminal phonebook”. ☛P87
  Note that groups cannot be set.
- If any item has already been set, it is displayed.
- The subscribing terminal phone number (***My phone number***) is displayed in the first phone number location. It cannot be changed.

4 ● to switch to *Other* screen ▶ Select each item to set

- The setting procedure for each item is the same as Step 5 of “Registering entries into the FOMA terminal phonebook”. ☛P88
- None of these are set by default.
- If any item has already been set, it is displayed.

5 Press 📖

INFORMATION

- Changing the mail address in Own Number does not change your i-mode Mail address. Similarly, changing your i-mode Mail address does not change the mail address in Own Number. For details on how to check and change an i-mode Mail address, refer to “i-mode User’s Manual”.
- Your phone number (***My phone number***) is registered in the UIM. If you enter other items, they will be registered on FOMA terminal.

Displaying Own Number details

1 MENU 0

2 ● ▶ **Enter the terminal security code**

- Each time you press ●, the details screen switches as follows: ***TOP*** → ***Mail*** → ***Other*** → ***Phone***. When pressing ●, this sequence is switched reversely.
- When the data is long, only a part of it is displayed. To display all the content, press ▷ on ***TOP*** screen. On ***Mail*** screen, ***Other*** screen, ***Phone*** screen, highlight content to be displayed and press ▷.
- On the details screen of Own Number, the following operations can be performed as with the details screen for the phonebook:
  - Mail/URL access ☛P92
  - Phone call (excluding making calls to Own Number) ☛P53
  - Copy ☛P97
  - Mail address exchange ☛P98
  - Caller ID Setting ☛P99
  - Videophone Rate Setting ☛P100

■ **Editing registered data:** MENU 2 ▶ **Edit registered data**

■ **Resetting registered data:** MENU 3 ▶ **Select *Yes***

Recording the voice and image

Voice Memo/Movie Memo

Your voice can be recorded in standby as talking note (Standby Voice Memo) or the other party’s voice and image can be recorded during a voice or videophone call (Talking Voice Memo/Movie Memo).

- Talking Voice Memo and Standby Voice Memo can be recorded up to 30 seconds long for each message and up to 4 messages in total.
- Movie Memo can be recorded for up to 30 seconds per message.
- The recorded voice or image of Talking Voice Memo or Movie Memo may be disrupted if the signal conditions are poor.
- Guidance messages such as out-of-service area notice or number change information cannot be recorded.

Recording voice or image of the other party while talking

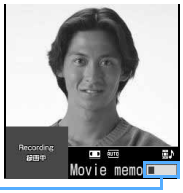
Only the voice of the other party is recorded during a voice call. During videophone call, the image of the other party is also recorded.

1 ▷ **(for over a second) during a call**

Recording starts.

An indication of the allowable recording time

Voice Memo during a voice call



Movie Memo during a videophone call

- While recording Movie Memo, image with ***Recording*** *録画中* is sent to the other party.
- Each time you press ● while recording Movie Memo, indication is switched between the allowable recording time and the call duration.
- When the remaining time reaches 5 seconds, rapid beeps are heard to warn that the end of message recording is approaching. A long beep is also heard at the end of the recording (this sound is not heard at the beginning of the recording). However, these beeps are not recorded.
- To stop recording: ▷ (for over a second)

・Movie memos are saved in the ***Camera*** folder of ***i-motion***.
How to replay the movie memos or i-motion ☛P252

Menu 463

Recording your own voice during standby

1 📷▶ 3

After about 3 seconds, a beep is heard and recording starts.

・When the remaining time becomes 5 seconds, rapid beeps are heard to warn that the end of recording is approaching. A long beep is heard at the end of the recording. This beep is not recorded.

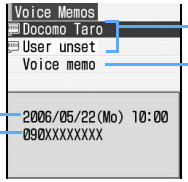
・To cancel recording: ●, 📞, or ｸﾘｱ/ﾊﾟﾜｰ

Menu 464

Playing voice memos

1 📷▶ 4

The voice memo list shows both talking and standby voice memos.



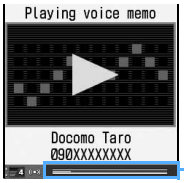
Talking Voice Memo
・The phone number, the name (When the phone number is saved in the phonebook) or the reason for no caller ID

Standby Voice Memo

Phone number of the other party (***Voice memo*** is displayed for Standby Voice Memo)

Date and time of recording (If the date and time have not been set, no date and time are recorded)

2 **Select a voice memo**



An indication of the playing time

The voice memo is played.
・To stop playback: ●
・To adjust the volume: ◎
・To switch between ON and OFF of speakerphone: 📞

3 **Select whether to delete the played voice memo**

■ **Deleting a voice memo from the voice memo list: Highlight the voice memo ▶ MENU 2 1 ▶ Select *Yes***
・To delete all: MENU 2 2 ▶ Select ***Yes***

■ **Saving phone number in the phonebook from the voice memo list:**
① Highlight a talking voice memo to save ▶ MENU 4
・To add the number to the registered phonebook data: MENU 5
② 1 or 2 ▶ Save the name and mail address ☛P87, P90
・To add the data to the registered phonebook data: 1 or 2 ▶ Select the registration destination phonebook data ▶ Edit phonebook entries ☛P97

INFORMATION

● Maintain the contents of voice/movie memos in some other form (e.g. written copy). Recorded data may be lost due to failure, repair, change to new model or other handlings of FOMA terminal. If the data should be erased, DoCoMo assumes no responsibility for the loss of any data.

● You can make calls by using Talking Voice Memo. Highlight a party in the voice memo list and press 📞 to make a voice call and 📹 to make a videophone call. From the submenu ***Call***, you can specify several conditions and make a call. ☛P53

Checking the call duration and the call cost

Call Duration/Call Cost

The call duration and the call cost of the last and total of voice/videophone call can be checked.

・The duration includes the voice call, videophone call and 64K data communication, and the both of incoming and outgoing are counted for each.
・The call cost data is counted only for outgoing. However, when calling the toll-free party or the directory assistance service (104), “0 YEN” or “✳✳✳✳✳✳ YEN” is displayed.
・The call cost is stored in the UIM, so stored total cost is displayed (starting from December in 2004) when using the current UIM to FOMA terminal you newly purchased.
  ・For FOMA terminals released before 901i series, call cost data is stored in the UIM, but cannot be displayed.
・The displayed call duration and call cost can be reset.
・The displayed call duration and call cost are estimates and may be different from the actual. Note that the call cost does not include consumption tax.

Checking the call duration

1 MENU 8 4 1

- If the total duration of calls was reset in the past, the duration of the total calls made up to the present after the reset is displayed.

Last call :
The duration of the last voice/videophone call or of the last data communication

Total voice calls :
The total duration of voice calls made

Total videophone calls :
The total duration of videophone calls made

Total data sessions :
The total duration of data communication established

■ **Resetting the total calls duration:**
① m ▶ **Enter the terminal security code**
② 1 **to** 4 ▶ **Select *Yes***
- To return to the call duration screen: m

Checking the call cost

1 MENU 8 4 4 1

- If the total cost of calls was reset in the past, the cost of the total calls made up to the present after the reset is displayed.

Last call cost: Voice :
The cost of the last voice call

Last call cost: VP :
The cost of the last videophone call

Last call cost: Data :
The cost of the last data communication

Total calls cost :
The total cost of voice/videophone call and data communication

Reset: day & time :
The date and time of the last reset

■ **Resetting the total call cost:** m ▶ **Enter PIN2 code** ▶ **Select *Yes***

INFORMATION

- No last charge information appears as "******* YEN".
- When you switch from the voice call to the videophone during a call, the last call cost shows the total amount of them. During the operation to switch, no call cost is required.
- When the last or total duration of voice/videophone call or data communication exceeds 9,999 hours 59 minutes 59 seconds, counting is restarted from 0 second.
- When FOMA terminal is turned off, the last call duration is stored, but the last call cost is displayed as "******* YEN".
- The duration of receiving a call and ringing time cannot be counted.
- The call duration and call cost is not counted for i-mode communication and packet communication. For details of those usage fees, see "i-mode User's Manual" you received when you subscribed to i-mode.

Reset the call cost automatically

Reset Call Cost

Total call cost is set to zero automatically on the 1st day of each month.

Default OFF

1 MENU 8 4 4 4

2 **Enter the terminal security code** ▶ 1
- To cancel: 2

3 **Enter the PIN2 code**

INFORMATION

- Even if the setting is ***ON***, the setting is canceled when the UIM different from the one used during the setting is inserted and then turn the power on. It doesn't return to the previous setting even if the UIM used when setting it is inserted again.
- When the setting is ***ON***, the call cost will be reset if you change the date and time to the next month in Date and Time Setting.
- When the setting is ***ON***, if the terminal is not turned on or if you talking on the terminal at 0 o'clock of the first day of the month, a reset will take place when you turn the power on or end the call.

Setting to notify the limit of call cost

Call Cost Limit

Set the maximum limit of call cost and, when the total call cost exceeds the set amount, it is notified with an alarm or icon.
- The amount shown in Call Cost Limit is only an estimate and should not be regarded as the actual amount for billing.

Default Alert: OFF

1 MENU 8 4 4 2

2 Enter the terminal security code ▶ Select each item to set

Alert:
Set whether to notify when the total call cost exceeds the set amount.
・If *OFF* is set, the items below cannot be set.

Limit:
Set the maximum amount of call cost (10 - 100,000 yen. 10 yen unit).

Alert method:
Select the alarm with icon, or the icon only.

Alert sound:
Select an alarm sound from the melody list when *Sound + icon display* is selected in *Alert method*.
・Playing and checking a melody ☛P104

Alert time:
Specify how many seconds alarm sound should ring (1 - 60 sec.). Available when *Sound + icon display* is selected in *Alert method*.

3 Press ▭

INFORMATION

- If the call cost exceeds the maximum limit while talking or during communication, ¥ is displayed at the top of the display.
- When *Sound + icon display* is set for *Alert method*, the alarm sounds and message informing that the call cost exceeds the maximum limit is displayed on the standby display after a call/communication. In the general silent mode, a message appears but the alarm does not sound. In the personalized silent mode, the alarm sounds according to the ring alert volume set for Customize Silent Mode. Neither the alarm sounds nor the message appears if:
  - In Public mode (Driving mode)
  - The call cost exceeds the limit during a call or communication at 00 o'clock the first day of the month when Reset Call Cost is set to *ON*.
- The alarm sounds at the ring volume for calls set in Ring Volume Setting.
- If any key is pressed or other function is started while an alarm is sounding, the alarm sound stops.
- Even if the UIM is replaced after Call Cost Limit is set to *ON*, the setting is stored.

Removing the icon of alert Remove Call Cost Icon

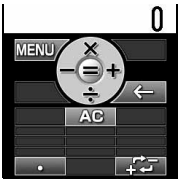
1 MENU 8 4 4 3 **▶ Enter the terminal security code ▶ Select *Yes***

Using Calculator Calculator

You can perform addition, subtraction, multiplication and division (+, −, ×, ÷) on your FOMA terminal.
- Up to 8 digits can be entered.
- You can use Calculator from the entry fields for schedules and notes, and paste the result of a calculation into the entry field of the original screen. ☛P316

1 MENU 7 4

2 Make a calculation



Calculate using the dial keys (0 to 9) and ● (+, −, ×, ÷).
- To delete the last digit entered: ▭
- To enter a decimal point: *
- To switch the displayed value between the positive and negative: #

3 Press ●

The calculation result is displayed.
- Pressing clr/クリア deletes the calculation result.

INFORMATION

- An error is generated and "E" is displayed when division by 0 is attempted or the integral part of the calculation result exceeds 8 digits. To cancel, press clr/クリア. When the number including a decimal point exceeds 8 digits, any decimals that do not fit in the display are rounded up or rounded down.
- Pressing MENU 1 copies the displayed number. Pressing MENU 2 pastes the copied number.
  - Note that only one number can be stored and copying new numbers overwrites the stored number. Copied numbers are stored until FOMA terminal is turned off.
  - You can paste copied numbers in the entry fields of notes, mail composition screen, etc. any number of times. You can also copy up to the first 8-digit one-byte numbers from the entry field of notes, mail composition screen, etc. and paste them on the calculator screen.
  - You cannot enter additional digits after the number pasted on the calculator.

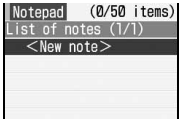
Composing notes

Notepad

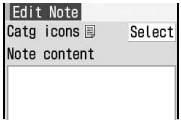
• Notes can be recorded up to 50 items.

1 MENU 7 2

2 Select <*New note*>

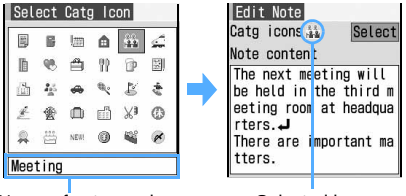


3 Enter the note data in *Note content* field (up to 600 one-byte or 300 two-byte characters)



■ **Inputting values calculated with Calculator:** MENU 8 2 **in the character entry screen ▶ Make a calculation ▶** ⏱

4 Select *Select* in *Catg icons* field ▶ Select an icon



Name of category icon　　Selected icon

5 Press 📖

• Notes without any content cannot be recorded.

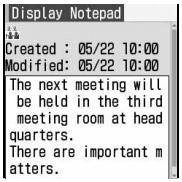
INFORMATION

● Maintain the contents of notes in some other form (e.g. written copy). Data link software and the FOMA USB cable (optional) can be used to send and save the data to the PC.

Checking notes

1 MENU 7 2

2 Select a note to check



• If the note data contains phone numbers, mail addresses and URLs, Phone To (AV Phone To), Mail To and Web To functions can be used.
• Pressing 📖 allows you to edit the note.
• The creation date and time and last edit date and time of a note are automatically registered in ***Created*** and ***Modified*** respectively.

■ **Deleting the note:** MENU 1 **▶ Select *Yes***

■ **Composing mail from the note:** MENU 2

INFORMATION

● To delete 1 note from the notepad list screen, highlight the note to delete, press MENU, and select ***Delete note***. To delete all items, press MENU, select ***Delete all*** and enter the terminal security code.
● To compose mail from the notepad list screen, highlight the note to use for message text, press MENU and select ***Compose message***.

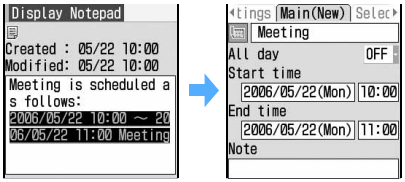
Saving schedules from notes

Date To

When the message text contains schedule description in the Date To format, copying the text to Notepad allows saving it as schedule.

1 MENU 7 2 **▶ Select the note written in Date To format**

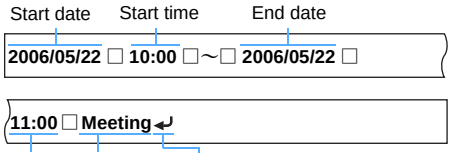
2 Select the description written in Date To format ▶ Save it as schedule



Date To format

Date To is effective when the entry of note has a string in the format below. All items are requisite.

Example



- □ represents half-sized space. It is not actually displayed.
- Only one-byte characters can be used for date and time.
- Separate the start date, start time, " ～ " (two-byte), end date, end time and description with half-sized spaces.
- The description can contain up to 200 one-byte or 100 two-byte characters. Any character exceeding the maximum number is deleted.
- The year is based on the Christian era and the time is in the 24-hour format. For a month and day from 1 to 9 or an hour and minute from 0 to 9, the preceding 0 can be omitted.

Using the earphone/microphone set with switch

Earphone/Microphone Set with Switch

By connecting the optional flat type earphone/microphone set with switch (including the stereo earphone set with flat switch) to the earphone/microphone jack, it is possible to make or receive calls simply by pressing the switch.

- It is not possible to make a videophone call by pressing the switch of the flat type earphone/microphone set.
- Use the earphone jack converter adapter P001 (optional) for the existing earphone/microphone.

Connecting the earphone/microphone set with switch

To connect the flat type earphone/microphone set with switch to FOMA terminal, open the cover of the earphone/microphone jack and insert the connection plug of the flat type earphone/microphone set with switch. ☛P27

- Do not wrap the cord of the flat type earphone/microphone set with switch around FOMA terminal. Reception level of radio waves may deteriorate.
- When the cord of the flat type earphone/microphone set with switch nears the antenna, a noise may be emitted.
- Insert the plug firmly. If it is not inserted completely, there may be audio disruption.

Making voice calls by pressing the switch

By registering a phone number to the phonebook No. assigned by Headset Button Control, it is possible to make a voice call to that number only by pressing the switch on the flat type earphone/microphone set with switch.

- To make a call using a flat type earphone/microphone set with switch, ***Control function*** must be set to ***ON*** in Headset Button Control.

1 Hold down the switch for over a second until you hear 2 short beeps

A voice call will be made to the first registered phone number of the phonebook No. assigned by Headset Button Control.

- If more than one phone number has been registered, the first phone number will be dialed.

2 Hold down the switch for over a second until you hear a short beep to end a call

INFORMATION

- If Secret Attribute has been set for the phonebook No. assigned by Headset Button Control, Secret Mode must be activated before operating.
- Even if Call Waiting Service is subscribed and activated, you cannot make another call during a call by entering the number of a third party and pressing the switch. Be aware that pressing the switch will terminate the first call.

Receiving calls by pressing the switch

1 When an incoming call is received, hold down the switch for over a second until you hear 2 short beeps

- The ring tone is emitted from the point set by Headset Switch.

2 Hold down the switch for over a second until you hear a short beep to end a call

INFORMATION

- If you receive a videophone call, a substitute image set in the substitute image setting of Image Setting will be sent.
- When Call Waiting Service is subscribed and activated, you can receive a voice call during a call by holding down the switch for over a second.

Setting a party to call using the earphone/microphone set

Headset Button Control

Set the receiver call using a flat type earphone/microphone set with switch by assigning the phonebook No.

Default OFF

1 MENU 8 6 6 3

2 Select *Control function* field ▶ 1

- To cancel: 2 ▶ Go to Step 5

3 Select *Phonebook No.* field

4 Select the receiver ▶ ●

5 Press 📖

INFORMATION

- When the phonebook data of the Phonebook No. set by this function is deleted or overwritten in other data, or the Phonebook No. is changed, this setting is canceled.

Answering a call automatically with the earphone/microphone connected

Auto Answer

When using a flat type earphone/microphone with switch, this sets whether to receive an incoming call automatically.
When a voice or videophone call is automatically received, the voice of the other party is heard from the connected earphone/microphone.

- If an incoming call is received during another call, this function is not activated.
- This function does not work in Public mode (Driving mode).

Default OFF

1 MENU 8 6 6 2

2 Select *Auto answering* field ▶ 1

- To cancel: 2 ▶ Go to Step 4

3 Select *Delayed time(Sec)* field ▶ Enter the time (0 to 120 sec) before answering automatically

4 Press 📖

INFORMATION

- When a videophone call has been answered by Auto Answer, the substitute image set in Image Setting is sent and a videophone call is automatically started.
- When this function and Answer Machine, Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service are set simultaneously, the set ringing time determines which function will be used.
- When the setting of ***Delayed time(Sec)*** is within the time set by Mute Ring Time Setting, Auto Answer does not function.

Hearing the ring tone only through the earphone

Headset Switch

When connecting a flat type earphone/microphone set with switch, you can set to hear the ring tone only through the earphone.

Default Headset + speaker

1 MENU 8 6 6 1

2 Press 2

- To hear the ring tone both through the earphone and the speaker: 1

INFORMATION

- When a flat type earphone/microphone set with switch is not connected, the ring tone sounds through the speaker regardless of this setting.
- Even when you set to ***Headset only***, you will hear the ring tone through the speaker when 20 seconds pass without answering a call.

Determining a service provider

NW Search Method

This function allows you to select a FOMA service provider. Select whether to set the service provider manually or using automatic search. Determine a service provider when you select ***Manual select***.

> Usually, you do not need to change this setting.

Default Auto select NW

1 MENU 8 8 5

2 **Select each item to set**

Search method :

Sets how to retrieve a network.

- If you select ***Auto select NW***, you cannot set ***Manual select***.

Manual select :

Determines a service provider.

- A service provider other than DoCoMo cannot be selected for manual selection (as of February 2006).

3 **Press** ☎

Reducing the start-up time after power-on

Quick Start-up

Default OFF

1 MENU 8 8 7

2 **Press** 1

- To cancel: 2

INFORMATION

● Even when you set to ***ON***, it takes the normal time to start up in the following cases.

- When the remaining battery level is 2 or lower
- When the battery pack is replaced
- When 24 hours passes after the power was turned off

It may also take the normal time to start up after you turn the power off with any other screen than the standby display or while is being displayed after power-on.

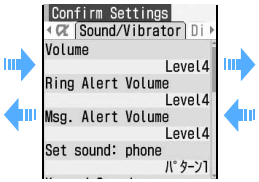
Checking current settings of functions

Confirm Settings

- During PIM Lock, the specific setting of the item being locked is displayed as "---".

1 MENU 8 4 2

2 ● **to confirm the settings**



Resetting functions

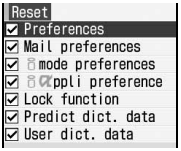
Reset

This resets functions to their default settings.

- For the functions to be returned to the default settings by resetting, see "Menu list". In addition, the following functions and data, though not mentioned in "Menu list", are reset to the default settings:
  - When basic settings are selected:
    - ***Normal, Type of tile icons*** and ***Type of animation***
    - Silent mode
    - Public mode (Driving mode)
    - Call cost icon
    - History of symbols and pictograms
  - When predict dictionary data is selected:
    - Data recorded using the input prediction function
  - When user dictionary data is selected:
    - Data recorded using Save Word

1 MENU 8 4 5

2 **Enter the terminal security code ▶ Select the item**



3 ☎ ▶ **Select *Yes***

INFORMATION

● If you reset i-mode Setting, i-channel information will not be displayed in a ticker in the standby display. When this happens, if the i-channel information is automatically updated or if you press [ch/クリア] on the standby display to view the channel list, the latest information is received and you can display it in a ticker on the standby display.

Deleting registered data collectively

Delete All Data

Deletes the saved data and returns the settings of the functions to the default.

- Protected data are also deleted.
- Delete All Data should be done with battery fully charged. If the battery power is not enough, the data may not be deleted collectively.
- The following data preinstalled by default are deleted:
  - i-αppli
  - Chara-den
  - Images in ***Deco-Mail picture*** and ***Item*** folders of ***Image*** (My Picture) in Data Box
- The following data saved or registered are deleted:
  - Mail template
  - Mail group
  - Bookmark
  - Entered URL
  - URL history
  - Screen memo
  - Last visited URL
  - i-channel (Received info)
  - i-αppli
  - i-αppli display history
  - Phonebook data
  - Received call history
  - Redial data
  - Voice memo
  - Chara-den
  - Data read by Bar Code Reader
  - Notepad
  - Alarm
  - Call duration
  - Saved word/fixed phrase
  - Registered USSD
  - Recorded answering message
  - Own Number data (except for ***My phone number***)
  - Created folders/albums
  - Update of software (Reserved update)
  - Message R/F
  - i-mode Mail
  - Chat mail (including chat member settings and personal info setting)
  - SMS message
  - Recorded message (including the greeting)
  - Data in folders other than the ***Preinstalled*** and ***Mail Attach Melody*** folders of ***Image/i-motion/Melody*** in Data Box
  - Schedule (including holidays registered/changed)
- The functions to be returned to the default by Reset*1 and the following functions return to the default:
  - Sort Criteria
  - Answer Machine
  - Camera
  - Movie Camera
  - Sound Recorder
  - Terminal security code
  - Privacy Mode Setting
  - Date and Time Setting
  - External Device setting
  - Arrival call act
  - Menu Setting
  - Changed folder name
  - Custom Menu
  - i-mode Shortcut for bookmark
  - i-αppli (functions set from the software list)
  - Phonebook Search
  - Operation settings of ***Image/i-motion/Melody/Chara-den***
  - Data exchange settings by infrared communication

*1 SMS settings other than ***Delivered report*** and the settings in Certificate Setting other than CA Certificate 1 to 9 will not return to the default.

1 [MENU] [8] [4] [6] ▶ **Enter the terminal security code** ▶ **Select *Yes***

Data are deleted collectively during restart.

INFORMATION

● The following data will not be deleted. The default settings cannot be restored either.
- The data saved, registered or set in the UIM
- Data communication setting set via a PC

● If the amount of data to be deleted is large, about 1 minute may be required to restart. Be careful not to turn off the power before completing the operation.

● If you perform Delete All Data, i-channel information will not be displayed in a ticker in the standby display. If the i-channel information is automatically updated or if you press [ch/クリア] on the standby display to view the channel list, the latest information is received and you can display it in a ticker on the standby display.

● If the data or i-αppli preinstalled by default are deleted, they can be downloaded from i-mode site "My D-style" (☛P330). Packet communication fee is required separately to download.

Network Services

Network services available using FOMA terminal ..... Network Service 300
Using Voice Mail Service ..... Voice Mail 300
Using Call Waiting Service ..... Call Waiting 301
Using Call Forwarding Service ..... Call Forwarding 302
Using Nuisance Call Blocking Service ..... Nuisance Call Blocking 303
Using Caller ID Request Service ..... Caller ID Request 303
Using Dual Network Service ..... Dual Network 303
Switching languages for the guidance ..... English Guidance 303
Using Service Dialing Number ..... Service Dialing Number 304
Setting actions for incoming calls during talking 304
Setting Remote Control ..... Remote Control 304
Using Multi Number ..... Multi Number 305
Registering new network services ..... Added Service (Register USSD) 306

In this manual, the description of each network service is explained by the operation procedure using the menu of FOMA terminal. For details, see "Network Services User's Guide". For Multi Number, see "Multi Number User's Guide".

Network services available using FOMA terminal

Network Service

This manual shows an only overview of each network service.

Service	Application	Monthly fee	Page
Voice Mail Service	Required	Charged	P300
Call Waiting Service	Required	Charged	P301
Call Forwarding Service	Required	Free	P302
Nuisance Call Blocking Service	Required	Free	P303
Caller ID Request Service	Not required	Free	P303
Dual Network Service	Required	Charged	P303
English Guidance Service	Not required	Free	P303
Multi Number	Required	Charged	P305
Public mode (Driving mode)	Not required	Free	P65
Public mode (power off)	Not required	Free	P66

- In this manual, the description of each network service is explained by the operation procedure using the menu of FOMA terminal. For details, see “Network Services User’s Guide”.
  For Multi Number, see “Multi Number User’s Guide”.
- When new network services are provided by DoCoMo, you can register them in the menu. ☛P306

Using Voice Mail Service

Voice Mail

Voice Mail Service stores voice messages when FOMA terminal is turned off or in a location where radio waves are hard to reach, or when you cannot answer a call.
You can access your voice messages from anywhere in Japan.

- Unanswered calls are transferred to the Voice Mail Service Center, which stores voice messages. The icon indicated on the standby display and the received call history alert you that one or more calls have been transferred.
- When there is an incoming call if Voice Mail Service is active, the ring tone sounds. You can talk while the ring tone sounds. The ring tone duration (ringing time) can be changed. However, if you set the ringing time to 0 second, the received call history will not be recorded.
- You can forward incoming calls to the Voice Mail Service Center manually. ☛P58

Basic flow of Voice Mail Service

Step 1 : Activate the service

Step 2 : The caller records a voice message*1

Step 3 : Play back the voice message

*1 The caller can press # on the phone to skip hearing the answering message and proceed directly to recording mode.

Operation procedure

1 MENU 9 1

2 **Perform the following operations**

Item	Operation procedure
Activate	1 1 ▶ **Select *Yes*** ▶ **Select *Yes*** ▶ **Enter the ringing time (0 to 120 sec)**
Set ring time	1 2 ▶ **Select *Yes*** ▶ **Enter the ringing time (0 to 120 sec)**
Deactivate	1 3 ▶ **Select *Yes***
Check setting	1 4 ▶ **Select *Yes***
Play messages	When a new voice message arrives, 1 with the number of messages is displayed. 1 5 ▶ **Select *Yes*** ▶ **Follow the voice prompts**
Voice Mail setting	1 6 ▶ **Select *Yes*** ▶ **Follow the voice prompts**
Check messages	1 7 ▶ **Select *Yes*** When a new voice message arrives, 1 with the number of messages is displayed on the standby display.
Tone/Vibration message notification Default Voice Mail alert: ON Notification melody: パターン 1 (Pattern 1)	You can set an alert tone to sound when the caller left a new voice message, or when the number of voice messages has increased at the time you perform ***Check messages***. ① 2 ▶ **Select *Voice Mail alert*** ② 1 • To disable the alert tone: 2 ▶ Go to Step ④ ③ **Select *Notification melody*** ▶ **Select a folder** ▶ **Select a melody** ④ **Press** ▭
Notify missed call: Activate	When FOMA terminal is turned on or within the service area, this function notifies you of the calls received with FOMA terminal turned off or outside the service area using SMS. 3 1 ▶ **Select *Yes*** ▶ **Select *Yes*/*No*** ***Yes***: Notifies only the incoming calls with caller ID. ***No***: Notifies all incoming calls.
Notify missed call: Deactivate	3 2 ▶ **Select *Yes***
Notify missed call: Check setting	3 3 ▶ **Select *Yes***
Hide Voice Mail Icon	4 ▶ **Select *Yes*** The icon that indicates the number of voice messages disappears.

INFORMATION

- From the screen for checking the current settings, you can change the setting by the submenu.
  MENU 1: Activate Voice Mail Service
  MENU 2: Deactivate Voice Mail Service
  MENU 3: Set the ringing time of Voice Mail Service
- New voice messages can be played quickly from the standby display. ☛P35
- The number of messages displayed shows the number of new voice messages provided by guidance when the messages are played, which does not include the number of saved voice messages.

Using Call Waiting Service

Call Waiting

When a third party calls you while you are on the phone, this service notifies you with the call waiting ring tone. This allows you to place your current call on hold and then answer the other call.

1 MENU 9 2

2 **Perform the following operations**

Item	Operation procedure
Activate	1 ▶ **Select *Yes***
Deactivate	2 ▶ **Select *Yes***
Check setting	3 ▶ **Select *Yes***

Putting the current call on hold to answer an incoming call:

1 **during a call**

The current call is put on hold and the second call can be answered.

- ***Multi connecting*** appears on the screen.
- To switch the other parties: ▭
- When ***Hold*** is displayed in the guide row, you can put your current call on hold by pressing ●. Press ● again to release the hold.
- To end the call on hold: MENU 1 during Call Waiting (multi-connection)

2 **when you finish talking to the other party**

The call is ended and the ring tone sounds.

- To resume talks with the other party on hold: ☎

Answering an incoming call after finishing the current call

1 [☎] during a call

A ring tone sounds to indicate there is an incoming call.

2 Press [☎]

You can receive a new call.

Holding the current call and making another call

1 [MENU][7] during a call ▶ Enter the phone number

- To make a call from the received call history: [MENU][2]
- To make a call using the redial data: [MENU][3]
- To make a call to the other party registered in the phonebook: [📖] ▶ Select the other party

2 [☎]

Your current call is automatically put on hold and you can begin talking to the other party you called.

- ***Multi connecting*** appears on the screen.
- To switch the other parties: [i]
- When ***Hold*** is displayed in the guide row, you can put your current call on hold by pressing [●]. Press [●] again to release the hold.
- To end the call on hold: [MENU][1] during Call Waiting (multi-connection)

3 [☎] when you finish talking to the other party you called

The call ends.

- To resume the talk to the other party on hold: [☎]

INFORMATION

● During multi-connection, you cannot receive another incoming call. Unanswered calls are recorded as missed calls on the received call history.

Using Call Forwarding Service

Call Forwarding

Call Forwarding Service automatically forwards incoming calls to your home or office when FOMA terminal is outside the service area, the power is turned off or you cannot answer the call.

- When there is an incoming call if Call Forwarding Service is active, the ring tone sounds. You can talk while the ring tone sounds. The time duration when the ring tone is sounding (ringing time) can be changed. However, if you set the ringing time to ***0 sec***, the received call history will not be recorded.
- You can forward incoming calls manually. ☛P58

Basic flow of Call Forwarding Service

Step 1 : Set the forwarding destination phone number

Step 2 : Activate Call Forwarding Service

Step 3 : Calls come in to your FOMA terminal

Step 4 : Unanswered calls are automatically forwarded to the previously specified destination

Operation procedure

1 [MENU][9][3]

2 Perform the following operations

Item	Operation procedure
Activate	[1] ▶ **Select *Yes*** ▶ **Select *Yes*** ▶ **Enter the forwarding destination phone number (up to 26 digits)** ▶ [📖] ▶ **Select *Yes*** ▶ **Enter the ringing time (0 to 120 sec)** • Before selecting the entry field for a phone number, you can set the phone number from the phonebook if you press [MENU], from the redial data if you press [✉], or from the received call history if you press [i].
Deactivate	[2] ▶ **Select *Yes***
Register The Forwarding Number	[3] ▶ **Enter the forwarding destination number** ▶ [📖] ▶ **Select *Yes***
Setting if forwarding number busy	**Set Voice Mail Service to handle calls when the forwarding destination is busy.** [4] ▶ **Select *Yes*** • To cancel the setting: Select ***No***
Check setting	[5] ▶ **Select *Yes***

Setting the guidance or not

1 [1][4][2][9][☎] ▶ Follow the voice prompts

Using Nuisance Call Blocking Service

Nuisance Call Blocking

You can set FOMA terminal to automatically reject nuisance calls. After registering a phone number of the nuisance caller, subsequent calls from the registered phone number are rejected, letting the caller hear the guidance informing it.

1 MENU 9 4

2 **Perform the following operations**

Item	Operation procedure
Register the caller	The phone number of the latest call response is registered in the nuisance call list. The phone numbers you did not answer such as missed calls cannot be registered. 1 ▶ **Select *Yes***
Register selected No.	2 ▶ **Select *Yes* ▶ Enter the phone number to reject (up to 22 digits) ▶** i ▶ **Select *Yes*** • Before selecting the entry field for a phone number, you can set the phone number from the phonebook if you press MENU, from the redial data if you press ✉, or from the received call history if you press i.
Delete all entries	3 ▶ **Select *Yes***
Delete last entry	The last registered phone number is deleted. 4 ▶ **Select *Yes***
Check the number or entries	5 ▶ **Select *Yes***

Using Caller ID Request Service

Caller ID Request

For an incoming call without the caller ID, this service plays a guidance requesting the caller to notify the caller ID. This helps you to avoid troubles caused by nuisance calls, etc.

1 MENU 9 6

2 **Perform the following operations**

Item	Operation procedure
Activate	1 ▶ **Select *Yes***
Deactivate	2 ▶ **Select *Yes***
Check setting	3 ▶ **Select *Yes***

Using Dual Network Service

Dual Network

Allows you to use the mova terminal with the phone number of FOMA terminal. With this function, even in a location outside the FOMA service area, you can make or receive voice calls using the mova terminal if you are inside the mova service area.

- FOMA terminal and mova terminal cannot be used simultaneously.
- Perform operation to switch Dual Network Service from FOMA terminal or mova terminal which is not available.

Activating mova terminal

1 **Dial “1540” on the mova terminal**

2 **Follow the voice prompts**

Activating FOMA terminal

Switch Dual Network Service that is being used by the mova terminal to FOMA terminal.

1 MENU 9 9 5

2 **Perform the following operations**

Item	Operation procedure
Dual Network Switching	1 ▶ **Select *Yes* ▶ Enter the network security code**
Check setting	2 ▶ **Select *Yes***

Switching languages for the guidance

English Guidance

This service allows you and other parties to hear the guidance in English when using various network services as well as when making and receiving calls.

- Guidances in Japanese and English are provided.
- While the caller is using this service, the caller’s settings will take priority over the receiver’s.

1 MENU 9 9 4

2 Perform the following operations

Item	Operation procedure
Guidance setting	① 1 ▶ Select *Yes* ② 1 or 2 *Japanese*: Sets the guidance for you to hear at the time of calling to Japanese. *English*: Sets the guidance for you to hear at the time of calling to English. ③ Select *Yes* ▶ 1 to 3 *Japanese*: Sets the guidance for the other party to hear at the time of receiving to Japanese. *Japanese+English*: Sets the guidance for the other party to hear at the time of receiving to Japanese followed by English. *English+Japanese*: Sets the guidance for the other party to hear at the time of receiving to English followed by Japanese.
Check setting	2 ▶ Select *Yes*

Using Service Dialing Number

Service Dialing Number

Calls are made to DoCoMo for Repairs or the DoCoMo for General Inquiries.

- The item numbers for the DoCoMo for Repairs and DoCoMo for General Inquiries may differ or not appear depending on the UIM types. ☛P38

1 MENU 9 9 6

2 Perform the following operations

Item	Operation procedure
ドコモ故障問合せ **(DoCoMo for Repairs)**	1 ▶ Select *Yes* A call is made to DoCoMo for Repairs.
ドコモ総合案内・受付 **(DoCoMo for General Inquiries)**	2 ▶ Select *Yes* A call is made to the DoCoMo Information Center.

Setting actions for incoming calls during talking

During a voice call or 64K data communication, you can use Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service, etc. to handle an incoming call.

1 MENU 9

2 Perform the following operations

Item	Operation procedure
Arrival call act Default Answer	Set how incoming calls are handled while talking. 8 ▶ 1 to 4 *Answer*: You can respond an incoming call received during a call or 64K data communication or forward it to the Voice Mail Service Center or to the forwarding destination registered in Call Forwarding Service. *Voice Mail*: Incoming calls received during a call or 64K data communication are handled by Voice Mail Service. *Call Forwarding*: Incoming calls received during a call or 64K data communication are forwarded. *Call Rejection*: Incoming calls received during a call or 64K data communication are rejected.
Set arrival act : Activate	Activate the response method selected by *Arrival call act*. 7 1 ▶ Select *Yes*
Set arrival act : Deactivate	7 2 ▶ Select *Yes*
Set arrival act : Check setting	7 3 ▶ Select *Yes*

INFORMATION

- Even if *Arrival call act* is set to any of the above, calls will be recorded in the received call history.

Setting Remote Control

Remote Control

You can access such services as Voice Mail Service and Call Forwarding Service from touch-tone general subscriber phones, payphones, or DoCoMo mobile phones.

1 MENU 9 9 3

2 Perform the following operations

Item	Operation procedure
Activate	1 ▶ Select *Yes*
Deactivate	2 ▶ Select *Yes*
Check setting	3 ▶ Select *Yes*

Using Multi Number

Multi Number

Up to 2 additional numbers (***Additional No1*** and ***Additional No2***) can be used besides ***Basic Number***.

1 MENU 9 9 7

2 **Perform the following operations**

Item	Operation procedure
Set Multi Number	You can set a number for making calls by switching multi numbers in this setting. 1 ▶ 1 to 3 ▶ **Select *Yes***
Check setting	2 ▶ **Select *Yes***
Number Setting Default Basic Number: 基本契約番号 / My phone number Additional No1: 付加番号 1 / Not recorded Additional No2: 付加番号 2 / Not recorded Multi number call: Disable	Set the phone number subscribed to Multi Number. ① 3 ▶ **Select each item to set** ***Name***: Setting is available for each ***Additional No1***/***Additional No2*** (up to 20 one-byte or 10 two-byte characters). For ***Basic Number***, content of the setting of Own Number is displayed. ***Phone number***: Set the subscribed phone number in ***Additional No1***/***Additional No2***. ***Multi number call***: If set to ***Enable***, you can make a call by selecting the number to be notified to the receiver from the submenu when making a call. ② **Press** m
Incoming calls melody setting Default Individual setting: OFF	**Set the ring tone etc. for each additional number.** ① 4 ▶ 1 or 2 ▶ **Select each item to set** ***Individual setting***: Select whether to set the setting for incoming calls individually. • When ***OFF*** is set, the following items cannot be set. ***Ring alert, Show image***: Setting procedure ☛P63 ② **Press** m

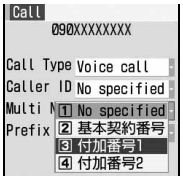
Making calls by selecting the number to be notified to the other party

When making a call, you can select the number to notify the other party from the submenu.

1 **Enter a phone number ▶** MENU 3

- To make a call from the redial data: ○ ▶ Highlight a party from the redial data ▶ MENU 3
- To make a call from the received call history: ○ ▶ Highlight a party from the received call history ▶ MENU 3

2 **Select *Multi No.* field ▶ Select the number to notify the other party**



- When ***No specified*** is selected, number set in ***Set Multi Number*** is used.
- When ***Multi number call*** is set to ***Disable*** in ***Number Setting***, Multi numbers cannot be selected.

3 MENU ▶ **Select *Yes***

INFORMATION

- If you pull out the UIM or replace it by another UIM, the settings for Multi Number saved in FOMA terminal (name, phone number, etc.) may be deleted. In such a case, register them again.
- On the screen during the call receiving/dialing, the names corresponding to the multi numbers (***Basic Number***/***Additional No1***/***Additional No2***) are displayed.
- In the redial data, the names corresponding to the multi numbers (***Basic Number***/***Additional No1***/***Additional No2***) notified during the dialing are displayed.
- In the received call history, the names corresponding to the received multiple numbers (***Basic Number***/***Additional No1***/***Additional No2***) are displayed.
- If a call is made from the redial data, the number that was dialed before is used.
- If a call is made from the received call history, the number that was received before is used.

Registering new network services

Added Service (Register USSD)

When a new network service is provided by DoCoMo, you can use the service by registering it in the menu.

1 MENU 9 9

2 Perform the following operations

Item	Operation procedure
Register USSD	■ **Registering** 1 ▶ **Highlight the number to record/change the service** ▶ ▶ **Select *USSD code* field** ▶ **Enter the USSD code** ▶ **Select *Name* field** ▶ **Enter the service name (up to 20 one-byte or 10 two-byte characters)** ▶ • Up to 10 services can be registered. • Enter the service code provided by DoCoMo in ***USSD code*** field. The service code is the code used to make the settings for network services. It is registered as the USSD code on FOMA terminal. ■ **Using the services** 1 ▶ 1 **to** 8 The registered code is transmitted to the Service Center. ■ **Deleting the registered services** 1 ▶ **Select a service** ▶ MENU 1 (To delete all services: MENU 2 ▶ **Select *Yes***)
Record reply message	Register the message corresponding to a code returned from the Service Center when an added service is executed. This message is displayed when the recorded code is returned as a reply. ■ **Registering** 2 ▶ 1 **to** 8 ▶ **Select *USSD code* field** ▶ **Enter the USSD code** ▶ **Select *Reply message* field** ▶ **Enter the message (up to 20 one-byte or 10 two-byte characters)** ▶ • Up to 10 messages can be registered. ■ **Deleting the registered messages** 2 ▶ **Select a service** ▶ MENU 1 (**To delete all messages:** MENU 2) ▶ **Select *Yes***

Data Communication

Data communication 308
Flow of setup for data communication 309
AT command 310

For data communication, see “Manual for Data Communication” (Manual for Data Communication. pdf) in CD-ROM provided for details. To see “Manual for Data Communication” (Manual for Data Communication. pdf), Adobe Reader (version 6.0 or later is recommended) is required. If Adobe Reader is not installed in your PC, you can download the latest version from the Adobe Systems Incorporated Web site. (Communication fee are separately required for downloading.) For details, see the Adobe Systems Incorporated Web site.

Data communication

The data communication modes available from FOMA terminal and hints on use are explained.

- FOMA terminal does not support the Remote Wakeup.
- FOMA terminal does not support fax communication.
- When connecting FOMA terminal to DoCoMo's PDA "sigmarion Ⅱ" or "musea" for data communication, make sure to update "sigmarion Ⅱ" or "musea". For details on update, visit the DoCoMo website.

Supported communication modes

FOMA terminal supports 3 communication modes: packet communication, 64K data communication and data transfer.
These communications become available by installing the related software onto a PC from the attached CD-ROM, connecting FOMA terminal to the PC and making required settings.

■ Packet communication

Packet communication charges are based on the amount of data sent and received, which make it suitable for high-speed exchange of relatively small amounts of data such as sending and receiving mail. No communication charges are required when no data are exchanged even if you are connected to the network. Therefore, sending/receiving data as needed while remaining connected to the network is possible.
High-speed packet communication provides a maximum reception speed of 384 kbps and a maximum transmission speed of 64 kbps by using access points that support packet communication on FOMA, such as DoCoMo's "mopera U / mopera" Internet connection service. These are offered by Best-effort connection which allows transmission speed to vary with the environment and the rate of congestion.
Note that communications of large-size data such as for viewing and downloading websites containing images will require high charges.

■ 64K data communication

The 64K data communications allow data transfer/reception at stabled communication rate of 64 kbps. Communication charges are based on the duration of the connection to the network regardless of the volume of data, which make it suitable for sending and receiving relatively large amounts of data as in downloading multi-media contents. You need to use access points that support FOMA 64K data communication such as DoCoMo's "mopera U / mopera" Internet connection service or ISDN synchronized 64 kbps access points.
Note that communicating for long time will require high charges.

■ Data transfer

It is the mode of non-charged communication in which data are transferred/exchanged via FOMA USB cable (optional). Various data including the phonebook, incoming/outgoing mail and bookmarks are sent/received.

Usage precautions

Internet service provider usage charge

When using the Internet from PC, usage charge to your Internet service provider (hereinafter called provider) is generally required. This charge is paid directly to the provider, and is separate from the FOMA service charge. For more information on usage charges, contact your provider.

- DoCoMo provides 2 Internet connection services: mopera U and mopera.
  The mopera U service requires subscription and a monthly fee. It allows you to use broadband Internet connection and international roaming services. There is also a plan that requires a monthly fee only when you use the service.
  The mopera service allows you to access the Internet without subscription and monthly fee. You can make a connection with Internet immediately.
  For details such as on charges, visit the DoCoMo website.

Setting the dialup connection (provider, etc.)

Different dialup connections are required for packet communication and 64K data communication. When performing packet communication, use the dialup connection for FOMA packet communication. When performing 64K data communication, use the dialup connection for FOMA 64 kbps data communication or ISDN synchronized 64 kbps data communication.

- You cannot connect to access points of PHS 64K/32K data communication such as PIAFS or DoPa.

User authentication during network access

Some dialup connections require user authentication (ID and password) before a connection can be established. If user authentication is required, you must use your communication software or dialup network to enter your ID and password before connection. Your ID and password will be assigned by the dialup connection's provider or network administrator. For more information, contact your provider or network administrator.

Access authentication when using PC browser

To authenticate FirstPass (user certificate), you must install FirstPass PC software from the attached CD-ROM and configure it. See “FirstPassManual” in the CD-ROM for details.
To view “FirstPassManual” (PDF format), Adobe Reader (version 6.0 or later recommended) is required. If Adobe Reader is not installed in your PC, you need to download the latest version from the Adobe Systems Incorporated website (Communication fee is separately required for downloading). See the Adobe Systems Incorporated website for details.

■ **Operating environment for the FirstPass PC software**

Item	Requirements
PC	PC/AT compatible computer
OS	The Japanese version of Windows 98SE, Me, 2000 or XP
Memory requirements*1	Windows 98SE, Me, 2000: 32MB or more Windows XP: 128MB or more
Hard disk capacity*1	10 MB or more free disk space
Browser	Microsoft® Internet Explorer 5.5 and later version For Windows XP, Microsoft® Internet Explorer 6.0 and later version

*1 May vary with the PC system configurations.

Conditions of packet communication and 64K data communication

To perform data communication from FOMA terminal, the following conditions must be satisfied.

- The PCs which may use a FOMA USB cable (optional).
- You must be within the FOMA service area.
- Packet communication requires an access point that supports FOMA packet communications.
- 64K data communication requires an access point that supports FOMA 64 kbps or ISDN synchronized 64 kbps data communication.

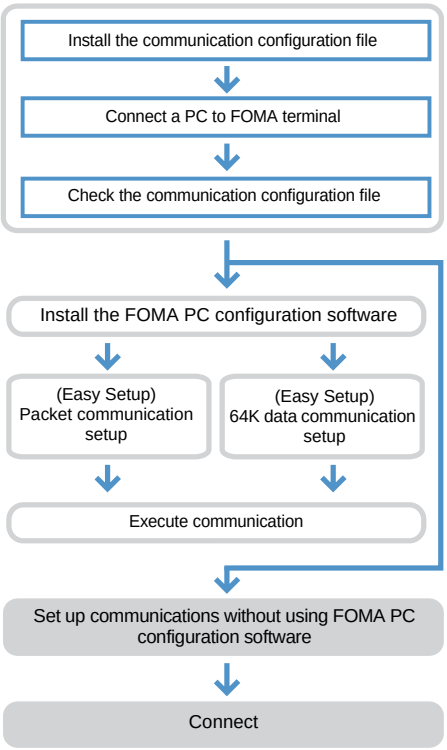
However, even when the above requirements are satisfied, you may not be able to perform data communication if base station traffic is heavy, or the signal quality is poor.

Glossary of Data communication

- Administrator privilege
  A user level that provides complete access to all OS functions in Windows XP and 2000. There must be at least 1 user that has administrator privileges for each PC. A user that has no administrator privileges is not normally allowed to install/uninstall drivers and software.
- APN (Access Point Name)
  String to identify a provider or in-house LAN to connect by packet communication. The APN for mopera U is “mopera.net” and mopera is “mopera.ne.jp”.
- cid (Context Identifier)
  The registration number when writing packet communication dialup connection (APN) information to FOMA terminal. 10 numbers from 1 to 10 are available for FOMA terminal.
  By default, “mopera.ne.jp” is registered in cid1, and “mopera.net” in cid3.
- W-TCP
  A TCP parameter designed to fully utilize TCP/IP transmission capacity during packet communications in a FOMA network. This communication setting is essential to enable full use of FOMA terminal capability.

Flow of setup for data communication

The setup work needed to connect FOMA terminal to a PC to perform packet or 64K data communication is as follows:



Communication configuration file (driver)

Install the communication configuration file on a PC from the attached CD-ROM, before connecting FOMA terminal to a PC to perform data communication in the communication mode.

FOMA PC configuration software

When the FOMA PC configuration software (found on the CD-ROM) is installed on a PC, a number of settings required for data communication via connection between FOMA terminal and PC can be made from the PC by simple operation.

Checking operating environment

Use the communication configuration file and the FOMA PC configuration software in the following operating environments:

Item	Requirements
PC*1	PC/AT compatible computer
OS	The Japanese version of Windows 98, Me, 2000, XP
Memory requirements	Windows 98, Me: 32MB or more Windows 2000: 64MB or more Windows XP: 128MB or more
Hard disk capacity	5 MB or more free disk space

*1 USB port (conform to USB specification 1.1/2.0) is required.

INFORMATION

- Note that utilization may not be possible in certain operating environments. Furthermore, operation will not be guaranteed in an environment other than that described above and DoCoMo assumes no responsibility for operation under such conditions.

AT command

AT commands are commands for setting FOMA terminal functions using a PC.
FOMA terminals comply with AT commands and support some extended commands and proprietary AT commands.
For details of AT command, see “Manual for Data Communication” in CD-ROM provided.

Character Entry

Entering characters 312
Entering characters using 5-touch Input Method ..... 5-touch Input Method 313
Registering fixed phrases ..... Save Phrase 317
Copying/cutting and pasting characters ..... Copy Character 317
Entering characters using codes ..... KUTEN Code Input 318
Registering frequently used words ..... Save Word 318
Entering characters using Slot Input Method ..... Slot Input Method 319
Setting input method ..... Input Method Setting 320

Entering characters

FOMA terminal has many functions such as the phonebook and mail that require entering characters.

- There are “5-touch Input Method” and “Slot Input Method” for entering characters.
  In 5-touch Input Method, several characters are assigned to each key and at each press, the character switches. ☛P330
  In Slot Input Method, select characters from the upper and lower slots on the input board. ☛P319
- The character types which can be entered varies by each method:

○: Available ×: Unavailable —: No character

Input method / Character type	5-touch Input Method		Slot Input Method	
	One-byte	Two-byte	One-byte	Two-byte
Hiragana/kanji	—	○	—	○
Katakana	○	○	○	×
Alphabets	○	○	○	×
Numeric	○	○	○	×
Symbols	○	○	○	○
Pictograms	—	○	—	○

- There are 2 character types: one-byte characters and two-byte characters. 1 two-byte character, 1 two-byte blank or line feed is counted as 2 one-byte characters. For one-byte characters, voiced sound and semi-voiced sound characters are also counted as 1 character.
- Use KUTEN Code Input to enter characters whose readings you do not know.
- A total of 6,355 JIS level 1 and level 2 characters can be entered.
- Complex characters may be displayed in a changed or simplified form.
- In this manual, to enter characters including the operation of pressing ● is referred to as “enter”.

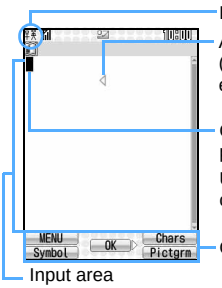
Character entry screen

There are 2 types of character entry methods: “full-screen entry” and “in-line entry”.

- Some entry fields may only be able to use either character entry method.
- When pasted characters or fixed phrases are entered exceedingly, they are truncated and fit to the input characters limit.

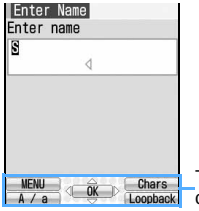
Full-screen entry

Highlight the entry field and press ● to display the full-screen entry area.



In-line entry

Highlight the entry field and press 0 to 9, ✱ and # to enable character entry directly. In hiragana or two-byte katakana mode, the character is fixed by pressing ●.



Character entry screen submenu

Press MENU on the character entry screen. The following operations are enabled. However, the submenu is not displayed before the character is fixed, or on the decoration selection screen of Deco-mail.

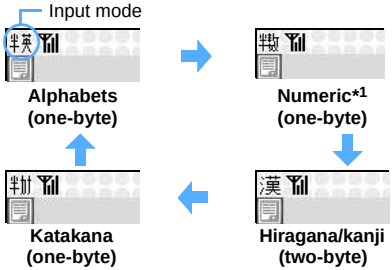
- Copy characters ☛P318
- Cut characters ☛P318
- Paste copied/cut characters ☛P318
- Quote the phonebook data ☛P316
- Save words ☛P318
- Save fixed phrases ☛P317
- Set the input method ☛P320
- Quote Own Number, result of calculation with Calculator or data read by Bar Code Reader (Items displayed varies by the entry field) ☛P316, P317
- End character edit entry (displayed only when characters are entered in Slot Input Method)

Changing input modes

- The available input modes are different depending on the character entry screen.

Using [C] to change modes

The input modes change each time [C] is pressed as follows:



*1 Not displayed by Slot Input Method.

- In Japanese mode, the character input mode changes in the following order: “kanji” → “one-byte katakana” → “one-byte alphabets” → “one-byte numeric”.

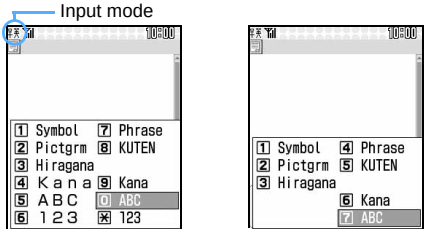
Using the input mode list to change modes

You can select the following input modes by pressing [Menu] on the character entry screen.

Item	Input mode		Item	Input mode	
Hiragana	Hiragana/ kanji	漢	***123****2	Two-byte numeric	全数
			Kana	One-byte katakana	半カ
Kana*2	Two-byte katakana	全カ	*ABC*	One-byte alphabets	半英
ABC*2	Two-byte alphabets	全英	*123**2	One-byte numeric	半数

*2 This is not displayed by Slot Input Method.

- 全カナ is displayed when only hiragana can be entered.



5-touch Input Method | **Slot Input Method**

- Press [Center] or corresponding dial keys to select input mode.
- The following operations are also enabled by making selections from the input mode list:
  - ***Symbol*** : Enters symbols ☛P315
  - ***Pictgrm*** : Enters pictograms ☛P315
  - ***Phrase*** : Enters fixed phrases ☛P315
  - ***KUTEN*** : Uses KUTEN code to enter characters ☛P318

Entering characters using 5-touch Input Method

5-touch Input Method

Entering characters

Kana/Kanji Conversion

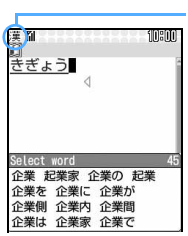
Example Entering “企業” in the phonebook

1 Highlight *Enter name* field ▶ [Center]

The character entry screen is displayed.

- In English display, the alphabet mode is displayed first. Press [C] to change to the hiragana/kanji mode.

2 Enter “きぎょう”



“き” → Press [2] twice.
Press [Right] to move the cursor 1 position to the right. (It is not necessary when the cursor was moved by the automatic cursor function.)

“ぎ” → Press [2] twice ▶ [*]

“ょ” → Press [8] 3 times ▶ [Clear]

“う” → Press [1] 3 times

- Press [Clear] to delete the entry when you have pressed a wrong key.
- To enter “゛” and “゜”: Enter the character ▶ [*].
  For example, after entering “ほ”, each pressing of [*] changes the character as: ぼ→ぽ→ほ. For characters that do not accept “゛” or “゜”, it is entered as two-byte characters.
- To change upper/lower case, enter the character and press [Clear].
- Pressing [MENU] changes characters to two-byte katakana characters.

■ **Returning to the previous character:**

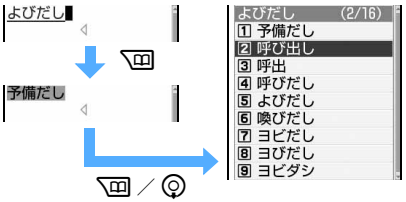
Pressing [Mail] immediately after entering a character brings back to the previous character. The character appears in the reverse order of character switching every time [Mail] is pressed. (e.g. ···→ 1 →お→え→う→い→あ→ 1 →···) However, when voiced or semi-voiced sounds are entered or upper and lower case are changed, you cannot switch characters.

■ **Fixing hiragana without conversion:**
Go to Step 4 after entering the hiragana.

3 [book]

- ◉ also converts text to kana/kanji when predict conversion options are not displayed. Predict conversion ☛P315
- Press [clr] to restore the entry before conversion.

■ **Displaying the list of conversion options:**
When pressing [book] fails to display the desired character, a list of conversion options is displayed by pressing ◉ or [book] again. If the list of conversion options has some pages, you can switch to the next page and the previous page by pressing [✉] and [a/A], respectively. Select the conversion options by ◉ and press ● or press the key for the number of each option.



4 ●

The character is fixed.

- When ***Input prediction*** of Input Method Setting is ***ON***, select *閉じる* (Close).

■ **Inserting characters:**
Move the cursor to the insertion point by ◉ and enter the character. The entered character is inserted at the cursor position.

■ **Deleting characters:**

- When the cursor is inside an entered character string
(Example: ドコモ太郎)
  - Press [clr] to delete a character at the cursor position.
  - Press [clr] for over a second to delete the character at the cursor position and all following characters.
- When the cursor is at the end of an entered character string
(Example: ドコモ太郎)
  - Press [clr] to delete the character at the left of the cursor position.
  - Press [clr] for over a second to delete all entered characters.

■ **Entering line feed:**
Move the cursor to the location to enter a line feed and press [#].

- Some entry fields may not permit a line feed.

5 Press ●

Character entry is exited.

- To leave the space as a blank, delete all characters and press ●, or press [clr] when the text was newly entered.
- To edit the entered contents of character entry screen and return to the screen before editing, delete all characters and press [clr] and select ***Yes***.

INFORMATION

- On entry screen for message, character insertion, deletion, or line feed could be made by pressing [clr] or [#] after the character is set on Step 4.
- In the following input modes, when the specified time elapses without pressing any key in inputting, the automatic cursor function will automatically move the cursor to the right. You can not only change the time setting for move, but also disable the automatic cursor function. ☛P320
  - One-byte/two-byte alphabets
  - Hiragana/kanji
  - One-byte/two-byte katakana
- You can perform the following operations after the automatic cursor function has moved the cursor to the right.
  - [*] : Add voiced/semi-voiced sound
  - [a/A] : Switch between upper/lower cases
  - [✉] : Return to the previous character

Block conversion of multiple clauses

The characters can be converted as a block to simplify text entry.

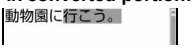
- Up to 24 two-byte characters can be converted.

Example Entering “動物園に行こう。”

1 Enter characters ▶ [book]

■ **Fix all characters:** [MENU]

■ **Fix converted portion:** ●



■ **Change conversion range:** ◉

When pressing ◉

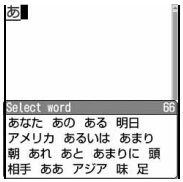
Entering characters using input prediction function

The input prediction function is to display a list of predict conversion options that match the initial part of the reading when characters are entered.
This function automatically registers previously entered characters as predict dictionary data; you can easily enter the same characters next time, quickly by entering only the first part.

- The following words and character strings are displayed as options:
  - Standard words
  - Words entered by kana/kanji conversion
  - Character strings registered by Save Word
- Only the hiragana/kanji mode can be used in predict conversion. However, predict conversion is not available in the following cases:
  - During in-line entry
  - Entering with Slot Input Method
- You can also set not to display the predict conversion options. ☛P320

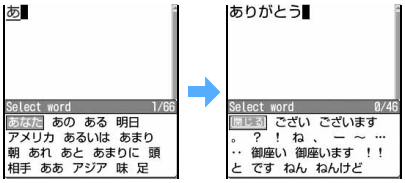
1 Enter characters

A list of predict conversion options is displayed.



- The more characters are entered, the less the number of predict conversion options are available.

2 ● ▶ ✣ to highlight an option ▶ ●



- While the cursor is placed in predict conversion options, the following operations are enabled:
  - ▼/▲ : Switches to the previous/next page
  - 📖 : Enables Kana/Kanji Conversion (Predict conversion options disappear)
  - ● : Fix the character
- When there are no appropriate words, press 📖 to convert text by Kana/Kanji Conversion and predict conversion options vanish.

3 Select *閉じる*

The predict conversion options vanish.

Entering fixed phrases

Enter previously registered sentences, face marks, or pictogram words.

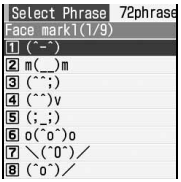
1 📖 7 on the character entry screen

- You can also display by pressing 📖 MENU.

2 1 to 8

- When a fixed phrase has been created/registered, you can select by pressing 9.

3 1 or 8



- ✣ to switch pages.
- To check: Highlight a fixed phrase ▶ 📖 Press ● to enter the fixed phrase.

When selecting *Face mark1*

INFORMATION

- Face marks can be entered by entering "かおもじ" in kana/kanji mode.
- Mail using face marks may become deformed, look different or cannot be correctly displayed depending on the size of the display, number of displayed characters, or the fonts of the other terminal.
- List of fixed phrases ☛P331

Entering symbols and pictograms

- Only available symbols are listed.

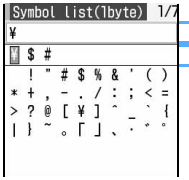
Example Entering symbols

1 Press ▼ on the character entry screen

- Enter pictograms: ▲
- You can display the symbol list by pressing 📖 1 and the pictogram list by pressing 📖 2 on the entry screen for message.
- By pressing MENU on the symbol list, it is switched between two-byte and one-byte symbols, and on the pictogram list, it is switched between pictogram1 and 2.
- Press ▼ or ▲ to switch multiple pages of symbol list and pictogram list.

2 Select a symbol

When you select from a list or input history area, selected symbols are displayed on the continuous input area.



Continuous input area
Input history area (displayed only on the first pages of one-byte and two-byte symbols for the symbol list, or pictogram 1 and 2 for the pictogram list.)

- Up to 20 one-byte or 10 two-byte symbols can be entered and up to 10 pictograms can be entered continuously.
- Up to 10 symbols or pictograms can be displayed at the input history area. When the characters exceed the maximum number, the oldest one will be deleted.
- When the left element in the following brackets is selected, the right element is also automatically selected: e.g. selecting " { " also selects " } ".

() [] {} 「」( ) 〔 〕[ ] { } 〈 〉
《 》「 」『 』【 】

3 Press

INFORMATION

- A part of symbols can be converted by entering readings in kana/kanji mode.

Readings	Symbols you can enter
ぎりしあ	Greek characters
ろしあ	Latin characters
すうじ	① to ⑳, Ⅰ to Ⅹ
けいせん	Ruled line symbols
きごう	Two-byte symbols other than above

- Pictogram can be converted by entering readings in kana/kanji mode. ☛P333
- Symbols and pictograms entered may not appear correctly if transferred by infrared communication.
- Pictograms may not be displayed correctly when sent to an another party using a non i-mode terminal.
- Pictogram 2 used in mail may not be displayed correctly on some phone terminals.

Quoting data to enter characters

You can enter characters by quoting phonebook data, Own Number Information, the result of calculation with Calculator or string information of the data scanned with Bar Code Reader.

- On the character entry screen in which you cannot quote data, operation cannot be made, since menu items are displayed in a light color, or not displayed.

Quoting phonebook data entry

- Switch the character entry screen to full-screen entry.
- The phonebook data is unable to be quoted on the character entry screen of the phonebook.

1 MENU 4 on the character entry screen ▶ Select phonebook data

2 Select the entry

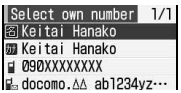
- When the contents are too long, they may be displayed shortly. To check, highlight the content and press . It can be quoted by pressing .

Quoting Own Number entry

- The Own Number is unable to be quoted on the character entry screen of Own Number.

1 MENU 8 1 on the character entry screen

2 Enter the terminal security code ▶ Select the Own Number Information



- When the contents are too long, they may be displayed shortly. To check, highlight the content and press . It can be quoted by pressing .

Quoting a result of calculation with Calculator

- The result can be quoted only on the character entry screen of Scheduler and Notepad.

1 MENU 8 2 on the character entry screen

2 Make calculation ▶

Quoting data scanned with Bar Code Reader

- The data can be quoted only on the character entry screen displayed during URL entry and i-mode.

1 MENU 8 2 on the character entry screen

2 Switch the macro mode switch to (close-up) and scan JAN code or QR code

3 Press ●

The string of the scanned data is entered.

Registering fixed phrases

Save Phrase

Fixed phrases are registered in ***My phrase***.

- Up to 50 phrases can be saved.

1 MENU 8 8 2 9

2 Select <*New phrase*>

The fixed phrase edit screen is displayed.

- To edit the registered fixed phrase: Select a fixed phrase to edit.
- To check the registered fixed phrase: Highlight a fixed phrase ▶ 📖
  You can edit by pressing ●.

■ **Deleting fixed phrases: Highlight a fixed phrase to delete ▶ MENU ▶ Select *Yes***

3 Select *Message* field ▶ Enter the fixed phrase (up to 128 one-byte or 64 two-byte characters)

4 Press 📖

- When you edit a registered fixed phrase, a confirmation screen is displayed. Select ***Yes*** to overwrite or ***No*** to cancel the operation.

Registering during character entry

Select entered characters and register as a fixed phrase.

1 MENU 6 on the character entry screen

- On the entry screen for message, press MENU 6 2.

2 Highlight the start point ▶ ●

- To select the whole sentence: MENU ● ▶ Go to Step 4
- To select whole sentence on the entry screen for message: ✉ ▶ Go to Step 4

3 Highlight the end point ▶ ●

The characters in the selected range are displayed on the fixed phrase edit screen.

- To select from the start point to the beginning: MENU ●
- To select from the start point to the end: 📖 ●

4 Press 📖

INFORMATION

- When there is no character entered, press MENU 6 to display the fixed phrase edit screen except in the message text entry screen.
- When 50 fixed phrases have already been registered, the list of registered fixed phrases is displayed. To register a new item, you must either delete a phrase from this list or edit a registered phrase.
- If a character string selected contains blank spaces, it is processed as follows:
  - Blank spaces only:
    Cannot be registered as a fixed phrase
  - Blank spaces before and after a character string:
    Only character string is valid
  - Blank spaces between characters:
    Blank spaces are also valid

Copying/cutting and pasting characters

Copy Character

Characters copied or cut from a character entry screen are pasted elsewhere. They can also be pasted into another character entry screen.

- Copied and cut characters are retained until FOMA terminal is turned off and you can paste them in other locations any number of times.
- Only one item can be retained. When you copy or cut a new item, it overwrites the previously saved item.

Copying/cutting characters

Example Copying characters

1 [MENU] [1] on the character entry screen

- To cut the characters: [MENU] [2]
- On the entry screen for message, you can also operate by pressing [MENU] and selecting ***Copy/Cut***.

2 Highlight the start point ▶ ●

- To select the whole sentence: [MENU] ●
- To select whole sentence on the entry screen for message: ✉

3 Highlight the end point ▶ ●

The characters in the selected range is copied.

- To select from the start point to the beginning: [MENU] ●
- To select from the start point to the end: [m] ●

Pasting characters

- When the pasted phrase exceeds the number of characters permitted in the edited sentence, a message appears indicating that all characters will not be able to be pasted. When you select ***Yes***, the allowable number of characters is pasted.

1 Highlight the location to paste on the character entry screen ▶ [MENU] [3]

- On the entry screen for message, press [MENU] and select ***Paste***.

INFORMATION

- When the type of the copied/cut characters does not match with the character type used in the destination field, pasting is disabled. For example, hiragana or kanji cannot be pasted into the mail address field (one-byte alphanumeric).
- When a character string containing a line feed is pasted into an entry screen that cannot contain any line feeds, the line feed is replaced by a blank.

Entering characters using codes

KUTEN Code Input

Characters, numbers and symbols on the KUTEN code list are entered using 4-digit code.

Example Entering "携" (code number 2340)

1 [m] [8] on the character entry screen

2 Enter the 4-digit code ([2] [3] [4] [0] in this case)

- The available code range is 0101 to 8406.
- Entry of codes without characters, numbers and symbols is invalid.

Registering frequently used words

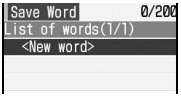
Save Word

Using registered readings makes it easy to convert characters.

- Up to 200 words can be saved.

1 [MENU] [8] [8] [1]

2 Select <*New word*>



- To edit the registered word: Select a word to edit
- To check the registered word: Highlight a word ▶ [m]
  You can edit it by pressing ●.

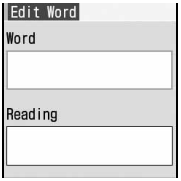
■ **Deleting words:**

① **Highlight a word to delete ▶ [MENU]**

② **Select *Delete***

- To delete all: Select ***Delete all***.

3 Select *Word* field ▶ Enter the word to register (up to 24 one-byte or 12 two-byte characters)



- The following character types can be registered:
  - One-byte/two-byte alphabets
  - Hiragana/kanji
  - One-byte/two-byte katakana
  - One-byte/two-byte numeric
  - One-byte/two-byte symbol
  - Pictogram

4 Select *Reading* field ▶ Enter the reading (up to 8 two-byte characters)

- You can enter only hiragana.

5 Press 📖

- A confirmation screen is displayed when registered words were edited. Select ***Overwrite*** to replace the original word. To register a new word, keeping original word intact, select ***New***.

Registering during character entry

You can select entered characters and register them as a word.

1 MENU 5 on the character entry screen

- On the entry screen for message, press MENU 6 1.

2 Highlight the start point ▶ ●

- To select the whole sentence: MENU ● ▶ Go to Step 4
- To select whole sentence on the entry screen for message: ✉ ▶ Go to Step 4

3 Highlight the end point ▶ ●

The characters in the selected range is displayed on ***Word*** field.

- To select from the start point to the beginning: MENU ●
- To select from the start point to the end: 📖 ●

4 Enter the reading ▶ 📖

INFORMATION

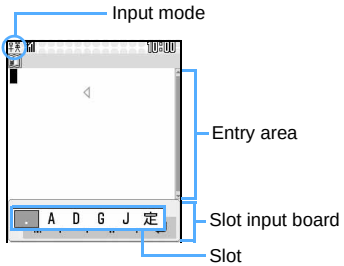
- To register character string during character entry, press MENU 5 when there is no character entered, to display the word edit screen except in the message text entry screen.
- When registering character string containing a line feed by Save Word during character entry, the line feed is replaced by a blank.
- Readings that contain characters other than hiragana, prolonged sound, voiced or semi-voiced sound characters cannot be registered.
- When the following characters are the initial part of the reading, it cannot be registered.
  を，ん，ぁ，ぃ，ぅ，ぇ，ぉ，ゃ，ゅ，ょ，っ，“ー”(prolonged sound), “゛”(voiced sound), “゜”(semi-voiced sound)
- Blank spaces can be entered, but deleted after they are registered.
- When the same word is already registered in the combination of a word and reading, the word cannot be registered.
- Up to 5 words with the same reading can be registered. To register additional words with the same reading, change the reading of new words.
- When 200 words have already been registered, the list of registered words is displayed. To register a new item, you must either delete a word from this list or edit a registered word.

Entering characters using Slot Input Method

Slot Input Method

You use ✥ to select characters displayed on the slot input board.

- Slot Input Method must be set up before using this function. ☛P320
- The predict conversion function cannot be used in Slot Input Method.
- List of input slots and character assignments ☛P330



- Even when Slot Input Method is set, 5-touch input screen will appear during in-line entry. You can operate in Slot Input Method when entering in full-screen of entry area.
- When you are using the slot input board and want to use the entry area (for deleting characters, moving the cursor, etc.), press ✉. Press ✉ again to use the slot input board.

Example Entering “企業” in the phonebook

1 Highlight *Enter name* field ▶ ●

The character entry screen is displayed.

- In English display, the alphabet mode is displayed first. Press 📞 to change to the hiragana/kanji mode.

2 Enter “きぎょう”

“き” →◎ ▶ ◎ ▶ ●
“ぎ” →● ▶ ◎ 4 times ▶ ●
“ょ” →[1] ▶ ◎ twice ▶ ● twice ▶ ●
“う” →◎ 4 times ▶ ◎ twice ▶ ●

- To replace the upper or lower slot with each other: [1]

3 [Mail]

The characters are converted.

- Characters are converted in the same way as in 5-touch Input Method.
- To return converted characters to the state they had before conversion and continue character entry, press [クリア]
- To fix the characters as hiragana: [MENU] New characters can be added. To exit the character entry, go to step 5.

4 ●

The character is fixed.

- New characters can be added.

5 [Mail] ▶ ●

Character entry is exited.

Setting input method

Input Method Setting

Default Input method: 5-touch
Input prediction: ON
Auto cursor: Normal

1 [MENU] [8] [8] [3]

2 Select each item to set

Input method:
Specifies 5-touch or slot input method.
- When ***Slot*** is set, items below are disabled.

Input prediction:
Specifies whether to display predict conversion options.

Auto cursor:
Sets the time period before the cursor automatically moves to the right.
- Setting ***OFF*** disables automatic movement.
- Setting ***Slow*** moves the cursor in about 1.5 seconds.
- Setting ***Normal*** moves the cursor in about 1 second.
- Setting ***Fast*** moves the cursor in about 0.5 seconds.

3 Press [Mail]

Changing settings during character entry

- The changes cannot be made before characters are fixed or on the Deco-mail decoration selection screen.
- Only the automatic cursor function can be changed during in-line entry.

1 [MENU] [7] on the character entry screen

2 [1] to [3]

- To switch between ***Use 5-touch*** and ***Use Slot input***: [1]
- To switch between ***Prediction ON*** and ***Prediction OFF***: [2]
- To set the time period before the cursor automatically moves: [3] ▶ [1] to [4]

Appendix/Data Interchange/ Troubleshooting

Menu list 322
Data set by default 326
List of dial keys and character assignments (5-touch Input Method) 330
List of input slots and character assignments (Slot Input Method) 330
List of fixed phrases 331
List of symbols 333
List of pictograms 333
KUTEN code input list 336
Combination of operations during Multiaccess 340
Combination of functions during Multitask 341
Services available for FOMA terminal 343
Options and related devices 343

Data Interchange using external devices

About the data link software 344
About the video playing software 344

Troubleshooting

Troubleshooting 344
Example of Error messages ..... Error Message 347
Warranty and After-Sales Service 351
Updating Software ..... Software Update 352
Protecting FOMA terminal from hazardous data .... Virus Scan Function 356
SAR certification information 358

Menu list

- The menu differs depending on the menu display style (Menu Setting).
- One-byte and two-byte characters shown on the display may differ from those below.
- : When the settings have been changed, the default settings are not restored by resetting.

1 Mail

Menu item	Default	Page
1 Inbox	———	P207
2 Compose message	———	P190
3 Chat mail	———	P220
4 Unsent messages	———	P207
5 Outbox	———	P207
6 Check new message		
1 i-mode message	———	P203
2 SMS	———	P225
3 Receive option	———	P202
4 Message retrieval	selected (all)	P216
7 SMS		
1 Compose SMS	———	P223
2 Received SMS	———	P227
3 Sent SMS	———	P227
4 SMS settings	Font type: Japanese Delivered report: Do not request Keep in SMS center: 3 days SMSC: DoCoMo Address: 81903101652 Type of Number: international	P226
8 Read templates	———	P198
9 Mail setting		
1 Incoming message	Select mail ring tone: Melody/ パターン 2 (Pattern 2) Incoming msg. lighting: ON/Free step(fast) Set vibrate alert: OFF Ring time (sec): 10	P219
2 Incoming chat mail	Incoming setting: Same: Msg setting	P223
3 Sort criteria	got mail criteria: ON sent mail criteria: ON	P214
4 Signature	Auto insert: Yes Signature: not recorded	P216
5 Reply setting		
1 Reply format	Quote: Yes Quote characters: >	P217
2 Activate quick reply	ON	P218
3 Quick reply template	OK です。(OK) NG です。(No good) ありがとう！(Thank you !) ゴメンなさい！(Sorry !) 後ほど連絡します。 (Get in touch later.)	P218
6 Mail group	———	P217
7 Display settings		
1 Display priority	Show message	P220
9 Mail setting		
7 Display settings		
2 Receive option	OFF	P217
3 Incoming msg attach	Image/Melody	P218
4 Attachment auto-play	Auto play	P218
5 Message list	Display 2 rows	P218

2 i-mode

Menu item	Default	Page
1 iMenu	———	P166
2 Bookmark	———	P171
3 Go to location		
1 Enter URL	———	P170
2 URL history	———	P170
4 Screen memo	———	P172
5 Last visited URL	———	P167
6 i-mode message	———	P203
7 Message R&F		
1 Message R	———	P179
2 Message F	———	P179
3 Message settings		
1 Auto-display	MessageR preferred	P179
2 Message retrieval	selected (all)	P216
3 Attachment auto-play	Auto play	P218
4 Incoming msg alert	Select ring alert: Melody/ パターン 2(Pattern 2) Incoming msg. lighting: ON/Free step(fast) Set vibrate alert: OFF Ring time (sec): 10	P179
8 i-Channel		
1 i-Channel list	———	P243
2 Ticker setting	Show ticker: Yes Ticker speed: Normal	P244
9 i-mode setting		
1 i-mode shortcuts	Not recorded	P172
2 Image/Effect	Image, Animation: Display Use phone information: Yes Set lighting: Terminal settings Sound effect setting: ON	P177
3 i-motion	Auto Play ON	P184
4 Connection timeout	60 seconds	P176
5 Host selection	i-mode(FOMA Card)	P176

Menu item	Default	Page
9 i-mode setting		
6 Certificate		
1 Set certificate*1	all valid	P181
2 Certificate download	———	P181
3 Certificate host	DoCoMo	P182

3 i-αppli

Menu item	Default	Page
1 Software list	———	P232
2 i-αppli settings		
1 Software sort	By download time	P239
2 Auto start	ON	P236
3 Software info display	OFF	P232
4 Light settings	Use phone setting	P234
5 Vibrate settings	ON	P234
6 i-αppli shortcuts	Not recorded	P236
3 Display history	———	P233 P237 P238

4 Phonebook & Logs

Menu item	Default	Page
1 Phonebook	Show all names	P92
2 Phonebook new entry	———	P87
3 Phonebook(UIM) new entry	———	P90
4 Received calls	———	P59
5 Redial	———	P51
6 Ans. machine/Voice memo		
1 Answer machine	Deactivate	P68
2 Recorded messages	———	P70
3 Record voice memo	———	P291
4 Voice memos	———	P291
7 Own number	My phone number: subscribed phone number Other than that: not recorded	P46, P289

5 Data Box

Menu item	Default	Page
1 Image	———	P246
2 i-motion	———	P252
3 Melody	———	P261
4 Chara-den	———	P258

6 Tools

Menu item	Default	Page
1 Bar code reader	———	P157
2 Data exchange		
1 Send all Ir data	———	P268
2 Receive Ir data	———	P268
3 Data exchange settings	End alert: OFF Auto Authentication: OFF Ph.book image sending: ON	P272
3 Camera	———	P147
4 Movie camera	———	P149
5 Sound recorder	———	P272

7 Stationery

Menu item	Default	Page
1 Scheduler	———	P280
2 Notepad	———	P294
3 Alarm clock	not set	P278
4 Calculator	———	P293

8 Settings

Menu item	Default	Page
1 Sounds/Vibrate		
1 Set sound	Phone: Melody/ パターン1(Pattern 1), Mail: Melody/パターン2 (Pattern 2) Chat mail: Sync msg alert Message Request, Message Free: Melody/ パターン2(Pattern 2) On-hold tone: 保留音・ボイス(On-hold tone, voice) Videophone: Melody/ 電話・メロディA(Phone, melody A)	P104
2 Ring volume		
1 Ring alert	LEVEL 4	P61
2 Msg. alert	LEVEL 4	P61
3 Volume	LEVEL 4	P61
4 Keypad sound	Keypad sound1	P107
5 Low battery alert	ON	P43
6 Silent mode	General	P109
7 Vibrator	OFF (all)	P106
8 Set mute ring time	OFF	P140
9 Charge alert	ON	P107
2 Display		
1 Stand-by		
1 Select img/i-αppli	use Style Theme setting	P110
2 Set calendar	———	P113
3 Set clock	use Style Theme setting	P123
4 Customize display	———	P113
5 Set i-Channel ticker	Show ticker: Yes Ticker speed: Normal	P244
6 Cancel settings	———	P115
2 Mail / Call image		
1 Outgoing call	Display image: Default	P116
2 Incoming call	Ring alert: Melody/ パターン 1(Pattern 1) Show image: Standard image Vibrator: OFF Lighting: ON/Down(fast)	P62
3 Videophone dialing	Default	P116
4 Incoming Videophone	Ring alert: Melody/ 電話・メロディA (Phone, melody A) Show image: Standard image Vibrator: OFF Lighting: ON/Down(fast)	P62

Menu item	Default	Page
2 Display		
2 Mail / Call image		
5 Contact image	ON	P116
6 Outgoing msg. image	Default	P117
7 Incoming msg. image	Default	P117
8 Retrieving image	Default	P117
9 Receive display	Caller's phone number: Display Caller's name: Standard Receive mail/message: Display	P117
3 Color scheme	use Style Theme setting	P119
4 Battery icon	use Style Theme setting	P120
5 Display light	Lighting method: Turn light ON Turn light on: 10 seconds Range: Display + Key Brightness: Normal AC adapter connected: Terminal settings	P118
6 Alert lighting	Indicator light: OFF Incoming Videophone, Incoming call: ON/Down(fast) Incoming Mail, Incoming Message R, Incoming Message F, Incoming Chat Mail: ON/Free step(fast) Alarm, Schedule: OFF Play melody: ON/Rhythm(Normal)	P121
7 Font & Language		
1 Font Size	Standard	P122
2 Select language	Japanese	P44
8 Style theme	METAL BLACK: BlueLED SHINY WHITE: DotWall SPARKLE BLUE: CheckPattern	P124
3 Security		
1 Lock		
1 All lock	not set	P130
2 PIM lock	OFF	P133
3 Remote lock	OFF	P131
2 Secret mode	not set	P137
3 Keypad dial lock	OFF	P134
4 UIM	PIN code, PIN2 code: 0000 PIN code ON/OFF: OFF	P127
5 Change security code	0000	P127
6 Privacy mode	Phonebook & Logs, Mail, My picture, i-motion, Schedule, i-αppli: Show all Auto start: OFF	P134
7 Scanning function		
1 Update	———	P357
2 Set auto-update	Enable	P356
3 Set scan	ON	P356
4 Version	———	P358
8 Key lock timer	OFF	P137

Menu item	Default	Page
4 Info/Reset		
1 Call duration	———	P292
2 Confirm	———	P297
3 Battery level	———	P43
4 Call cost		
1 Last call cost	———	P292
2 Call cost limit	Alert: OFF	P292
3 Remove call cost icon	———	P293
4 Reset call cost	OFF	P292
5 Reset	———	P297
6 Delete all data	———	P298
5 Clock		
1 Date & time*2	Auto time adjust: ON Offset: +, 00h00m	P45
2 Auto power ON	OFF	P278
3 Auto power OFF	OFF	P278
4 Clock display format	use Style Theme setting	P123
5 Alarm auto power ON	OFF	P280
6 Call/Answer		
1 Outgoing call	Display image: Default	P116
2 Incoming call	Ring alert: Melody/パターン 1(Pattern 1) Show image: Standard image Vibrator: OFF Lighting: ON/Down(fast)	P62
3 Anonymous caller	Disable settings (all)	P139
4 Status message	On-hold tone: Standard	P64
5 Any key answer	ON	P59
6 Headset		
1 Headset switch	Headset + speaker	P296
2 Auto answer	OFF	P296
3 Headset Button Control	OFF	P296
7 Reject/Accept call		
1 Specified caller	Cancel settings	P138
2 Unregistered caller	OFF	P141
8 Make/Receive call		
1 Priority comm mode	No Set Up	P63
2 Prefix dialing	009130010	P55
3 Auto assist setting	Auto	P54
4 Sub address	ON	P55
9 Call session		
1 Noise reduction	ON	P56

Menu item	Default	Page
6 Call/Answer		
9 Call session		
2 Reconnect alarm	High alarm	P56
3 On-hold tone	保留音・ボイス (On-hold tone, voice)	P65
4 Quality alarm	High alarm	P108
7 Videophone		
1 Videophone dialing	Display image: Default	P116
2 Incoming Videophone	Ring alert: Melody/ 電話・メロディA(Phone, melody A) Show image: Standard image Vibrator: OFF Lighting: ON/Down(fast)	P62
3 Operation	Auto redial as voice: OFF Display setting: Both sides Sub screen: My side Screen size: Large Send camera image: ON Visual preference: Normal Display light: Always on (normal) Speakerphone: ON	P81
4 Image	Substitute image: Default Chara-den Answer machine image, Response hold image, On-hold image, Movie memo image: Default	P82
5 External device	Terminal	P84
6 Notify switchable mode		
1 Indication ON	active	P83
2 Indication OFF	———	P83
3 Check Indication	———	P83
8 Others		
1 Save word	———	P318
2 Save phrase	———	P317
3 Text input method	Input method: 5-touch Input prediction: ON Auto cursor: Normal	P320
4 Self mode	OFF	P132
5 NW search method	Auto select NW	P297
6 Software Update	———	P353
7 Quick start-up	OFF	P297

9 NW Services

Menu item	Default	Page
1 Voice Mail		
1 Voice Mail service		
1 Activate	———	P301
2 Set ring time	———	
3 Deactivate	———	
4 Check setting	———	
5 Play messages	———	
6 Voice Mail setting	———	
7 Check messages	———	

Menu item	Default	Page
1 Voice Mail		
2 Tone/Vibration message notification	Voice Mail alert: ON Notification melody: パターン1 (Pattern 1)	P301
3 Notify missed call		
1 Activate	———	P301
2 Deactivate	———	
3 Check setting	———	
4 Hide Voice Mail icon	———	
2 Call waiting		
1 Activate	———	P301
2 Deactivate	———	
3 Check setting	———	
3 Call forwarding		
1 Activate	———	P302
2 Deactivate	———	
3 Register The Forwarding Number	———	
4 Setting if forwarding number busy	———	P302
5 Check setting	———	P302
4 Nuisance call barring		
1 Register the caller	———	P303
2 Register selected No.	———	
3 Delete all entries	———	
4 Delete last entry	———	P303
5 Check the number of entries	———	
5 Caller ID notification		
1 Activate/Deactivate	———	P46
2 Check setting	———	
6 Caller ID request		
1 Activate	———	P303
2 Deactivate	———	
3 Check setting	———	
7 Set arrival act		
1 Activate	———	P304
2 Deactivate	———	
3 Check setting	———	
8 Arrival call act	Answer	
9 Others		
1 Register USSD	———	P306
2 Record reply message	———	P306
3 Remote control		
1 Activate	———	P304
2 Deactivate	———	
3 Check setting	———	
4 English guidance		
1 Guidance setting	———	P303
2 Check setting	———	
5 Dual network		
1 Dual Network Switching	———	P303
2 Check setting	———	
6 Service Dialing Number		
1 ドコモ故障問合せ	———	P304
2 ドコモ総合案内・受付	———	
7 Multi number		
1 Set Multi Number	———	P305
2 Check setting	———	

Menu item	Default	Page
9 Others		
7 Multi number		
3 Number Setting	Basic Number: 基本契約番号(Basic Number)/My phone number Additional No1: 付加番号 1(Additional Number 1)/Not recorded Additional No2: 付加番号 2(Additional Number 2)/Not recorded Multi number call: Disable	P305

Menu item	Default	Page
9 Others		
7 Multi number		
4 Incoming calls melody setting	Individual setting: OFF	P305
8 Call barring*3		

0 Own number

Menu item	Default	Page
Own number	My phone number: subscribed phone number Other than that: not recorded	P46, P289

*1 Items of the certificates saved in UIM also are also all valid by resetting.
*2 Date and time remain unchanged after resetting.
*3 Unavailable on this terminal.

Data set by default

Image/i-motion for the standby display

■ Image

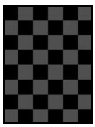
Singapore

Shopping cart

Taxi

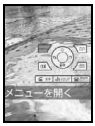
Blink*1

Dot picture*1


Check motion*1

Week *1、*2

Life*1



Guidance *1、*3

■ i-motion

Journey

The Ocean*4

*1 This is Flash movie.
*2 The display changes depending on the day of the week.
*3 Make the setting of ***Style*** as ***Digital 1*** in ***Clock display format*** and set ***Clock layout*** to ***Top*** not to overlap the clock.
*4 Also can be set as Movie ringtone.

Nomal Menu

■ Tile display

Type1

Type2

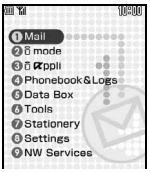
Type3

Type4

Type5

■ Animation

Type1



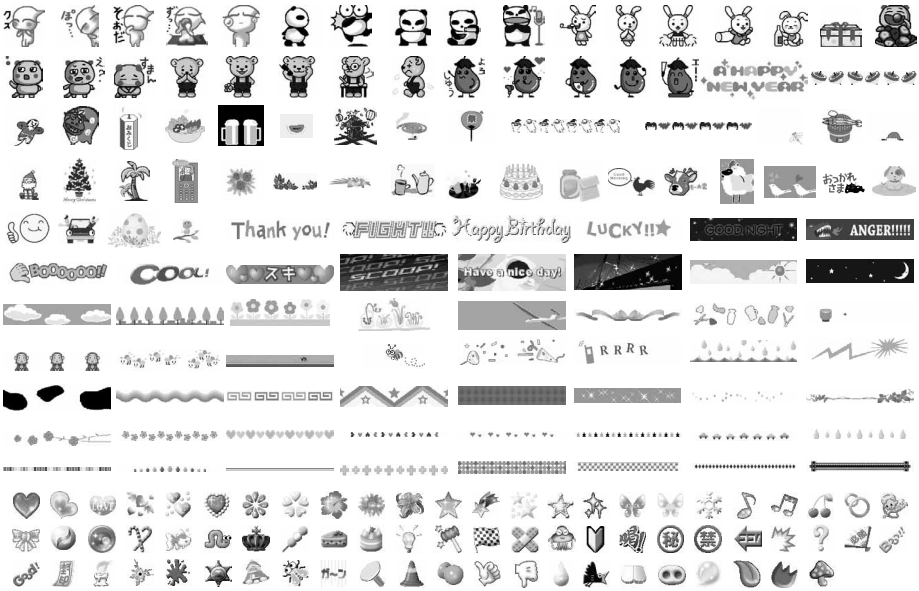
Type2

Type3

Image for Deco-mail picture

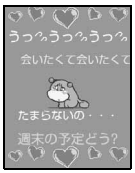
The following images are stored in the ***Deco-Mail picture*** folder of ***Image*** (My Picture) in ***Data Box***.

- You can download the images from the i-mode site “My D-style”, if you have deleted them. ☛P330
- The design of some images may be unclear when the background color is set to white.
- Some of the following images may be different from those on the screen, because the background color is changed to make the design clear. Also the size of the image is different from that of the image to be inserted actually.



Mail template

ブンブン 1 (bunbun 1)



©BVIG

ブンブン 2 (bunbun 2)

©BVIG

ブンブン 3 (bunbun 3)

©BVIG

ありがとう (Thank you)

おめでとう！ (Congratulations!)

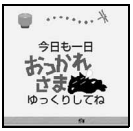
誕生日おめでとう (Happy birthday!)

元気？
(Long time no see)

頑張って
(Cheer up)

調子はどう？
(How are you doing?)

おつかれさま
(Good job today)



ラッキー！
(Lucky!)

幸せ気分
(I'm happy)

好きです･･･
(I love you)

お願い
(Please!)

電話します
(I'll call you)

お茶しよ～
(Let's have tea)

たまには
(Once in a while...)

旅にでようよ
(Let's take a trip)

歌いませんか
(Feel like singing)

ドライブ
(Driving)

おはよ！
(Good morning!)

いい一日を
(Have a nice day!)

おやすみ
(Good night)

反省してます
(Sorry)

さみしい
(I miss you)

ちょっと怒ったよ
(I'm angry)

忙しいよぉ
(So busy)

モー大変
(what a busy day!)

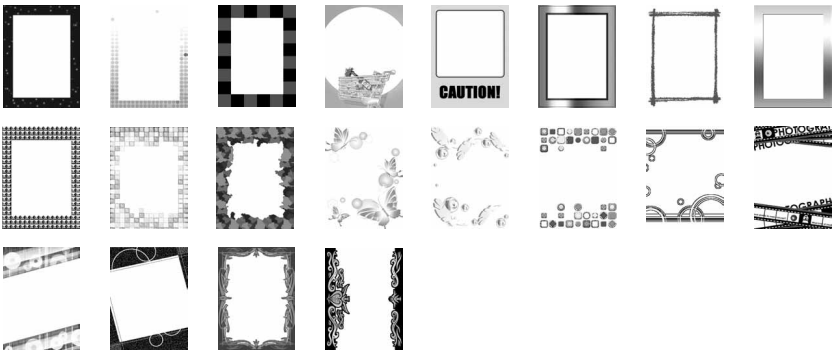
飲みたい気分
(I want to drink)

つまんない
(Not funny)

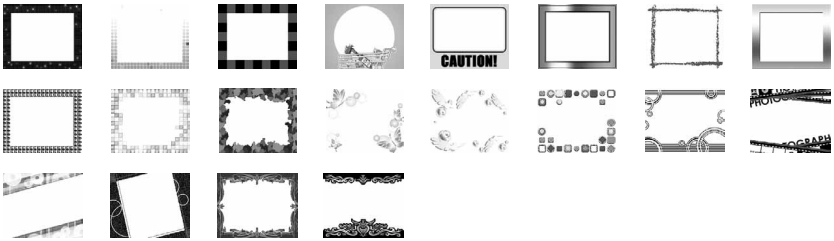
Frame

・You can download the frames from the i-mode site "My D-style", if you have deleted them. ☛P330

■ **Size for standby (240 x 320)**



■ **QCIF size (176 x 144)**



Stamp

Chara-den

• You can download Chara-den from the i-mode site “My D-style”, if you have deleted them. ☛P330

■ *ブンブン* **(bunbun)*(Dimo)***

©BVIG

Action

1	*喜ぶ* (Glad)	4	***LOVE***	7	*ラッパー* (Rapper)
2	*反省* (Sorry)	5	*寝る* (Sleep)	8	*悲しみ* (Sorrow)
3	*あっかんべ* (Akkanbe)	6	*酔っぱらい* (Drunken)	9	*ムンクの叫び* (Cry by Munch)

■ *女の子* **(Girl)**

Action

1	*喜ぶ* (Joy)	5	*泣く* (Weep)	9	*さよなら* (Goodbye)	#4	*あきれる* (Amazed)
2	*ガッツポーズ* (Victory pose)	6	*ダメ* (Refuse)	#1	*悩む* (Worried)		
3	*愛情* (Affection)	7	*挨拶* (Greeting)	#2	*称える* (Praise)		
4	*怒る* (Angry)	8	*うなずく* (Nod)	#3	*お願い* (Do me a favor)		

Action of parts

11	*頭 右を向く（ループ）* (Turn the head right (loop))	16	*頭 上下に振る* (Shake the head up and down)	24	*胴体 前に傾く（ループ）* (Tilt the body forward (loop))
12	*頭 左を向く（ループ）* (Turn the head left (loop))	17	*頭 回転する* (Turn around the head)	31	*右手 挙げる（ループ）* (Right hand up (loop))
13	*頭 上を向く（ループ）* (Turn the head up (loop))	21	*胴体 右を向く（ループ）* (Turn the body right (loop))	41	*左手 挙げる（ループ）* (Left hand up (loop))
14	*頭 下を向く（ループ）* (Turn the head down (loop))	22	*胴体 左を向く（ループ）* (Turn the body left (loop))	51	*足 しゃがむ（ループ）* (Squat on heels (loop))
15	*頭 左右に振る* (Shake the head right and left)	23	*胴体 後ろを向く（ループ）* (Turn around the body (loop))	52	*足 ジャンプ* (Jump)

How to access i-mode site “My D-style”

To access “My D-style”, ***iMenu*** → 3 *メニューリスト* (Menu list) →*ケータイ電話メーカー* (Mobile phone manufacturer) (as of February 2006).

● Scanning QR code shown right with Bar Code Reader allows to connect to “My D-style”.

QR code for website access

List of dial keys and character assignments (5-touch Input Method)

Key	Hiragana/kanji mode (two-byte)*1	Katakana mode (one-byte/two-byte)*1	Alphabet mode (one-byte/two-byte)*1	Numeric mode (one-byte/two-byte)*3
1	あ い う え お 1	ｱ ｲ ｳ ｴ ｵ 1	. ／ @ ¯*2 － : _ [¥] ^ ` { | } 1	1
2	か き く け こ 2	カ キ ク ケ コ 2	a b c 2	2
3	さ し す せ そ 3	サ シ ス セ ソ 3	d e f 3	3
4	た ち つ て と 4	タ チ ツ テ ト 4	g h i 4	4
5	な に ぬ ね の 5	ナ ニ ヌ ネ ノ 5	j k l 5	5
6	は ひ ふ へ ほ 6	ハ ヒ フ ヘ ホ 6	m n o 6	6
7	ま み む め も 7	マ ミ ム メ モ 7	p q r s 7	7
8	や ゆ よ 8	ヤ ユ ヨ 8	t u v 8	8
9	ら り る れ ろ 9	ラ リ ル レ ロ 9	w x y z 9	9
0	わ を ん ー 、。 ・？ ！ 「 」 □ 0	ワ ヲ ン ー 、。 ・？ ！ 「 」 □ 0	！ ” # $ % & ’ ( ) ＊ + , ; ＜ ＝ ＞ ？ □ 0	0 +*4
*	゛ ゜	゛ ゜	The following character strings can be entered only in one-byte character: @docomo.ne.jp .com .or.jp .go.jp .ne.jp .co.jp .ac.jp http://www. www. .html .htm	＊ P*4
#*5	Line feed	Line feed	Line feed	# T*4

□ : Indicates blank space. : Press after entering a character to switch between upper and lower case.

*1 Numeric characters other than those entered in the two-byte numeric mode are entered as one-byte characters.

*2 This character is entered as “~” in the one-byte alphabet mode.

*3 In numeric mode, “ ＊ ”, “#”, “P”, “T” and “ + ” can only be entered in the entry field that supports them.

*4 Hold down the relevant key for over a second to enter the character.

*5 Line feed may not be possible depending on the entry field.

List of input slots and character assignments (Slot Input Method)

Input slot		Hiragana/kanji mode (two-byte)
Upper slot	あ	あいうえおぁぃぅぇぉ 1
	か	かきくけこ 2
	さ	さしすせそ 3
	た	たちつてとっ 4
	な	なにぬねの 5
	゛゜	゛゜
Lower slot	は	はひふへほ 6
	ま	まみむめも 7
	や	やゆよゃゅょ 8
	ら	らりるれろ 9
	わ	わをんー 、。？ ！ 「 」 □ 0
	↵	Line feed

Input slot		Katakana mode (one-byte)
Upper slot	ｱ	ｱｲｳｴｵｧｨｩｪｫ1
	ｶ	ｶｷｸｹｺ2
	ｻ	ｻｼｽｾｿ3
	ﾀ	ﾀﾁﾂﾃﾄｯ4
	ﾅ	ﾅﾆﾇﾈﾉ5
	ﾞ	ﾞﾟ
Lower slot	ﾊ	ﾊﾋﾌﾍﾎ6
	ﾏ	ﾏﾐﾑﾒﾓ7
	ﾔ	ﾔﾕﾔｬﾕｭﾖｮ8
	ﾗ	ﾗﾘﾙﾚﾛ9
	ﾜ	ﾜｦﾝ ー 、。？！「」 □0
	↵	Line feed

Input slot		Alphanumeric mode (one-byte)
Upper slot	.	./@~ー:_[¥]^`{|}1
	A	ABCabc2
	D	DEFdef3
	G	GHIghi4
	J	JKLjkl5
	定	@docomo.ne.jp .com .or.jp .go.jp .ne.jp .co.jp .ac.jp http://www. www. .html .htm
Lower slot	M	MNOmno6
	P	PQRSpqrs7
	T	TUVtuv8
	W	WXYZwxyz9
	!	!"#$%&'()*+,;<=>?□0
	↵	Line feed

□ : Indicates two-byte space in the hiragana/kanji mode and one-byte space in katakana, alphanumeric mode.

• “゛” and “゜” are switched with every press of in the hiragana/kanji mode.

• Numeric characters are displayed as one-byte characters.

List of fixed phrases

• Face mark 1 (72 items)

(^-^)	m(_ _)m	(^^;)	(^^)v	(;_;)
o(^o^)o	＼(^O^)／	(^o^)／	d=(^o^)=b	(*^_^*)
(^^ゞ	(^。^;)	σ(^_^;	(ToT)	(^^)/~~
(ToT)/~~	(>_<)	(*_*)	(+_+)	(@_@)
(?_?)	(=_=)	(^_-)	(^∧^)	(-_-;)
ｗ(°o°)ｗ	(^3^)/～☆	(☆o☆)	(-_-)zzz	☆彡
(^ワ^)	v(^o^)	(^◇^)	(^-^)ノ	o(^-^)o
(^ー°)b	(^_-)-☆	(。・_・。)ノ	(・_・ゞ-☆	～(m~-~)m
＼(~o~)／	(#￣3￣)	(￣(エ)￣)	(^-^)_旦~	ヽ(´▽`)/
＼(*^▽^*)/	～(￣▽￣～)	^ー^)人(ー^	ε＝┌(・_・)┘	(^▽^)σ)~O~)
(~▽~@)♪♪♪	ヾ(￣◇￣)ノ))	ε＝ヾ(*~▽~)ノ	(^_^;	(._.)
(・_・、	(~∧~;)	(°～°)	(>_<")	(-。-)
(-_-#)	(-_-)	_(._.)_	(´□`)	(´ー`)
(´ヘ`)	(´ω`)	(・_・?)	(・。・)	o(T□T)o
Σ(￣□￣;)	・°・(>_<)・°・			

• Face mark 2 (28 items)

_・)ソォーッ	('-'*)IA	(-_☆)ｷﾗﾘ	(・_*)＼ﾍﾟﾁ
(^-^ゝ了解	[壁]_-) ﾁﾗｯ	(~ー~) ﾍｴ～	(;￢_￢)ｱｬｼｲ
(-_ゞｺﾞｼｺﾞｼ	(;-_-)=3 ﾌｳ	{{(>_<)}}ｻﾑｲ	Σ(°Д°;)ﾅﾆｰ!!
(゜▽゜)] ﾓｼﾓｼ	ヾ(*'-'*)ﾏﾀﾈｰ	(≧▽≦)/ ﾊﾚﾚ	φ(..)ﾒﾓﾒﾓ♪
(・_・)ノ゛゜ ﾎﾞｲ	ﾃｶﾞｰｳ(-_-)ノノ	o(^-^)○☆ﾊﾟﾝﾁ	d (>◇<) ｱｳﾄ!
__(-_-)__ｾｰﾌ!	(>_<)(>_<)ｲﾔｰ	＼(o￣▽￣o)ﾊｰｲ	(~-~;)ヾ(-_-;)ｵｲ
(￣～￣) ﾓｸﾞﾓｸﾞ	<("O")> ﾅﾝﾃｺｯﾀ!	凸ヽ(^-^) ﾀｲｺﾊﾞﾝ	(・_・、ヾ(^-^)ﾖｼﾖｼ

• Common (20 items)

おはよう	おやすみ
おはよー！今日も一日がんばりましょう。	昨日は、とっても楽しかったです。どうもありがとう。
連絡下さい。	今から電話してもいいですか？
ごめんなさい、遅れます。	今日は○○の日です。早く帰って来てね。
○○まで迎えに来て！お願いします。	○○について知っている人は○○までに○○に教えて下さい。
もう少し待ってて！	
いってらっしゃい。	留守電にメッセージをお願いします。
○○で待ってます。	ただいま電話にでることができません。メールでご用件をお知らせ下さい。
集合時間は○○、集合場所は○○です。	
今日は外で食べて帰ります。ご飯はいりません。	メールありがとう。
○○の写真送ります。	最近の○○の写真です。

• Pleasure (20 items)

今なにしてるの？電話かメールを下さい。	どこか、遊びに行こーよ！
電話ちょうだい！電話番号は○○です。	おくれちゃう、ゴメン！
どこにいるの？	集合！
時間だよーん！！	トラブル発生！！
会いたい！	大好き！
みんなで飲みませんか？○○に○○。	今日○○に、○○へ行きませんか？
○○の待ち合わせ時間と場所、決めようよ。	○○に行かない？
○○のメンバー募集！詳しくは○○まで連絡下さい。	

今度みんなで○○へ行きましょう。○○までで、都合の良い日を教えて下さい。	
今度みんなで○○へ行きましょう。いいところがありましたら、お知らせ下さい。	
○○しませんか？日時：○○、場所：○○。出欠をご連絡下さい。	
メッセージ下さい！！	○○の時の写真だよ。

・Business (20 items)

本日の○○会議は、○○となりました。	本日の○○訪問は、○○となりました。
○○へ直行します。	○○へ直帰します。
電車遅延のため、○○遅れます。	至急 TEL 下さい。
予定変更！ TEL 下さい。	待ち合わせ変更！場所：○○、時間：○○
○○頃まで、携帯電話の電源を切ります。	振込口座：○○銀行○○支店、口座番号○○、名義人名○○です。
○○の件、よろしくお願い致します。	
今日、一杯どうですか？連絡下さい。	FAX 確認願います。
次の指示を待て。	変更します。
延期します。	中止します。
○○での写真送ります。	今わかりません。
あとで連絡します。	

・Answer (20 items)

Thank you!	Good!	OK です。	NG です。
いいよ。	行きます。	了解。	ダメ！
ごめんネ･･･	スミマセン、無理です。	本当？	おまかせっ！！
関係ないね！	うらやましー。	お疲れさま。	反対。
賛成。	待ってました！	それは残念。	写真届きました。

・Others (20 items)

またねー！	今どこ？	お誕生日おめでとう。	おめでとう。
まじでー！？	まかせなさい！！	キャンセル。	いってきます。
頑張って！	ありがとう！	www.	.ne.jp
.co.jp	.or.jp	.ac.jp	.net
.com	.org	.html	http://

・Pictogram words (20 items)

Pictogram words	Meaning	Pictogram words	Meaning
	ハロー！ / またね (Hello! / See you.)		ごきげん (High spirits)
	ピース (Peace)		るんるん (Cheerful)
	落ち込む (Depressed)		どうしよう (At a loss)
	ぷんぷん (Huff)		怒ってるぞ (Fury)
	メロメロ (Crazy about)		パニック (Panic)
	寝ます (Sleep)		チュッ！ (Kissing)
	ラブラブ (Love)		ダッシュ (Dash)
	えっ何？ (What?)		写真を撮る (Take a picture)
	がんばれ！ (Good luck!)		独りぼっち (Alone)
	カラオケ (Karaoke)		サッカー (Soccer)

・Pictogram words are not displayed by entering the meaning.

・My phrase (up to 50 items)
The registered fixed phrases are displayed.

List of symbols

One-byte	□ ! " # $ % & ' ( ) * + , - . / : ; < = > ? @ [¥] ^ _ ` { | } ~ 。「 」、・ ゛ ゜
Two-byte	□、。，．・：；？！゛゜´｀¨＾￣＿ヽヾゝゞ〃仝々〆〇ー―‐／＼～∥｜…‥‘’“”（）〔〕［］｛｝〈〉《》「」『』【】＋－±×÷＝≠＜＞≦≧∞∴♂♀°′″℃￥＄¢£％＃＆＊＠§☆★○●◎◇◆□■△▲▽▼※〒→←↑↓〓∈∋⊆⊇⊂⊃∪∩∧∨¬⇒⇔∀∃∠⊥⌒∂∇≡≒≪≫√∽∝∵∫∬Å‰♯♭♪†‡¶◯ＡＢＣＤＥＦＧＨＩＫＬＭＮΞＯΠＰΣＴＹΦＸΨΩαβγδεζηθικλμνξοπρστυφχψωАБВГДЕЁЖЗИЙКЛМНОПРСТУФХЦЧШЩЪЫЬЭЮЯабвгдеёжзийклмнопрстуфхцчшщъыьэюя─│┌┐┘└├┬┤┴┼━┃┏┓┛┗┣┳┫┻╋①②③④⑤⑥⑦⑧⑨⑩⑪⑫⑬⑭⑮⑯⑰⑱⑲⑳ⅠⅡⅢⅣⅤⅥⅦⅧⅨⅩミリキロセンチメーグラトンアールヘクタルリットワカロドリーットセンバーミルリベーミルシー㎜㎝㎞㎎㎏㏄㎡平成〝〟№㏍℡㊤㊥㊦㊧㊨㈱㈲㍾瞬冫弌廻≒≡∫∮Σ√⊥∠∟⊿∵∩∪

□ : Indicates blank space (one-byte/two-byte).

• Some symbols above may look different from the displayed ones.

List of pictograms

Entering the readings in the hiragana/kanji mode allows to convert it.

- Entering " えもじ " also allows to convert for Pictogram 1.
- Entering " えもじに " also allows to convert for Pictogram 2.
- Pictograms may not be displayed correctly when sent to another party using a non i-mode terminal.
- Pictogram 2 used in mail may not be displayed correctly on some other terminals.

Pictogram 1

Pictogram	Readings
	はーと
	はーと
	しつれん　はーと
	はーと
	うれしい　にこ　かお
	おこる　いかり　むか かお
	がっかり　かなしい　かお
	かなしい　かお
	ふらふら　かお
	いぬ　どうぶつ
	ねこ　どうぶつ
	はれ　てんき　たいよう
	くもり　てんき　くも
	あめ　てんき　かさ
	ゆき　てんき
	かみなり　てんき
	たいふう　てんき　うずまき
	きり　てんき
	こさめ　てんき　かさ
	るんるん　おんぷ　おんがく

Pictogram	Readings
	むーど　おんぷ　おんがく
	おんせん　ふろ　おふろ
	かわいい　はな
	きすまーく　きす　くち
	ぴかぴか　きらきら
	ひらめき　でんきゅう ぴかぴか
	むか　いかり　おこる
	ばんち　て　ぐー
	ばくだん
zzz	ねむい　ねむり すいみん　ねる
	びっくり
	びっくり　はてな
	びっくり
	どん　しょうげき
	あせ
	あせ
	だっしゅ
	ちょうおん
	ちょうおん

Pictogram	Readings
OK	けってい　おーけー おっけー
	みぎうえ　みぎななめうえ やじるし
	みぎした　みぎななめした やじるし
	ひだりうえ　ひだりなな めうえ　やじるし
	ひだりした　ひだりなな めした　やじるし
	ぐっど　やじるし
	ばっど　やじるし
	め
	みみ
	ぐー　て
	ちょき　ぶい　ぴーす　て
	ぱー　て
	あし
	はーと　とらんぷ
	すぺーど　とらんぷ
	だいや　とらんぷ

Pictogram	Readings
	くらぶ　くろーばー とらんぷ
	でんしゃ　のりもの てつどう
	ちかてつ　のりもの
	しんかんせん　のりもの
	くるま　のりもの じどうしゃ
	くるま　のりもの じどうしゃ
	ばす　くるま　のりもの
	ふね　のりもの
	ひこうき　のりもの くうこう
	りぞーと　よっと　のりもの
	くりすます　つりー
	いえ　じたく
	びる　かいしゃ
	ゆうびんきょく　ゆうびん
	びょういん
	ぎんこう
	えーてぃーえむ　ぎんこう
	ほてる
	こんびにえんすすとあ こんびに
	がそりんすたんど　がそりん がすすた　がそすた
	ちゅうしゃじょう ぱーきんぐ　ぱーく
	しんごう
	といれ
	れすとらん　しょくじ ごはん
	きっさてん　こーひー かっぷ　かふぇ
	ばー　かくてる　さけ
	びーる　さけ
	ふぁーすとふーど はんばーがー
	ぶてぃっく　くつ　ひーる
	びよういん　はさみ とこや
	からおけ　まいく
	えいが
	ゆうえんち　もくば
	おんがく　へっどほん
	あーと
	えんげき
	いべんと

Pictogram	Readings
	ちけっと　きっぷ
	すぽーつ　しゃつ
	やきゅう　すぽーつ ぼーる
	ごるふ　すぽーつ
	てにす　すぽーつ
	さっかー　すぽーつ　ぼーる
	すきー　すぽーつ
	ばすけっとぼーる　ばすけ ばすけっと　すぽーつ
	もーたーすぽーつ　ふらっぐ はた　すぽーつ
	ぽけっとべる　ぽけべる
	きつえん　たばこ
	きんえん　たばこ
	かめら
	かばん　ばっぐ
	ほん
	りぼん
	ぷれぜんと
	ばーすでー　ろうそく たんじょうび
	でんわ
	でんわ　けいたいでんわ けいたい　けーたい
	めーる
	めも
	てれび
	げーむ
	しーでぃー　おんがく
	くつ　すにーかー
	めがね
	くるまいす
	おひつじざ　せいざ
	おうしざ　せいざ
	ふたござ　せいざ
	かにざ　せいざ
	ししざ　せいざ
	おとめざ　せいざ
	てんびんざ　せいざ
	さそりざ　せいざ
	いてざ　せいざ
	やぎざ　せいざ
	みずがめざ　せいざ
	うおざ　せいざ
	しんげつ　つき
	つき

Pictogram	Readings
	はんげつ　つき
	みかづき　つき
	まんげつ　つき
	でんわ　けいたいでんわ けいたい　けーたい
	めーる
	ふぁっくす
	あいもーど
	あいもーど
	どこも
	どこも
	ゆうりょう　えん　おかね かね
	むりょう　ふりー
	あいでぃー
	ばすわーど　かぎ　ろっく
	りたーん　えんたー
	くりあ
	さーち　むしめがね
	にゅー
	いちじょうほう　はた ふらっぐ
	ふりーだいやる
	しゃーぷだいやる
	もばきゅー
	いち　すうじ
	に　すうじ
	さん　すうじ
	よん　し　すうじ
	ご　すうじ
	ろく　すうじ
	なな　しち　すうじ
	はち　すうじ
	きゅー　きゅう　く すうじ
	ぜろ　れい　すうじ
	かちんこ　えいが
	ふくろ
	ぺん
	ひとかげ　ひと
	いす
	よる　つき
	すーん
	おん
	えんど　おわり
	とけい　じかん

Pictogram 2

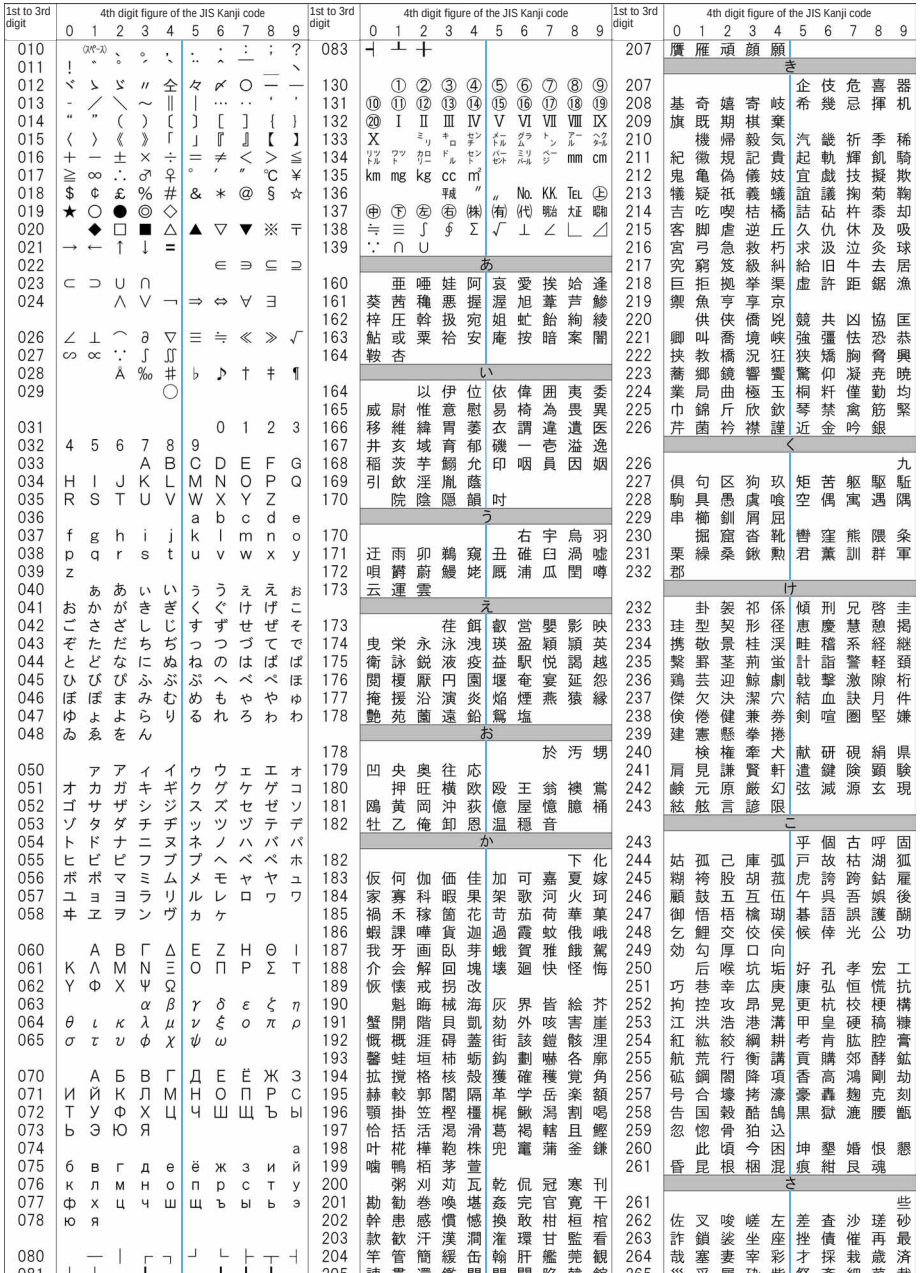
Pictogram	Readings
	じてんしゃ　のりもの
	れんち　こうぐ　しゅうり
	ぱそこん　ぴーしー
	えんぴつ
	くりっぷ
	さゆう　やじるし
	じょうげ　やじるし
	りさいくる
NG	えぬじー
秘	まるひ　ひみつ
禁	きんし
空	くうしつ　くうせき くうしゃ　あき
合	ごうかく
満	まんしつ　まんせき まんしゃ　まん
	きけん　けいこく　びっくり
©	こぴーらいと　しー
TM	とれーどまーく てぃーえむ
®	れじすたーどとれーど まーく　あーる
	あいあぷり
	あいあぷり
	どるぶくろ　おかね　かね
	うでどけい　とけい　じかん
	すなどけい　とけい
	おにぎり　おむすび
	しょーとけーき　けーき

Pictogram	Readings
	ぱん
	どんぶり　らーめん
	ゆのみ　おちゃ
	とっくり　にほんしゅ　さけ
	わいんぐらす　わいん　さけ
	ばなな　くだもの
	りんご　くだもの
	さくらんぼ　くだもの
	くろーばー　よつば　はっぱ
	ちゅーりっぷ　はな
	め　は　はっぱ
	もみじ　は　はっぱ
	さくら　はな
	かたつむり　どうぶつ
	ひよこ　とり　どうぶつ
	ぺんぎん　どうぶつ
	さかな　どうぶつ
	うま　どうぶつ
	ぶた　どうぶつ
	てぃーしゃつ　しゃつ
	じーんず　じーぱん　ずぼん
	けしょう　くちべに
	ゆびわ　りんぐ
	おうかん
	ちゃぺる　べる　あらーむ
	どあ　とびら
	がっこう

Pictogram	Readings
	なみ　うみ
	ふじさん　やま
	すのぼ　すのーぼーど
	はしる　ひと　だっしゅ
	うーん　かお
	ほっ　にこ　かお
	あせ　かお
	あせ　かお
	むっ　むか　かお
	ぼけ　かお
	はーと　かお
	あっかんべー　べー　かお
	うぃんく　かお
	うれしい　にこ　かお
	がまん　かお
	ねこ　どうぶつ　かお
	えーん　かなしい　なく　かお
	なみだ　かなしい　なく　かお
	うまい　おいしい　かお
	うっしっし　うれしい　かお
	げっそり　さけび　かお
	おーけー　ぐっど　ておっけー
	らぶれたー　てがみ　めーる
	さいふ　おかね　かね

KUTEN code input list

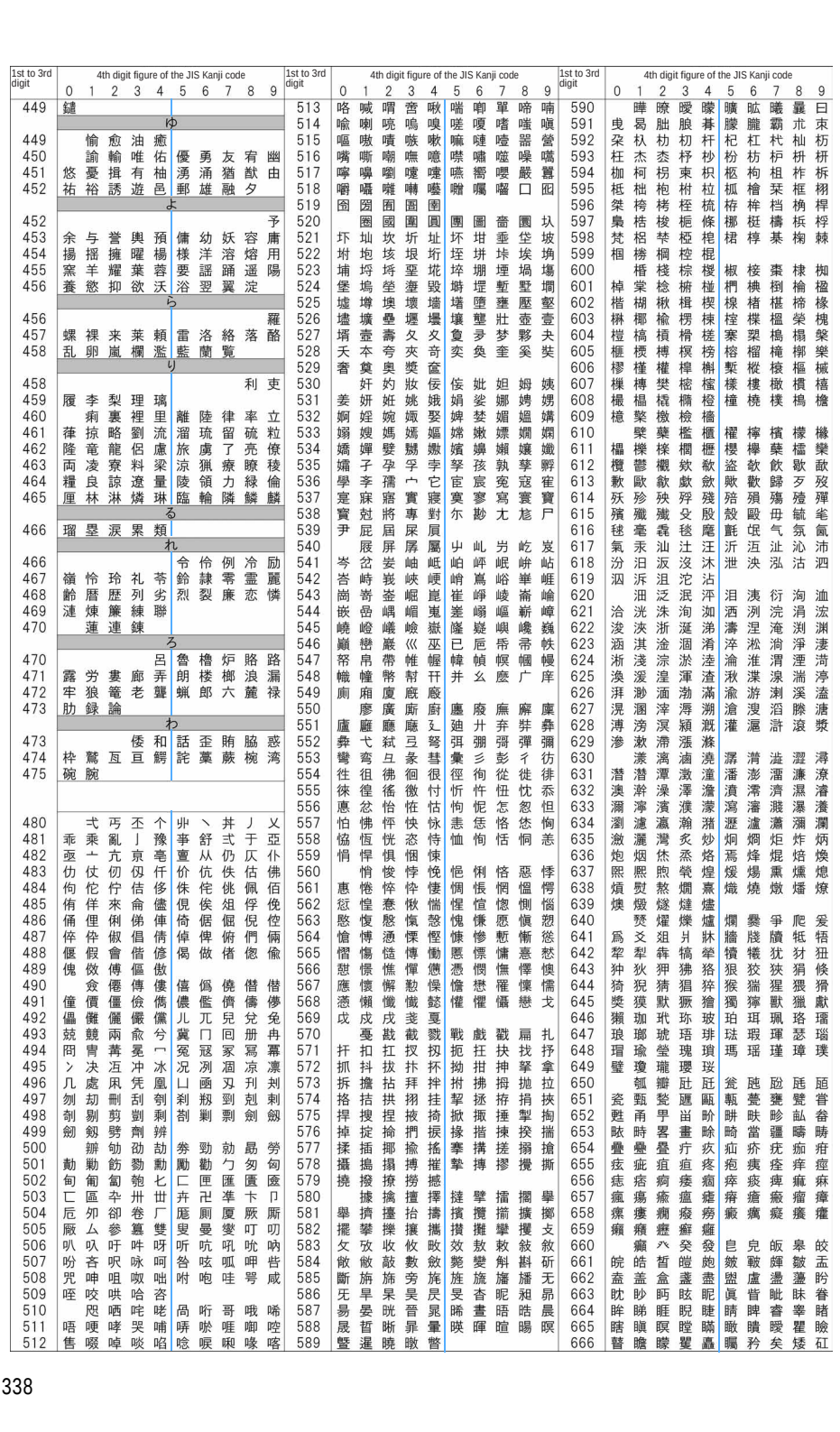
• Some of the following may look different from the displayed ones.



1st to 3rd digit	4th digit figure of the JIS Kanji code									
	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
267	堺	榊	肴	咲	崎	埼	碕	鷲	作	削
268	咋	搾	昨	朔	柵	窄	策	索	錯	桜
269	鮭	笹	匙	冊	刷					
270		撮	擦	雑	皿	晒	三	傘	参	山
271	鯖	捌	錆	散	酸	珊	産	算	纂	蚕
272	惨	撒	賛	酸	餐	斬	暫	残		
273										
	し									
273									仔	伺
274	使	刺	司	史	嗣	四	士	始	姉	姿
275	子	屍	市	師	志	思	指	支	孜	斯
276	施	旨	枝	止	肢	氏	獅	詞	脂	至
277	紙	寺	示	脂	視	試	詩	資	飼	歯
278	事	侍	児	自	治	爾	璽	痔	式	鹿
279	執	失	嫉	室	漆	疾	質	実	蔀	篠
280	偲	柴	芝	屡	蕊	縞	舎	写	射	遮
281	煮	社	紗	車	謝	蛇	邪	借	勺	尺
282	杓	灼	爵	酌	釈	錫	若	寂	弱	惹
283	主	取	趣	手	儒	朱	狩	珠	殊	狙
284	来	噂	周	宗	就	受	呪	寿	授	樹
285	綬	需	囚	収	終	秀	舟	修	愁	拾
286	洲	秀	習	週	縦	叔	祝	宿	淑	粛
287	縮	塾	熟	出	述	俊	峻	春	瞬	旬
288	巡	盾	准	処	初	所	暑	曙	渚	庶
289	緒	署	書	薯	藷	諸	助	叙	女	序
290	徐	恕	鋤	除	傷	償	勝	匠	升	召
291	哨	商	唱	嘗	奨	妾	娼	宵	将	小
292	少	尚	庄	床	廠	彰	承	抄	掌	捷
293	昇	沼	消	渉	湘	焼	焦	照	症	省
294	硝	礁	祥	称	章	笑	粧	紹	肖	蕉
295	衝	証	詔	象	賞	醤	鉦	蒋	鐘	障
296	鞘	上	丈	条	乗	城	状	畳	壌	穣
297	蒸	譲	錠	嘱	埴	飾	拭	植	殖	燭
298	織	職	色	触	食	蝕	辱	尻	伸	信
299	侵	唇	娠	寝	審	心	慎	振	新	晋
300	森	榛	浸	深	申	疹	真	神	秦	紳
301	臣	芯	薪	親	診	身	辛	進	針	震
302	人	仁	刃	塵	壬	尋	甚	尽	腎	訊
303	迅	陣	靭							
	す									
315									箪	諏
316	須	酢	図	厨	逗	吹	垂	帥	推	水
317	炊	睡	粋	翠	衰	遂	酔	錐	錘	随
318	瑞	髄	崇	嵩	数	枢		趨	雛	据
319	杉	椙		菅	頗					
320			澄		摺					
	せ									
320				世	瀬	畝	是	凄	制	
321	勢	姓	征	性	成	政	整	星	晴	棲
322	栖	正	清	生	盛	精	聖	声	製	
323	西	誠	誓	請	逝	醒	青	静	斉	税
324	脆	隻	席	惜	戚	斥	跡	昔	石	積
325	籍	績	脊	責	赤	跡	節	蹟	切	拙
326	接	摂	折	設	窃	宣	説	専	絶	舌
327	蝉	仙	先	千	占	浅	洗	染	川	戦
328	扇	撰	栓	旋	泉	線	潜	煎		
329	煽	繊	穿	羨	腺	船	薦	詮	賎	践
330		遷	禅	銭	銑	閃	前	善	漸	然
331	選	鮮	糎	膳	糧					
332	全									
	そ									
332					噌	塑	岨	措	曾	
333	曽	楚	狙	疏	踈	礎	祖	租	粗	素
334	組	蘇	訴	阻	遡	鼠	僧	創	双	叢
335	倉	喪	壮	奏	爽	宋	層	匝	惣	想

1st to 3rd digit	4th digit figure of the JIS Kanji code									
	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
336	捜	掃	挿	掻	操	早	曹	巣	槍	槽
337	蒼	燥	争	痩	相	窓	糟	総	綜	聡
338	草	荘	葬	蒼	藻	装	走	送	遭	鎗
339	霜		像	増	憎					
340		臓	蔵	贈	造	促	側	則	即	息
341	捉	束	測	足	速	俗	属	賊	族	続
342	卒		袖	其	揃	孫	尊	損	村	遜
	た									
343	他	多	太	汰	詑	唾	堕	妥	惰	打
344	柁	舵	楕	陀	駄	騨	体	耐	対	滞
345	岱	帯	待	怠	態	戴	替	泰	滞	胎
346	腿	台	大	第	醍	題	鷹	滝	瀧	代
347	台	宅	托	択	拓	沢	濯	琢	託	鐸
348	濁	諾		凧	但	達	奪	脱	巽	竪
349	辿		叩	谷	狸	鱈	樽	誰	丹	単
350	嘆	坦	担	探	旦	歎	淡	湛	炭	短
351	端	箪	綻	耽	胆	蛋	誕	鍛	団	壇
352	弾	断	暖	檀	段	男	談			
353										
354										
	ち									
354						値	知	地	弛	恥
355	智	池	痴	稚	置	致	蜘	遅	馳	築
356	畜	竹	筑	蓄	逐	秩	窒	茶	嫡	着
357	中	仲	宙	忠	抽	昼	柱	注	虫	衷
358	註	丁	酎	鋳	駐	柱	猪	苧	著	貯
359	丁		兆	帖	喋	寵				
360			帖	朝	脹	庁	帳	弔	町	眺
361	暢	調	諜	潮	超	跳	長	聴	頂	鳥
362	直	朕		沈	珍	賃	鎮		陳	
363										
	つ									
363								津	墜	椎
364		槌	追	鎚	痛	通	塚	栂	掴	槻
365		漬	柘	辻	爪	綴	鍔	椿	潰	
366		嬬	紬		吊	釣	鶴			
	て									
366							亭	低	停	偵
367						帝	底	庭	廷	弟
368						汀		碇	禎	貞
369		艇								
370							泥	摘	擢	敵
371		的	笛	適	填	哲	店	添	撤	鉄
372		鉄	典	顛	天	展	殿	澱	田	電
373		転		点	伝					
	と									
373									兎	吐
374		堵	塗	妬	屠	徒	斗	杜	渡	登
375		賭	途	都	度	土	砺	努	唐	塔
376		怒	倒	党	冬	凍	刀	搭	東	当
377		宕	島	嶋	悼	投	灯	塔	桃	痘
378		盗	淘	湯	涛	灯	燈	踏	牧	痘
379		答	筒	糖	統	到				
380			陶	藤	頭	討	謄	踏	逃	透
381		鐙	倒	撞	洞	闘	働	同	道	銅
382		憧	撞	胴	瞳	童	胴	萄	導	峠
383		鴇	匿	銅	慟	洞	特	督	篤	毒
384		独	読	栃	橡	凸	突	椴	届	鳶
385		寅	酉	滑	嚇	屯	惇	敦	沌	豚
386		頓	呑	曇	鈍					
	な									
386					奈	那	内	乍	凪	薙
387		謎	灘	捺	鍋	楢	馴	縄	畷	南
388		軟	難	汝						
	に									
388				二	尼	弐	迩	匂	賑	肉
389		虹	廿	日	乳	入				
390			如	尿	韮	任	妊	忍	認	
	ぬ									
390									濡	
	ね									
390										禰
391		祢	寧	葱	猫	熱	年	念	捻	撚
392		粘								
	の									
392			乃	廼	之	埜	嚢	悩	濃	納
393		脳	膿	農	覗	蚤				能

1st to 3rd digit	4th digit figure of the JIS Kanji code									
	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
	は									
393						巴	把	播	覇	杷
394		波	派	琶	破	婆	罵	芭	馬	俳
395		拝	排	背	肺	買	売	培	陪	配
396		倍	培	媒	梅	煤	狽	狙	伯	剥
397		陪	這	廼	秤	箔	粕	萩	伯	博
398		柏	泊	白	薄	迫	曝	漠	爆	
399			函	箱	八	鉢	発	髪	伐	罰
400			箸	肇	筏	蛮	抜	閥	反	半
401		畑	八	鳩	噺	塙	蛤	隼	伴	判
402		坂	阪	板	版	班	畔	般	販	斑
403		飯	搬	煩	頒	範	繁	藩	晩	番
404		蛮	盤	磐	肥	比	非	美	匹	彼
405		悲	扉	批	披	斐	疲	秘	被	彦
	ひ									
405						定	髭	彦	膝	菱
406		肘	弼	必	畢	筆	逼	桧	姫	媛
407		百	評	謬	彪	描	漂	苗	標	病
408		蛭	鰭	品	彬	斌	浜	瀕	貧	賓
409		敏	瓶							
	ふ									
410						夫	婦	冨	富	布
411		府	怖	扶	付	埠	阜	富	不	扶
412		父	符	芙	負	賦	赴	浮	婦	符
413		普	譜	膚	無	舞	封	楓	風	伏
414		武	蕪	部	服	福				
415		伏	覆	腹	複	復	淵	弗	払	沸
416		仏	物	分	吻	噴	墳	憤	扮	焚
417		粉	紛	雰	文	聞				
	へ									
418							丙	併	兵	塀
419		幣	平	弊	柄	並	蔽	閉	陛	米
420		片	辟	壁	癖	別	蔑	偏	変	
421		返	勉	娩	弁	便	編	辺	返	遍
422										
	ほ									
422		捕	歩	甫	補	輔				
423		保	舗	鋪	圃	戊	募	墓	慕	暮
424		母	簿	峯	崩	菩	穂	呆	報	奉
425		宝	峰	崩	庖	抱	包	捧	方	放
426		泡	胞	芳	邦	泡	訪	豊	邦	紡
427		防	膨	妨	帽	房	某	冒	棒	望
428		傍	膨	棒	呆	頬	釦	北	勃	
429		没	殆	堀						
430		本	翻	凡	盆					
	ま									
430					摩	磨	魔	麻	埋	妹
431		昧	枚	毎	哩	槙	幕	膜	枕	鮪
432		鱒	桝	亦	万	抹	末	沫	迄	
433		繭	麿	慢	満					
434			漫	蔓						
	み									
434					味	未	魅	巳	箕	岬
435		蜜	湊	蓑	稔	脈	妙	粍	民	眠
	む									
435										務
436		夢	無	牟	矛	霧	鵡	椋	婿	娘
	め									
436										冥
437		名	命	明	盟	迷	銘	鳴	姪	牝
438		免	棉	綿	緬	面	麺			
	も									
438							摸	模	茂	妄
439		孟	毛	猛	盲	網	耗	蒙	儲	木
440		目	杢	勿	餅	尤	戻	籾	貰	問
441		紋	門	匁						冶
	や									
441					也	冶	夜	爺	耶	野
442		矢	厄	役	約	薬	訳	躍	靖	柳



1st to 3rd digit
4th digit figure of the JIS Kanji code
0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9
449 鑓 鎖
ゆ
449 癒 油 唯 有 遊 邑 柚 佑 偐 愈
450 幽 由 宥 猷 融 友 涌 勇 優
451 夕 郵 雄 邸 湧 悠
452 祐 裕 憂 誘
よ
452 予 庸 用 陽
453 容 熔 遥 淀
余 与 揺 預 楊 蓉 沃
454 誉 擁 耀 葉 欲 抑 輿 曜 来 揚
455 窯 要 浴 謡 翌
456 養 慾
ら
456 羅
457 酪 落 絡 覧 頼 濫
螺 裸 来 嵐 欄 莱
458 乱 卵
り
458 吏 利
459 履 璃 理 裡 里 流 慮 梁 量
460 李 痢 裏 略 龍 寮 涼 料 遼 隣
461 梨 掠 竜 凌 良 林
462 琳
463 立 慄 稜 倫 率 律 離 陸 虜 猟 領 輪
464 隆 竜 寮 涼 旅 虜 猟 領 輪 隣 鱗
465 両 糧 厘
る
466 瑠 塁 涙 累 類
れ
466 励 麗 憐 冷 露 恋
467 令 鈴 例 零 廉 隷 裂 伶
468 嶺 怜 玲 暦 簾 練 錬 礼 列 練
469 蓮 連
470 劣 聯
ろ
470 呂 弄 朧 和 鰐
471 露 労 狼 廊 老
472 牢 肋
わ
473 倭 亘 惑 湾
474 枠 鷲 腕
475 碗
1st to 3rd digit
4th digit figure of the JIS Kanji code
0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9
513 啀 嗅 嗽 嘯 噫 噛 噌 噂 噴 噛
514 喩 喞 喇 嗷 嘶 嘯 嘔 嚊 嚇 嚙
515 嘔 嘖 嘯 嚊 嚔 嚊 嚇 嚙 嚙 嚙
516 嚙 嚊 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙
517 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙
518 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙
519 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙
520 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙
521 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙
522 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙
523 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙
524 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙
525 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙
526 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙
527 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙
528 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙
529 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙
530 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙
531 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙
532 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙
533 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙
534 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙
535 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙
536 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙
537 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙
538 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙
539 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙
540 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙
541 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙
542 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙
543 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙
544 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙
545 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙
546 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙
547 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙
548 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙
549 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙
550 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙
551 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙
552 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙
553 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙
554 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙
555 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙
556 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙
557 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙
558 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙
559 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙
560 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙
561 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙
562 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙
563 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙
564 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙
565 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙
566 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙
567 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙
568 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙
569 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙
570 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙
571 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙
572 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙
573 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙
574 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙
575 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙
576 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙
577 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙
578 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙
579 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙
580 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙
581 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙
582 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙
583 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙
584 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙
585 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙
586 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙
587 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙
588 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙
589 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙
1st to 3rd digit
4th digit figure of the JIS Kanji code
0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9
590 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙
591 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙
592 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙
593 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙
594 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙
595 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙
596 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙
597 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙
598 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙
599 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙
600 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙
601 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙
602 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙
603 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙
604 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙
605 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙
606 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙
607 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙
608 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙
609 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙
610 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙
611 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙
612 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙
613 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙
614 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙
615 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙
616 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙
617 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙
618 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙
619 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙
620 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙
621 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙
622 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙
623 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙
624 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙
625 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙
626 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙
627 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙
628 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙
629 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙
630 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙
631 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙
632 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙
633 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙
634 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙
635 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙
636 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙
637 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙
638 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙
639 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙
640 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙
641 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙
642 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙
643 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙
644 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙
645 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙
646 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙
647 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙
648 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙
649 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙
650 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙
651 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙
652 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙
653 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙
654 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙
655 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙
656 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙
657 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙
658 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙
659 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙
660 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙
661 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙
662 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙
663 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙
664 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙
665 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙
666 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙 嚙

1st to 3rd digit	4th digit figure of the JIS Kanji code									
	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
667	彻	砒	礦	砠	碵	硜	碎	硴	碆	硼
668	碚	碌	碣	碵	碪	磈	磑	磆	磋	磔
669	碾	碼	磅	磊	磬	磧	磚	磴	礇	礎
670		礪	礫	礬	礮	礱	礙	礧	礼	礵
671	礸	礻	祀	祁	祠	祗	祜	祓	祺	祿
672	禊	禝	禧	齋	禍	禦	禹	禩	禮	禳
673	礼	秈	秉	秊	秋	秕	秬	秡	秤	稀
674	稍	稘	稙	稟	稱	稻	稼	稽	稷	穂
675	穐	穣	穹	窄	窈	窕	窗	窩	窪	窰
676	窶	竅	竰	竸	笆	笊	笋	笏	笠	笳
677	笵	笹	笼	笥	笠	符	笄	笶	筅	筐
678	筱	筰	筴	筵	筥	筺	筮	箪	箘	箟
679	箸		箆	箴	箜	箚	箙	箘	箕	箪
680	箭	箱	箴	箸	節	篁	篌	篏	篝	篩
681	篭	篥	篦	篩	篳	篷	簀	簔	簍	簑
682	簞	簟	簣	簧	簪	簫	簷	簸	簽	簾
683	簿	籃	籌	籐	籏	籠	籟	籤	籘	籥
684	籬	籵	粁	粂	粉	粋	粍	粐	粕	粗
685	粟	粢	粧	粨	粲	粳	粱	粮	粭	粽
686	糀	糅	糇	糌	糎	糒	糘	糠	糢	糲
687	粭	粽	糎	糒	糘	糠	糢	糲	糯	糲
688	粽	糲	糀	糅	糇	糌	糎	糒	糘	糠
689	糢	糀	糅	糇	糌	糎	糒	糘	糠	糢
690	糲	糯	糀	糅	糇	糌	糎	糒	糘	糠
691	糢	糲	糯	糀	糅	糇	糌	糎	糒	糘
692	糠	糢	糲	糯	糀	糅	糇	糌	糎	糒
693	糘	糠	糢	糲	糯	糀	糅	糇	糌	糎
694	糒	糘	糠	糢	糲	糯	糀	糅	糇	糌
695	糎	糒	糘	糠	糢	糲	糯	糀	糅	糇
696	糌	糎	糒	糘	糠	糢	糲	糯	糀	糅
697	糇	糌	糎	糒	糘	糠	糢	糲	糯	糀
698	糅	糇	糌	糎	糒	糘	糠	糢	糲	糯
699	糀	糅	糇	糌	糎	糒	糘	糠	糢	糲
700	糯	糀	糅	糇	糌	糎	糒	糘	糠	糢
701	糲	糯	糀	糅	糇	糌	糎	糒	糘	糠
702	糢	糲	糯	糀	糅	糇	糌	糎	糒	糘
703	糠	糢	糲	糯	糀	糅	糇	糌	糎	糒
704	糘	糠	糢	糲	糯	糀	糅	糇	糌	糎
705	糒	糘	糠	糢	糲	糯	糀	糅	糇	糌
706	糎	糒	糘	糠	糢	糲	糯	糀	糅	糇
707	糌	糎	糒	糘	糠	糢	糲	糯	糀	糅
708	糇	糌	糎	糒	糘	糠	糢	糲	糯	糀
709	糅	糇	糌	糎	糒	糘	糠	糢	糲	糯
710	糀	糅	糇	糌	糎	糒	糘	糠	糢	糲
711	糯	糀	糅	糇	糌	糎	糒	糘	糠	糢
712	糲	糯	糀	糅	糇	糌	糎	糒	糘	糠
713	糢	糲	糯	糀	糅	糇	糌	糎	糒	糘
714	糠	糢	糲	糯	糀	糅	糇	糌	糎	糒
715	糘	糠	糢	糲	糯	糀	糅	糇	糌	糎
716	糒	糘	糠	糢	糲	糯	糀	糅	糇	糌
717	糎	糒	糘	糠	糢	糲	糯	糀	糅	糇
718	糌	糎	糒	糘	糠	糢	糲	糯	糀	糅
719	糇	糌	糎	糒	糘	糠	糢	糲	糯	糀
720	糅	糇	糌	糎	糒	糘	糠	糢	糲	糯
721	糀	糅	糇	糌	糎	糒	糘	糠	糢	糲
722	糯	糀	糅	糇	糌	糎	糒	糘	糠	糢
723	糲	糯	糀	糅	糇	糌	糎	糒	糘	糠
724	糢	糲	糯	糀	糅	糇	糌	糎	糒	糘
725	糠	糢	糲	糯	糀	糅	糇	糌	糎	糒
726	糘	糠	糢	糲	糯	糀	糅	糇	糌	糎
727	糒	糘	糠	糢	糲	糯	糀	糅	糇	糌
728	糎	糒	糘	糠	糢	糲	糯	糀	糅	糇
729	糌	糎	糒	糘	糠	糢	糲	糯	糀	糅
730	糇	糌	糎	糒	糘	糠	糢	糲	糯	糀
731	糅	糇	糌	糎	糒	糘	糠	糢	糲	糯
732	糀	糅	糇	糌	糎	糒	糘	糠	糢	糲
733	糯	糀	糅	糇	糌	糎	糒	糘	糠	糢
734	糲	糯	糀	糅	糇	糌	糎	糒	糘	糠
735	糢	糲	糯	糀	糅	糇	糌	糎	糒	糘
736	糠	糢	糲	糯	糀	糅	糇	糌	糎	糒
737	糘	糠	糢	糲	糯	糀	糅	糇	糌	糎
738	糒	糘	糠	糢	糲	糯	糀	糅	糇	糌
739	糎	糒	糘	糠	糢	糲	糯	糀	糅	糇
740	糌	糎	糒	糘	糠	糢	糲	糯	糀	糅

1st to 3rd digit	4th digit figure of the JIS Kanji code									
	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
744	糇	糌	糎	糒	糘	糠	糢	糲	糯	糀
745	糅	糇	糌	糎	糒	糘	糠	糢	糲	糯
746	糀	糅	糇	糌	糎	糒	糘	糠	糢	糲
747	糯	糀	糅	糇	糌	糎	糒	糘	糠	糢
748	糲	糯	糀	糅	糇	糌	糎	糒	糘	糠
749	糢	糲	糯	糀	糅	糇	糌	糎	糒	糘
750	糠	糢	糲	糯	糀	糅	糇	糌	糎	糒
751	糘	糠	糢	糲	糯	糀	糅	糇	糌	糎
752	糒	糘	糠	糢	糲	糯	糀	糅	糇	糌
753	糎	糒	糘	糠	糢	糲	糯	糀	糅	糇
754	糌	糎	糒	糘	糠	糢	糲	糯	糀	糅
755	糇	糌	糎	糒	糘	糠	糢	糲	糯	糀
756	糅	糇	糌	糎	糒	糘	糠	糢	糲	糯
757	糀	糅	糇	糌	糎	糒	糘	糠	糢	糲
758	糯	糀	糅	糇	糌	糎	糒	糘	糠	糢
759	糲	糯	糀	糅	糇	糌	糎	糒	糘	糠
760	糢	糲	糯	糀	糅	糇	糌	糎	糒	糘
761	糠	糢	糲	糯	糀	糅	糇	糌	糎	糒
762	糘	糠	糢	糲	糯	糀	糅	糇	糌	糎
763	糒	糘	糠	糢	糲	糯	糀	糅	糇	糌
764	糎	糒	糘	糠	糢	糲	糯	糀	糅	糇
765	糌	糎	糒	糘	糠	糢	糲	糯	糀	糅
766	糇	糌	糎	糒	糘	糠	糢	糲	糯	糀
767	糅	糇	糌	糎	糒	糘	糠	糢	糲	糯
768	糀	糅	糇	糌	糎	糒	糘	糠	糢	糲
769	糯	糀	糅	糇	糌	糎	糒	糘	糠	糢
770		糲	糯	糀	糅	糇	糌	糎	糒	糘
771	糠	糢	糲	糯	糀	糅	糇	糌	糎	糒
772	糘	糠	糢	糲	糯	糀	糅	糇	糌	糎
773	糒	糘	糠	糢	糲	糯	糀	糅	糇	糌
774	糎	糒	糘	糠	糢	糲	糯	糀	糅	糇
775	糌	糎	糒	糘	糠	糢	糲	糯	糀	糅
776	糇	糌	糎	糒	糘	糠	糢	糲	糯	糀
777	糅	糇	糌	糎	糒	糘	糠	糢	糲	糯
778	糀	糅	糇	糌	糎	糒	糘	糠	糢	糲
779	糯	糀	糅	糇	糌	糎	糒	糘	糠	糢
780	糲	糯	糀	糅	糇	糌	糎	糒	糘	糠
781	糢	糲	糯	糀	糅	糇	糌	糎	糒	糘
782	糠	糢	糲	糯	糀	糅	糇	糌	糎	糒
783	糘	糠	糢	糲	糯	糀	糅	糇	糌	糎
784	糒	糘	糠	糢	糲	糯	糀	糅	糇	糌
785	糎	糒	糘	糠	糢	糲	糯	糀	糅	糇
786	糌	糎	糒	糘	糠	糢	糲	糯	糀	糅
787	糇	糌	糎	糒	糘	糠	糢	糲	糯	糀
788	糅	糇	糌	糎	糒	糘	糠	糢	糲	糯
789	糀	糅	糇	糌	糎	糒	糘	糠	糢	糲
790	糯	糀	糅	糇	糌	糎	糒	糘	糠	糢
791	糲	糯	糀	糅	糇	糌	糎	糒	糘	糠
792	糢	糲	糯	糀	糅	糇	糌	糎	糒	糘
793	糠	糢	糲	糯	糀	糅	糇	糌	糎	糒
794	糘	糠	糢	糲	糯	糀	糅	糇	糌	糎
795	糒	糘	糠	糢	糲	糯	糀	糅	糇	糌
796	糎	糒	糘	糠	糢	糲	糯	糀	糅	糇
797	糌	糎	糒	糘	糠	糢	糲	糯	糀	糅
798	糇	糌	糎	糒	糘	糠	糢	糲	糯	糀
799	糅	糇	糌	糎	糒	糘	糠	糢	糲	糯
800	糀	糅	糇	糌	糎	糒	糘	糠	糢	糲
801	糯	糀	糅	糇	糌	糎	糒	糘	糠	糢
802	糲	糯	糀	糅	糇	糌	糎	糒	糘	糠
803	糢	糲	糯	糀	糅	糇	糌	糎	糒	糘
804	糠	糢	糲	糯	糀	糅	糇	糌	糎	糒
805	糘	糠	糢	糲	糯	糀	糅	糇	糌	糎
806	糒	糘	糠	糢	糲	糯	糀	糅	糇	糌
807	糎	糒	糘	糠	糢	糲	糯	糀	糅	糇
808	糌	糎	糒	糘	糠	糢	糲	糯	糀	糅
809	糇	糌	糎	糒	糘	糠	糢	糲	糯	糀
810	糅	糇	糌	糎	糒	糘	糠	糢	糲	糯
811	糀	糅	糇	糌	糎	糒	糘	糠	糢	糲
812	糯	糀	糅	糇	糌	糎	糒	糘	糠	糢
813	糲	糯	糀	糅	糇	糌	糎	糒	糘	糠
814	糢	糲	糯	糀	糅	糇	糌	糎	糒	糘
815	糠	糢	糲	糯	糀	糅	糇	糌	糎	糒
816	糘	糠	糢	糲	糯	糀	糅	糇	糌	糎
817	糒	糘	糠	糢	糲	糯	糀	糅	糇	糌
818	糎	糒	糘	糠	糢	糲	糯	糀	糅	糇
819	糌	糎	糒	糘	糠	糢	糲	糯	糀	糅
820	糇	糌	糎	糒	糘	糠	糢	糲	糯	糀

1st to 3rd digit	4th digit figure of the JIS Kanji code									
	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
821	糅	糀	糯	糲	糢	糠	糘	糒	糎	糌
822	糇	糅	糀	糯	糲	糢	糠	糘	糒	糎
823	糌	糇	糅	糀	糯	糲	糢	糠	糘	糒
824	糎	糌	糇	糅	糀	糯	糲	糢	糠	糘
825	糒	糎	糌	糇	糅	糀	糯	糲	糢	糠
826	糘	糒	糎	糌	糇	糅	糀	糯	糲	糢
827	糠	糘	糒	糎	糌	糇	糅	糀	糯	糲
828	糢	糠	糘	糒	糎	糌	糇	糅	糀	糯
829	糲	糯	糀	糅	糇	糌	糎	糒	糘	糠
830	糢	糠	糘	糒	糎	糌	糇	糅	糀	糯
831	糲	糯	糀	糅	糇	糌	糎	糒	糘	糠
832	糢	糠	糘	糒	糎	糌	糇	糅	糀	糯
833	糲	糯	糀	糅	糇	糌	糎	糒	糘	糠
834	糢	糠	糘	糒	糎	糌	糇	糅	糀	糯
835	糲	糯	糀	糅	糇	糌	糎	糒	糘	糠
836	糢	糠	糘	糒	糎	糌	糇	糅	糀	糯
837	糲	糯	糀	糅	糇	糌	糎	糒	糘	糠
838	糢	糠	糘	糒	糎	糌	糇	糅	糀	糯
839	糲	糯	糀	糅	糇	糌	糎	糒	糘	糠
840	糢	糠	糘	糒	糎	糌	糇	糅	糀	糯

Combination of operations during Multiaccess

The following table shows whether or not a process that is generated or to be performed can be operated when any other operation is in progress:

○ : Another communication is available maintaining the current communication status.
× : Another communication is unavailable maintaining the current communication status.

Processes that occur or are performed / Current status	Voice call		Videophone call		i-mode	i-mode Mail	
	Send	Receive	Send	Receive	Connect	Send	Receive
During a voice call	× *1	× *1, 2	×	× *3	○	○	○ *4
During a videophone call	×	× *3	×	× *3	×	×	×
During i-mode	○	○	× *5	× *6	×	○	○
During i-mode Mail reception/transmission	○	○	× *5	× *6	○	○ *7	○ *7
During SMS reception/ transmission	○	○	○	○	○	○ *7	○ *7
During i-αppli operation	○ *8	○ *8	○ *8	○ *8	×	○	○ *4
During packet communication	○	○	×	× *6	×	×	×
During 64K data communication	×	× *2, 9	×	× *3	×	×	×
Updating software	×	○	×	× *6	×	×	×
During data transmission (infrared communication/ USB connection)	×	×	×	×	×	×	×

Processes that occur or are performed / Current status	SMS		Packet communication		64K data communication		Data transmission (infrared communication)	
	Send	Receive	Send	Receive	Send	Receive	Send	Receive
During a voice call	○	○ *4	○	○	×	× *3	×	×
During a videophone call	×	○ *4	×	×	×	× *3	×	×
During i-mode	○	○	×	×	×	× *6	×	×
During i-mode Mail reception/transmission	○ *7	○ *7	×	×	×	× *6	×	×
During SMS reception/ transmission	○ *7	○ *7	○	○	×	○	×	×
During i-αppli operation	○	○ *4	○	○	○	○	○	×
During packet communication	○ *10	○ *4	×	×	×	× *6	×	×
During 64K data communication	×	○ *4	×	×	×	× *3	×	×
Updating software	×	×	×	×	×	× *6	×	×
During data transmission (infrared communication/ USB connection)	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×

- In case a videophone call is made connecting with the external device, it is the operation during 64K data communication.
- During infrared communication or data transmission via USB connection, any communication is unavailable.

*1 In case Call Waiting Service is set to be available, you can make a call to another party or receive from another party during a call.
*2 Subscribers to Voice Mail Service and Call Forwarding Service can also use these services.
*3 In case Call Waiting Service is set to be available, the call is recorded as missed call in the received call list.
*4 The ring tone does not sound.
*5 i-mode communication is disconnected if active.
*6 The call is recorded as missed call in the received call list.
*7 Sending while sending or receiving while receiving cannot be performed. Sending and receiving may not be allowed at the same time.
*8 Melody of i-αppli is stopped. When i-αppli is using i-mode communication, the following occurs:
- i-mode communication is disconnected when a videophone call is made.
- Incoming videophone calls are rejected.

*9 In case Call Waiting Service is set to be available, you can select answering a call after finishing the current communication or rejecting the incoming call.
*10 You can compose and send SMS from the phonebook.

Combination of functions during Multitask

Whether or not selections made in ***New Task*** menu can be combined with the currently run or set function is described in the following table:

○ : can be selected　× : cannot be selected

New Task menu item / Function in progress or status	Dial	1 Mail												2 i-mode									
		1 Inbox	2 Compose message	3 Chat Mail	4 Unsent messages	5 Outbox	6 Check new message			7 SMS			8 Read templates	1 iMenu	2 Bookmark	3 Go to location		4 Screen Memo	5 Last visited URL	6 Message retrieval	7 Message R&F		8 i-channel list
							1 i-mode message	2 SMS	3 Receive option	1 Compose SMS	2 Received SMS	3 Sent SMS				1 Enter URL	2 URL history				1 Message R	2 Message F	
Phone call/Dial input	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Videophone call	×	○	×	×	○	○	×	×	×	×	○	○	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	○	○	×
64K data comm.	×	○	○	○	○	○	×	○	×	○	○	○	×	×	×	×	×	○	×	×	○	○	×
PPP data comm.	○	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×
Outbox/Inbox/Unsent messages	○	×	○	×	×	×	○	○	○	○	×	×	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Compose i-mode Mail/SMS	○	○	×	×	○	○	○	○	○	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Chat mail	○	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	○	○	○
Read templates	○	×	○	×	×	×	○	○	○	○	×	×	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Received/Sent SMS (UIM)	○	×	○	×	×	×	○	○	○	○	×	×	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Message R/F list screen	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	×	○
Message R/F details screen	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	○	○	○	○	×	×	×	×	×	×	○	×	×	×
Check new message	○	○	○	×	○	○	×	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	○	○	○
Check new message (SMS)	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	×	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
iMenu	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	○	○	○	○	×	×	×	×	×	×	○	×	×	×
Enter URL/URL history/ Bookmark/Last Visited URL	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	×	×	×	×	×	○	○	○	×
Screen Memo	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	○	○	○	○	×	×	×	×	×	×	○	×	×	×
i-Channel	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	○	○	○	○	×	×	×	×	×	×	○	×	×	×
Software list/Software	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	×	×	×	×	×	○	○	○	×
i αppli download	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	○	○	○	○	×	×	×	×	×	×	○	×	×	×
i-motion / Melody/Image/ Chara-den	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Camera/Movie Camera/ Sound Recorder	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Bar Code Reader	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Phonebook/Notepad/Scheduler	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Calculator	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Received Calls/Redial (Normal mode)	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Received Calls/Redial (Reference mode)	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Own Number	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Receiving i-mode Mail	○	○	○	×	○	○	×	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	○	○	○
Receiving SMS	○	○	○	×	○	○	×	×	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	○	○	○
Answer Machine/Voice Memo	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Alarm sound	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Videophone call by external device	×	○	○	○	○	×	○	×	○	○	○	○	○	×	×	×	×	○	×	×	○	○	×
UIM not inserted	○	○	○	○	○	×	×	×	○	×	×	○	×	○	×	×	○	×	×	○	○	○	×
PUK blocked	○	○	○	○	○	×	×	×	○	×	×	○	×	○	×	×	○	×	×	○	○	○	×
Self Mode set	○	○	○	○	○	×	×	×	○	○	○	○	×	○	×	×	○	×	×	○	○	○	○
Keypad Dial Lock set	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
PIM Lock set	○	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×
Reading UIM	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	×	×	×	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○

○ : can be selected　× : cannot be selected

New Task menu item / Function in progress or status	3 i-αppli	4 Phonebook & Logs						5 Data Box				6 Tools				7 Stationery			0 Own number
		1 Phonebook	2 Received calls	3 Redial	4 Ans. machine/ V. memo			5 Own number	1 Image	2 i-motion	3 Melody	4 Chara-den	1 Bar code reader	2 Camera	3 Movie Camera	4 Sound recorder	1 Scheduler	2 Notepad	3 Calculator	
					1 Recorded messages	2 Record voice memo	3 Voice memos													
Phone call	○	○	○	○	○	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	×	○	○	○	○
Dial input	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Videophone call	×	○	×	×	×	×	×	○	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	○	○	×	○
64K data comm.	○	○	○	○	○	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	×	○	○	○	○
PPP data comm.	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Outbox/Inbox/Unsent messages	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Compose i-mode Mail/ Compose SMS	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Chat mail	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Read templates	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Received/Sent SMS (UIM)	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Message R/F list screen	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Message R/F details screen	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Check new message/SMS	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
iMenu	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Enter URL/URL history/ Bookmark/Last Visited URL	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Screen Memo	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
i-Channel	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Software list/Software	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	×	×	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
i αppli download	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	×	×	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
i-motion	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	○	×	×	×	×	×	○	○	○	○
Melody	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Image	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	○	○	×	×	×	×	×	○	○	○	○
Chara-den	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	×	○	×	×	×	×	×	○	○	○	○
Camera	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	×	○	×	×	×	×	×	○	○	○	○
Movie Camera/Sound Recorder	○	○	○	○	×	×	×	○	×	×	○	×	×	×	×	×	○	○	○	○
Bar Code Reader	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	×	○	×	×	×	×	×	○	○	○	○
Phonebook	○	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Notepad	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	○	○
Scheduler	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	○	○	○
Calculator	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	○
Received Calls/Redial (Normal mode)	○	○	×	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Received Calls/Redial (Reference mode)	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Own Number	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×
Receiving i-mode Mail/SMS	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Answer Machine/Voice Memo	○	○	○	○	×	×	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	×	○	○	○	○
Alarm sound	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Videophone call by external device	○	○	○	○	○	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	×	○	○	○	○
UIM not inserted	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
PUK blocked	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Self Mode set/ Keypad Dial Lock set	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
PIM Lock set	×	×	○	○	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	○	×
Reading UIM	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○

• Some functions which can be selected may be unavailable depending on the status of activating or lock settings, etc.

Services available for FOMA terminal

Service	Phone number
Collect call (reversed charge calls)	106 (no area code)
Directory assistance for general subscriber phones and for DoCoMo's mobile phones (charges apply) (unlisted phone numbers cannot be given)	104 (no area code)
Telegrams (charges apply) 8 a.m. - 10 p.m.	115 (no area code)
Time (charges apply)	117 (no area code)
Weather (charges apply)	Area code + 177
Police emergencies	110 (no area code)
Fire and ambulance	119 (no area code)
Marine emergencies and accident reports	118 (no area code)
Disaster Voice Mail Service (charges apply)	171 (no area code)

INFORMATION

- If you use the collect call service (106), the call charge is billed to the receiver together with a commission of 90 yen (94.5 yen with tax included) per call. (as of February 2006)
- If you use the directory assistance service (104), a service charge of 100 yen (105 yen with tax included) is billed together with the call charge. Note that this service is available free from charge for those who are under special conditions. For further information, inquire at 116 (NTT sales center) from a general subscriber phone. (as of February 2006)
- Note that calls to 110, 119 or 118 from FOMA terminal cannot be located. Since the police or fire department authorities may call you to confirm, inform them that you are calling from a mobile phone, give your number and detailed information of your whereabouts. To make sure that you are not cut off during the call, stay in one place when you make the call and do not turn off the phone after the call, but keep it on for about 10 minutes.
- Depending on the area you are calling from, you may not be connected to the local police or fire department. Use a public payphone or general subscriber phone if you cannot get in touch with the local authorities.
- A general subscriber phone, when it is set for "Call Forwarding", can forward an incoming call to a mobile phone. In this case, even when the receiver's side is busy, is outside the service area, or is turned off, the sender may still hear ringing tones. It is due to some optional setting applied to the receiver's side.
- You may not be able to call 116 (NTT sales center), Dial Q^2, Message Dial and make credit card calls. However, credit card calls can be made from a general subscriber phone/pay phone to FOMA terminal.

Options and related devices

Combining FOMA terminal with optional accessories supports a wide variety uses from personal use to business use. Some products are unavailable depending on the region. For details, contact DoCoMo Shops.
For details about the optional accessories, refer to the instruction manual for each device.

- Battery pack D07
- Rear cover D10
- Desktop holder D09
- FOMA AC adapter 01
- FOMA domestic/overseas AC adapter 01
- FOMA DC adapter 01
- Flat type earphone/microphone set with switch P01/P02
- Flat type stereo earphone set P01
- Earphone jack converter adapter P001
- Earphone/microphone set with switch P001*1/ P002*1
- Stereo earphone set P001*1
- Earphone terminal P001*1
- FOMA USB cable
- Data communication adapter D01
- FOMA indoor auxiliary antenna
- In-Car Hands-Free Kit 01*2
- FOMA In-Car Hands-Free Cable 01
- In-car holder 01

*1 The earphone jack converter adapter P001 is required.
*2 FOMA In-Car Hands-Free Cable 01 is required to connect to FOMA D702i.

About the data link software

The FOMA D Series Data Link Software can be used to transfer data such as Bookmark between your FOMA terminal and a connected PC. You can install the FOMA D Series Data Link Software from the attached CD-ROM or download it from the following web sites:
http://www.MitsubishiElectric.co.jp/d702i/

- For details on the installation of data link software, see “README_DL.txt” of “DataLink” folder in the attached CD-ROM.
- For details on how to download, transferable data, operating procedure and operation environment, access the web site above or refer to the data link software Help menu.

- The FOMA USB cable (optional) is required for connecting to PC.
- Copyright laws forbid transfer of downloaded information from FOMA terminal to external sources even in its use of the data link software. Also, you cannot forward the data if it is prohibited from being output from FOMA terminal.

Supported OS

Windows 98 Second Edition, Windows Me, Windows 2000 Professional, Windows XP Professional, Windows XP Home Edition

- A PC/AT compatible machine for the above OS is required.

When using the data link software

- Copyright laws
  Although this software is distributed as freeware, note that the copyright belongs to Mitsubishi Electric Corporation.
- Liability
  Mitsubishi Electric Corporation assumes no legal responsibility for defect liability, including software issues and false operations and other responsibility. Additionally, Mitsubishi Electric Corporation makes no guarantees whatsoever as to the merchantability of the software and conformance to specific purposes of customers.

Contact information for technical matters concerning the data link software

Mitsubishi Electric Data Link Support Center:
03-5319-3762
Business hours:
weekdays 9:00 to 12:00/13:00 to 17:00 (Closed on Saturdays, Sundays, national holidays, new year’s holidays and company holidays)

- To avoid mistakes, please double-check the number before dialing.

About the video playing software

Playing videos (MP4 file) on a PC requires QuickTime Player (free of charge) ver. 6.4 or later (or ver. 6.3 + 3GPP), which is provided by Apple Computer Inc.
QuickTime Player can be downloaded from the website below:
http://www.apple.com/jp/quicktime/download/

- Downloading the software requires a PC with Internet access. Communication charges are separately required for downloading.
- For details including the operating environment, downloading procedure and operation instructions, visit the website shown above.

Troubleshooting

Check if updating software is required first and perform Software Update if necessary. ☛P352

Power supply and charging

●FOMA terminal cannot be turned on (the terminal cannot be used).

- Is the battery pack connected properly? ☛P39
- Is the battery depleted? ☛P43
- When the mova terminal is on when using Dual Network Service, the FOMA terminal service is not available. Check whether or not FOMA terminal is on. For details, see “Network Services User’s Guide”.

●The icon on the top of the display flashes and a rapid beep alarm is heard.

The battery is almost discharged. Charge the battery. ☛P40

● FOMA terminal cannot be charged.

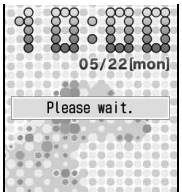
- Is the battery pack connected properly? ☛P39
- Is the charger terminal dirty? Clean the terminal with dry cotton swab, etc.
- Is the AC adapter (optional) connector securely inserted to the FOMA terminal's jack or the desktop holder (optional) connection terminal? ☛P41
- Is FOMA terminal correctly mounted on the desktop holder (optional)? ☛P42

● The charging indicator flashes in red during charging.

End any calls or communications immediately. Disconnect the optional AC adapter (Desktop holder) or DC adapter from FOMA terminal. Then connect all the devices correctly and start over. ☛P41, P42
If the problem still persists, contact "Repairs" listed on the back of this manual.

Phone

● "Please wait." is displayed and does not go out.



- The line is congested. Wait and dial again. The message can be deleted by pressing a dial key.
- You can call the number 110,119 and 118. However the call may not be connected depending on the status.

● Calls cannot be made using the dial keys.

- Have you set All Lock? ☛P130
- Have you set Remote Lock? ☛P131
- Have you set Keypad Dial Lock? ☛P134
- Have you set Self Mode? ☛P132

● *圏外* (outside service area) is indicated on the display and you hear busy signals.

Are you outside the service area or in an area with poor signal strength? ☛P44

● After dialing a number, you hear busy signals and cannot establish your call.

- Have you dialed the area code? ☛P48
- Did you hear the dial tone before entering a phone number?
- Is *圏外* indicated? ☛P44

● The ring alert does not sound.

- Is Ring volume set to ***Silent***? ☛P61
- Is the following function set?
  - ・Reject/Accept Call ☛P138
  - ・Anonymous Caller ☛P139
  - ・Mute Ring Time Setting ☛P140
  - ・Reject non-Reg. Caller ☛P141
- Have you set Silent Mode? ☛P109
- Have you set Public mode (Driving mode)? ☛P65
- Have you set All Lock? ☛P130
- Have you set Self Mode? ☛P132
- Is the ringing time for Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service set to ***0 sec***? ☛P301, P302

● An incoming voice call cannot be responded with the Any Key Answer function.

Is Any Key Answer set to ***OFF***? ☛P59

● During a voice call, the other party's voice is hard to listen or too loud.

Has the volume setting been changed? Adjust it appropriately. ☛P61

● The redial data/received call history is erased unexpectedly.

- Is Keypad Dial Lock set on? ☛P134
- Is PIM Lock set on? ☛P133

● When there is an incoming call, a ring alert not set sounds.

- Ring tones set in multiple functions sound depending on the priority levels given below:
  ①Incoming settings for Multi Number
  ②Settings of the FOMA terminal phonebook
  ③Group Setting in the FOMA terminal phonebook
  ④Sound Setting, Incoming Call Setting or Incoming Videophone Setting
- Is Privacy Mode activated? ☛P134

● When there is an incoming call, an image not set appears.

- When video/i-motion containing sound and image is set as ring tone for Incoming Call Setting, the set video/i-motion is used as the image.
- When call images are set in multiple functions, the image appears depending on the priority levels given below:
  ①Incoming settings for Multi Number
  ②Settings of the FOMA terminal phonebook
  ③Group Setting in the FOMA terminal phonebook
  ④Incoming Call Setting or Incoming Videophone Setting
- Is Privacy Mode activated? ☛P134

● When there is an incoming call, keys light/flash in a lighting pattern not set.

- If a lighting pattern is set for multiple functions, the keys light/flash depending on the priority levels given below:
  ①Settings of the FOMA terminal phonebook
  ②Group Setting in the FOMA terminal phonebook
  ③Alert Lighting Setting/Incoming Call Setting or Incoming Videophone Setting
- Is Privacy Mode activated? ☛P134

Settings and operations

● Key icon is displayed instead of menu icon and icon cannot be selected.

In case some functions cannot be activated because of various lock functions or the UIM not inserted, 🔒 is displayed and some icons cannot be selected.

● The Keypad sound is not generated.

- Is Keypad Sound set to ***OFF***? ☛P107
- Have you activated Silent Mode? ☛P109

● A message ***Insert UIM.*** is displayed when FOMA terminal is powered on.

The UIM may not be properly attached or may be damaged. Check to see if the UIM is properly attached. ☛P36

● *Card not recognized.* appears on the display.

The UIM is not correctly installed or the card is faulty. ☛P36

● *All locked.* appears on the display.

All Lock is set. Cancel All Lock. ☛P130

● *Remote locked.* is displayed and cannot operate the terminal.

Remote Lock is set. Cancel Remote Lock. ☛P131

● Nothing is indicated on the display.

Is ***Turn light on*** in Display Light Setting set to other than ***Always***? Screen display disappears after about 90 seconds have elapsed without any operation. ☛P118 Display reappears by any key operation.

● is indicated on the standby display and an operation is unavailable.

The keys cannot be used because Key Lock is set. Cancel Key Lock. ☛P136

● Pressing keys has no effect.

The keys cannot be used because Key Lock is set. Cancel Key Lock. ☛P136

● The day of the week appears in Japanese.

- Is Select Language set to 日本語 (Japanese)? ☛P44
- Is the day for Clock Display Format set to ***Japanese***? ☛P123

● The display is dim.

Is ***Brightness*** in Display Light Setting set to ***Low***? ☛P118

● The lighting for the display and dial keys does not go ON.

Is ***Lighting method*** in Display Light Setting set to ***Turn light OFF***? ☛P118

● When Auto Power ON is set, FOMA terminal cannot be turned on at the specified time.

If the power is turned off in a manner other than the power-off operation or Auto Power OFF function (battery pack came off, for example), these functions are not activated.

● Even if Alarm Clock or schedule alarm is set, the alarm does not operate at the specified date and time when the power is turned off.

- If the power is turned off in a manner other than the power-off operation or Auto Power OFF function (battery pack came off, for example), this function is not activated.
- Set Alarm Auto Power ON to ***ON***. ☛P280

● Call cost has not been charged.

The total cost for the UIM may exceed the limit (approx.16,770,000 yen). You can reset to 0 yen. ☛P292

Mail and data

● Still images and video taken with the camera are blurred.

When shooting an object nearby, use macro mode and switch to normal mode when shooting an object at a distance. ☛P153

● Downloaded data, file attached to mail, or Message R/F cannot be displayed or played.

Because of the UIM operation restriction function, these functions are not available when the UIM is replaced or no UIM is inserted. ☛P37

● Mail reception is announced by other ring alert than that set for incoming mail.

- When the mail ring alert is set for multiple functions, the ring tone sounds depending on the priority levels given below:
  ①Settings of the FOMA terminal phonebook
  ②Group Setting in the FOMA terminal phonebook
  ③Sound Setting/Incoming Msg. Setting
- When multiple mails are received at the same time, the mail ring alert sounds depending on the conditions set for the last mail received.
- Has the mail address of the mail sender correctly recorded in the phonebook and the mail ring alert been set?
- Is Privacy Mode activated? ☛P134

● Names are not displayed or ring tone does not sound at the time of mail reception even though they have been registered in the phonebook.

- The number or mail address of the other party does not match that registered in the phonebook. Register correct phone numbers and mail address in the phonebook. ☛P87
- Is Privacy Mode activated? ☛P134

● When mail is received, keys light/flash in other lighting pattern than those set for incoming mail.

- When the incoming mail lighting pattern are set for multiple functions, the keys light/flash depending on the priority levels given below:
  ①Settings of the FOMA terminal phonebook
  ②Group Setting in the FOMA terminal phonebook
  ③Alert Lighting Setting/Incoming Msg. Setting
- When multiple mails are received at the same time, the call indicator lights or flashes in the incoming mail lighting pattern corresponding to the last mail received.
- Has the mail address of the mail sender correctly recorded in the phonebook and the incoming mail lighting pattern been set?
- Is Privacy Mode activated? ☛P134

● The image and video is displayed as and .

If the data has been destroyed, it cannot be correctly displayed and or appears.

Example of Error messages

Main error messages displayed on FOMA terminal are shown in the alphabetical order as follows:

- The “(number)” or “XXX” in error messages is a code used to distinguish the error sent from i-mode Center.

● Address is not valid. (451)
Failed to transmit the i-mode Mail or SMS messages. Make sure if the address is correct.

● Authentication interrupted.
Displayed when you stop authentication on the screen.

● Authentication type is not supported. (401)
The authentication type is not supported and connection to the specified i-mode or internet web site is disabled.

● Cannot execute because of other tasks.
Stop all other functions running before updating the definition file.

● Card error.
The UIM is not correctly installed or the card is faulty. Check that UIM is inserted correctly. ☛P36

● Certificate is rejected.(tampered)
The site certificate is altered. Connection is suspended.

● Chat mail data damaged. Restore default settings?
The data of chat mail contains error. Select ***Yes*** to return to the default setting. Select ***No*** to quit chat mail without returning to the default setting.

● Check address.
Failed to transmit SMS. Make sure if the address is correct.

● Check address.
The mail address in the mail group contains error or no mail address is entered.
Check the mail address.

● Check SMS center setting.
SMS setting at ***SMSC*** is incorrect. Check the setting. ☛P226

● Connection failed.
Failed to connect to the i-mode Center. Please move to another location with good radio reception and retry.

● Connection failed. (403)
Failed to connect due to some cause such as connection to the specified i-mode or Internet web site was rejected.

● Connection failed. (503)
Failed to connect because of the maintenance of the server or congestion of the line.
Please retry after a while.

● Connection failed. (562)
Failed to connect to the i-mode Center. Please move to another location with good radio reception and retry.

● Connection interrupted.
Please move to another location with good radio reception and retry. If the error persists, try again later.

● Contains bad data.
i-αppli cannot be started from invalid data read with Bar Code Reader.

● Content length exceeds replayable size for i-motion.
Reception was suspended because the data size exceeds 500 Kbytes while downloading i-motion data.

● Continue using i-αppli and transmit data?
The number of transmission is extremely large within the specified duration when using i-αppli and i-αppli tried to transmit again after the message ***Data transmission is frequent. Continue transmission?*** was displayed. Select ***Yes*** to use i-αppli successively, ***Terminate i-αppli*** to quit i-αppli.

● Could not check new messages.
Please move to another location with good radio reception and retry. If the error persists, try again later.

● Data damaged. Restore default settings?
The data of the mail contains error. Select ***Yes*** to return to the default setting. Mail cannot be started without restoring the default setting.

● Data transmission is frequent. Continue transmission?
Displayed in case the number of transmission is extremely large within the specified duration when using i-αppli. Select ***Yes*** to use i-αppli successively, ***No*** to continue i-αppli after terminating i-αppli transmission or ***Terminate i-αppli*** to quit i-αppli.

● Date and time not set. Unable to start.
Activating i-αppliDX, alarm or Scheduler requires Date and Time Setting. Set the date and time correctly before start. ☛P45

● Dial callout restricted.
This prohibited operation is unavailable in Keypad Dial Lock on.

● Download failed.
Communication was interrupted during reception. Please move to another location with good radio reception and retry.

● Error in image. Does not work correctly.
Flash movie cannot be displayed because of the error in the image data.

● Error occurred. Unable to save.
Cannot be saved because an error occurred during saving attachment.

● Exceeded number of maximum characters. Failed to quote partly.
SMS message exceeded 70 characters (160 characters for the font type of English) for reply, so some characters cannot be quoted.

● Failed to clear call cost information.
The UIM is not correctly installed or the card is faulty. ☛P36

● Failed to connect
Failed to connect to the server. Please move to another location with good radio reception and retry.

● Failed to move.
When moving selected items or all items of the data, all data cannot be moved.

● Failed to read call cost information.
The UIM is not correctly installed or the card is faulty. ☛P36

● Failed to retrieve i-Channel information.
Failed to connect to the i-mode Center. Please move to another location with good radio reception and retry.

● Failed to save.
Cannot be saved because the still image above 10,000 byte to be saved contains an error.

● Failed to view message data.
- When deleting received mail, unsent mail or folder, the object mail data cannot be referenced because it is used for another processing. Retry later.
- Mail data cannot be referenced in chat mail. Retry later.

● Folder is full.
Unable to receive Message R/F because the memory space is insufficient. Please read unread Message R/F, release protection of Message R/F or delete unnecessary Message R/F.

● i-αppli standby display canceled due to security error.
i-αppli standby display has exited because an attempt was made to perform unpermitted operation.

● i-mode Center is busy. Please try again later. (555)
The i-mode Center is busy. Please try again later.

● Inbox full. Unable to retrieve new messages.

Unable to receive all SMS messages because there is insufficient storage space in the Inbox of FOMA terminal or the UIM. Please read unread mail, release mail protection or delete unnecessary mail and execute Check SMS again.

● Inbox full. Unable to retrieve new messages.

Unable to receive SMS because there is insufficient storage space in the Inbox of FOMA terminal or the UIM. Please read unread mail, release mail protection or delete unnecessary mail.

● Inbox is full.

Unable to receive i-mode Mail because there is insufficient memory space in the Inbox. Please read unread i-mode Mail, release i-mode Mail protection or delete unnecessary i-mode Mail.

● Incoming message data damaged. Restore default settings?

The received data of chat mail contains error. Select ***Yes*** to return to the default setting. Select ***No*** to quit chat mail without returning to the default setting.

● Infrared Connection interrupted.

An error occurred during infrared communication. During infrared communications, do not move FOMA terminal pointed at the other party's infrared data port before data sending and receiving is complete. ☛P266

● Infrared Failed to connect via authentication.

Sending all data was failed because the authentication password is not correct. Enter the same authentication password between sender and receiver. ☛P268, P269

● Infrared No response. Initiate data exchange?

After entering into the infrared communication state, 5 or more seconds have elapsed with no other terminals for communications found. Point FOMA terminal at the other terminal's infrared data port with a distance of 20 cm or less and select ***Yes***. ☛P266

● Infrared No UIM. Unable to start requested software.

Because no UIM is inserted, the specified i-αppli cannot be started even when i-αppli To is set in the data received by infrared communications.

● Input error (205)

Input data for i-mode or Internet web site contains error. Check the input data for errors.

● Insufficient memory.

Operation is interrupted due to insufficient memory.

● Invalid content download failed

Cannot download because the object contents to be charged are invalid.

● Invalid data.

The downloaded Chara-den, Deco-mail template or still image above 10,000 byte is invalid.

● Invalid data. (XXX)

- The specified i-mode or Internet web site does not support i-mode.
- The URL may be incorrect. Make sure that the URL is correct.
- Unable to display because there is an error in the received data.
- Within service area, sending auto-send mail was unsuccessful.

● Invalid data. Connection cannot be established. (400)

- Cannot be connected because of the error in i-mode or Internet web site. The URL may be incorrect. Make sure that the URL is correct.
- Within service area, sending auto-send mail was unsuccessful.

● Invalid data. Unable to save.

The downloaded Chara-den cannot be saved because the Chara-den is invalid.

● Unable to play.

Data of melodies or video/i-motion cannot be played.

● Invalid UIM, requested service not available.

You tried to display/play back data downloaded from i-mode or Internet web site or saved from attachments of a mail or Message R/F using a UIM different from the one you were using when you stored the data. Insert the same UIM as used when those data were downloaded to use it.

● Invalid UIM, requested software failed to start.

The i-αppli to be used together with the UIM used when downloading it from a site, etc. cannot be started. Insert the same UIM as used when the software was downloaded to use it.

● Invalid URL.

The entered URL contains error. Check the URL.

● Mail address not recorded.

The mail address is not saved in the selected mail group. Save the mail address in the mail group. ☛P217

● Mails could not be sent to following address. (561)

Sending i-mode Mail is failed for some receivers. Pressing ● displays the receiver that the transmission failed. Check to see if the address of the receiver is correct and retry transmission at another location with good radio wave condition.

● Memory is full. Unable to save.

FOMA terminal or UIM does not have enough memory space and the i-mode Mail or SMS cannot be saved. Move SMS to UIM or FOMA terminal or delete i-mode Mail.

● Memory shortage Return to Main Menu.

Operation is interrupted due to insufficient memory.
The main menu reappears.

● Message kept in center.

SMS messages have already been sent.

● Message rejected by recipient.

SMS is rejected by the SMS Center.

● Message rejected by recipient.

Transmitting SMS is rejected.

● Name too long. Saved with incomplete name.

When registering an item selected from the display of a site, etc. to the phonebook, the number of characters has exceeded the specified value. Pressing ● causes the phonebook registration screen to be displayed, with characters exceeding the limit deleted for each item.

● New pattern definitions for scanning function available. Please update.

Auto-update of the pattern definition was unsuccessful. Update the pattern definition manually. ☛P357

● No content is available. (204)

Could not find data at the specified site.

● No Requested File. (492)

The specified file could not be found during download of a still image above 10,000 bytes.

● No requested software.

The i-αppli specified by the mail or external equipment is not stored in your FOMA terminal.

● No response. (408)

Communication was disconnected because there was no response from i-mode or Internet web site within the specified time. Retry later.

● No space to attach signature.

- When a message and a signature include more than the maximum characters, the signature cannot be attached. Send by reducing the number of characters of the message or without attaching a signature.
- The signature cannot be attached when ***English*** is set for ***Font type*** in SMS Setting. Change ***Font type*** to ***Japanese***. ☛P226

● No space to attach file.

Exceeds the maximum number of files attachable to one mail.

● No UIM, requested software failed to start.

The i-αppli to be used together with the UIM used when downloading it from a site, etc. cannot be started. Insert the same UIM as used when the software was downloaded to use it.

● Now calling. Unable to record movie.

When using the camera during a call, it cannot be switched to video shooting and voice recording. End the call before switching to video shooting and voice recording.

● Number of characters exceeds limit.

i-mode Mail message exceeded 10,000 one-byte (5,000 two-byte) characters for reply. Please send after decreasing some characters.

● Out of service area.

Unable to execute because the terminal is in a place where radio waves do not reach or out of the service area.

● Outgoing message data damaged. Restore default settings?

The send data of chat mail contains error. Select ***Yes*** to return to the default setting. Select ***No*** to quit chat mail without returning to the default setting.

● Page is not found. (404)

Unable to find i-mode, etc.
Make sure that the URL is correct.

● Password is not correct. (401)

The user name or password entered in the basic authentication screen of i-mode or Internet web site is incorrect. Please try again.

● PIM lock.

This prohibited operation is unavailable in PIM Lock on.

● Set the clock to obtain data.

Unable to receive because the date and time are not set. Please set the date and time correctly. ☛P45

● Please wait.

- The line is congested. Please try again later.
- Use of i-mode is restricted. Retry later.

● PUK blocked.

Inquire at DoCoMo Shops.

● Receiving data exceeds replayable size for i-motion.

Reception or replay has not been completed because the data size exceeded 500 Kbytes when downloading i-motion data or when playback was performed while downloading data.

● Receiving messages. Retry later.

i-channel cannot be activated during receiving mail or Message R/F. Retry after receiving.

● Receiving messages stopped. Some messages unreceived.

Unable to receive all SMS messages because an error occurred during reception. Please move to another location with good radio reception and execute Check SMS again. ☛P225

● Registration is in progress. (554)

User registration with i-mode is in process. Please try again later.

● Remotely Controllable services denied.

Voice Mail Service and Call Forwarding Service are not subscribed yet. It is required to subscribe to Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service.

● Replay period has not yet started.

Unable to play because of the term prior to the playback period specified for i-motion. Please try again after the playback period has started. ☛P253

● Requested software unavailable.

The i-αppli cannot be started because of an error in i-αppli. Starting specified i-αppli by i-αppli To function from a site, mail or an external device is disabled if there is a problem in i-αppli operation settings or start-up conditions.

● Root certificate has expired. Do you connect?

The term of validity of the certificate in FOMA terminal is premature or overdue. To connect, select ***Yes***; to stop, select ***No***.

● Root certificate has expired. Do you connect?

The term of validity of the site certificate is premature or overdue. Select ***Yes*** to connect or ***No*** not to connect. ☛P181 This message may be displayed when the date and time have not been set or are incorrect. Set the time and date correctly. ☛P45

● Root certificate is not valid.

The certificate in FOMA terminal is off. To establish a connection, change the setting. ☛P181

● Save unsaved data to phone memory or delete.

Infrared communications cannot end, leaving data saved in INBOX for infrared communications. Save the data in Inbox into FOMA terminal or delete it. ☛P269

● Self mode activated.

This prohibited operation is unavailable during Self Mode.

● Service is not registered.

- Unable to run because you are not an i-mode subscriber. Apply to use the i-mode service.
- If you have subscribed to i-mode after purchasing FOMA terminal, once turn FOMA terminal power off and then turn on.

● Service unavailable.

SMS is not available.

● Size of this page is not supported.

- Reception has stopped because i-mode or internet web site size was larger than the limit size. Press ⓒ to display the data already received normally.
- Reception was interrupted because the data size exceeds maximum size while downloading Chara-den, Deco-mail template or a still image above 10,000 bytes.

● Software ended due to security error.

i-αppli has exited because an attempt was made to perform unpermitted operation. It is recorded in Security Error History.

● Software already updated.

The i-αppli cannot be upgraded because it has already been upgraded to the latest version.

● SSL session cannot be established.

SSL communication was interrupted due to an SSL communication error or an error on the server concerning the client authentication.

● SSL session failed.

A problem was detected with the authentication process during SSL communication. Connection is suspended.

● SSL session was terminated.

Some problem is detected with the site certificate during SSL communication.
The message is displayed when you select ***No*** in the connection confirmation screen and SSL communication is disconnected.

● This certificate is not valid for this URL. Do you connect?

CN name (server name) of the site certificate does not match the actual server name. To connect, select ***Yes***; to stop, select ***No***. ☛P181

● This data cannot be saved. Download?

This i-motion file cannot be saved. Select ***Yes*** to download; select ***No*** not to download.

● This data may not be replayed.

Video/i-motion file format not supported by FOMA terminal. Or the video file may be damaged.

● This i-motion type is not supported.

This i-motion cannot be played on D702i.

● This site is not certified. Do you connect?

The site certificate is not supported by FOMA terminal. Select ***Yes*** to connect or ***No*** not to connect.

● This software contains an error.

Unable to download because the i-αppli data contains an error.

● This software contains an error. Unable to download.

Unable to download because the i-αppli data contains an error.

● This software is currently unavailable for use.

Using the i-αppli is stopped by IP (Information service provider).

● This software is not supported by this phone.

The i-αppli cannot be downloaded because it is not compatible with FOMA terminal.

● This UIM cannot be recognized.

The UIM is not correctly installed or the card is faulty. Check if the UIM is installed correctly. ☛P36

● Time out.

The i-mode Center is busy. Please try again later.

● Too much data was entered.

Unable to transmit data because too many characters were entered in the entry field of i-mode or Internet web site. Please reduce the number of characters and retry transmission.

● Transmission failed.

Failed to transmit the i-mode Mail or SMS. Please move to another location with good radio reception and retry transmission.

● Transmission failed. (552)

Failed to transmit the i-mode Mail or SMS due to the error of i-mode Center or the SMS Center. Please try to send again later.

● UIM full.

UIM does not have enough storage space and SMS cannot be saved. Delete SMS from the UIM ☛P228 or move to FOMA terminal. ☛P227

● UIM not inserted. Requested service unavailable.

The UIM is not inserted. Please use your FOMA terminal after inserting the UIM. ☛P36

● Unable to call.

A voice/videophone call cannot be made during voice/videophone calls or 64K data communication.

● Unable to display data.

Display failed because an error occurred in mail template.

● Unable to display image.

Unable to display because original file for the image to be attached cannot be found or the image contains error. Check the image.

● Unable to display message.

Unable to display because there is an error in the received/sent mail.

● Unable to display this Chara-den.

Chara-den containing illegal data cannot be displayed.

● Unable to display version info.

The definition file version cannot be confirmed. Update the definition file again. ☛P357

● Unable to download. Data exceeds maximum size. (452)

Reception is disabled because i-mode or Internet web site size exceeds the maximum size.

● Unable to enter any more.

The number of characters exceeds the limit. Reduce the number of characters.

● Unable to move specified page.

When an i-motion ticker contains a link to a site (Web To), etc., in case the URL contains more than 256 characters or downloading was interrupted, the linked page cannot be displayed.

● Unable to obtain data due to replay restriction data error.

Cannot obtain because the replay restriction data is incorrect.

● Unable to play.

Melody or i-motion data cannot be played.

● Unable to record.

The movie memo cannot be recorded because the communication of image/sound is disconnected.

● Unable to retrieve the requested URL. (504)

Failed to connect to the requested URL due to some cause. Please try again later.

● Unable to save specified image.

The image cannot be saved because the image in the site, screen memo or Message R/F contains error.

● Unable to save.

- Data received through infrared communications cannot be saved because it is in a format incompatible with FOMA terminal.
- Cannot be saved because the data to be saved as a mail template contained an error.

● Unable to update pattern definitions.

Updating the definition file has failed. Stop all other functions currently running and retry the update in a place with strong radio wave signals.

● Unable to view file. Access to URL is limited. (491)

The specified access count was exceeded while downloading a still image above 10,000 bytes.

● Unsent message data damaged. Restore default settings?

The unsent data of chat mail contains error. Select ***Yes*** to return to the default setting. Select ***No*** to quit chat mail without returning to the default setting.

● Unsupported content.

Operation is unavailable because the contents are not compatible with FOMA terminal.

● URL address changed. (301)

i-mode or Internet web site forwards URL automatically or URL is changed.

● URL is too long to register.

Unable to register as a bookmark or a screen memo because the URL exceeds the number of characters that can be registered.

● Usage is currently restricted. Try again later.

Displayed in case extremely large data communication is executed within the specified duration only when using i-mode packet fixed sum service. Connection may be unavailable for a certain period of time, so use i-mode a little while later.

● You have no certificate. Do you connect?

The user certificate has not been downloaded. To continue the connection, select ***Yes***; to stop, select ***No***.

● Your certificate has expired. Do you connect?

The user certificate has expired. To continue the connection, select ***Yes***; to stop, select ***No***. ☛P181

Warranty and After-Sales Service

Warranty

- A written warranty is provided with every FOMA terminal; make sure that you receive it.
  Store the warranty in a safe place when you have read it and checked that it contains the “shop name/date” you purchased it. If it does not contain the necessary information, contact the shop where you bought it. The warranty is valid for a period of one year from the date of purchase.
- This product and all accessories are subject to change, in part or whole, for the sake of improvement without prior notice.
- Data registered in the phonebook, etc. may be lost or become corrupted due to failure, repair or other handlings of FOMA terminal. It is recommended that you make a note of the data in the phonebook, etc. If you have a PC (Window 98 Second Edition, Windows Me, Windows 2000 Professional, Windows XP Professional, Windows XP Home Edition), you can use the specified data link software and FOMA USB cable (optional) to transfer and store the data registered in the phonebook, etc. on a PC. When your FOMA terminal is repaired and so on, downloaded information via i-mode or i-αppli (except some data) are not forwarded to a new FOMA terminal according to the copyright laws.

After-Sales Service

■ **When problems occur**
Before requesting service, read the section “Troubleshooting”. ☛P344
If the problem still persists, contact “Repairs” on the back of this manual.

■ **If the result of inquiries indicates that a repair is required**
Take your FOMA terminal to a repair office designated by DoCoMo. Be sure to check the opening hours of the repair office before you go. Note that you must present the warranty.

■ **In the warranty period**
- The FOMA terminal will be repaired at no charge subject to the conditions of the warranty.
- The written warranty must be presented to receive warranty service. The subscriber will be charged for the repairs without presentation of the written warranty or repairs of defects resulting from misuse, accident or neglect, etc. even during the warranty period.
- The subscriber is charged even during the warranty period for the repair of failures caused by the use of devices or consumable items that are not DoCoMo-specified.

■ **Repairs may not be possible in the following cases:**
Repair is not possible when corrosion due to exposure to moisture, condensation or perspiration is detected in a moisture seal reaction or test, or if any of the internal boards are damaged or deformed. Since these conditions are outside the scope of the warranty, a repair, if at all possible, will be charged.

■ **After expiration of the warranty**
All repairs that are requested are charged.

■ **Replacement parts**
FOMA terminal’s replacement parts (parts required to maintain product function) will be kept in stock for at least 6 years after termination of production. The product can be repaired during this period. Depending on the nature of the required repair, it may still be possible to repair your phone even after this period. Contact “Repairs” listed on the back of this manual.

■ **Notes**
- Do not modify the FOMA terminal or its accessories.
  - Fire, injury or damage may result.
  - In order to prevent interference of radio waves or network breakdown, the FOMA terminal and UIM are manufactured according to technical standards stipulated by law. Do not use FOMA terminals or UIMs that do not meet these standards.
  - If FOMA terminal is modified (part replacement, modification, painting, etc.), it will be repaired only after the modified parts have been restored to the condition at the time of purchase. However, repair may be refused depending on the nature of modification.
  - Repair of failures or damage caused by modification are charged even during the warranty period.
- Do not remove any inscription stickers attached to your FOMA terminal.
  The inscription stickers certify that the FOMA terminal satisfies specific technical standards. Note that if stickers are removed intentionally or are reattached in such a way that confirmation of the sticker’s contents is impossible, repair or servicing may be refused because confirmation of whether or not the phone conforms to relevant technical standards cannot be made.
- The function settings, the information of total calls duration or stored data may be cleared (reset) by failure, repair or other handling processes. Should this happen, set up the functions again.
- Magnetic components are used in the earpiece and speaker of the FOMA terminal. Do not allow

cash cards or other devices that are vulnerable to magnetism to come into contact with the phone.

・If your phone becomes wet or moist, turn the power off and remove the battery pack immediately and bring it to a repair office as soon as possible. However, repair may not be possible depending on the condition of the phone.

■ **Phonebook data or downloaded data**

・Maintain a separate record of the data you register in your FOMA terminal. DoCoMo will not accept any liability and responsibility whatsoever for changes or loss of information.

・Data created, imported or downloaded by the subscriber may become corrupted or be lost when changing the model or repairing mobile phone. DoCoMo will not accept any responsibility for that.
Also, DoCoMo may, at its option, repair a mobile phone by replacing it. In such an event, it will not be possible to transfer the data (except some data) to the new phone. Regarding this FOMA terminal, images and incoming melodies downloaded via i-mode official sites can be transferred when repairing the mobile phone (some contents cannot be transferred and transferring may be unavailable depending on the degree of malfunctions).

Updating Software

Software Update

This function checks for the necessity for updating FOMA terminal software and downloads part of the software as required through packet communication*1 to make updates of the software. When software update is required, the information will be posted in *お知らせ&ヘルプ* (Notice & Help) on the DoCoMo website or iMenu.

*1 Packet communication for software update is free of charge.

・Software may be updated in the following 2 methods:

・Immediate update：
Update on the spot as desired.

・Advanced update：
Reserve a day and time-slot for automatic update of the software in the specified day and time.

・Software cannot be updated in the following cases:

・During All Lock
・While using other functions
・When the date and time are not set
・When UIM is not inserted
・When the battery is not fully charged
・When PIN1 code is being entered
・When PIN1 code is locked
・When *圏外* is indicated
・During PIM Lock
・The power is off
・In Self Mode on
・While talking
・During Remote Lock
・During packet communication connecting with a PC

・At the time of updating software, the unique information of your mobile phone terminal (model or serial number, etc.) will be automatically sent to the server (or the server for updating software managed by DoCoMo). DoCoMo will not use the sent information for any other purpose than software update.

INFORMATION

● Software update (downloading or rewriting) may take time.

● If software update is executed when ***ON*** is set for PIN1 Code On/Off, the PIN code entry screen will be displayed at the time of automatic reload after completion of software updating. You cannot make/receive calls and operate communication functions if the incorrect PIN1 code is entered.

● Other functions are not available while software is being updated. Only incoming voice calls can be answered while downloading.

● If ***Movie ringtone*** has been set as a ring tone, a melody sounds for an incoming call during download instead of Movie ringtone. If you set video/i-motion as an image, the first image is displayed.

● Any incoming videophone call cannot be answered during download. Unanswered calls are recorded as missed ones in the received call history.

● Even if any alarm is set while software is being updated, the updating continues without activating the alarm.

● For software update, SSL session is established to the server (our site). Enable SSL certificate in Certificate Setting. Configured as valid by default. ☛P181

● Software update should be done with battery fully charged and enough battery power ( ).

● It is recommended that software update be executed when good signal quality is obtained, 3 bars of the antenna icon ( ) are displayed and the terminal is not being moved.

・If radio wave signals become weaker during software downloading or downloading has stopped, retry software update in a place with strong radio wave signals.

● A displayed icon for the message stored at i-mode Center disappears after software update.
If Receive Option Setting is set to ***ON*** and mail arrives during software updating, the screen that notifies an arrival of mail in the i-mode Center may not appear after the software update being completed.

● Never remove the battery pack while updating software. Update may fail.

● Software update can be done while various data, such as the phonebook entries registered in FOMA Terminal, camera images, downloaded data are retained; however, note that data protection sometimes cannot be secured according to the conditions of your FOMA terminal (such as malfunction, damage, or water leak). DoCoMo recommends to back up necessary data. (Note that some data such as downloaded data may not be backed up.)

● When software update has failed, the message ***Rewrite failed*** appears and all the operations are unavailable. In such a case, please bring FOMA terminal to a repair office designated by DoCoMo.

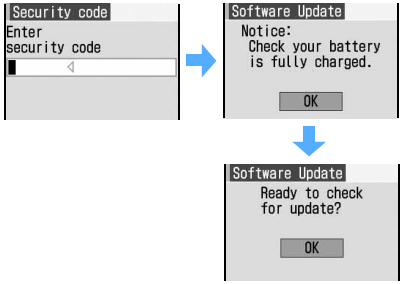
● In case ther is no need to be updated, when checking software update, a message is displayed indicating update is not necessary, so use as it is.

● Software update is available even if the host selection setting is other than i-mode.

Starting Software Update

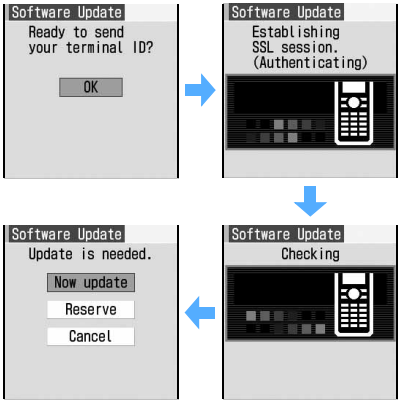
1 MENU 8 8 6

2 **Enter the terminal security code ▶ Check notice and ●**



・The entered terminal security code (4 to 8 digits) is displayed as "✻".
・The terminal security code by default is set to "0000".

3 **● ▶ Confirm whether software update is required**



・Pressing ● on the confirmation screen for sending terminal ID makes connection to the server and your private information concerning the mobile phone (such as model, serial number) is sent.

■ **When updating is not necessary:**

If software updating has been found to be unnecessary as a result of checking for the necessity of updating, the screen as shown on the left is displayed.

Press ● to use FOMA terminal as it is.

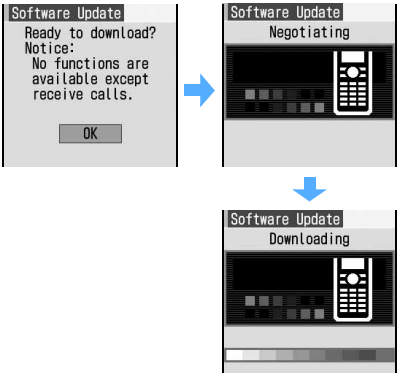
Updating software immediately Immediate Update

・Immediate update may not be available when the server is busy.

1 **Display the selection screen for the update procedure**

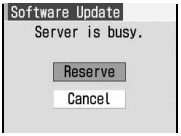
2 Select *Now update* ▶ ●

Downloading is started and keys flash.



- Downloading starts in about 5 seconds without pressing ●.
- Press ● to cancel downloading. If downloading is canceled halfway, the data downloaded up to then is deleted.
- After starting downloading, updating process is executed without the operation of selecting the menu.

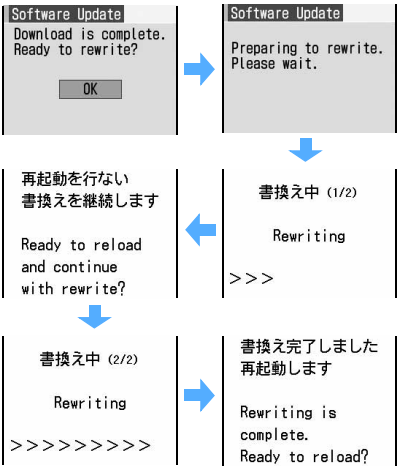
■ **When the server is busy:**



- Select ***Reserve*** and reserve a date and time for update.

3 ● after completion of downloading

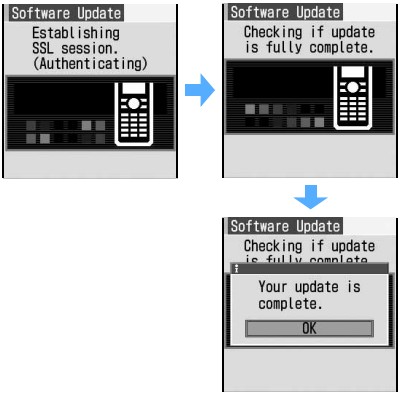
During rewriting, the keys flash.



- Rewriting is started in about 5 seconds without pressing ● after downloading.
- All key operations are disabled while software is being rewritten. Updating operation cannot be canceled.

4 Automatically reloaded after the completion of rewriting

After reload, wait while connection is made again to the server.



5 Press ●

Update is completed and the standby display appears.

Updating software at pre-specified time

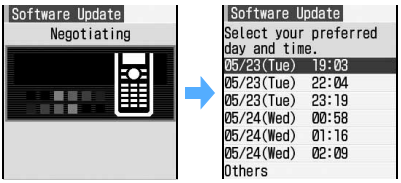
Reserved Update

When downloading takes time or the server is busy, you can choose to set the time to start software update in advance by communicating with the server.

1 Display the selection screen for the update procedure

2 Select *Reserve*

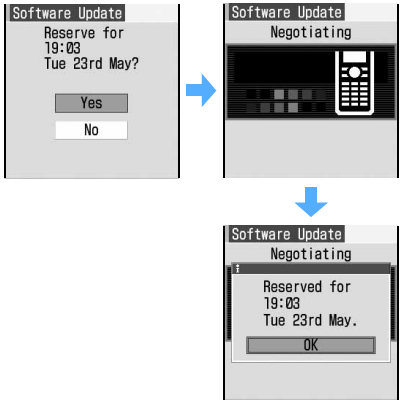
Inquire the option for preferred day and time by communicating with the server.



• Available date and time for reservation will be shown by the time of the server.

3 Select preferred day and time

■ **Selecting from the options displayed:**
Select preferred day and time ▶ Select *Yes*

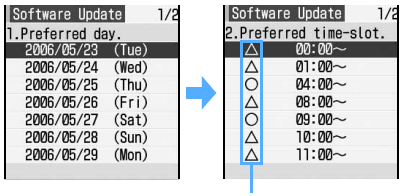


• If there are more than one option page for preferred day and time, switch to the next or previous page with ⊙.

■ **Selecting from other than options displayed:**

① **Select *Others* ▶ Select preferred day**

• If there are more than one option page for preferred day and time-slot, switch to the next or previous page with ⊙.



Availability for reservation at each time-slot will be shown:
○ : available
△ : barely available

② **Select preferred day and time-slot**

Connection is made to the server and the options close to preferred day and time-slot are displayed.

• If there are more than one option page for preferred time-slot, switch to the next or previous page with ⊙.

• Press 📖 to display the description of the symbol on the left of time-slot.

③ **Select preferred day and time ▶ Select *Yes***

• If there are more than one option page for preferred day and time, switch to the next or previous page with ⊙.

4 Press ●

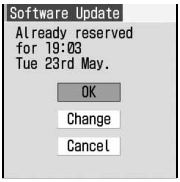
Reservation is completed and the menu is displayed.

• 📅 is shown on the standby display when reservation is made.

Checking/changing/canceling reservation

1 MENU 8 8 6

2 Enter the terminal security code ▶ Check the contents



• To stop checking: Select ***OK***

■ **Changing reservation:**

① **Select *Change***

A confirmation screen for sending your terminal ID is displayed.

② ●

The option selection screen is displayed.

• Follow the procedure from Step 2 in "Updating software at pre-specified time". ☛P354

• Pressing ● on the confirmation screen for sending your terminal ID makes connection to the server and your private information concerning the mobile phone (such as model, serial number) is sent.

■ **Canceling reservation:**

① **Select *Cancel* ▶ Select *Yes***

A confirmation screen for sending your terminal ID is displayed.

② ● ●

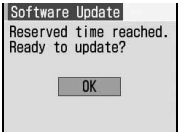
The reservation is canceled and the menu is displayed.

• Pressing ● on the confirmation screen for sending your terminal ID makes connection to the server and your private information concerning the mobile phone (such as model, serial number) is sent.

When the reserved time arrives

When the reserved time arrives, the screen as shown below is displayed and updating software is started automatically. Before the reserved time, make sure that the battery is fully charged and the handset is in a location where radio waves reach and then show the standby display.

When downloading is completed, rewriting software is automatically started, followed by reload.



- To cancel the software update: ☎ ▶ Select ***Yes***

INFORMATION

- Note that updating software may not be activated even though the reserved time arrives in case of using the other functions. In case the reserved time arrives while talking or receiving messages, updating software starts after finishing talking or receiving messages.
- If software update is executed when ***ON*** is set for PIN1 Code On/Off, the PIN code entry screen will be displayed at the time of automatic reload after completion of software updating. You cannot make/receive calls and operate communication functions if the incorrect PIN1 code is entered.
- If any alarm is set for the same time, the alarm takes precedence and the software update may not be started.

Protecting FOMA terminal from hazardous data

Virus Scan Function

Update pattern definition first to keep the pattern definition up-to-date.

For the data or program downloaded via a website or received mail, this function detects data that may cause troubles and then deletes it or inhibits activation of applications in order to protect FOMA terminal from viruses.

- Pattern definition is used for checking. Update pattern definition because it is updated whenever a new trouble is detected.
- Virus Scan Function is for preventing the data that cause some problem to mobile phone from invading when viewing websites or receiving mail. Please note that if pattern definition corresponding to specific troubles has not been downloaded to the mobile phone or such pattern definition does not exist, this function cannot prevent the trouble from happening.
- Pattern definition is different depending on the model of mobile phone. Please keep in mind that DoCoMo may stop distributing the pattern definition for the models that have been on the market for 3 years or more.
- When updating pattern definition, your private information concerning the mobile phone (model, serial number, etc.) is automatically sent to the server (the server for the scan function managed by DoCoMo). DoCoMo does not use the sent information for purposes other than the scan function.

Setting scan function

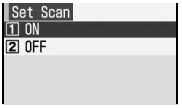
Scanning Setting

If this setting is set to ***ON***, data or program is checked automatically when it is displayed or executed.

Default ON

1 MENU 8 3 7 3

2 1 ▶ **Select *Yes***



- When the virus scan function, when set, has detected data that may cause troubles, it displays a message in one of 5 warning levels. ☛P357
- To cancel scan function: 2 ▶ Select ***Yes***

Updating pattern definition automatically

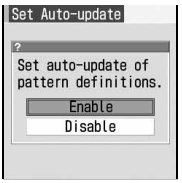
Auto-update Setting

Updating is performed automatically to maintain the latest pattern definition.

Default Enable

1 MENU 8 3 7 2

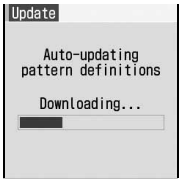
2 **Select *Enable* ▶ Select *Yes* twice**



- To cancel: Select ***Disable*** ▶ Select ***Yes***

3 **Press** ●

When a new pattern definition is distributed



- When a new pattern definition is distributed, the above screen appears and updating pattern definition is performed automatically. In case of succeeding updating, is displayed on the standby display. Select an icon and select ***OK*** after confirming a message.
- In case of failing updating, appears on the standby display. Update a pattern definition manually after selecting an icon, confirming a message and selecting ***OK.***
- To stop updating pattern definition: ● ▶ Select ***Yes***

Updating pattern definition Immediately

Update Definition

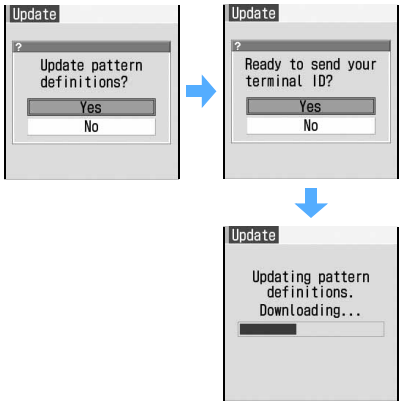
Update a pattern definition manually in case Auto-update Setting is set to ***Disable*** or Auto-update fails.

- Set the date of FOMA terminal correctly.

1 MENU 8 3 7 1

2 Select *Yes* twice

The pattern definition is updated.



3 Press ●

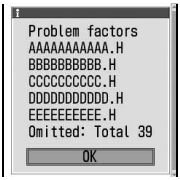
- If pattern definition update has been found to be unnecessary as a result of checking for the necessity of updating, the message meaning that the pattern definition is up-to-date is displayed. Please use FOMA terminal as it is.

INFORMATION

- Updating pattern definition is stopped with a voice call arrived. When there is a videophone call or data is received using an external device or the infrared communication function, updating is not interrupted.
- If the date/time set for an alarm or a schedule alarm is reached, the screen for notifying the date and time is displayed during updating pattern definition and the alarm sounds, but updating is continued.

Displaying the scan result

When displaying a list of detected problem elements

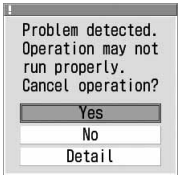


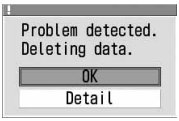
1 Select *Detail* while a warning message is being displayed

The list of the name of problem elements detected by scan is displayed.

- When 6 or more problem elements have been detected, the names of the 6th and subsequent problem elements are omitted and the total count of the detected problem elements is displayed.

Display of the scan result

Warning level/ Message	Handling method
Warning Level 0 	***OK*** : Continues processing of the started application. ***Detail***: Lists names of the detected problem elements.
Warning Level 1 	***Yes*** : Stops processing of the started application that may cause troubles. ***No*** : Continues processing of the started application. ***Detail***: Lists names of the detected problem elements.

Warning level/ Message	Handling method
Warning Level 2 	***OK*** : Stops processing of the started application that may cause troubles. ***Detail***: Lists names of the detected problem elements.
Warning Level 3 	***Yes*** : Deletes data that may cause troubles. ***No*** : Stops processing of the started application that may cause troubles. ***Detail***: Lists names of the detected problem elements.
Warning Level 4 	***OK*** : Deletes data that may cause troubles. ***Detail***: Lists names of the detected problem elements.

INFORMATION

● In case some problem is detected through scan in the i-αppli set as the i-αppli standby display and activating i-αppli is stopped, the i-αppli standby display is canceled.

Checking the pattern definition version

Scan Version

1 MENU 8 3 7 4

SAR certification information

This model phone FOMA D702i meets the MIC's*1 technical regulation for exposure to radio waves. The technical regulation established permitted levels of radio frequency energy, based on standards that were developed by independent scientific organizations through periodic and through evaluation of scientific studies. The regulation employs a unit of measurement known as the Specific Absorption Rate, or SAR. The SAR limit is 2 watts/kilogram (W/kg)*2 averaged over ten grams of tissue. The limit includes a substantial safety margin designed to assure the safety of all persons, regardless of age and health. The value of the limit is equal to the international guidelines recommended by ICNIRP*3.

All phone models should be confirmed to comply with the regulation, before they are available for sale to the public. The highest SAR value for this model phone is 0.877 W/kg. It was taken by the Telecom Engineering Center (TELEC) and the test for SAR was conducted in accordance with the MIC testing procedure using standard operating positions with the phone transmitting at its highest permitted power level in all tested frequency bands. While there may be differences between the SAR levels of various phones and at various positions, they all meet the MIC's technical regulation. Although the SAR is determined at the highest certified power level, the actual SAR of the phone during operation can be well below the maximum value.

For further information about SAR, please see the following websites:

World Health Organization (WHO):
http://www.who.int/peh-emf/
ICNIRP: http://www.icnirp.de/
MIC: http://www.soumu.go.jp/english/index.html
TELEC: http://www.telec.or.jp/ENG/index_e.html
NTT DoCoMo: http://www.nttdocomo.co.jp/product/ (Japanese only)
MITSUBISHI ELECTRIC:
http://www.MitsubishiElectric.co.jp/d702i/

*1 Ministry of Internal Affairs and Communications
*2 The technical regulation is provided in Article 14-2 of the Ministry Ordinance Regulating Radio Equipment.
*3 International Commission on Non-Ionizing Radiation Protection

INDEX/Quick Reference Manual

INDEX.....360
Quick Reference Manual.....364

INDEX

A

Add Address 191
Added Service 306
Adjust volume 61
After-Sales Service 351
Alarm Auto Power ON 280
Alarm Clock 278
Album 262
Alert Lighting Setting 121
All Lock 130
Anonymous Caller 139
Answer Machine 67
  Greeting Response Time 69
  Greeting Setting 69
  Play/delete messages 70
  Quick Record Message 68
Any Key Answer 59
Arrival call act 304
  Set arrival act 304
AT command 310
Attachment
  Attaching 196
  Auto-play 218
  Changing/removing 198
  Delete Attachment 207
  Display/Save Image 204
  Incoming Msg. Attach. 218
  Play/Save i-motion 205
  Play/Save Melody 206
Auto Answer 296
Auto Assist Setting 54
Auto Power ON/OFF 278
Auto-display 179
Automatic time correction 45
AV Phone To (→ Phone To)

B

Bar Code Reader 157
Battery Icon 120
Battery Level 43
Battery pack 39
Bookmark 171
  Deleting 172
  Display sites by shortcut 172
  Displaying 171
  i-mode Shortcut 171
  Moving 172
  Register from mail 214
  Register from site 171
  Rename folder 171
  Rename title 171
  Sort 172

C

Cache 168
Calculator 293
Calendar (→ Scheduler)
Call Cost
  Call Cost Limit 292
  Checking 292
  Remove Call Cost Icon ... 293
  Reset Call Cost 292
Call Duration
  Checking 292
  Continuous call time 40
Call Forwarding 302
Call Waiting 301
Caller ID Notification 46
  Set for each call 53
Caller ID Request Service 303
Caller ID Setting 99
Camera 144
  Auto timer 152
  Brightness 155
  Color density 155
  Compose mail 147
  File 146
  Frame 154
  Image size 154
  Macro 153
  Movie Camera 149
  Number of saved still images 146
  One-shot Message 156
  Quality 155
  Recording Setting 151
  Recording time of video 146
  Restore default setting 156
  Scene mode/effect 155
  Shooting screen 145
  Size restrictions 156
  Still Camera 147
  Still Image Setting 151
  Switch in-camera/out-camera 147
  Zoom 152
Camera indicator 27
Certificate Download 181
Certificate Host 182
Certificate operation 181
  Certificate Setting 181
Character Encode 171
Characters entry 312
  Change input modes 312
  Character assignments (Slot Input Method) 330
  Character assignments (5-touch Input Method) ... 330
  Copying (Copy Character) 317
  Cutting 318
  Deleting 314
  Enter face marks 315
  Enter fixed phrases 315
  Enter pictograms 315
  Enter symbols 315
  Full-screen entry 312
  In-line entry 312
  Input Method Setting 320
  Input prediction function 315
  Kana/Kanji Conversion ... 313
  KUTEN Code Input 318
  Line feed 314
  Pasting 318
  Quote data 316
  Save Phrase 317
  Save Word 318
  Slot Input Method 319
  5-touch Input Method 313
Chara-den 258
  Deleting 265
  Displaying 258
  Display action list 259
  Downloading 174
  Moving 263
  Record Chara-den 259
  Set as videophone substitute image 259
  Settings 261
  Sort 266
  Still Image Setting/Video Setting 260
  Use folder 262
  Videophone call 77
  View/Edit Detail Info 264
Charge Alert 107
Charging 40
Charging indicator 27
Charging time 40
Chat Mail
  Broadcast address 222
  Chat Member Setting 220
  Composing and sending 220
  Deleting 222
  Edit chat members 222
  Incoming Chat Mail Setting 223
  Quitting 223
  Receive Chat Mail 221
  Sending 221
  Set personal information 223
Check My phone number 46
Check new message
  Check i-mode Message 203
  Check SMS 225
  Message Retrieval Setting 216
Clock Display Format 123
Color Scheme 119
Column Search 95
Confirm Settings 297
Connection Timeout Setting 176
Contact Image 116
Copying 317
Custom Menu 287
Custom Standby 113

Customize Silent Mode.....109
Cutting 317

D

Data communication.....308
Communication configuration file.....310
FOMA PC configuration software.....310
Glossary 309
Setup work 309
Data link software 344
Data set by default.....326
Data Transfer Setting.....272
Date and Time Setting 45
Date To 294
Deco-mail
Composing 192
Template 198
Delete All Data.....298
Dialing conditions.....53
Display.....26
Guide row 28
Reading 27
Task bar 29
Display Address.....210
Display Light Setting 118
i-αppli 234
Display Priority.....220
Display sites by i-mode Shortcut 172
Driving mode.....65
Dual Network 303

E

Earphone/microphone jack ...27
Earphone/Microphone Set with Switch
Connecting 27
How to use 295
Earpiece.....26
Easy Selector Plus.....26
English display.....44
English Guidance.....303
Enter characters (→Characters entry)
Error Message 347
External connection terminal 27
External Device (for videophone).....84

F

Face marks
Entering 315
List.....331
FirstPass.....181
Fixed phrases
Entering 315
List.....331
Registering 317
Flash.....165
Flash movie displays 168
Flat type earphone/microphone set with switch (→Earphone/Microphone Set with Switch)
Focus Mode 35
FOMA card (→UIM)
Font Size.....122
Font Size (for mail) 219

G

G-GUIDE TV Remote Controller 271
Group Search 93
Group Setting.....91

H

Headset Button Control 296
Headset Switch.....296
Host selection
Certificate Host.....182
ISP Connection Communication 176

I

i-channel 242
Channel List 243
Ticker Setting 244
Image
Adjusting.....251
Change brightness and tone 249
Change size 248
Clipping 249
Compose mail 246
Created animation.....247
Cutting 251
Deleting 265
Displaying.....246
Displaying (from mail).....204
Editing 248
Effects 250
Frames 250
Limit size for saving.....251
Moving/copying 263
Paste Text 250
Reversing/rotating 250
Save from mail 204
Save from site (Save Image) 173
Set to standby display. 247
Settings 252
Shooting 147
Sort.....266
Stamps 250
View/Edit Detail Info 264
Image & Effect Setting.....177
i-melody 174
iMenu 162
Immediate Update 353
i-mode.....162
i-mode Mail (→Mail)
i-mode password 126
Change i-mode Password 170
i-mode Setting.....176
i-mode Shortcut 171
i-motion.....183
Setting 184
i-motion (in Data Box).....252
Deleting 265
Settings 257
Sort.....266
Use album 262
i-motion Mail 189
Composing 197
Playing/saving 205
Inbox.....207
In-camera 26
In-car Handsfree 56
Incoming Call Setting.....62
Incoming Msg. Alert.....179
Incoming Msg. Attach. 218
Incoming Msg. Image 117
Incoming Msg. Setting 219
Incoming Videophone Setting 62
Infrared communication 266
INBOX 269
Receive Ir Data 268
Remote control function 270
Send Ir Data 267
Infrared Communication Mode 270
Infrared data port 266
Input Method Setting 320
Input prediction function 315
International call 54
Internet Connection 170
i-shot.....188
ISP Connection Communication 176
i-αppli 230
Auto Start 236
Auto Start Info Setting 236
Check number of items ...240
Create/delete folders.....238
Deleting 239
Detail Info 233
Download 231
i-αppli To.....237
Light Setting 234
Moving.....239
Pre-installed i-αppli 235
Protecting 239
Quitting.....233
Security Error History 233
Settings 233
Software in Folder 240
Software Info Display 232
Software Information 240
Software Sort 239
Start Failure History 237
Starting.....232
Trace display.....233
Upgrade 238
Use Bar Code Reader.....240
Use Camera 240
Use infrared communication 240
Vibrate Setting.....234
i-αppli DX 230
i-αppli Standby Display
Abnormal Exit History.....238
Operation 237
Setting 112

K

Kana/Kanji Conversion 313
Key Lock.....136
Key Lock Timer.....137

Keypad Dial Lock 134
Keypad Sound..... 107
KUTEN code
Entering (KUTEN Code Input) 318
List 336

L

Light setting (→ Display Light Setting)
Low Battery Alert..... 43

M

Macro mode switch 153
Mail..... 186
Add Address 191
Add/delete folders..... 209
Attachment..... 196
Auto Receive 200
Auto-send mail..... 199
Change read/unread status 211
Check i-mode Message 203
Check number of items... 210
Compose from phonebook 92
Compose from schedule 286
Composing and sending 190
Copy message text..... 213
Deco-mail..... 192
Delete Attachment 207
Delete Mail..... 212
Display Priority..... 220
Display Type 219
Display/Save Image..... 204
Editing..... 200
Folder list screen 207
Font Size..... 219
Forward Mail..... 203
Inbox/Outbox 207
List screen 208
List Setting..... 218
Move Mail 210
Msgs. in Folder 210
Phone Call 214
Play/Save Melody..... 206
Protect Mail..... 212
Quick Mail..... 200
Quick Reply Setting 218
Quick Reply Template 218
Receiving..... 200
Register data in phonebook 214
Register URL in bookmark 214
Reply to Mail..... 203
Save Mail..... 199
Search 211
Search (from phonebook) 92
Search (from schedule) 285
Sort 211
View screen 209
Mail address..... 186
Display Address..... 210
Mail Group
Enter address 191
Setting 217
Mail List Setting..... 218
Mail Reply Format..... 217
Mail Setting (in FOMA terminal) 214
Mail Setting (in i-mode Center) 187
Mail templates..... 198
Mail To (from mail) 213
Mail To (from site) 175
Mail/Call Image Setting 116
Make calls (→ Phone)
Melo-deco 196
Melody..... 261
Compose mail..... 261
Deleting..... 265
List 105
Moving 263
Playing..... 261
Save from mail..... 206
Save from site..... 174
Set as ring tone..... 262
Settings..... 262
Sort 266
Use album..... 262
View/Edit Detail Info..... 264
Member list..... 286
Menu 30
Change design..... 120
List 322
Setting 119
Submenu 34
Message i-αppli 231
Message R/F..... 178
Auto-display..... 179
Check i-mode Message 203
Delete Message..... 180
Display by Type 180
Display Priority..... 220
Displaying (Message R/ Message F)..... 179
Incoming Msg. Alert..... 179
Protect Message..... 180
Receive Message R/F 178
Reload images..... 180
Microphone 26
Missed call 60
Movie Camera (→ Camera)
Movie Memo..... 290
Multiaccess 276
Combination..... 340
Multi-address transmission 191
Multi Number..... 305
Multitask..... 277
Combination..... 341
Mute Ring Time Setting..... 140
My Menu 169
My Picture 246
Deleting..... 265
Settings..... 252
Sort 266
Use album..... 262

N

Name displays 86
Name Search..... 93
Names and functions of parts 26
Network security code..... 126
Network Service..... 300
Noise Reduction..... 56
Normal menu 30
Notepad 294
Notify Swichable Mode 83
Nuisance Call Blocking Service 303
Number of saved, registered and protected items in D702i 36
Number Search..... 95
NW Search Method..... 297

O

One-key Shortcut..... 235
One-shot Message..... 156
On-hold
On-hold while talking 48
Response and Hold..... 64
On-hold Tone 65
Options and related devices 343
Outbox 207
Out-camera 27
Outgoing Call Image 116
Outgoing Msg. Image..... 117
Own Number
Checking..... 46
Registering 289

P

Packet communication..... 308
Pasting..... 318
Pause..... 50
Personalized silent mode... 109
Ph Book No. Search 94
Phone
Make calls..... 48
Receive calls 57
Set dialing conditions..... 53
Switch to videophone call 51
Phone To (from mail) 213
Phone To (from site) 175
Phonebook..... 86
Caller ID Setting 99
Change the order..... 98
Check No. of Items..... 102
Check phonebook details 96
Copy entered information 97
Copy phonebook entry 98
Delete Phonebook..... 99
Display in Japanese syllabary 93
Edit Phonebook 97
Group Setting 91
New Entry (to FOMA terminal) 87
New Entry (to UIM)..... 90

Quick Dial 102
Register from mail 214
Register from site (Add to Phonebook) 175
Reject/Accept Call 138
Search 92
Secrecy Search 101
Secret Attribute 101
Secret Code Setting 100
Specify seaching method 96
Videophone Rate Setting 100
Pictogram words
Entering 315
List 332
Pictograms
Entering 315
List 333
PIM Lock 133
PIN1 Code ON/OFF 128
PIN1 code/PIN2 code 126
Change PIN1/PIN2 Code 128
Power ON/OFF 43
Auto Power ON/OFF 278
Predict conversion 315
Prefix 55
Priority Comm Mode 63
Privacy Mode Setting 134
Public mode (Driving mode) 65
Public mode (power off) 66
PUK (PIN Unblocking Key) 127

Q

Quality Alarm 108
Quick Dial 102
Quick Mail 200
Quick Record Message 68
Quick Reference Manual 364
Quick Start-up 297

R

Random Display Image 111
Ranking Search 94
Reason for no caller ID 58
Receive calls (→ Phone)
Receive Display 117
Receive Option 202
Setting 217
Received Calls 59
Delete Received Calls 61
Received mail (→ Mail)
Reconnect Alarm 56
Redial 51
Delete Redial 52
Register USSD 306
Reject non-Reg. Caller 141
Reject/Accept Call 138
Remote Control 304
Remote control function 270
Remote Lock 131
Reply to Mail 203
Reset 297
Response and Hold 64
Retrieving Image 117
Ring tone 104
Ring Volume Setting 61

S

SAR 358
Save Phase 317
Save Word 318
Scheduler 280
Calendar View Mode 281
Check No. of Items 287
Checking 284
Compose mail 285
Copying/pasting 284
Day Off Setting 281
Deleting 285
Holiday Setting 281
Member list 286
Registration 282
Search mail 285
Secret Attribute 286
When the set time comes 283
Screen Memo 172
Deleting 173
Displaying 172
Protecting 173
Renaming 173
Saving 172
Secrecy Search 101
Secret Attribute
Phonebook 101
Schedule 286
Secret Code Setting 100
Secret Mode 137
Security code 126
Security scan (→ Virus Scan Function)
Select Language 44
Self Mode 132
Send DTMF 75
Sent mail (→ Mail)
Service Dialing Number 304
Short Message (→ SMS)
Shortcut operations 32
Show All Names 93
Shutter key 27
Signature 216
Silent Mode 108
Simple menu 30
Site 162
Connect to SSL page 167
Display URL of site 169
Displaying 166
Last Visited URL 167
Operating 168
Reloading 169
Scrolling 169
Slot Input Method 319
SMS 190
Check SMS 225
Compose from phonebook 92
Compose SMS 223
Copying (to UIM) 226
Deleting (from UIM) 228
Delivered report 190
Display Priority 220
Folder list screen 207
Insert signature 224
List screen 208
Moving (to UIM) 226
Quick Mail 200
Receive SMS 224
Save SMS to UIM 226
Setting 226
Sort Criteria 214
View screen 209
Software Update 352
Immediate Update 353
Reserved Update 354
Sort Criteria 214
Sound Recorder 272
Sound Setting 104
Speaker 27
Speakerphone function
Videophone call 73
Voice call 49
SSL communication 164
Connecting 167
Standby display 44
Standby Display Setting 109
Clock Display Format 123
Standby time 40
Standby Voice Memo 290
Status Message 64
Still Camera (→ Camera)
Still image (→ Image)
Style Theme 124
Sub Address 55
Submenu 34
Symbols
Entering 315
List 333

T

Talking Voice Memo 290
TASK key 27
Template 198
Downloading 199
Read Template 198
Save Template 198
Terminal security code 126
Change Security Code 127
Timed pause 50
Transmit tone signals (DTMF) 75
Troubleshooting 344
Two-key Shortcut 236

U

UIM (FOMA card)
Functional differences 38
Inserting/removing 36
Operation restriction function 37
Register phonebook data 90
Security codes 37
Unblock PIN lock 129
Unsent mail (→ Mail)
Unsent messages (folder) 207
URL
Copying 175
Displaying 169
Entering 170

History..... 170
Last Visited URL..... 167
Register in phonebook.... 176

V

Vibrator Setting 106
i-αppli 234
Videophone 72
Brightness/color density.... 79
Camera Settings..... 79
Change images (Image Setting) 82
Chara-den..... 77
Display settings..... 80
Frame 78
Make calls..... 72
Quality of outgoing/incoming images 78
Rate Setting..... 100
Receive calls..... 75
Scene Mode/Effect 78
Send camera-off image 79
Send still image 79
Send tone signals 75
Settings..... 81
Settings during a call 81
Substitute image setting ... 82
Switch in-camera/out-camera 80
Switch outgoing images.... 77
Switch to voice call 74
Zoom..... 80
Videophone Dialing Image 116
Videophone Rate Setting ... 100
Video/i-motion
Capture..... 255
Compose i-motion Mail... 253
Custom Edit 255
Deleting..... 265
Edit by Size..... 256
Edit Ticker..... 256
Editing..... 255
Moving/copying..... 263
Play album..... 264
Playing..... 252
Recording 149
Replay restriction..... 253
Set bookmark..... 253
Set to standby display..... 254
Settings..... 257
Sort 266
View/Edit Detail Info 264
Virus Scan Function..... 356
Auto-update Setting..... 356
Display scan result 357
Scan Version 358
Scanning Setting 356
Update Definition..... 357
Voice call (→ Phone)
Voice Mail 300
Voice Memo 290
Volume Setting..... 61

W

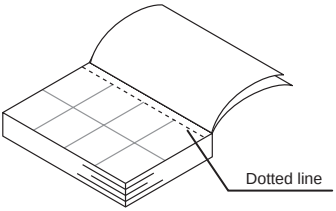
Warranty 351
Web To (from mail) 213
Web To (from site) 175
WORLD CALL..... 54
WORLD WING..... 39

Other

186/184 Call..... 53
5-touch Input Method..... 313
64K data communication ... 308
+ 54

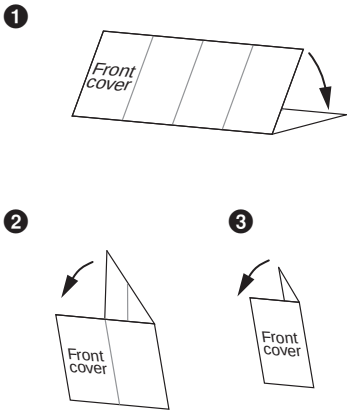
Quick Reference Manual

Use Quick Reference Manual included in this manual as follows.



Cut along the dotted line.

● Be careful not to hurt yourself when cutting.



Fold the sheet along the line so that the front cover is on top.

NTT DoCoMo

FOMA® D702i
Quick Reference Manual

General Inquiries <DoCoMo Information Center>
(In English)

0120-005-250 (toll free)
* Can be called from mobile phones and PHSs.
(In Japanese only)

No prefix 151 (toll free)
* Can only be called from DoCoMo mobile phones and PHSs.

0120-800-000 (toll free)
* Can be called from mobile phones and PHSs.

Repairs
(In Japanese only)

No prefix 113 (toll free)
* Can only be called from DoCoMo mobile phones and PHSs.

0120-800-000 (toll free)
* Can be called from mobile phones and PHSs.

- Please confirm the phone number before you dial.
- For further information, refer to the "Nationwide Service Station List" included with your FOMA terminal and other devices.

Registering entries into the phonebook

Registering entries into the FOMA terminal phonebook

1 MENU 4 2

2 Enter a name ▶ m

3 Set each item ▶ m

- Shooting: MENU (Still image)/ i (Video) Shooting procedure ☛P7
- Saving the other items such as ring alert: ●

4 Enter the phonebook No. (0 to 699) ▶ ●

Registering entries into the UIM phonebook

1 MENU 4 3

2 Enter a name ▶ m

3 Set each item ▶ m

Registering from the redial data or received call history

1 ● or ●

2 Highlight the entry to register ▶ MENU 1
- Adding to the registered entry: MENU 2

3 1 (FOMA terminal phonebook) or 2 (UIM phonebook)
- To add to the registered entry, select the party to add

4 Set each item ▶ m
- For the UIM phonebook, go to Step 6

5 Enter the phonebook No. (0 to 699) ▶ ●

6 To add to the registered entry, select ***Overwrite*** or ***New entry***

Editing the phonebook entries

1 m
- Switching the phonebook: m

2 Highlight the entry to edit ▶ MENU 3

3 Edit ▶ m
- For the UIM phonebook, go to Step 5

4 Enter the phonebook No. (0 to 699) ▶ ●

5 Select ***Overwrite*** or ***New entry***

Searching the phonebook entries

1 MENU 4 1
- Switching the phonebook: m

2 1 to 7
- For the UIM phonebook, 1 to 4

Character entry

Entering/converting character (5-touch Input Method)

<Example> Entering "企業"

1 Enter characters in hiragana/kanji mode
"き" : 2 twice ▶ ● (It is not necessary when the cursor was moved by automatic cursor function)
"ぎ" : 2 twice ▶ *
"ょ" : 8 3 times ▶ i
"う" : 1 3 times
- Available operation before setting the entered characters
MENU : Changes characters to two-byte katakana
ch/クリア : Canceling entered characters
i : Changes upper/lower case

✉ : Return to a previous character immediately after character entry (example:···→1→お→え→う→···)
* : Adding voiced sound "゛" and semi-voiced sound "゜"
(example: →ほ→ぼ→ぽ→ほ→···)
- Inserting characters: Move the cursor to position to insert ▶ Enter characters

2 m
- Displaying conversion option list: ●/m
- Returning to status before conversion: ch/クリア

3 ●

Switching input mode

✍ several times during character inputs
- Pressing m and selecting input mode can also switch

Deleting characters

● When the cursor is in the text
ch/クリア: Deleting characters at the cursor

ch/クリア (for over a second): Deleting characters at the cursor position and all the characters at the right of the cursor

● When the cursor is in the end of the text
ch/クリア: Deleting character at the left of the cursor
ch/クリア (for over a second): Deleting all entered characters

Entering symbols, pictograms and fixed phrases

● Entering symbols
i while entering ▶ Select a symbol ▶ m
- m 1 can also input

● Entering pictograms
✉ while entering ▶ Select a pictogram ▶ m
- m 2 can also input

● Entering fixed phrases
m 7 while entering ▶ Select the type of fixed phrase ▶ Select a fixed phrase
- m MENU can also input

Kuten Code Input

m 8 while entering ▶ Enter 4-digit code

Camera

Shooting still image/video

● Shooting still image
1 📷 (for over a second)
2 Point the camera at the object and ● or 📷
3 ● or 📷

● Recording video
1 MENU 6 4
2 Point the camera at the object and ● or 📷
3 m or 📷
4 ● or 📷

Displaying or playing shot still image/video

● Displaying a still image

Cut here

1 ⊙1
2 Select ***Camera*** ▶ Select a still image

● **Playing video**

1 ⊙2
2 Select ***Camera*** ▶ Select video
- Operations available during video playback
  - ⊙: Adjust the volume
  - ⊙: Rewind and play/play fast forward
  - ⊙: Pause/play
  - : Stop

Videophone

Making videophone calls

1 Enter a phone number
2
3 Talk with the other party
- Placing call on hold: ⊙ ▶ ⊙ to cancel
- Switching the speakerphone on/off: /

- Switching your self image/the substitute image:

4 when you finish the call

Receiving videophone calls

1 A call is received
- Holding answer:

2 or
- Operation during a call is the same as Step 3 of "Making videophone calls"

3 when you finish the call

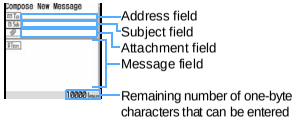
i-mode Mail

Number of characters sent/ received

Item	One-byte characters	Two-byte characters
Subject	30 characters	15 characters
Address	50 characters	-
Message	10,000 characters	5,000 characters

Composing and sending i-mode Mail

1 (for over a second)



2 Select address field ▶ Select input method ▶ Enter or select an address
3 Select subject field ▶ Enter a subject
4 Select message field ▶ Enter a message
- Composing Deco-mail: ▶ Select decoration method ▶ Enter characters

5
- Saving mail: 3

File attachments

1 Select attachment field on the mail composition screen
2 Select an attachment type
- Attaching a melody: Select ***Melody*** and go to Step 4
- Shooting and attaching a still image: Select ***Image*** ▶ Select ***Use still camera***
- Recording and attaching video: Select ***i-motion*** ▶ Select ***Use movie camera***
- Recording and attaching sound: Select ***Record sound***

3 Select ***Data Box***
4 Select a folder ▶ Select a file
- Removing the attachment: Highlight attachment field ▶ ▶ Select ***Yes***

Editing and sending sent/saved i-mode Mail

<Example> Editing unsent mail

1 4
- Editing sent mail: 5

2 Select a folder
3 Select a mail
- Editing sent mail: Select a mail ▶

4 Edit ▶

Receiving i-mode Mail

1 A mail is received
The mail ring tone sounds, keys light/flash and the reception result screen is displayed
2 ⊙ or 1 ▶ Select a folder ▶ Select a mail

Checking for i-mode Mail

/

Menu list

Press and input the number of each item.

<Example>Displaying a sent mail

1 5

- 1 Mail
  - 1 Inbox
  - 2 Compose message
  - 3 Chat mail
  - 4 Unsent messages
  - 5 Outbox
  - 6 Check new message
    - 1 i-mode message
    - 2 SMS
    - 3 Receive option
    - 4 Message retrieval
  - 7 SMS
    - 1 Compose SMS
    - 2 Received SMS
    - 3 Sent SMS
    - 4 SMS settings
  - 8 Read templates
  - 9 Mail setting
    - 1 Incoming message
    - 2 Incoming chat mail
    - 3 Sort criteria
    - 4 Signature
    - 5 Reply setting
      - 1 Reply format
      - 2 Activate quick reply
      - 3 Quick reply template
    - 6 Mail group

- 1 Mail
  - 9 Mail setting
    - 7 Display settings
      - 1 Display priority
      - 2 Receive option
      - 3 Incoming msg attach
      - 4 Attachment auto-play
      - 5 Message list
- 2 i-mode
  - 1 iMenu
  - 2 Bookmark
  - 3 Go to location
    - 1 Enter URL
    - 2 URL history
  - 4 Screen memo
  - 5 Last visited URL
  - 6 i-mode message
  - 7 Message R&F
    - 1 Message R
    - 2 Message F
    - 3 Message settings
      - 1 Auto-display
      - 2 Message retrieval
      - 3 Attachment auto-play
      - 4 Incoming msg alert
  - 8 i-Channel
    - 1 i-Channel list
    - 2 Ticker setting
  - 9 i-mode setting
    - 1 i-mode shortcuts
    - 2 Image/Effect
    - 3 i-motion
    - 4 Connection timeout
    - 5 Host selection
    - 6 Certificate
      - 1 Set certificate
      - 2 Certificate download

- 2 i-mode
  - 9 i-mode setting
    - 6 Certificate
      - 3 Certificate host
- 3 i-αppli
  - 1 Software list
  - 2 i-αppli settings
    - 1 Software sort
    - 2 Auto start
    - 3 Software info display
    - 4 Light settings
    - 5 Vibrate settings
    - 6 i-αppli shortcuts
  - 3 Display history
- 4 Phonebook & Logs
  - 1 Phonebook
  - 2 Phonebook new entry
  - 3 Phonebook(UIM) new entry
  - 4 Received calls
  - 5 Redial
  - 6 Ans. machine/Voice memo
    - 1 Answer machine
    - 2 Recorded messages
    - 3 Record voice memo
    - 4 Voice memos
  - 7 Own number
- 5 Data Box
  - 1 Image
  - 2 i-motion
  - 3 Melody
  - 4 Chara-den
- 6 Tools
  - 1 Bar code reader

Cut here

- 6 Tools
  - 2 Data exchange
    - 1 Send all Ir data
    - 2 Receive Ir data
    - 3 Data exchange settings
  - 3 Camera
  - 4 Movie camera
  - 5 Sound recorder
- 7 Stationery
  - 1 Scheduler
  - 2 Notepad
  - 3 Alarm clock
  - 4 Calculator
- 8 Settings
  - 1 Sounds/Vibrate
    - 1 Set sound
    - 2 Ring volume
      - 1 Ring alert
      - 2 Msg. alert
    - 3 Volume
    - 4 Keypad sound
    - 5 Low battery alert
    - 6 Silent mode
    - 7 Vibrator
    - 8 Set mute ring time
    - 9 Charge alert
  - 2 Display
    - 1 Stand-by
      - 1 Select img/i-αppli
      - 2 Set calendar
      - 3 Set clock
      - 4 Customize display
      - 5 Set i-Channel ticker
      - 6 Cancel settings
    - 2 Mail / Call image
      - 1 Outgoing call
      - 2 Incoming call
      - 3 Videophone dialing
      - 4 Incoming Videophone

- 8 Settings
  - 2 Display
    - 2 Mail / Call image
      - 5 Contact image
      - 6 Outgoing msg. image
      - 7 Incoming msg. image
      - 8 Retrieving image
      - 9 Receive display
    - 3 Color scheme
    - 4 Battery icon
    - 5 Display light
    - 6 Alert lighting
    - 7 Font & Language
      - 1 Font Size
      - 2 Select language
    - 8 Style theme
  - 3 Security
    - 1 Lock
      - 1 All lock
      - 2 PIM lock
      - 3 Remote lock
    - 2 Secret mode
    - 3 Keypad dial lock
    - 4 UIM
    - 5 Change security code
    - 6 Privacy mode
    - 7 Scanning function
      - 1 Update
      - 2 Set auto-update
      - 3 Set scan
      - 4 Version
    - 8 Key lock timer
  - 4 Info/Reset
    - 1 Call duration
    - 2 Confirm
    - 3 Battery level

- 8 Settings
  - 4 Info/Reset
    - 4 Call cost
      - 1 Last call cost
      - 2 Call cost limit
      - 3 Remove call cost icon
      - 4 Reset call cost
    - 5 Reset
    - 6 Delete all data
  - 5 Clock
    - 1 Date & time
    - 2 Auto power ON
    - 3 Auto power OFF
    - 4 Clock display format
    - 5 Alarm auto power ON
  - 6 Call/Answer
    - 1 Outgoing call
    - 2 Incoming call
    - 3 Anonymous caller
    - 4 Status message
    - 5 Any key answer
    - 6 Headset
      - 1 Headset switch
      - 2 Auto answer
      - 3 Headset Button Control
    - 7 Reject/Accept call
      - 1 Specified caller
      - 2 Unregistered caller
    - 8 Make/ Receive call
      - 1 Priority comm mode
      - 2 Prefix dialing
      - 3 Auto assist setting
      - 4 Sub address
    - 9 Call session
      - 1 Noise reduction
      - 2 Reconnect alarm
      - 3 On-hold tone
      - 4 Quality alarm

- 8 Settings
  - 7 Videophone
    - 1 Videophone dialing
    - 2 Incoming Videophone
    - 3 Operation
    - 4 Image
    - 5 External device
    - 6 Notify switchable mode
      - 1 Indication ON
      - 2 Indication OFF
      - 3 Check Indication
  - 8 Others
    - 1 Save word
    - 2 Save phrase
    - 3 Text input method
    - 4 Self mode
    - 5 NW search method
    - 6 Software Update
    - 7 Quick start-up
- 9 NW Services
  - 1 Voice Mail
    - 1 Voice Mail service
      - 1 Activate
      - 2 Set ring time
      - 3 Deactivate
      - 4 Check setting
      - 5 Play messages
      - 6 Voice Mail setting
      - 7 Check messages
    - 2 Tone/Vibration message notification
    - 3 Notify missed call
      - 1 Activate
      - 2 Deactivate
      - 3 Check setting
    - 4 Hide Voice Mail icon

- 9 NW Services
  - 2 Call waiting
    - 1 Activate
    - 2 Deactivate
    - 3 Check setting
  - 3 Call forwarding
    - 1 Activate
    - 2 Deactivate
    - 3 Register The Forwarding Number
    - 4 Setting if forwarding number busy
    - 5 Check setting
  - 4 Nuisance call barring
    - 1 Register the caller
    - 2 Register selected No.
    - 3 Delete all entries
    - 4 Delete last entry
    - 5 Check the number of entries
  - 5 Caller ID notification
    - 1 Activate/Deactivate
    - 2 Check setting
  - 6 Caller ID request
    - 1 Activate
    - 2 Deactivate
    - 3 Check setting
  - 7 Set arrival act
    - 1 Activate
    - 2 Deactivate
    - 3 Check setting
  - 8 Arrival call act
  - 9 Others
    - 1 Register USSD
    - 2 Record reply message

- 9 NW Services
  - 9 Others
    - 3 Remote control
      - 1 Activate
      - 2 Deactivate
      - 3 Check setting
    - 4 English guidance
      - 1 Guidance setting
      - 2 Check setting
    - 5 Dual network
      - 1 Dual Network Switching
      - 2 Check setting
    - 6 Service Dialing Number
      - 1 ドコモ故障問合せ
      - 2 ドコモ総合案内・受付
    - 7 Multi number
      - 1 Set Multi Number
      - 2 Check setting
      - 3 Number Setting
      - 4 Incoming calls melody setting
- 0 Own number

Key operations for functions

Start operation on the standby display.

Function	Operation procedure
Power ON/OFF	(for over 2 seconds)
Setting/canceling Self Mode	To set: (for over a second) ▶ Select *Yes* To cancel: (for over a second)

Function	Operation procedure
Setting/canceling Key Lock	To set: (for over a second) To cancel: ▶ select *Yes*
Channel list	
Setting/canceling Public mode (Driving mode)	(for over a second)
i-mode menu	
i-αppli folder list	(for over a second)
Received Calls	
Activating/ canceling Privacy Mode*1	To activate: (for over a second) To cancel: (for over a second) ▶ Enter the terminal security code
Redial	
Setting/canceling Silent Mode	(for over a second)
New Task menu	
Answer Machine/ Voice Memo menu	
Scheduler	(for over a second)
Data Box menu	

Function	Operation procedure
Activate Camera (with out-camera)	(for over a second)
Activate Camera (with in-camera)	(for over a second)

*1 Available only when Privacy Mode Setting is made.

Network services

Voice Mail Service

Separate application (pay) is required.

● Activating the service

1 MENU 9 1 1 1

2 Select *Yes*

3 Select *Yes*

4 Enter the ringing time

● Deactivating the service

1 MENU 9 1 1 3

2 Select *Yes*

Cut here

● **Playing voice mail messages**

1 MENU 9 1 1 5
2 Select ***Yes***
3 Follow the voice prompts

Call Waiting Service

Separate application (pay) is required.

● **Activating/deactivating the service**

1 MENU 9 2
2 1 (Start) or 2 (Stop)
3 Select ***Yes***

● **Answering another call**

during a call
• Switching the other parties:

● **Making another call**

MENU 7 during a call ▶ Enter a phone number ▶
• Switching the other parties:

● **Ending a call**

if another call is ended
• Call resumption with on-hold person:

Call Forwarding Service

Separate application (free) is required.

● **Activating the service**

1 MENU 9 3 1
2 Select ***Yes***
3 Select ***Yes***
4 Enter the forwarding destination phone number
• Entering the destination from the phonebook: MENU
5 ▶ Select ***Yes***
6 Enter the ringing time

● **Deactivating the service**

1 MENU 9 3 2
2 Select ***Yes***

Caller ID Request Service

Separate application is not required (free).

● **Activating/deactivating the service**

1 MENU 9 6
2 1 (Start) or 2 (Stop)
3 Select ***Yes***

Services available from FOMA terminal

Service	Phone No.
Collect calls (calls charged to receiver)	106
Directory assistance for general subscriber phone numbers and DoCoMo mobile phone numbers (charged) (unlisted phone numbers cannot be given)	104
Telegrams (charged) 8 am to 10 pm	115
Time (charged)	117
Weather (charged)	Area code +177
Police (emergency calls)	110
Fire and ambulance (emergency calls)	119
Emergency calls at sea	118
Disaster Voice Mail Service (charged)	171

Reading display

Top of the display

1 : Battery level 漢: Character input mode
2 : Received signal level 圏外: Out of service area
Self: Self Mode is set
: In data transfer mode
3 : In i-mode communication (during i-mode connection)
: In i-mode communication (during packet communication)
4 : During infrared communication
5 : Speakerphone function used
: During communication by handsfree compatible equipment
: Total call cost exceeds the maximum limit
6 : Mail storage status in i-mode Center
7 : Unread mail status

8 : Unread Message R status
9 : Unread Message F status
10 : i-αppli standby display on
: i-αppli DX standby display on
/: i-αppli/i-αppli DX execution
11 : During SSL page display
: Auto-send mail exists
: Auto-send mail failed exists
12 : Secret Mode is set
13 : i-αppli Auto Start failed

Bottom of the display

1 : Missed calls
2 : Recorded messages
3 : Voice mail messages
4 : Unread mail
5 : Silent Mode is set
: Personalized silent mode is set

6 : Ring alert volume is silent
: Vibrator for incoming voice call is set
: Ring alert volume to silent and vibrator for incoming voice call are set at the same time
7 : Public mode (Driving mode) is set
8 : Answer Machine is set
: Recorded messages full
9 : Key Lock is set
10 : Effective Easy Selector Plus keys in Focus Mode
11 : Connected with USB cable
12 : Reading UIM
13 : PIM Lock is set
: Keypad Dial Lock is set
14 : Alarm Clock is set
: Schedule alarm is set
: Alarm Clock and schedule alarm are set at the same time
15 : Software Update reserved
: Auto-update of the latest pattern definition is failed
: Auto-update of the latest pattern definition is succeeded

General Inquiries <DoCoMo Information Center>

(In English)

0120-005-250 (toll free)
* Can be called from mobile phones and PHSs.
(In Japanese only)

No prefix 151 (toll free)
* Can only be called from DoCoMo mobile phones and PHSs.

0120-800-000 (toll free)
* Can be called from mobile phones and PHSs.

Repairs

(In Japanese only)

No prefix 113 (toll free)
* Can only be called from DoCoMo mobile phones and PHSs.

0120-800-000 (toll free)
* Can be called from mobile phones and PHSs.

• Please confirm the phone number before you dial.
• For further information, refer to the "Nationwide Service Station List" included with your FOMA terminal and other devices.

Cut here

Mobile phone etiquette

When using your FOMA terminal, always be considerate of your environment and those around you.

Turn the power off in the following situations

■In prohibited areas

Use of mobile phones in the following places is prohibited. You must turn off your FOMA terminal.

・Airplanes ・Hospitals

You must also turn the power off when in lobbies or waiting rooms of hospitals as there could be people in such areas who could be adversely affected by mobile phone signals.

■While driving

Using your FOMA terminal while driving could cause an accident. Stop the vehicle in a safe place before using the phone or use Public mode (Driving mode/power off).

■On crowded trains or in other areas where there could be a person with an implanted cardiac pacemaker or defibrillator

Operating a mobile phone could interfere with implanted cardiac pacemakers or defibrillators.

■When visiting live events, movie theaters, museums or other public spaces

The ringing of your phone and your telephone conversations could disturb others around you in quiet public spaces.

Be considerate of your location and those around you with respect to the volume of your speaking voice and your FOMA terminal's ring tone

■When using a mobile phone in a restaurant, hotel lobby or other quiet places, always remember to lower your voice.

■When using a mobile phone on the street, find a place that does not interfere with passing traffic.

Be considerate of privacy

Please be considerate of the privacy of individuals around you when taking and sending photos using camera-equipped mobile phones.

Functions convenient for public etiquette

You may select a mode to reject incoming calls, turn off all sounds generated by your FOMA terminal, etc. from many modes to keep from disturbing those around you.

●Silent Mode/Customize Silent Mode

Keypad sound, ring tones and all other sounds generated by the FOMA terminal are turned off (Silent Mode). ☛P108

The user is allowed to change Silent Mode operations (Customize Silent Mode). ☛P109

Even in Silent Mode, the shutter sound is heard while shooting.

●Public mode (Driving mode/power off)

When a call is received, an announcement informs the caller that you are driving or in an area where use of the mobile phone should be refrained or that you are in an area where the phone should be turned off, and the call is then disconnected. ☛P65, P66

●Vibrator

When a call is received, the phone vibrates instead of ringing. ☛P106

●Answer Machine

When you cannot answer a call, the caller can leave a brief message. ☛P67

You may also use optional services such as Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service. ☛P300, P302

This printed matter is recyclable. Please recycle this manual when you no longer need it for reference purposes.

Access DoCoMo e-site for procedures to change your address or billing plan and for request of information materials.

From i-mode iMenu ▸ 料金&お申込(Charges & Application) ▸ ドコモeサイト(DoCoMo e-site)
Packet communication charges free

From PC My DoCoMo (https://www.mydocomo.com/) ▸ 各種手続き(ドコモeサイト)
(Application procedure (DoCoMo e-site))

- You will need your "network ID" to access e-site from i-mode.
- No packet communication charges are incurred when accessing e-site from i-mode. Accessing from overseas will incur charges.
- You will need your "My DoCoMo ID/password" to access e-site from PC.
- If you do not have or you have forgotten your "network ID" or "My DoCoMo ID/password", contact the DoCoMo Information Center listed below.
- DoCoMo e-site may not be available depending upon the content of your subscription.
- You may not be able to access some e-site services due to system maintenance, etc.

General Inquiries <DoCoMo Information Center>

(In English)

0120-005-250 (toll free)

* Can be called from mobile phones and PHSs.

(In Japanese only)

(No prefix) 151 (toll free)

* Can only be called from DoCoMo mobile phones and PHSs.

0120-800-000 (toll free)

* Can be called from mobile phones and PHSs.

- Please confirm the phone number before you dial.

Repairs

(In Japanese only)

(No prefix) 113 (toll free)

* Can only be called from DoCoMo mobile phones and PHSs.

0120-800-000 (toll free)

* Can be called from mobile phones and PHSs.

- Please confirm the phone number before you dial.
- For further information, refer to the "Nationwide Service Station List" included with your FOMA terminal and other devices.

Do not forget your cellular phone
... or your manners!

When using your portable phone in a public place, do not forget to show common courtesy and consideration for others around you.

Sales: NTT DoCoMo Group

NTT DoCoMo Hokkaido, Inc. | NTT DoCoMo Tohoku, Inc. | NTT DoCoMo, Inc.
NTT DoCoMo Tokai, Inc. | NTT DoCoMo Hokuriku, Inc. | NTT DoCoMo Kansai, Inc.
NTT DoCoMo Chugoku, Inc. | NTT DoCoMo Shikoku, Inc. | NTT DoCoMo Kyushu, Inc.

Manufacturer: MITSUBISHI ELECTRIC CORPORATION

Li-ion
To prevent damage to the environment, bring used battery packs to an NTT DoCoMo service counter, an NTT DoCoMo agent or a recycle center.

Made from 100% recycled paper.

PRINTED WITH SOY INK
This manual is printed using an ink based on soy bean oil.

860D193A
'06.2 (1st edition)

Manual for Data Communication

Data communication 1
Flow of setup for data communication 2
Connecting PC to FOMA terminal 3
Installation of the communication configuration file (driver) 4
Communicating using the FOMA PC configuration software 5
Communicating without using the FOMA PC configuration software 15
AT command 25

Data communication

The data communication modes available from FOMA terminal and hints on use are explained.

- FOMA terminal does not support the Remote Wakeup.
- FOMA terminal does not support fax communication.
- When connecting FOMA terminal to DoCoMo's PDA "sigmarion Ⅱ" or "musea" for data communication, make sure to update "sigmarion Ⅱ" or "musea". For details on update, visit the DoCoMo website.

Supported communication modes

FOMA terminal supports 3 communication modes: packet communication, 64K data communication and data transfer.
These communications become available by installing the related software onto a PC from the attached CD-ROM, connecting FOMA terminal to the PC and making required settings.

■ Packet communication

Packet communication charges are based on the amount of data sent and received, which make it suitable for high-speed exchange of relatively small amounts of data such as sending and receiving mail. No communication charges are required when no data are exchanged even if you are connected to the network. Therefore, sending/receiving data as needed while remaining connected to the network is possible.
High-speed packet communication provides a maximum reception speed of 384 kbps and a maximum transmission speed of 64 kbps by using access points that support packet communication on FOMA, such as Docomo's "mopera U/mopera" Internet connection service. These are offered by Best-effort connection which allows transmission speed to vary with the environment and the rate of congestion.
Note that communications of large-size data such as for viewing and downloading websites containing images will require high charges.

■ 64K data communication

The 64K data communications allow data transfer/reception at stabled communication rate of 64 kbps. Communication charges are based on the duration of the connection to the network regardless of the volume of data, which make it suitable for sending and receiving relatively large amounts of data as in downloading multi-media contents. You need to use access points that support FOMA 64K data communication such as Docomo's "mopera U/mopera" Internet connection service or ISDN synchronized 64 kbps access points.
Note that communicating for long time will require high charges.

■ Data transfer

It is the mode of non-charged communication in which data are transferred/exchanged via FOMA USB cable (optional). Various data including the phonebook, incoming/outgoing mail and bookmarks are sent/received.

Usage precautions

Internet service provider usage charge

When using the Internet from PC, usage charge to your Internet service provider (hereinafter called provider) is generally required. This charge is paid directly to the provider, and is separate from the FOMA service charge. For more information on usage charges, contact your provider.

- DoCoMo provides 2 Internet connection services: mopera U and mopera.
  The mopera U service requires subscription and a monthly fee. It allows you to use broadband Internet connection and international roaming services. There is also a plan that requires a monthly fee only when you use the service.
  The mopera service, allows you to access the Internet without subscription and monthly fee. You can make a connection with Internet immediately.
  For details such as on charges, visit the DoCoMo website.

Setting the dialup connection (provider, etc.)

Different dialup connections are required for packet communication and 64K data communication. When performing packet communication, use the dialup connection for FOMA packet communication. When performing 64K data communication, use the dialup connection for FOMA 64 kbps data communication or ISDN synchronized 64 kbps data communication.

- You cannot connect to access points of PHS 64K/32K data communication such as PIAFS or DoPa.

User authentication during network access

Some dialup connections require user authentication (ID and password) before a connection can be established. If user authentication is required, you must use your communication software or dialup network to enter your ID and password before connection. Your ID and password will be assigned by the dialup connection's provider or network administrator. For more information, contact your provider or network administrator.

Next

Access authentication when using PC browser

To authenticate FirstPass (user certificate), you must install FirstPass PC software from the attached CD-ROM and configure it. See “FirstPassManual” in the CD-ROM for details.
To view “FirstPassManual” (PDF format), Adobe Reader (version 6.0 or later recommended) is required. If Adobe Reader is not installed in your PC, you need to download the latest version from the Adobe Systems Incorporated website (Communication fee is separately required for downloading). See the Adobe Systems Incorporated website for details.

■ Operating environment for the FirstPass PC software

Item	Requirements
PC	PC/AT compatible computer
OS	The Japanese version of Windows 98SE, Me, 2000 or XP
Memory requirements*1	Windows 98SE, Me, 2000: 32MB or more Windows XP: 128MB or more
Hard disk capacity*1	10 MB or more free disk space
Browser	Microsoft® Internet Explorer 5.5 and later version For Windows XP, Microsoft® Internet Explorer 6.0 and later version

*1 May vary with the PC system configurations.

Conditions of packet communication and 64K data communication

To perform data communication from FOMA terminal, the following conditions must be satisfied.

- The PCs which may use a FOMA USB cable (optional).
- You must be within the FOMA service area.
- Packet communication requires an access point that supports FOMA packet communications.
- 64K data communication requires an access point that supports FOMA 64 kbps or ISDN synchronized 64 kbps data communication.

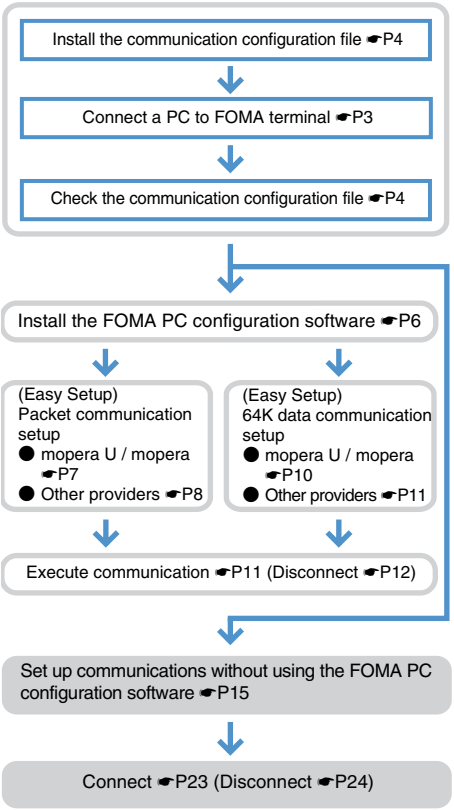
However, even when the above requirements are satisfied, you may not be able to perform data communication if base station traffic is heavy, or the signal quality is poor.

Glossary of Data communication

- Administrator privilege
  A user level that provides complete access to all OS functions in Windows XP and 2000. There must be at least one user that has administrator privileges for each PC. A user that has no administrator privileges is not normally allowed to install/uninstall drivers and software.
- APN (Access Point Name)
  String to identify a provider or in-house LAN to connect by packet communication. The APN for mopera U is “mopera.net” and mopera is “mopera.ne.jp”.
- cid (Context Identifier)
  The registration number when writing packet communication dialup connection (APN) information to FOMA terminal. 10 numbers from 1 to 10 are available for FOMA terminal.
  By default, “mopera.ne.jp” is registered in cid1, and “mopera. net” in cid3.
- W-TCP
  A TCP parameter designed to fully utilize TCP/IP transmission capacity during packet communications in a FOMA network. This communication setting is essential to enable full use of FOMA terminal capability.

Flow of setup for data communication

The setup work needed to connect FOMA terminal to a PC to perform packet or 64K data communication is as follows:



Communication configuration file (driver)

Install the communication configuration file on a PC from the attached CD-ROM, before connecting FOMA terminal to a PC to perform data communication.

FOMA PC configuration software

When the FOMA PC configuration software (found on the CD-ROM) is installed on a PC, a number of settings required for data communication via connection between FOMA terminal and PC can be made from the PC by simple operation.

Checking operating environment

Use the communication configuration file and the FOMA PC configuration software in the following operating environments:

Item	Requirements
PC*1	PC/AT compatible computer
OS	The Japanese version of Windows 98, Me, 2000, XP
Memory requirements	Windows 98, Me: 32MB or more Windows 2000: 64MB or more Windows XP: 128MB or more
Hard disk capacity	5 MB or more free disk space

*1 USB port (conform to USB specification 1.1/2.0) is required.

INFORMATION

- Note that utilization may not be possible in certain operating environments. Furthermore, operation will not be guaranteed in an environment other than that described above and DoCoMo assumes no responsibility for operation under such conditions.
- The operation procedure for Windows XP is mainly explained here. The screen display may differ under OS or PC to be used. Also, Windows 98 and Windows 98SE are collectively shown as Windows 98.

Before installation/uninstallation

- Installing and uninstalling the communication configuration file or the FOMA PC configuration software under Windows XP or 2000 can only be performed by a user with administrator privileges. Attempts made by other users will result in errors. For details on PC administrator privileges, refer to the instruction manual of the PC or contact your PC manufacturer or Microsoft Corporation.
- Before starting operation, make sure that no other program is running. If there is any active program, save and exit the program before operation.

Connecting PC to FOMA terminal

The connection should be made with the PC and FOMA terminal both switched on.

- Be sure to install the communication configuration file (driver) before connecting with a PC. ☛P4

Connecting a PC

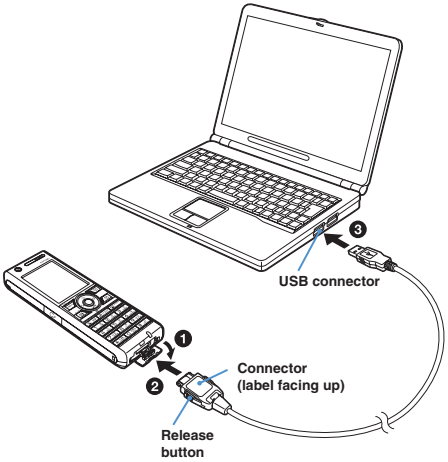
Connect by using the FOMA USB cable (optional).

❶ Open the cap on the FOMA terminal's external connection terminal

❷ Insert one end of the FOMA USB cable into the FOMA terminal's external connection terminal until it clicks

❸ Insert the other end of the FOMA USB cable into the PC USB connector

- When a PC and FOMA terminal are connected, appears on the display of FOMA terminal.
- If you connect FOMA terminal to a PC before installing the communication configuration file, Windows may automatically detect that a FOMA USB cable has been inserted, request to install a driver, and the wizard screen will be displayed. In that case, remove FOMA terminal and click *キャンセル* (Cancel) to exit the wizard.



■ Removing FOMA USB cable

Press release buttons on both sides of the connector for FOMA terminal and pull it out. Pull the connector for PC out from the side of PC.

- Be sure to press release buttons on both sides of the connector when pulling it out for FOMA terminal. Forcing to pull it out may cause a malfunction.

Next

Connecting while charging

FOMA terminal can be connected using a desktop holder (optional) during the charging. However, charging time becomes longer.

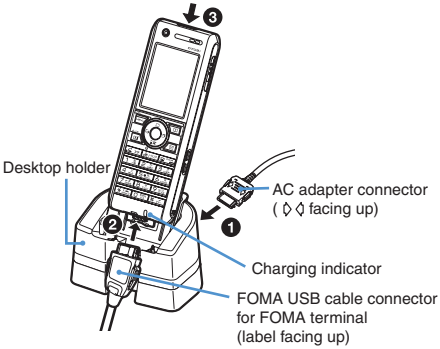
❶Connect the desktop holder to the AC adapter

- Plug the AC adapter into the wall outlet

❷Connect FOMA terminal and FOMA USB cable

❸Along with the desktop holder, insert FOMA terminal at an angle as shown in the figure.

- Pull out the FOMA USB cable in front of the desktop holder, when inserting FOMA terminal.
- Check that the charging indicator lights in red.



INFORMATION

- FOMA terminal can be connected using a data communication adapter D01(optional) during the charging. However, charging time becomes longer.
- Do not remove the USB cable during data communication, or give shock to FOMA terminal and desktop holder. It may cause the interruption of charging or data communication, malfunction or failure of PC or FOMA terminal, or loss of data.
- Starting charging during data communication may not complete charging. To complete charging, it is recommended that you end the data communication first, and then start charging.

Installation of the communication configuration file (driver)

Install the communication configuration file onto a PC before connecting FOMA terminal to the PC to perform communication.

Installing the communication configuration file

Before operation, read “Before installation/uninstallation” ☛P3

- Perform Step 1 to 3 first, and then connect FOMA terminal to a PC.

1 Insert the attached CD-ROM into a PC

2 Click *スタート*(Start) and *ファイル名を指定して実行*(Run) ▶ Enter “<CD-ROM drive letter>:¥USBDRIVE¥D702iin.exe” in *名前*(Name) ▶ Click *OK*

3 Click *はい*(Yes)

A screen requesting to connect FOMA D702i to the PC is displayed.

4 Connect FOMA terminal to the PC

A progress screen for installation is displayed and automatically completed.

- Connect FOMA terminal while the power is on.
- Go to “Checking the communication configuration file”, and check the type and name of the device installed.

INFORMATION

- Installation may take a few minutes.
- When Windows rebooting is prompted on the screen, follow the instruction and reboot.
- If a PC and FOMA terminal are connected before the communication configuration file is installed, another driver may be automatically installed. When this happens, performing the operation in Step 2 displays a message saying that the installed driver must be uninstalled. In this case, uninstall the driver following instruction shown on the display and install the communication configuration file.

Checking the communication configuration file

When the PC does not detect FOMA terminal correctly, settings and communication cannot be performed.

Next

Example For Windows XP

1 Click *スタート*, *コントロールパネル* (Control Panel), the *パフォーマンスとメンテナンス* (Performance and maintenance) icon and the *システム* (System) icon

The *システムのプロパティ* (System properties) screen is displayed.

■ **For Windows 2000, Me, 98:**
①**Click *スタート*, *設定* (Setting) and *コントロールパネル***
②**Double-click the *システム* icon**

2 Click the *ハードウェア* (Hardware) tab ▶ *デバイスマネージャ* (Device manager)

The *デバイスマネージャ* screen appears.

■ **For Windows Me, 98: Click the *デバイスマネージャ* tab**

3 Double-click each device ▶ Check the name of the installed device

Check that the names of installed devices are all shown.

Device type	Device name
Universal Serial Bus Controller or USB (Universal Serial Bus) Controller	• *FOMA D702i* • *FOMA D702i Command**1 • *FOMA D702i Modem**1 • *FOMA D702i OBEX**1
Port (COM and LPT) or (COM/LPT)	• *FOMA D702i Command Port (COMx)**2 • *FOMA D702i OBEX Port (COMx)**2
Modem	*FOMA D702i*

*1 Displayed only under Windows Me and 98.
*2 "x" of COMx varies by PC to be used.

Uninstalling the communication configuration file

Before operation, read "Before installation/uninstallation" ☛P3
Before uninstalling, make sure that FOMA terminal is removed from the PC.

Example For Windows XP

1 Click *スタート*, *コントロールパネル* and the *プログラムの追加と削除* (Add/delete Programs) icon

The *プログラムの追加と削除* screen is displayed.

■ **For Windows 2000, Me, 98:**
①**Click *スタート*, *設定* and *コントロールパネル***
②**Double-click the *アプリケーションの追加と削除* (Add/delete applications) icon**

2 Select *FOMA D702i USB* ▶ Click *変更と削除* (Update/delete)

• For Windows Me or 98, click *追加と削除* (Add/delete).

3 Check the name of program, and click *はい*

The uninstall process of the configuration software starts.

4 Click *OK*

INFORMATION

● When the installation fails or ***FOMA D702i USB*** is not displayed on the screen of Step 1, insert the attached CD-ROM into the PC, click *スタート*, and *ファイル名を指定して実行*. Then enter "<CD-ROM drive letter>:¥USBDRIVE¥D702iin.exe" and click ***OK*** to execute directly and uninstall the communication configuration file.
● When the communication configuration file is uninstalled and immediately reinstalled under Windows Me or 98, data communication may not be successful depending on the PC environment. In this case, the FOMA USB cable (optional) should be removed and reinserted before re-attempting data communication.

Communicating using the FOMA PC configuration software

A number of settings are required when FOMA terminal is connected to a PC to perform packet communication or 64K data communication. The FOMA PC configuration software allows you to easily perform the following settings:

■ **Easy setup**
Creating a dialup connection for FOMA data communication and W-TCP setup can be performed automatically by following the instructions in the guide.

■ **W-TCP setup**
This function optimizes the settings in the PC required for FOMA packet communication. Optimization of the communication settings using W-TCP setup is required to enable communication capability to maximum extent.

Next

■ **Dialup connection (APN) setup**

This function performs the dialup connection (APN) setup required for packet communication. Unlike 64K data communication, phone numbers cannot be used as a dialup connection for FOMA packet communication. Set a dialup connection name called APN in FOMA terminal for each dialup connection in advance, and enter the registration number (cid) in the phone number field of dialup connection. By default, “mopera.ne.jp” (APN) is registered in cid 1 to connect to mopera, and “mopera.net” (APN) for cid 3 to connect to mopera U, but the APN for connections to other providers and in-house LAN must be set.

Installing the FOMA PC configuration software

- Uninstall an old version of the FOMA PC configuration software (version 1.00), if already installed, before installing the FOMA PC configuration software (version 2.00) from the attached CD-ROM. You can display the version from *メニュー*(Menu) →*バージョン情報*(Version information) of the FOMA PC configuration software.
- If the following software (provided with the FOMA model released before this time’s) are installed, uninstall them in advance:
  - ・W-TCP environment configuration software (hereinafter called “old W-TCP configuration software”)
  - ・FOMA data communication configuration software (hereinafter called “old FOMA data communication configuration software”)
- Before operation, read “Before installation/uninstallation” ☛P3

Example For Windows XP

1 Insert the attached CD-ROM into the PC

2 Click *スタート* and *ファイル名を指定して実行* ▶ Enter “<CD-ROM drive letter>:¥FOMA_PCSET¥setup.exe” in *名前* ▶ Click *OK*

3 Click *次へ* (Next)

The FOMA PC configuration software license agreement appears.

4 Read the content of the screen and click *はい* if you agree to the agreement

5 Check that *タスクトレイに常駐する* (Reside in task tray) is selected and click *次へ*

W-TCP 設定(W-TCP setup) resides in the task tray after the setup.

- This is recommended for setting and cancellation of W-TCP communication. (☛P13)
- You can change the setting of resident software after the installation.

6 Check the installation path and click *次へ*

7 Check the name of the program folder and click *次へ*

8 Click *完了* (Done)

FOMA PC 設定ソフト (FOMA PC configuration software) is started up.

- Settings can be started from this screen.

INFORMATION

- If the FOMA PC configuration software, old W-TCP configuration software, or old FOMA data communication configuration software is already installed, the screen to cancel the installation appears. Click ***OK*** to uninstall this software and then install the FOMA PC configuration software.
- When *キャンセル* or *いいえ* (No) is clicked during installation, follow the instruction shown on the screen and click *はい* or *いいえ* .

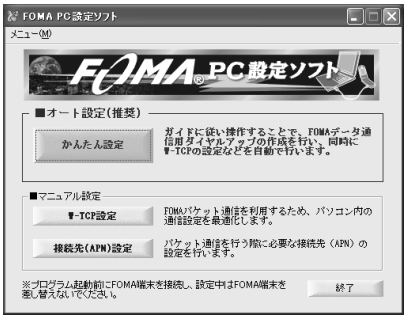
Setting packet communication by easy setup

Before setup, make sure that FOMA terminal and the PC are properly connected. ☛P3

Example For Windows XP

1 Click *スタート*, *すべてのプログラム* (All programs) (*プログラム* (Programs) for other than Windows XP), *FOMA PC設定ソフト* and *FOMA PC設定ソフト*

The FOMA PC configuration software is started up.



Using mopera U / mopera

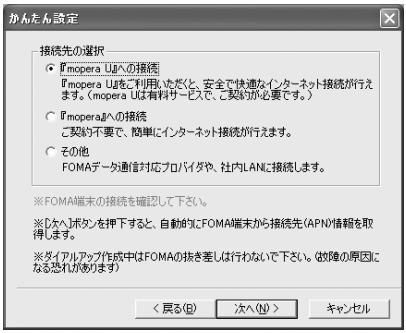
- Using other providers ☛P8

1 Start the FOMA PC configuration software ▶ Click *かんたん設定* (Easy setup)

2 Select *パケット通信* (Packet communication) ▶ Click *次へ*

3 Select *『mopera U』への接続* (mopera U connection) or *『mopera』への接続* (mopera connection) ▶ Click *次へ*

- DoCoMo provides 2 Internet connection services: mopera U and mopera. The mopera U service requires subscription and a monthly fee. The mopera service requires no subscription and a monthly fee.
- When mopera U is selected, a confirmation message to agreement is displayed. If the subscription is completed, click *はい*.



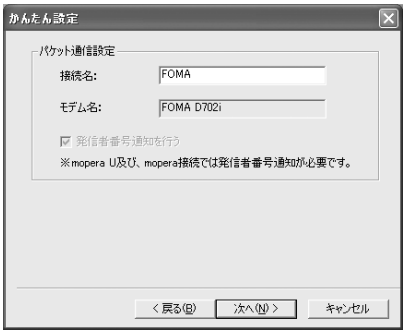
4 Click *OK* on the *FOMA端末設定取得* (Get FOMA terminal settings) screen

接続先(APN)情報 (Dialup connection (APN) information) is obtained from FOMA terminal. Please wait.

5 Enter any connection name ▶ Click *次へ*

- The following characters (one-byte) cannot be entered:

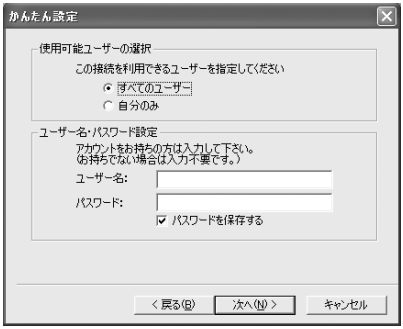
¥ / : * ? ! < > | "



Next

6 Click *次へ*

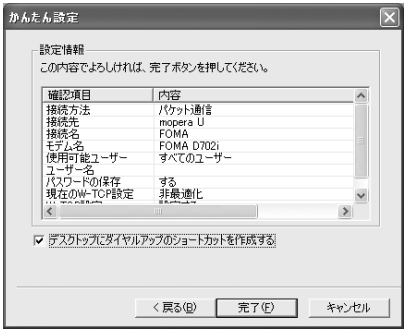
- The entry for *ユーザー名* (User name) or *パスワード* (Password) is not required.
- When the OS is Windows XP or 2000, select the user. If you select *すべてのユーザー* (All users), all users that are allowed to logon to Windows can access the connection. For Windows Me or 98, *使用可能ユーザーの選択* (Select allowable user) is not displayed.



7 Check that *最適化を行う* (Optimize) is selected and click *次へ*

- This screen is not displayed if optimization has already been performed.

8 Check the settings and click *完了*



9 Click *OK*

The PC must be rebooted for the changes to take effect. Click *はい* when a window prompts you to reboot the PC.

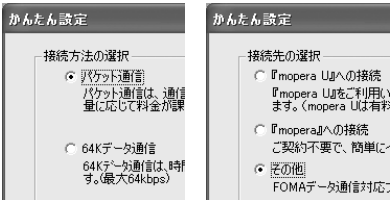
- If optimization of W-TCP setting has already been performed, rebooting is not required.
- Performing communication ☛P11

Using other providers

- Using mopera U / mopera ☛P7

1 Perform Steps 1 to 4 of "Using mopera U / mopera" of "Setting packet communication by easy setup" ☛P7

- Select *その他* (Others) in Step 3 for the dialup connection.



2 Enter any connection name ▶ Click *接続先 (APN) 設定* (Set dialup connection (APN))

- The following characters (one-byte) cannot be entered:

  ¥ / : * ? ! <> | "

■ **Advanced setting (TCP/IP setting):**
Click *詳細情報の設定* (Set detail info) to display the *IPアドレス* (IP address) and *ネームサーバー* (Name server) setting screens. When dialup information for the provider you subscribe to, or the in-house LAN is required, register addresses based on the information assigned.

Next

3 Set the dialup connection (APN)

By default, “mopera.ne.jp” is registered in cid1, and “mopera.net” in cid3. Register a dialup connection (APN) for cid 2 or 4 to 10.

① **Click *追加* (Add)**

The *接続先 (APN) の追加* (Add dialup connection (APN)) screen is displayed.

② **In *接続先 (APN)*, correctly enter a dialup connection name (APN) which supports the FOMA packet communication of your provider ▶ Click *OK***

The display returns to the *接続先 (APN) 設定* screen.

- Only one-byte alphanumeric characters, hyphens (-) and periods (.) can be entered for *接続先(APN)*.

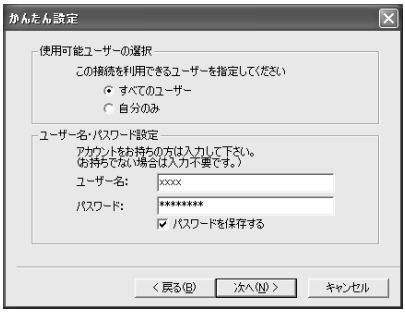
4 Click *OK*

The display returns to the screen in Step 2. *接続先 (APN)* set in Step 3 is displayed in *接続先 (APN) の選択* (Select dialup connection (APN)).

5 Check the dialup connection name (APN) of *接続先 (APN) の選択* and click *次へ*

6 Enter the user name in *ユーザー名* and the password in *パスワード* ▶ Click *次へ*

- Enter the user name and password given by the provider correctly. Be careful about the upper/lower case of each character.
- When the OS is Windows XP or 2000, select the user. If you select *すべてのユーザー* (All users), all users that are allowed to logon to Windows can access the connection. For Windows Me or 98, *使用可能ユーザーの選択* is not displayed.

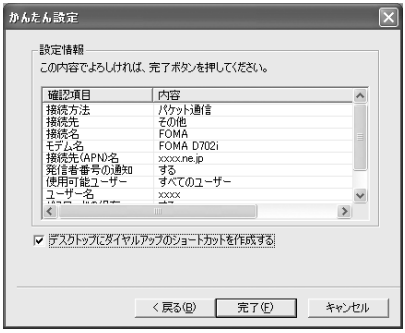


7 Check that *最適化を行う* is selected and click *次へ*

This optimizes the W-TCP setup required for packet communication.

- This screen is not displayed if optimization has already been performed.

8 Check the settings and click *完了*



9 Click *OK*

The PC must be rebooted for the changes to take effect. Click *はい* when a window prompts you to reboot the PC.

- If optimization of W-TCP setting has already been performed, rebooting is not required.
- Performing communication ☛P11

Setting 64K data communication by easy setup

Before setup, make sure that FOMA terminal and the PC are properly connected. ☛P3

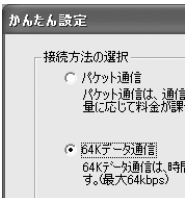
Example For Windows XP

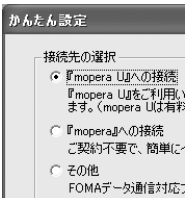
Using mopera U / mopera

- Using other providers ☛P11

1 Perform Steps 1 to 3 of "Using mopera U / mopera" of "Setting packet communication by easy setup" ☛P7

- Select *64K データ通信* (64K data communication) in Step 2 for the communication procedure.



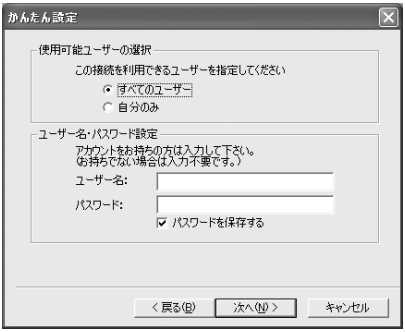


2 Enter any connection name and select the modem ▶ Click *次へ*

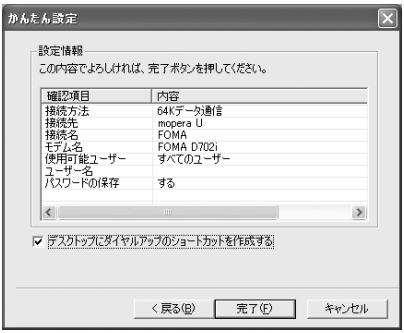
- The following characters (one-byte) cannot be entered:
  ¥ / : * ? ! <> | "
- Check that ***FOMA D702i*** is set for *モデムの選択* (Modem selection).

3 Click *次へ*

- The entry for *ユーザー名* or *パスワード* is not required.
- When the OS is Windows XP or 2000, select the user. If you select *すべてのユーザー* (All users), all users that are allowed to logon to Windows can access the connection. For Windows Me or 98, *使用可能ユーザーの選択* is not displayed.



4 Check the settings and click *完了*



5 Click *OK*

- Performing communication ☛P11

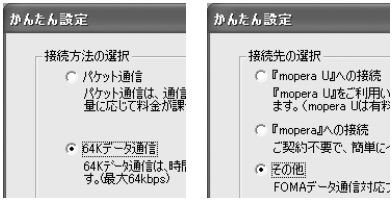
Next

Using other providers

• Using mopera U / mopera ☛P10

1 Perform Steps 1 to 3 of "Using mopera U / mopera" of "Setting packet communication by easy setup" ☛P7

• Select *64K データ通信* in Step 2 for the communication procedure, and *その他* in Step 3 for the dialup connection.



2 Set each item ▶ Click *次へ*

• Register the following items:
・*接続名* : Optional
・*モデムの選択* : FOMA D702i
・*電話番号* (Phone number)
: Enter based on provider information.

■ **Advanced setting (TCP/IP setting):**
Click *詳細情報の設定* to display the *IPアドレス* and *ネームサーバー* setting screens. When dialup information for the provider you subscribe to, or the in-house LAN is required, register addresses based on the information assigned.

3 Enter the user name in *ユーザー名* and the password in *パスワード* ▶ Click *次へ*

• Enter the user name or password given by the provider correctly. Be careful about the upper/lower case of each character.
• When the OS is Windows XP or 2000, select the user. If you select *すべてのユーザー* (All users), all users that are allowed to logon to Windows can access the connection. For Windows Me or 98, *使用可能ユーザーの選択* is not displayed.

4 Check the settings and click *完了*

5 Click *OK*

• Performing communication ☛P11

Performing communication

Starting communication set with the FOMA PC configuration software and disconnection are explained here.

1 Connect FOMA terminal to a PC ☛P3

2 Double-click the connection icon on the desktop

• The icon varies depending on the OS.

Next

• When there is no connection icon made on desktop, start from the *スタート* menu.

■ **Starting from the *スタート* menu of Windows XP:**

① Click *スタート*, *すべてのプログラム*, *アクセサリ* (Accessories), *通信* (Communication), and *ネットワーク接続* (Network connection)

② Double-click the connection icon

■ **Starting from the *スタート* menu of Windows 2000, Me or 98:**

① Click *スタート*, *プログラム*, *アクセサリ*, *通信* and *ネットワークとダイヤルアップ接続* (Network and dialup connections) (*ダイヤルアップネットワーク* (Dialup network) for Me/98)

② Double-click the connection icon

3 Check each item and click *ダイヤル* (Dial)

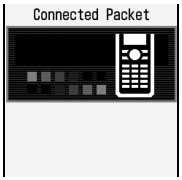
• When mopera U / mopera is selected, the entry for *ユーザー名* or *パスワード* is not required.

• If required by the instructions of a subscribed provider, enter the user name and the password, and then click *ダイヤル* (*接続* (Connect) for Me or 98) according to the input instruction information.

• The connection established screen may be displayed depending on the OS. Click ***OK***.

■ **FOMA terminal screen while communicating**

FOMA terminal displays a connecting screen when you execute packet or 64K data communication. The following screens are displayed when a connection has been established:



INFORMATION

● The transmission speed displayed on your PC may differ from actual speed.

● Data transmission is available only with FOMA terminal that was connected when the icon was created.

● When connecting FOMA terminal other than D702i, installation of the communication configuration file for your FOMA terminal is needed.

Disconnecting communication

Just exiting the browser may not disconnect the connection. To ensure disconnection, perform the following operation:

1 Click in the task tray

• Double-click for Windows Me and 98.

2 Click *切断* (Disconnect)

Optimizing packet communication setup

The method of optimizing the PC packet communication setup for FOMA network by means of W-TCP setup and canceling optimization is explained here.
The W-TCP setup is a TCP parameter tuning tool for optimizing TCP/IP transmission capacity during packet communication in the FOMA network. To enable communication capability of FOMA terminal to maximum extent, this communication setup is required.

For Windows XP

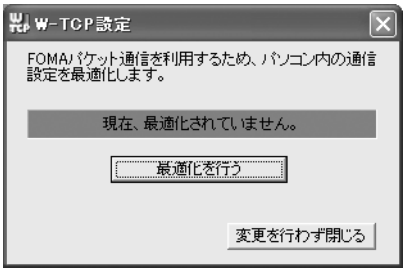
System optimization can be performed for each dialup connection.

1 Start *FOMA PC 設定ソフト*(☛P7) ▶ Click *W-TCP 設定*

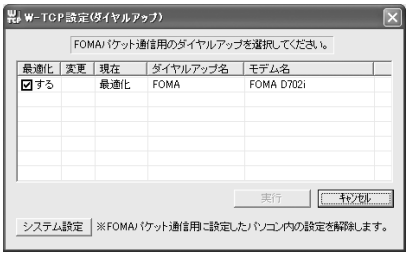
■ **Starting from the task tray: Click**

2 Perform the following:

■ **When the system has not been optimized:**
① Click *最適化を行う* on the W-TCP setting screen
② Select the dialup connection to be optimized ▶ Click *実行* (Execute)
Optimization of the system settings and dialup settings are performed respectively.



■ **When the system has been optimized:**
The following screen is displayed. Make the required settings if changes are to be made.



■ **Deactivating optimization:**
① Click *システム設定* (System setting) in the *W-TCP設定(ダイヤルアップ)* (Set W-TCP (dialup)) screen
The W-TCP setting screen is displayed.
② Click *最適化を解除する* (Deactivate optimization)

3 Reboot the PC, following the instruction shown on the screen

- The settings take effect after rebooting the PC.

Under Windows 2000, Me or 98

1 Start *FOMA PC 設定ソフト*(☛P7) ▶ Click *W-TCP 設定*

■ **Starting from the task tray: Click**

2 Perform the following:

■ **When the system setting has not been optimized: Click *最適化を行う***

■ **When canceling optimization of the system setting: Click *最適化を解除する***

3 Reboot the PC, following the instruction shown on the screen

- The settings take effect after rebooting the PC.

Setting dialup connections (APNs)

Set the dialup connection (APN) for packet communication.
Up to 10 dialup connections (APNs) can be set, which are to be registered under registration numbers (cid) 1 to 10 for management.
By default, “mopera.ne.jp” is set for cid1 and “mopera.net” for cid3.

- Before setup, make sure that FOMA terminal and the PC are properly connected. ☛P3
- For dialup connections (APNs) other than mopera U / mopera, inquire your provider or network administrator.

1 Start *FOMA PC 設定ソフト* (☛P7) ▶ Click *接続先 (APN) 設定*

The *FOMA端末設定取得* screen is displayed.

2 Click *OK*

FOMA terminal is accessed for reading the dialup connection (APN) information registered.

Next

3 Make the dialup connection (APN) settings

■ **Adding dialup connections (APNs): Click *追加***

■ **Editing or correcting registered dialup connections (APNs): Select the dialup connection (APN) from the list ▶ Click *編集* (Edit)**

■ **Deleting the registered dialup connection (APN): Select the dialup connection (APN) from the list ▶ Click *削除* (Delete)**

- The dialup connection registered in cid1 and cid3 cannot be deleted. (Selecting cid3 and clicking *削除* do not actually delete, but return to "mopera.net".)

■ **Saving settings as file: Click *ファイル* (File) and *名前を付けて保存* (Save as...) or *上書き保存* (Overwrite)**

- Save the settings as a file to back up the dialup connection (APN) settings registered in FOMA terminal or save the dialup connection (APN) settings during editing.

■ **Importing settings from file: Click *ファイル* and *開く* (Open)**

- Import settings from a file to edit dialup connections (APNs) saved on the PC or write to FOMA terminal.

■ **Importing dialup connection (APN) information from FOMA terminal: Click *ファイル* and *FOMA 端末から設定を取得* (Import settings from FOMA terminal)**

Access manually to FOMA terminal to import the dialup connection (APN) settings registered.

■ **Writing dialup connection (APN) information to FOMA terminal: Click *FOMA 端末へ設定を書き込む* (Write settings to FOMA terminal)**

The dialup connection (APN) settings displayed are written to FOMA terminal.

■ **Creating dialup connections:**

① **Select an added or edited dialup connection (APN) ▶ Click *ダイヤルアップ作成* (Create dialup connection)**

The *FOMA 端末設定書き込み* (Write setting to FOMA terminal) screen is displayed.

② **Click *はい* ▶ Click *OK***

When the dialup connection (APN) information have been written to FOMA terminal,the *パケット通信用ダイヤルアップの作成* (Create dialup connection for packet communication) screen is displayed.

③ **Enter any connection name ▶ Click *アカウント・パスワードの設定* (Set account and password)**

④ **Enter the user name in *ユーザー名* and the password in *パスワード* ▶ Click *OK***

- Not required for mopera U / mopera.
- When the OS is Windows XP or 2000, select the user. If you select *すべてのユーザー* (All users), all users that are allowed to logon to Windows can access the connection.
- Some providers may request you to enter IP and DNS information settings. Should this be the case, click *詳細情報の設定* in the *パケット通信用ダイヤルアップの作成* screen, register the required information and click *OK*.

⑤ **Click *OK* ▶ Click *OK***

⑥ **Click *FOMA 端末へ設定を書き込む***

A confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to overwrite.

⑦ **Click *はい* ▶ Click *OK***

INFORMATION

- Since the dialup connection (APN) setting is information saved in FOMA terminal, re-register the APN when connecting another FOMA terminal (terminal replaced by repair, etc.).
- To continue to use the dialup connection (APN) saved in the PC, save the registration number (cid) of the same APN to FOMA terminal.
- When FOMA terminal is detected as number other than COM1 to 9 by checking the communication configuration file, APN information may not be obtained or written during an APN setting. Set the information using "HyperTerminal" that comes with Windows in that case. ☛P15

Uninstalling the FOMA PC configuration software

Before operation, read "Before installation/ uninstallation" ☛P3

Next

Uninstall preparations

Right-click in the task tray, and click *常駐させない* (Do not reside) to cancel the resident of W-TCP setup.

Uninstalling

Example For Windows XP

1 Click *スタート*, *コントロールパネル* and *プログラムの追加と削除* icon

■ **For Windows 2000, Me, 98:**

①**Click *スタート*, *設定* and *コントロールパネル***

②**Double-click *アプリケーションの追加と削除* icon**

2 Select *NTT DoCoMo FOMA PC 設定ソフト* (NTT DoCoMo FOMA PC configuration software) ▶ Click *変更と削除*

- For Windows Me or 98, click *追加と削除*.

3 Check that you have selected the correct program to delete and click *はい*

The uninstall process of the FOMA PC configuration software starts.

■ **Canceling W-TCP optimization:**

A confirmation screen is displayed when W-TCP has been optimized.

- Usually, click *はい* and deactivate the optimization.
- Select whether to reboot and click *完了* immediately when a window prompts you to restart the PC.
- Canceling of W-TCP optimization is performed after the PC is rebooted.

4 Click *OK*

Communicating without using the FOMA PC configuration software

The method of dialup network setup for packet communication/64K data communication without the FOMA PC configuration software is explained.

Setting operation procedures

Install the communication configuration file ☛P4
Connect a PC to FOMA terminal ☛P3

↓

Set the dialup connection (APN)
(This setting is not required for 64K data communication, and for packet communication via mopera U / mopera.)

↓

Set to show/hide caller ID ☛P17 (Set as required.)

↓

Other settings (AT commands) ☛P25
(Set as required.)

↓

Dialup network setup

OS	Settings	
	Dialup connection	TCP/IP
Windows XP	P17	P18
Windows 2000	P19	P21
Windows Me	P22	P22
Windows 98	P23	P23

- For details on settings, inquire your provider or network administrator.

↓

Connect ☛P23 (Disconnect ☛P24)

Setting the dialup connection (APN) for packet communication

Communication software to input AT commands is required for making settings. The method of setting using “HyperTerminal” that comes with Windows is explained here.

Default cid1：mopera.ne.jp
cid3：mopera.net
cid2, 4 to 10：not recorded

Example For Windows XP

1 Connect FOMA terminal to a PC ☛P3

2 Click *スタート*, *すべてのプログラム*, *アクセサリ* and *通信* ▶ Click *ハイパーターミナル* (HyperTerminal). (And double-click the *Hypertrm* icon under Windows 98.)

- For other than Windows XP, *プログラム* is displayed for *すべてのプログラム*.

Next

3 Enter any connection name in *名前* ▶ Click *OK*

4 Enter a fictional phone number (such as 0) for *電話番号*, select *FOMA D702i* from *接続方法* (Connection procedure) ▶ Click *OK*

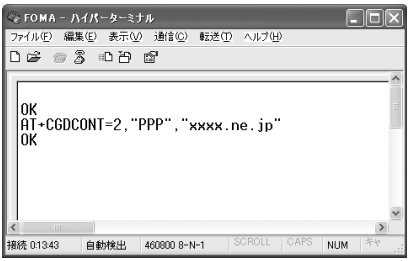
- Since *市外局番* (Area code) does not effect dialup connection (APN) setting, it is not necessary to change.

5 Click *キャンセル* when the connection screen is displayed

6 Enter the dialup connection (APN) ▶ Press ↵

- Enter in the format "AT+CGDCONT =<cid>, "PPP", "APN"".

<cid> : Enter any number between 2, 4 to 10.
"PPP" : Enter "PPP".
"APN" : Enter the dialup connection (APN) in quotation marks.



If ***OK*** is displayed, the dialup connection (APN) has now been set.

■ **Resetting dialup connection (APN) settings:**

AT + CGDCONT= ↵
Reset all cids.
- The settings are restored to the default settings for <cid> = 1 and 3, and the settings for <cid> = 2, 4 to 10 are cleared.

AT + CGDCONT=<cid> ↵
Reset the specified cid

■ **Checking dialup connection (APN) settings:**

AT + CGDCONT? ↵
- For details ☛P30

■ **When nothing is displayed even if AT command is entered: ATE1** ↵
- For details ☛P28

7 Check that *OK* is displayed and click *ファイル* and *ハイパーターミナルの終了* (End HyperTerminal)

- After *現在、接続されています。切断してもよろしいですか？* (Connecting now. Disconnect?) is displayed, click *はい*
- *"XXX"と名前付けされた接続を保存しますか?* (Save the connection named "XXX"?) is displayed. Click *いいえ*.

Dialup connection (APN) and registration number (cid)

The dialup connection (APN) for packet communication can be set for registration numbers between cid1 to 10 in FOMA terminal. By default, "mopera.ne.jp" is set for cid1 and "mopera.net" for cid3. For connecting to other providers or corporate LANs, register the dialup connection (APN) for cid2, 4 to 10.

Next

- For the dialup connection (APN), inquire your provider or network administrator.
- The dialup connection settings can be considered as phonebook registration for packet communication. The comparison between dialup connection settings and the FOMA terminal phonebook entries is as follows:

Dialup connection settings	FOMA terminal phonebook entries
Registration number (cid)	Registration number (Phonebook No.)
APN	Party's phone number

- The registered cid become the connection numbers of dialup connection setting.

Setting to show/hide caller ID

Take care when disclosing your caller ID since it is important information.

- Settings must be "show" for using mopera U / mopera.

Default not set

1 Perform Steps 1 to 5 of "Setting the dialup connection (APN) for packet communication" ☛P15

2 Set to show (186)/hide (184) caller ID during packet communication

Enter in the format "AT ＊ DGPIR=<n>".

AT ＊ DGPIR=1 ↵
When packet communication connection is being established, "184" is added to connect to the dialup connection (APN).

AT ＊ DGPIR=2 ↵
When packet communication connection is being established, "186" is added to connect to the dialup connection (APN).

3 Check that *OK* is displayed and click *ファイル* and *ハイパーターミナルの終了*

- After *現在、接続されています。切断してもよろしいですか？* is displayed, click *はい*
- *"XXX"と名前付けされた接続を保存しますか?* is displayed. Click *いいえ*.

■ Setting to show/hide caller ID by dialup network settings

The dialup network settings can also be used to append "186 (show)" or "184 (hide)" to the dialup connection number.

If "186" (show) or "184" (hide) is set by both the AT ＊ DGPIR command and dialup network settings, the show/hide caller ID setting is as follows:

Setting made by AT ＊ DGPIR command / Dialup network setting (<cid>=3)	Not set	Hide	Show
＊99＊＊＊3#	Caller ID is sent.	Caller ID is not sent.	Caller ID is sent.
184＊99＊＊＊3#	Caller ID is not sent.		
186＊99＊＊＊3#	Caller ID is sent.		

- To reset the show/hide setting made by the AT ＊ DGPIR command to the default (not set), enter "AT ＊ DGPIR=0".

Setting for Windows XP

Use the network connection wizard to set the dialup connection and TCP/IP protocol.

Setting the dialup connection

1 Click *スタート*, *すべてのプログラム*, *アクセサリ*, *通信* and *ネットワーク接続*

The *ネットワーク接続* screen is displayed.

2 Click *新しい接続を作成する* (Create new connection) in *ネットワークタスク* (Network task)

The *新しい接続ウィザード* (New connection wizard) screen is displayed.

3 Click *次へ*

A screen for selecting the type of network connection is displayed.

4 Select *インターネットに接続する* (Connect to Internet) ▶ Click *次へ*

The setup screen is displayed.

5 Select *接続を手動でセットアップする* (Set up connection manually) ▶ Click *次へ*

The Internet connection screen is displayed.

6 Select *ダイヤルアップモデムを使用して接続する* (Use dialup modem to connect) ▶ Click *次へ*

The device selection screen is displayed.

- If there is only one modem installed, the device selection screen is not displayed. Go to Step 8.

Next

7 Select *モデム－FOMA D702i (COMx)1 (Modem: FOMA D702i (COMx)) ▶ Click *次へ***

- Check that only *モデム－FOMA D702i (COMx)**1 is selected.

*1 "x" of *COMx* varies by PC to be used.

8 Enter any connection name in *ISP名* (ISP name) ▶ Click *次へ*

9 Enter the number of the dialup connection (one-byte) in *電話番号* ▶ Click *次へ*

■ **For packet communication:**

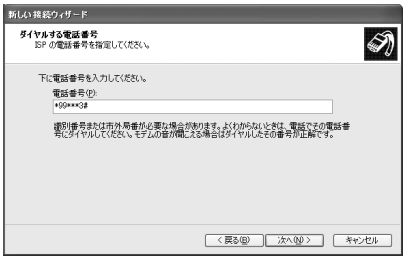
Enter "＊99＊＊＊<cid>#".

- For <cid>, enter the cid number registered in "Setting the dialup connection (APN) for packet communication" ☛P15. "＊99＊＊＊3#" for mopera U and "＊99＊＊＊1#" for mopera.

■ **For 64K data communication:**

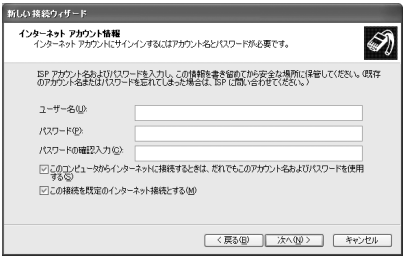
Enter the dialup connection phone number.

- "＊8701" for mopera U and " ＊9601" for mopera.



10 Enter the user name in *ユーザー名*, the password in *パスワード* and *パスワードの確認入力* (Check and enter password) ▶ Set the other items as shown below ▶ Click *次へ*

- When the access point is mopera U / mopera, the entry for *ユーザー名*, *パスワード* and *パスワードの確認入力* is not required. Set each items as shown and click *次へ*.



11 Click *完了*

12 Check the settings and click *キャンセル*

- Check the settings without connecting to the Internet immediately.

Setting TCP/IP protocol

1 Select the created dialup connection icon ▶ Click *ファイル* and *プロパティ* (Properties)

Next

2 Check the setting of each item in the *全般* (General) tab

- When multiple modems are installed to the PC, select *モデム－FOMA D702i (COMx)**1 in *接続方法*.
- Check that only *モデム－FOMA D702i (COMx)**1 is selected.
  *1 "x" of ***COMx*** varies by PC to be used.
- Uncheck (☐) *ダイヤル情報を使う* (Use dial information).

3 Click the *ネットワーク* (Network) tab ▶ Check the setting of each item

- Set ***PPP: Windows 95/98/NT4/2000, Internet*** as *呼び出すダイヤルアップサーバーの種類* (Type of dialup server to call).
- Select only *インターネット プロトコル (TCP/IP)* (Internet protocol (TCP/IP)) in *この接続は次の項目を使用します* (Use these items for this connection). Since *QoSパケットスケジューラ* (QoS packet scheduler) settings can not be changed, leave it as it is.

4 Click *設定*

5 Uncheck (☐) all items and click *OK*

The dialup connection properties screen reappears.

6 Click *OK*

Setting for Windows 2000

Use the network connection wizard to set the dialup connection and TCP/IP protocol.

Setting the dialup connection

1 Click *スタート*, *プログラム*, *アクセサリ*, *通信* and *ネットワークとダイヤルアップ接続*

The *ネットワークとダイヤルアップ接続* screen is displayed.

2 Double-click the *新しい接続の作成* (Create new connection) icon

The *所在地情報* (Location information) screen is displayed.

- This screen is displayed for the first time you double-click the *新しい接続の作成* icon. From the second time, go to Step 5.

3 Enter the number in *市外局番* (Area code) ▶ Click *OK*

The *電話とモデムのオプション* (Phone and modem options) screen is displayed.

4 Click *OK*

The *ネットワークの接続ウィザード* (Network connection wizard) screen is displayed.

5 Click *次へ*

A screen for selecting the type of network connection is displayed.

6 Select *インターネットにダイヤルアップ接続する* (Use dialup connection to Internet) ▶ Click *次へ*

The start screen of *インターネット接続ウィザード* (Internet connection wizard) is displayed.

Next

7 Select *インターネット接続を手動で設定するか、またはローカルエリアネットワーク(LAN)を使って接続します* (Set the Internet connection manually or connect using local area network (LAN)) ▶ Click *次へ*

The Internet connection setting selection screen is displayed.

8 Select *電話回線とモデムを使ってインターネットに接続します* (Connect to Internet using phone line and modem) ▶ Click *次へ*

The modem selection screen is displayed.

- This screen is not displayed if multiple modems are not installed. Go to Step 10.

9 Check that *インターネットへの接続に使うモデムを選択する* (Select modem to use for connection to Internet) is set to *FOMA D702i* and click *次へ*

The Internet account connection information screen is displayed.

- If *FOMA D702i* is not set, set *FOMA D702i*.

10 Enter the number of dialup connection (one-byte) in *電話番号* ▶ Click *詳細設定* (Detailed settings)

- Uncheck (☐) *市外局番とダイヤル情報を使う* (Use area code and dial information).

■ **For packet communication:**

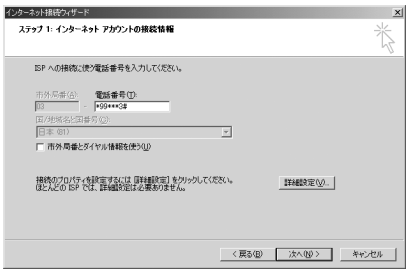
Enter "＊99＊＊＊<cid>#".

- For <cid>, enter the cid number registered in "Setting the dialup connection (APN) for packet communication" ☛P15. "＊ 99 ＊＊＊ 3#" for mopera U and "＊ 99 ＊＊＊ 1#" for mopera.

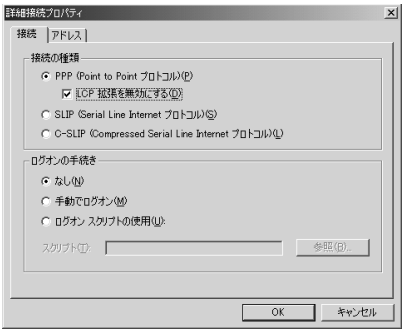
■ **For 64K data communication:**

Enter the dialup connection phone number.

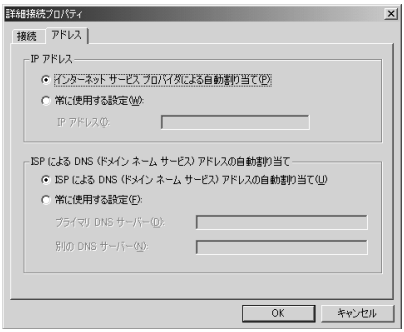
- "＊ 8701" for mopera U and "＊ 9601" for mopera.



11 Set each item in the *接続* tab as shown below



12 Click the *アドレス* (Address) tab ▶ Set each item as shown below



13 Click *OK*

The Internet account connection information screen reappears.

14 Click *次へ*

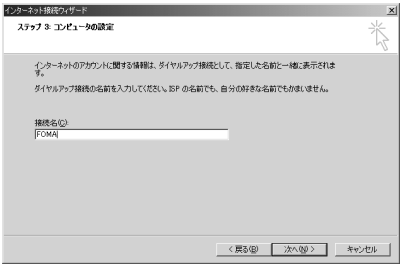
The Internet account logon information screen is displayed.

15 Enter the user name in *ユーザー名* and the password in *パスワード* ▶ Click *次へ*

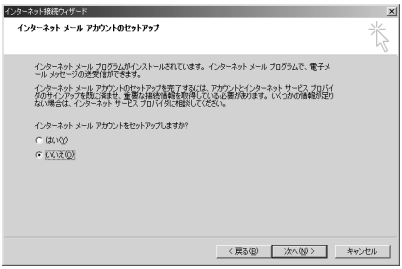
- When the dialup connection is mopera U / mopera, the entry for *ユーザー名* or *パスワード* is not required. When a confirmation screen for no entry is displayed, click *はい*.

Next

16 Enter any connection name in *接続名* ▶ Click *次へ*



17 Select *いいえ* ▶ Click *次へ*



18 Click *完了*

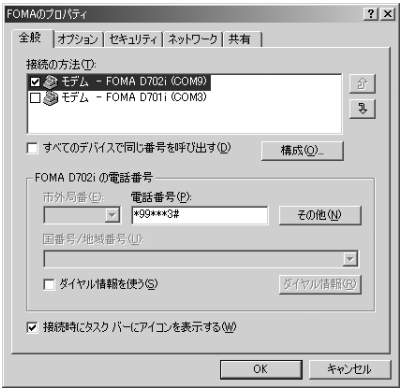
The *ネットワークとダイヤルアップ接続* screen reappears.

Setting TCP/IP protocol

1 Select the created dialup connection icon ▶ Click *ファイル* and *プロパティ*

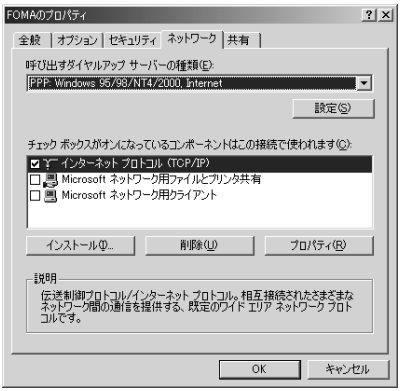
2 Check the setting of each item in the *全般* tab

- If multiple modems are installed in the PC, select *モデム－FOMA D702i (COMx)**1 in *接続の方法*.
  When the modem is changed, all items in *電話番号* is initialized. Re-enter the dialup connection phone number in that case.
- Check that only *モデム－FOMA D702i (COMx)**1 is selected.
  *1 "x" of *COMx* varies by PC to be used.
- Uncheck (☐) *ダイヤル情報を使う*.



3 Click the *ネットワーク* tab ▶ Check the setting of each item

- Set *PPP: Windows 95/98/NT4/2000, Internet* as *呼び出すダイヤルアップサーバーの種類*.
- Select only *インターネット プロトコル (TCP/IP)* for component.



4 Click *設定*

Next

5 Uncheck all items (☐) and click *OK*

The dialup connection properties screen reappears.

6 Click *OK*

Setting for Windows Me

Setting the dialup connection

- The setting procedures are the same as for Windows 98.

1 Click *スタート*, *プログラム*, *アクセサリ*, *通信* and *ダイヤルアップネットワーク*

The *ダイヤルアップネットワークへようこそ* (Welcome to dialup network) screen is displayed.

- This screen is displayed when *ダイヤルアップネットワーク* is selected for the first time. From the second time, go to Step 3.

2 Click *次へ*

The *ダイヤルアップネットワーク* screen is displayed.

3 Double-click the *新しい接続* (New connection) icon

4 Enter any connection name in *接続名* ▶ Click *次へ*

- Check that ***FOMA D702i*** is set for *モデムの選択*. If it is not set, set ***FOMA D702i***.

5 Enter the dialup connection number (one-byte) ▶ Click *次へ*

■ **For packet communication:**

Enter "＊99＊＊＊<cid>#".

- For <cid>, enter the cid number registered in "Setting the dialup connection (APN) for packet communication" ☛P15. "＊ 99 ＊＊＊ 3#" for mopera U and "＊ 99 ＊＊＊ 1#" for mopera.

■ **For 64K data communication:**

Enter the dialup connection phone number.

- "＊ 8701" for mopera U and "＊ 9601" for mopera.
- *市外局番* does not need to be entered.

6 Check the name of the dialup connection ▶ Click *完了*

Setting TCP/IP protocol

1 Select the created dialup connection icon ▶ Click *ファイル* and *プロパティ*

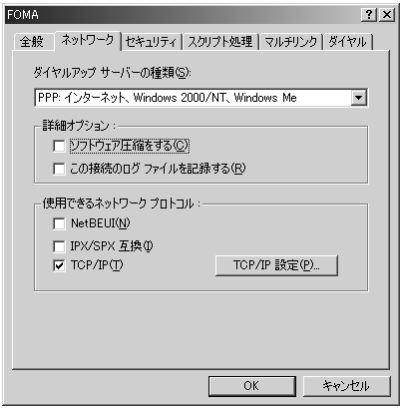
2 Check the setting of each item in the *全般* tab

- Uncheck (☐) *市外局番とダイヤルのプロパティを使う* (Use area code and dial properties).
- Check that ***FOMA D702i*** is set for *接続方法*. If it is not set, set ***FOMA D702i***.

Next

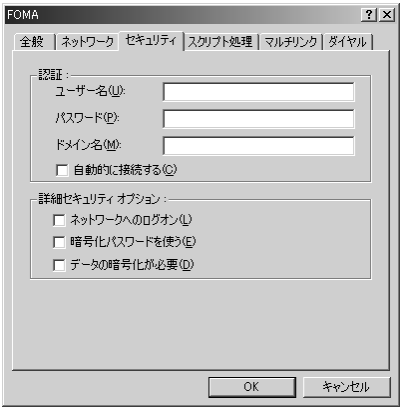
3 Click the *ネットワーク* tab ▶ Check the setting of each item

- Set *ダイヤルアップサーバーの種類* (Dialup server type) to ***PPP: インターネット、Windows 2000/NT、Windows Me*** (PPP: Internet, Windows 2000/NT, Windows Me).
- Uncheck (☐) all *詳細オプション*.
- Select only ***TCP/IP*** for *使用できるネットワーク プロトコル* (Available protocol).



4 Click the *セキュリティ* (Security) tab ▶ Enter the user name in *ユーザー名*, the password in *パスワード* and click *OK*

- When the dialup connection is mopera U / mopera, the entry for *ユーザー名* or *パスワード* is not required.



Setting for Windows 98

Setting the dialup connection

The setting procedures are the same as for Windows Me. ☛P22

Setting TCP/IP protocol

1 Perform steps 1 to 2 of "Setting TCP/IP protocol" of "Setting for Windows Me" ☛P22

2 Click the *サーバーの種類* (Server type) tab ▶ Check the setting of each item

- Set *ダイヤルアップサーバーの種類* to ***PPP: インターネット、Windows NT Server、Windows 98*** (PPP: Internet, Windows NT Server, Windows 98).
- Uncheck (☐) all *詳細オプション*.
- Select only ***TCP/IP*** for *使用できるネットワーク プロトコル*.

3 Click *OK*

Connecting through dial-up

The method of dialup connection for packet communication/64K data communication is explained.

Example For Windows XP

1 Connect FOMA terminal to a PC ☛P3

2 Click *スタート*, *すべてのプログラム*, *アクセサリ*, *通信* and *ネットワーク接続*

The *ネットワーク接続* screen is displayed.

- Under the Windows 2000, Me or 98, click *スタート*, *プログラム*, *アクセサリ*, *通信* and *ネットワークとダイヤルアップ接続* (*ダイヤルアップネットワーク* for Me and 98).

Next

3 Double-click the dialup connection icon

4 Check each item and click *ダイヤル*

- Under the Windows Me and 98, check each item and click *接続*.
- The number of dialup connection set for the dialup network is shown in *ダイヤル* or *電話番号*.
- When the dialup connection is mopera U / mopera, the entry for *ユーザー名* or *パスワード* is not required.

Disconnecting communication

Just exiting the browser may not disconnect the connection. To ensure disconnection, perform the following operation:

1 Click in the task tray

- Double-click for Windows Me and 98.

2 Click *切断*

AT command

AT commands are commands for setting FOMA terminal functions using a PC.
FOMA terminals comply with AT commands and support some extended commands and proprietary AT commands.

About the AT command

■ AT command input format

"AT" must be entered before each AT command. Commands must be entered in one-byte alphanumeric characters. An input example is as follows:

ATD ＊ 99 ＊ ＊ ＊ 3# ↵

Command　Parameter　Press Enter key.

AT commands and their parameters (numbers or symbols) must be entered on a single line. Enter all the characters from the first character to the character just before ↵ in a single line. Up to 160 characters (including "AT") can be entered in each line.

■ AT command input mode

To operate FOMA terminal using AT commands, the PC must be in the terminal mode.
Terminal mode is a mode that lets the PC operate as a single communication terminal. Characters entered from the keyboard are sent to the device or line connected to the communication port.

- Offline mode
  FOMA terminal in standby status. FOMA terminal must be in this status to use AT commands to control it.
- Online data mode
  FOMA terminal is in the communication mode. If you enter AT commands when FOMA terminal is performing communication, the received characters are sent directly to the communication receiver and may cause the receiver's modem to malfunction. Do not enter AT commands while FOMA terminal is performing communication.
- Online command mode
  AT commands allow you to operate FOMA terminal even when FOMA terminal is in the communication mode. These operations make it possible to execute AT commands without interfering with the connection to the communication receiver, and normal communication can continue after the commands have finished executing.

Switching between the online data mode and online command mode

To switch FOMA terminal from the online data mode to online command mode, you can use either of the following procedures:

- Enter the "+++" command or the code set in the "S2" register.
- Turn the RS-232C*1 ER signal off when set in "AT&D1".

To switch from the online command mode to online data mode, enter "ATO ↵ ".

*1 The USB interface emulates an RS-232C signal line, so RS-232C signal control using communication applications is possible.

- When AT commands are input, entering “¥” may cause “\” to appear depending on the font settings for the PC or communication software in use.
- If the battery pack is removed from FOMA terminal before the terminal power is turned off, the setting values may not be recorded.
- AT commands that can be used via the FOMA D702i Modem Port are described in this list.

*1 : Returns the setting to default with the AT & F command.
*2 : Stores the command setting into FOMA terminal with the AT&W command and restores it with the ATZ command.
None : Indicates the AT command does not include any display command or test command.
[ ] : Indicates the parameter can be omitted.

Command		Description & Parameter					
AT%V		Shows the version of your FOMA terminal in the format of “Verx.xx”.					
	ex.	Enter	AT%V	Display	None	Test	None
AT&C [n]		Selects the operational conditions of the circuit CD signal outgoing to DTE. n=0: The circuit CD signal is always on. (when parameter omitted) n=1: The circuit CD signal varies depending on the other modem. (default)					
*1, *2	ex.	Enter	AT&C1	Display	None	Test	None
AT&D [n]		Determines an action to be taken when the circuit ER signal coming from DTE changes from on to off in the online data mode. n=0: Ignores the ER signal condition (always on). (when parameter omitted) n=1: Switches the mode to the online command mode when the ER signal changes from on to off. n=2: Disconnects the circuit and switches the mode to the offline mode when the ER signal changes from on to off. (default)					
*1, *2	ex.	Enter	AT&D1	Display	None	Test	None
AT&E [n]		Selects type of speed display used when connection is made. This command is effective only when the ATX command is other than “n=0”. n=0: Displays communication speed of wireless zone. n=1: Displays communication speed between PC and FOMA terminal. (default)					
*1, *2	ex.	Enter	AT&E1	Display	None	Test	None
AT&F [0]		Resets all FOMA terminal state to the default. When executed while receiving a call, it resets FOMA terminal state to the default without affecting the call. When executed during communication, the terminal state returns to default after it disconnects the communication.					
	ex.	Enter	AT&F0	Display	None	Test	None
AT&S [n]		Determines the control of the DR signal FOMA terminal outputs. n=0: Always on. (default and when parameter omitted) n=1: The DR signal turns on when the circuit is connected.					
*1, *2	ex.	Enter	AT&S0	Display	None	Test	None
AT&W [0]		Writes the current settings into FOMA terminal.					
	ex.	Enter	AT&W0	Display	None	Test	None
AT ＊ DANTE		Shows the signal strength (reception level) in the format of “ ＊ DANTE:m”. m=0: Outside the service area m=1 to 3: Number of antennas displayed on FOMA terminal					
	ex.	Enter	AT ＊ DANTE	Display	AT ＊ DANTE?	Test	AT ＊ DANTE=?
AT ＊ DGANSM=n		Specifies whether to reject or accept an incoming packet call. n=0: Sets both the incoming call rejection and the incoming call acceptance off. (default) n=1: Sets the incoming call rejection on. n=2: Sets the incoming call acceptance on.					
	ex.	Enter	AT ＊ DGANSM=0	Display	AT ＊ DGANSM?	Test	AT ＊ DGANSM=?
AT ＊ DGAPL=n [,cid]		Specifies dialup connections (APNs) to accept incoming packet calls from them. For an APN, use the cid parameter defined with “+CGDCONT”. n=0: Adds the APN defined with the cid parameter to the call acceptance list. n=1: Deletes the APN defined with the cid parameter from the call acceptance list. When you omit the cid parameter, all cids will be added or deleted.					
	ex.	Enter	AT ＊ DGAPL=0,1	Display	AT ＊ DGAPL?	Test	AT ＊ DGAPL=?
AT ＊ DGARL=n [,cid]		Specifies dialup connections (APNs) to reject incoming packet calls from them. For an APN, use the cid parameter defined with “+CGDCONT”. n=0: Adds the APN defined with the cid parameter to the call rejection list. n=1: Deletes the APN defined with the cid parameter from the call rejection list. When you omit the cid parameter, all cids will be added or deleted.					
	ex.	Enter	AT ＊ DGARL=0,1	Display	AT ＊ DGARL?	Test	AT ＊ DGARL=?

Next

Command		Description & Parameter					
AT ＊ DGPIR=n		Specifies whether to notify the caller ID for packet communication. This specification is effective both for incoming and outgoing calls. n=0: The APN is used as is when a packet communication is established. (default) n=1: Adds “184” to the APN when a packet communication is established. n=2: Adds “186” to the APN when a packet communication is established.					
	ex.	Enter	AT ＊ DGPIR=0	Display	AT ＊ DGPIR?	Test	AT ＊ DGPIR=?
AT ＊ DRPW		Shows the level of power reception in the format of “ ＊ DRPW:m”, where the value of m ranges from 0 to 75.					
	ex.	Enter	AT ＊ DRPW	Display	None	Test	AT ＊ DRPW=?
+++		Changes FOMA terminal mode from the online data to the online command. The duration of escape guard is fixed to 1 sec.					
	ex.	Enter	+++	Display	None	Test	None
AT+CEER		Shows a disconnection reason of the previous communication. ☛P30					
	ex.	Enter	AT+CEER	Display	None	Test	AT+CEER=?
AT+CGDCONT		Specifies the APN for packet communication. ☛P30					
AT+CGEQMIN		Specifies the criteria for judging whether to approve the QoS (Quality of Service) level provisioned by the network when the packet communication is established. ☛P30					
AT+CGEQREQ		Specifies the QoS level requested to the network when transmission is performed during packet communication. ☛P31					
AT+CGMR		Shows the version of your FOMA terminal with a 16-digit number.					
	ex.	Enter	AT+CGMR	Display	None	Test	AT+CGMR=?
AT+CGREG= [n]		Determines whether to notify the network registration state. Either “inside the service area” or “outside the service area” is notified. n=0: Not notified. (default and when parameter omitted) n=1: Notified in the format of “+CGREG:n,stat”. stat=0: Outside the service area stat=1: Inside the service area (home) stat=4: Unknown stat=5: Inside the service area (visitor)					
*1, *2	ex.	Enter	AT+CGREG=1	Display	AT+CGREG?	Test	AT+CGREG=?
AT+CGSN		Shows the manufacturer’s serial number of FOMA terminal.					
	ex.	Enter	AT+CGSN	Display	None	Test	AT+CGSN=?
AT+CLIP= [n]		Specifies whether to show the caller ID of an incoming 64K data communication on the PC’s screen. n=0: Does not show the information. (default and when parameter omitted) n=1: Shows the information. If you enter “AT+CLIP?”, it shows “+CLIP:n,m”. m=0: The network setting that does not show caller ID to the other party when originating a call. m=1: The network setting that shows caller ID to the other party when originating a call. m=2: Unknown					
*1, *2	ex.	Enter	AT+CLIP=0	Display	AT+CLIP?	Test	AT+CLIP=?
AT+CLIR= [n]		Specifies whether to show your caller ID to the other party when you originate a 64K data communication. n=0: In accordance with the service agreement. (when parameter omitted) n=1: Not notified. n=2: Notifies the caller ID. (default) If you enter “AT+CLIR?”, it shows “+CLIR:n,m”. m=0: CLIR is not activated. (caller ID always notified) m=1: CLIR is activated. (caller ID always not notified) m=2: Unknown m=3: CLIR temporary mode (default for “not notified”) m=4: CLIR temporary mode. (default for “notified”)					
	ex.	Enter	AT+CLIR=0	Display	AT+CLIR?	Test	AT+CLIR=?
AT+CMEE= [n]		Specifies the error report format of FOMA terminal. ☛P30 n=0: Shows “ERROR”. (default and when parameter omitted) n=1: Shows in the format of “+CME ERROR:xxxx”. (xxxx=numbers) n=2: Shows in the format of “+CME ERROR:xxxx”. (xxxx=characters)					
*1, *2	ex.	Enter	AT+CMEE=0	Display	AT+CMEE?	Test	AT+CMEE=?
AT+CNUM		Shows the Own Number data of FOMA terminal in the format of “+CNUM:, “number”,type”. number: Phone number type=129: Does not show “+81”. type=145: Shows “+81”.					
	ex.	Enter	AT+CNUM	Display	None	Test	AT+CNUM=?
AT+CR= [n]		Specifies whether to display the communication type (packet communication or 64K data communication) before ***CONNECT*** is displayed, during line connection. n=0: Does not show the information. (default and when parameter omitted) n=1: Shows the information in the format of “+CR:serv”. serv=SYNC: 64K data communication serv=GPRS: Packet communication					
*1, *2	ex.	Enter	AT+CR=0	Display	AT+CR?	Test	AT+CR=?

Command	Description & Parameter						
AT+CRC= [n]	Specifies whether to use result codes of “+CRING:type” for incoming calls. n=0: Does not use the result code of “+CRING:type”. (default and when parameter omitted) n=1: Uses the result code of “CRING:type”. The example of codes are as follows: Packet communication ⋯ +CRING:GPRS “PPP”⋯ “mopera.net” 64K data communication⋯ +CRING:SYNC						
*1, *2	ex.	Enter	AT+CRC=0	Display	AT+CRC?	Test	AT+CRC=?
AT+CREG= [n]	Specifies whether to show the “inside/outside the service area” information. n=0: Does not show the information. (default and when parameter omitted) n=1: Shows the information. If you enter “AT+CREG?”, it shows the information in the format of “+CREG:n,stat”. stat=0: Outside the service area stat=1: Inside the service area (home) stat=4: Unknown stat=5: Inside the service area (visitor)						
*1, *2	ex.	Enter	AT+CREG=0	Display	AT+CREG?	Test	AT+CREG=?
AT+GMI	Shows the manufacturer’s name of FOMA terminal.						
	ex.	Enter	AT+GMI	Display	None	Test	AT+GMI=?
AT+GMM	Shows FOMA terminal name.						
	ex.	Enter	AT+GMM	Display	None	Test	AT+GMM=?
AT+GMR	Shows the version of FOMA terminal.						
	ex.	Enter	AT+GMR	Display	None	Test	AT+GMR=?
AT+IFC= [n,[m]]	Specifies the local flow control between the PC and FOMA terminal. n is for setting the DCE-by-DTE control. n=0: Does not use the flow control. n=1: Uses XON/XOFF flow control. n=2: Uses RS/CS (RTS/CTS) flow control. (default) m is for setting the DTE-by-DCE control. If you omit this parameter, the same value as n is assumed. m=0: Does not use the flow control. m=1: Uses XON/XOFF flow control. m=2: Uses RS/CS (RTS/CTS) flow control. (default) If you omit both parameters, “AT+IFC=2, 2” is assumed.						
*1, *2	ex.	Enter	AT+IFC=2,2	Display	AT+IFC?	Test	AT+IFC=?
AT+WS46= [22]	Specifies the radio network FOMA terminal uses to originate a call.						
*1, *2	ex.	Enter	AT+WS46=22	Display	AT+WS46?	Test	AT+WS46=?
ATA	Specifies how to handle incoming packet or 64K data communications. For incoming packet communications, you can specify the following: ATA184: Receives an incoming call without the caller ID displayed ATA186: Receives an incoming call with the caller ID displayed						
	ex.	Enter	ATA	Display	None	Test	None
A/	Reexecutes the previous command.						
	ex.	Enter	A/	Display	None	Test	None
ATD	Originates a packet or 64K data communication. · Packet communication: Enter “ATD ＊ 99 ＊＊＊ cid#”. If you omit cid parameter, “cid=1” is assumed. When you enter it in the format starting with “ATD184 ＊ 99”, 184 (hide caller ID) is attached to the call outgoing to the APN specified with cid parameter (186 (show caller ID) is treated in the same manner). · 64K data communication: Enter it in the format of “ATD phone-number”. · Redialing: Enter in the format of “ATDL” or “ATDN”.						
	ex.	Enter	ATD phone-number	Display	None	Test	None
ATE [n]	Echoes back the characters sent from the PC. n=0: Gives no echo back. (when parameter omitted) n=1: Gives echo back. (default)						
*1, *2	ex.	Enter	ATE0	Display	None	Test	None
ATH	Disconnects communication.						
	ex.	Enter	ATH	Display	None	Test	None
ATI [n]	Shows the identification code. n=0:Shows “NTT DoCoMo”. (when parameter omitted) n=1:Shows FOMA terminal name. n=2:Shows the version of FOMA terminal.						
	ex.	Enter	ATI0	Display	None	Test	None
ATO	Switched the mode from the online command to the online data.						
	ex.	Enter	ATO	Display	None	Test	None
ATQ [n]	Specifies whether to show the result code on the PC. n=0: Shows the result code. (default and when parameter omitted) n=1: Does not show the result code.						
*1, *2	ex.	Enter	ATQ0	Display	None	Test	None
ATV [n]	Specifies whether to show the result with numeric codes or text messages. n=0: Shows the result with numeric codes. (when parameter omitted) n=1: Shows the result with text messages. (default)						
*1, *2	ex.	Enter	ATV1	Display	None	Test	None

Next

Command		Description & Parameter					
ATX [n]		Specifies whether to detect busy tone and dial tone, and whether to display the communication speed. n=0: Busy tone not detected, dial tone not detected, communication speed not displayed. (when parameter omitted) n=1: Busy tone not detected, dial tone not detected, communication speed displayed. n=2: Busy tone not detected, dial tone detected, communication speed displayed. n=3: Busy tone detected, dial tone not detected, communication speed displayed. n=4: Busy tone detected, dial tone detected, communication speed displayed. (default)					
*1, *2	ex.	Enter	ATX1	Display	None	Test	None
ATZ		Resets FOMA terminal settings to those stored in the non-volatile memory with the AT&W command. If you enter this command during receiving a packet or 64K data communication, the settings are reset without affecting the call reception. If you enter it during communication, it disconnects the communication first and resets the settings.					
	ex.	Enter	ATZ	Display	None	Test	None
ATS0= [n]		Specifies the number of ringing signals (RING) which triggers automatic call acceptance on FOMA terminal. n=0: Does not accept calls automatically. (default and when parameter omitted) n=1 to 255					
*1, *2	ex.	Enter	ATS0=0	Display	ATS0?	Test	None
ATS2= [n]		Specifies an escape character. n=0 to 127 (43: Default 0: When parameter omitted 127: To disable the escape processing)					
*1	ex.	Enter	ATS2=43	Display	ATS2?	Test	None
ATS3= [13]		Specifies a carriage return (CR) character that indicates the end of AT command's character string (the setting is not changeable). It is attached to the end of the echoed back command string and the result code.					
*1	ex.	Enter	ATS3=13	Display	ATS3?	Test	None
ATS4= [10]		Specifies the Line Feed (LF) character (the setting is not changeable). It follows the CR character when the result code is displayed with text.					
*1	ex.	Enter	ATS4=10	Display	ATS4?	Test	None
ATS5= [8]		Specifies a backspace (BS) character that deletes the last character in the input buffer while you are entering an AT command (the setting is not changeable).					
*1	ex.	Enter	ATS5=8	Display	ATS5?	Test	None
ATS6= [n]		Specifies the pause period before dialing. This command sets the register but no action will occur. n=2 to 10: 2 to 10 seconds. (5: Default and when parameter omitted)					
*1	ex.	Enter	ATS6=5	Display	ATS6?	Test	None
ATS7= [n]		Specifies the waiting time after dialing till connection is established for the packet or 64K data communication. n=1 to 255: 1 to 255 seconds. (60: default and when parameter omitted)					
*1, *2	ex.	Enter	ATS7=60	Display	ATS7?	Test	None
ATS8= [n]		Specifies the comma dialing function (pause time). This command sets the register but the pause time is fixed to 3 seconds. n=0 to 255: 0 to 255 seconds. (3: default 0: When parameter is omitted)					
*1	ex.	Enter	ATS8=3	Display	ATS8?	Test	None
ATS10= [n]		Specifies the permissible delay time before automatic disconnection. This command sets the register but no action will occur. n=1 to 255: in 1/10 seconds. (1: default and when parameter omitted)					
*1, *2	ex.	Enter	ATS10=1	Display	ATS10?	Test	None
ATS30= [n]		Specifies the time elapsed after the last data transmission to activate automatic disconnection. This command is effective for 64K data communication. n=1 to 255: 1 to 255 minutes. n=0: Does not disconnect. (default and when parameter omitted)					
*1	ex.	Enter	ATS30=0	Display	ATS30?	Test	None
ATS103= [n]		Specifies a mark to be used to delimit a destination sub-address if attached. This command is effective for 64K data communication. n=0: ＊ (when parameter omitted) n=1: / (default) n=2: ¥					
*1	ex.	Enter	ATS103=0	Display	ATS103?	Test	None
ATS104= [n]		Specifies a mark to be used to delimit a caller sub-address if attached. This command is effective for 64K data communication. n=0: # (when parameter omitted) n=1: % (default) n=2: &					
*1	ex.	Enter	ATS104=0	Display	ATS104?	Test	None
AT¥S		Shows the command settings and the contents of the S register.					
	ex.	Enter	AT¥S	Display	None	Test	None
AT¥V [n]		Selects whether to use the extended result code for connection. This command takes effect when the ATX command parameter is “n=1 to 4”. n=0: Does not use the extended result code. (default and when parameter omitted) n=1: Uses the extended result code.					
*1, *2	ex.	Enter	AT¥V0	Display	None	Test	None

Disconnection reason list

■ **Packet communication**

Value	Reason
27	APN is not present or is incorrect.
30	Disconnected by network.
33	Terminal does not subscribe to packet communication.
36	Normal disconnection.

■ **64K data communication**

Value	Reason
1	Specified number does not exist.
16	Normal disconnection.
17	Communication is impossible because remote device is busy.
18	You made a call but did not receive a response within the specified time.
19	A call was made to the other party, but communication is impossible.
21	The remote device rejected incoming calls.
63	The service and option of the network are not valid.
65	Unavailable processing speed was specified.
88	You made a call to a terminal or received a call from a terminal with different terminal properties.

Error messages list

No.	Text display	Reason
10	SIM not inserted	No UIM (FOMA card) is set.
15	SIM wrong	Other than DoCoMo SIM (IC card equivalent to UIM) is inserted.
16	incorrect password	Incorrect password
100	unknown	Unknown error

Supplement to AT command

■ **Command name: AT+CGDCONT= [parameter]**

Sets the dialup connection (APN) for packet communication.

Format

AT+CGDCONT=[<cid>[, “PPP” [, “<APN>”]]]

Parameter description

<cid>: 1 to 10
“mopera.ne.jp” (APN) is registered in cid 1, and “mopera.net” in cid 3.
<APN>: Optional

Example of execution

The command used to register an APN named “abc” (when <cid>=2).
AT+CGDCONT=2, “PPP”, “abc”

Operation performed when parameter is omitted

AT+CGDCONT=
Clears all <cid> settings. However, entry for “<cid>=1” and “<cid>=3” is restored to the default setting.

AT+CGDCONT=<cid>
Clears the specified <cid> settings. However, entry for “<cid>=1” and “<cid>=3” is restored to the default setting.

AT+CGDCONT=?
Displays a list of assignable values.

AT+CGDCONT?
Displays the current setting values.

■ **Command name: AT+CGEQMIN= [parameter]**

Registers the criteria for judging whether to approve QoS provisioned by the network when PPP packet communication is established.

Format

AT+CGEQMIN= [<cid>[,,<Maximum bitrate UL>[,<Maximum bitrate DL>]]]

Parameter description

<cid>：1 to 10
“mopera.ne.jp” (APN) is registered in cid 1, “mopera.net” in cid 3.
<Maximum bitrate UL>: None or 64
<Maximum bitrate DL>: None or 384
For “Maximum bitrate UL” and “Maximum bitrate DL”, the minimum communication speed (in kbps) is set for both upload and download traffic between FOMA terminal and the base station. If the parameter is set to “None (default)”, all speeds are permissible. However, if “64” and “384” are set, any connection at a speed less than the above limit is not permitted, and chances are that packet communication will not be connected.

Example of execution

(1) Command used to permit all speeds both upload and download (when <cid>=2)
AT+CGEQMIN=2

(2) Command used to permit only 64kbps upload and 384 kbps download (when <cid>=4)
AT+CGEQMIN=4,,64,384

(3) Command used to permit 64 kbps upload and all speeds download (when <cid>=5)
AT+CGEQMIN=5,,64

(4) Command used to permit all speeds upload and only 384 kbps download (when <cid>=6)
AT+CGEQMIN=6,,,384

Next

Operation performed when parameter is omitted

AT+CGEQMIN=

Clears all <cid> settings.

AT+CGEQMIN=<cid>

Returns the specified <cid> to the default setting.

AT+CGEQMIN=?

Displays a list of assignable values.

AT+CGEQMIN?

Displays the current settings.

■ Command name: AT+CGEQREQ=[parameter]

Sets QoS requested to the network when transmission is performed during PPP packet communication.

Format

AT+CGEQREQ=[<cid>]

Parameter description

Only commands that require connection at 64 kbps upload/384 kbps download can be set. The contents are set by default for each cid.

<cid>: 1 to 10

"mopera.ne.jp" (APN) is registered in cid 1, and "mopera.net" in cid 3.

Example of execution

(when <cid>=2)

AT+CGEQREQ=2

Operation performed when parameter is omitted

AT+CGEQREQ=

Returns all <cid> to the default setting.

AT+CGEQREQ=<cid>

Returns the specified <cid> to the default setting.

AT+CGEQREQ=?

Displays a list of assignable values.

AT+CGEQREQ?

Displays the current settings.

Result codes

- When the ATV [n] command (☛P28) is set to "n=1", the result code is displayed in the text display (default). When the command is set to "n=0", the result code is displayed in the numeric display.

■ Result codes

No.	Text display	Meaning
0	OK	Operation performed normally
1	CONNECT	Terminal connected to remote device
2	RING	Incoming call
3	NO CARRIER	Line disconnected
4	ERROR	Unable to accept command
6	NO DIALTONE	Unable to detect dial tone
7	BUSY	Detecting the busy tone
8	NO ANSWER	Completion of connection timed out
100	RESTRICTION	The communication network is busy. Please wait for a while and retry.
101	DELAYED	Redialing restricted

■ Extended result code

No.	Text display	Connection speed between FOMA terminal - PC
5	CONNECT 1200	1,200 bps
10	CONNECT 2400	2,400 bps
11	CONNECT 4800	4,800 bps
13	CONNECT 7200	7,200 bps
12	CONNECT 9600	9,600 bps
15	CONNECT 14400	14,400 bps
16	CONNECT 19200	19,200 bps
17	CONNECT 38400	38,400 bps
18	CONNECT 57600	57,600 bps
19	CONNECT 115200	115,200 bps
20	CONNECT 230400	230,400 bps
21	CONNECT 460800	460,800 bps

INFORMATION

● To retain compatibility with a modem connected via conventional RS-232C, communication speed is displayed, but it differs from the actual connection speed because FOMA terminal is connected to the PC with a FOMA USB cable (optional).

Next

■ **Communication protocol result code**

No.	Text display	Meaning
1	PPPoverUD	Connected via 64K data communication
2	AV32K	AV (videophone) connected via [32K]
3	AV64K	AV (videophone) connected via [64K]
5	PACKET	Connected with packet communication

■ **Display example of result codes**

When "ATX 0" is set

Regardless of the settings of the AT¥V command (☛P29), only CONNECT is displayed upon completion of connection.

Text display example:

ATD ＊ 99 ＊ ＊ ＊ 3#
CONNECT ("1" in numeric display)

When "ATX 1" is set

- When "ATX1", "AT¥V0" is set (default)

  Upon completion of connection, the result code is displayed in the following format: CONNECT <speed between FOMA terminal - PC>

  Text display example:

  ATD ＊ 99 ＊ ＊ ＊ 3#
  CONNECT 460800 ("1 21" in numeric display)

- When "ATX1", "AT¥V1" is set*1

  The code is displayed upon completion of connection as follows:

  Text display example:

  ATD ＊ 99 ＊ ＊ ＊ 3#
  CONNECT 460800 PACKET mopera.net/64/384 ("1 21 5" in numeric display)

  Indicates that speed between FOMA terminal and PC is 460,800 bps and the terminal is connected to mopera.net providing a maximum upload speed of 64 kbps and a maximum download speed of 384 kbps.

*1 When "ATX1" and "AT¥V1" are set at the same time, it is likely that dialup connection will fail. It is recommended that only "AT¥V0" be used.